This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.81.445

SIGILL: COLL: HARVARD: CANTAB: NOV: ANGL: 1650.
CHRISTO ET ECCLESIAE

BOUGHT WITH
THE INCOME FROM
THE GIFT OF
STEPHEN SALISBURY,
OF WORCESTER, MASS.
(Class of 1817).

13 Jan. 1882.

3 2044 097 067 078

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. Lincoln, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. Lincoln, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by William Henry Crosby. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By Butler and Sturgus. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. Tyler, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. Tyler. 12mo. 193 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By Henry Frieze, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. Harkness, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of Augustus Hahn. With Notes and a Lexicon by John J. Owen, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.

☞ SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D., LL. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION
OF
1881.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.
1881.

Educ T 918.81.445
~~Educ T 918.81~~
~~254.21~~

1882. Jan. 13,
Salisbury Fund.
1.20

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the
Southern District of New York.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1881, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

NOTE TO THE REVISED GRAMMAR.

Future editions of the author's Latin Reader and other text-books will be published with references to the new Grammar. With the help of the table on page 427, however, the corresponding references to either edition of the Grammar may be found without inconvenience.

language.

The volume now offered to the public has been prepared in view of these facts. It is the result of a thorough and complete revision of the author's Latin Grammar published in 1864. To a large extent, indeed, it is a new and independent work; yet the paradigms, rules of construction, and in general all parts intended for recitation, have been only slightly changed. The aim of the work in its present form is threefold.

1. It is designed to present a clear, simple, and convenient outline of Latin grammar for the beginner. It

accordingly contains, in large type, a systematic arrangement of the leading facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them. The laws of construction are put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference, and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after having been separately discussed, are collected in a body at the close of the Syntax. Topics which require the fullest illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are explained in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting, it is believed, a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner impossible under any other treatment.

2. It is intended to be an adequate and trustworthy grammar for the advanced student. By brevity and conciseness of phraseology, and by compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, an ample collection of the most important grammatical facts, intended for reference, has been compressed within the limits of a convenient manual. Care has been taken to explain and illustrate, with the requisite fullness, all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood and the Indirect Discourse have received special attention.

3. In a series of foot-notes it aims to bring within the reach of the student some of the more important results of recent linguistic research. Brief explanations are given of the working of phonetic laws, of the nature of inflection, of the origin of special idioms, and of various facts in the growth of language. But the distinguishing feature of this part of the work consists in the abundant

references which are made to some of the latest and best authorities upon the numerous linguistic questions naturally suggested by the study of Latin grammar.[1]

An attempt has been made to indicate, as far as practicable, the natural quantity of vowels before two consonants or a double consonant.[2]

With this brief statement of its design and plan, this volume is now respectfully committed to the hands of classical teachers.

In conclusion, the author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous friends who have favored him with valuable suggestions.

---

[1] See page xv. It is hardly necessary to add that an acquaintance with the authorities here cited is by no means to be regarded as an indispensable qualification for the work of classical instruction. The references are intended especially for those who adopt the historical method in the study of language.

[2] See page 4, foot-note 4; also page 9, note 3.

Brown University, Providence, R. I.,
July, 1881.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

PAGE
Alphabet 1
Roman Method of Pronunciation 3
English Method 5
Continental Method 8
Quantity 8
Accentuation 9
Phonetic Changes 10
  I. Changes in Vowels 11
  II. Changes in Consonants 16

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender 21
Person, Number, and Case 22
Declension 23
First Declension 24
  Greek Nouns 26
Second Declension 26
  Greek Nouns 29
Third Declension 30
  Class I.—Consonant-Stems 30
    Stems in a Labial 30
    Stems in a Dental 31
    Stems in a Guttural 32
    Stems in a Liquid or a Nasal 33
    Stems in *S* 34
  Class II.—I-Stems 35
  Special Paradigms 39
  Greek Nouns 40
  Synopsis of the Third Declension 41
  Gender 46
Fourth Declension 48

PAGE
Fifth Declension 50
General Table of Gender 51
Declension of Compound Nouns 52
Irregular Nouns 53
  I. Indeclinable 53
  II. Defective 53
  III. Heteroclites 55
  IV. Heterogeneous 56

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions 57
Third Declension 59
Irregular Adjectives 62
Comparison 63
  I. Terminational Comparison 63
  II. Adverbial Comparison 65
Numerals 65

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

I. Personal Pronouns 70
II. Possessive Pronouns 71
III. Demonstrative Pronouns 72
IV. Relative Pronouns 74
V. Interrogative Pronouns 75
VI. Indefinite Pronouns 76
  Table of Correlatives 77

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods 78
Tenses 80
Numbers, Persons 81
Infinitive, Gerund, Supine 81
Participle 82
Conjugation 82
Paradigms of Verbs 84
Comparative View of Conjugations 102
Verbs in iō: Conjugation III. 106
Verbal Inflections 108
Synopsis of Conjugation 110
Deponent Verbs 114
Periphrastic Conjugation 114
Peculiarities in Conjugation 115
Analysis of Verbal Endings 117
  I. Tense-signs 117
  II. Mood-signs 117
  III. Personal Endings 118

PAGE
Formation of Stems 119
I. Present Stem 119
II. Perfect Stems 121
III. Supine Stem 122
Classification of Verbs 122
First Conjugation 122
Second Conjugation 124
Third Conjugation 127
Fourth Conjugation 134
Irregular Verbs 135
Defective 141
Impersonal 143

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs 144
Table of Correlatives 147
Comparison 149
Prepositions 149
Conjunctions 150
Interjections 152

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

I. Roots, Stems, Suffixes 152
Primary Suffixes 155
II. Derivation of Words 158
Derivative Nouns 158
Derivative Adjectives 165
Derivative Verbs 169
III. Composition of Words 172
Compound Nouns 173
Compound Adjectives 174
Compound Verbs 175

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

I. Classification of Sentences 179
II. Elements of Sentences 182

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

PAGE

- I. Agreement of Nouns 184
  - Predicate Nouns 184
  - Appositives 185
- II. General View of Cases 186
- III. Nominative, Vocative 187
  - I. Nominative 187
  - II. Vocative 188
- IV Accusative 189
  - I. Direct Object 189
    - Two Accusatives 191
  - II. Accusative in an Adverbial Sense 193
    - Accusative of Specification 193
    - Accusative of Time and Space 194
    - Accusative of Limit 195
  - III. Accusative in Exclamations 196
- V. Dative 196
  - Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object 197
    - Dative with Special Verbs 199
    - Dative with Compounds 201
    - Dative of Possessor 202
    - Dative of Apparent Agent 202
    - Ethical Dative 203
    - Two Datives 204
  - Dative with Adjectives 204
  - Dative with Nouns and Adverbs 205
- VI. Genitive 206
  - Genitive with Nouns 206
  - Genitive with Adjectives 210
  - Predicate Genitive 212
  - Genitive with Special Verbs 213
  - Accusative and Genitive 215
- VII. Ablative 217
  - I. Ablative Proper 218
    - Ablative of Place from which 218
    - Ablative of Separation, Source, Cause 218
    - Ablative with Comparatives 222
  - II. Instrumental Ablative 223
    - Ablative of Accompaniment 223
    - Ablative of Means 224
    - Ablative in Special Constructions 225
    - Ablative of Price 226
    - Ablative of Difference 226
    - Ablative of Specification 227
  - III. Locative Ablative 227
    - Ablative of Place 227
    - Ablative of Time 229
    - Ablative Absolute 231
- VIII. Cases with Prepositions 232

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

PAGE
Agreement of Adjectives 239
Use of Adjectives 241

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

Agreement of Pronouns 244
Use of Pronouns 246
  Personal, Possessive 246
  Reflexive 247
  Demonstrative 248
  Relative 251
  Interrogative 252
  Indefinite 252

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

I. Agreement of Verbs—Use of Voices 254
II. Indicative and its Tenses 257
  Tenses of Indicative 257
  Use of Indicative 262
III. General View of the Subjunctive and its Tenses . . 264
IV. Subjunctive in Principal Clauses 265
  Subjunctive of Desire 265
  Potential Subjunctive 266
V. Imperative and its Tenses 268
VI. Moods in Subordinate Clauses 269
  I. Tenses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses . . 269
  II. Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose 273
  III. Subjunctive in Clauses of Result 276
  IV. Moods in Conditional Sentences 280
  V. Moods in Concessive Clauses 287
  VI. Moods in Causal Clauses 289
  VII. Moods in Temporal Clauses 291
  VIII. Indirect Discourse 296
    Moods and Tenses in Indirect Discourse . . . 296
    Persons and Pronouns in Indirect Discourse . . 299
    Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse . . 299
    Indirect Clauses 301
VII. Infinitive—Substantive Clauses 306
  I. Infinitive 306
    Infinitive with Verbs 306
    Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs 308
    Subject of Infinitive 310
    Tenses of Infinitive 311
    Infinitive in Special Constructions 313
  II. Substantive Clauses 314

PAGE
VIII. Gerunds, Gerundives, Supines, and Participles 314
 I. Gerunds 314
 II. Gerundives 316
 III. Supines 317
 IV. Participles 318

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs 320
Conjunctions 321
Interjections 324

CHAPTER VII.

Rules of Syntax 324

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Arrangement of Words 333
Arrangement of Clauses 336

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity 338
II. Quantity in Final Syllables 339
III. Quantity in Increments 342
 Increments of Declension 342
 Increments of Conjugation 344
IV. Quantity of Derivative Endings 344
V. Quantity of Stem-Syllables 346

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject 349
 Feet 350
 Verses 351
 Figures of Prosody 353

PAGE
II. Varieties of Verse 354
I. Dactylic Hexameter 354
II. Other Dactylic Verses 358
III. Trochaic Verse 359
IV. Iambic Verse 360
V. Ionic Verse 361
VI. Logaoedic Verse 362
III. Versification of the Principal Latin Poets 364
Vergil, Juvenal, Ovid, Horace 364
Lyric Metres of Horace 364
Index to Lyric Metres of Horace 368
Catullus, Martial, Seneca, Plautus, Terence 368

APPENDIX.

I. Figures of Speech 370
II. Latin Language and Literature 374
III. Roman Calendar 376
IV. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures 378
V. Roman Names 380
Abbreviations 380
VI. Vowels before Two Consonants or a Double Consonant . . 381

Index of Verbs 383
General Index 390

TITLES OF WORKS CITED

IN THE FOOT-NOTES OF THIS GRAMMAR.

Acta Societatis Philologae Lipsiensis. Lipsiae, 1870–1881.

ALLEN, F. D. *Remnants of Early Latin.* Boston, 1880.

BOPP, F. *Vergleichende Grammatik.*[1] Berlin, 3d ed., 1870.

BRAMBACH, W. *Hülfsbüchlein für lateinische Rechtschreibung.*[2] Leipzig, 2d ed., 1876.

BÜCHELER, F. *Grundriss der lateinischen Declination.*[3] Leipzig, 1866.

CHRIST, W. *Metrik der Griechen und Römer.* Leipzig, 1874.

CORSSEN, W. *Aussprache, Vocalismus, und Betonung der lateinischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1868.

CORSSEN, W. *Kritische Beiträge.* Leipzig, 1863.

CURTIUS, G. *Zur Chronologie der indo-germanischen Sprachforschung.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1873.

CURTIUS, G. *Das Verbum der griechischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 1876.

DELBRÜCK, B. *Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis.* Berlin, 1867.

DELBRÜCK, B. *Der Gebrauch des Conjunctivs und Optativs im Sanskrit und Griechischen.*[4] Halle, 1871.

DRAEGER, A. *Historische Syntax der lateinischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 1878.

ELLIS, A. J. *Quantitative Pronunciation of Latin.* London, 1874.

FOERSTER, W. *Bestimmung der lateinischen Quantität aus dem Romanischen.* Rheinisches Museum, xxxiii., pp. 291–299. Frankfurt am Main.

HARTUNG, J. A. *Ueber die Casus, ihre Bildung und Bedeutung.* Erlangen, 1831.

HOFFMANN, E. *Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln.* Wien, 1873.

HOLZWEISSIG, FR. *Localistische Casustheorie.* Leipzig, 1877.

HÜBSCHMANN, H. *Zur Casuslehre.* München, 1875.

JOLLY, J. *Geschichte des Infinitivs im Indo-germanischen.* München, 1873.

KUHN, A. *Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung.*[5] Berlin, 1851–1881.

---

[1] The publication of this work in 1833 marked an era in philological studies.

[2] See also BRAMBACH, W. *Die Neugestaltung der lateinischen Orthographie.* Leipzig, 1868.

[3] An edition with modifications by J. Windekilde was published at Bonn, 1879.

[4] Two other valuable works by the same author are:

1. *Die Grundlagen der griechischen Syntax.* Halle, 1879.
2. *Einleitung in das Sprachstudium.* Leipzig, 1880. This last work forms the fourth volume in the series of Indo-European grammars now in course of publication.

[5] This periodical contains the latest views upon numerous questions connected with comparative philology and linguistic science.

Kühner, R. *Ausführliche Grammatik der lateinischen Sprache.* Hannover, 1879.

Lübbert, E. *Die Syntax von Quom.* Breslau, 1870.

Merguet, H. *Lateinische Formenbildung.* Berlin, 1870.

Meyer, G. *Griechische Grammatik.*[1] Leipzig, 1880.

Müller, L. *Orthographiae et Prosodiae Latinae Summarium.* Lipsiae, 1878.

Müller, L. *De Re Metrica Poetarum Latinorum libri VII.* Lipsiae, 1861.

Müller, Max. *The Science of Language.* London and New York, 2d ed., 1868.

Munro, H. A. J. *The Pronunciation of Latin.* Cambridge, 1874.

Nägelsbach, C. F. *Lateinische Stilistik.* Nürnberg, 2d ed., 1852.

Papillon, T. L. *A Manual of Comparative Philology.* Oxford, 2d ed., 1877.

Peile, J. *Greek and Latin Etymology.* London, 2d ed., 1872.

Penka, K. *Die Nominalflexion der indo-germanischen Sprachen.* Wien, 1878.

Priscianus, C. *Institutionum Grammaticarum libri XVIII.* Lipsiae, 1855.

Ramsay, W. *Latin Prosody.* London, 2d ed., 1859.

Ritschl, Fr. *Unsere heutige Aussprache des Latein.* Rheinisches Museum, xxxi., pp. 481–492.

Roby, H. J. *A Grammar of the Latin Language from Plautus to Suetonius.* London, 1874.

Rumpel, Th. *Die Casuslehre.* Halle, 1845.

Schleicher, Aug. *Compendium der vergleichenden Grammatik.* Weimar, 1866.

Schmidt, J. H. H. *Leitfaden in der Rhythmik und Metrik der classischen Sprachen.* Leipzig, 1869. A translation by Professor White has been published in Boston, 1878.

Schmitz, W. *Beiträge zur lateinischen Sprachkunde.* Leipzig, 1877.

Schöll, F. *Veterum Grammaticorum de Accentu Linguae Latinae Testimonia.* Acta Societatis Philologae Lipsiensis, vi., pp. 71–215.

Sievers, E. *Grundzüge der Lautphysiologie.*[1] Leipzig, 1876.

Spengel, A. *Plautus, Kritik, Prosodie, Metrik.* Göttingen, 1865.

Transactions of the American Philological Association. Hartford, 1869–1881.

Vanicek, A. *Griechisch-lateinisches etymologisches Wörterbuch.* Leipzig, 1877.

Whitney, W. D. *The Life and Growth of Language.* New York, 1875.

Wordsworth, J. *Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin.* Oxford, 1874.

---

[1] This work of Sievers forms the first volume and that of Meyer the third in the series of Indo-European grammars now in course of publication.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. **Latin Grammar** treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. **Orthography**, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. **Etymology**, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. **Syntax**, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. **Prosody**, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.[1]

---

[1] The Romans derived their alphabet from the Greek colony at Cumae. In its original form it contained twenty-one letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, X, Z. *C* was a modification of the Greek gamma, and *F* of the digamma. *Q* was the Greek koppa, which early disappeared from the Greek alphabet. *C* had the sound afterward denoted by *g*; *K*, the sound afterward denoted by *c*. *Z* early disappeared from the Latin alphabet, but was subsequently restored, though only in foreign words. Throughout the classical period only capital letters were used. On the *Alphabet*, see Whitney, pp. 59–70; Papillon, pp. 28–48; Wordsworth, pp. 5–10; Roby, I., pp. 21–62; Sievers, pp. 24–108; Corssen, I., pp. 1–346; Kühner, I., pp. 35–49.

1. *C* in the fourth century B. C. supplied the place both of *C* and of *G*.

2. *G*, introduced in the third century B. C., was formed from *C* by simply changing the lower part of that letter.

3. Even in the classical period the original form *C* was retained in abbreviations of proper names beginning with *G*. Thus *C.* stands for *Gāius*, *Cn.* for *Gnaeus*. See **649.**

4. *J*, *j*, modifications of *I*, *i*, introduced in the seventeenth century of our era to distinguish the consonant *I*, *i* from the vowel *I*, *i*, are rejected by many recent editors, but retained by others.[1]

5. The letters *u* and *v*, originally designated by the character *V*,[2] are now used in the best editions, the former as a vowel, the latter as a consonant.

6. In classical Latin, *k* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in foreign words, chiefly in those derived from the Greek.

3. Letters are divided according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance into two general classes, vowels and consonants,[3] and these classes are again divided into various subdivisions, as seen in the following

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

I. VOWELS.

1. OPEN VOWEL[4]			a		
2. MEDIAL VOWELS		e		o	
3. CLOSE VOWELS[5]	i		y		u

---

[1] Throughout the classical period, *I*, used both as a vowel and as a consonant, supplied the place of *I*, *i* and *J*, *j*. As practical convenience has, however, already sanctioned the use of *i*, *u*, and *v*, characters unknown to the ancient Romans, may it not also justify the use of *J*, *j* in educational works, especially as the Romans themselves attempted to find a suitable modification of *I* to designate this consonant?

[2] Originally *V*, used both as a vowel and as a consonant, supplied the place of *U*, *u* and *V*, *v*, but it was subsequently modified to *U*.

[3] If the vocal organs are sufficiently open to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound, a vowel is produced, otherwise a consonant; but the least open vowels are scarcely distinguishable from the most open consonants. Thus *i*, sounded fully according to the ancient pronunciation as *ee*, is a vowel; but, combined with a vowel in the same syllable, it becomes a consonant with the sound of *y*: *e'-ī* (*ā'-ee*, vowel), *ĕ'-jus* (*ā'-yụs*, consonant, almost identical in sound with *ā'-ee-ụs*).

[4] In pronouncing the open vowel *a* as in *father*, the vocal organs are fully open. By gradually contracting them at one point and another we produce in succession the medial vowels, the close vowels, the semivowels, the nasals, the aspirate, the fricatives, and finally the mutes, in pronouncing which the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete.

[5] *E* is a *medial* vowel between the open *a* and the close *i*, *o* a *medial* vowel between the open *a* and the close *u*; *i* is a *palatal* vowel, *u* a *labial*; *y* was introduced from the Greek. The vowel scale, here presented in the form of a triangle, may be represented as a line, with *a* in the middle, with *i* at the palatal extreme, and with *u* at the labial extreme:

i e a o u

II. CONSONANTS.

	Gutturals.	Dentals.	Labials.
1. Semivowels, *sonant*	**i** or **j** = *y*		**v** = *w*
2. Nasals, *sonant*	**n**[1]	**n**	**m**
3. Aspirate, *surd*	**h**		
4. Fricatives, comprising			
1. *Liquids*, *sonant*		**l, r**	
2. *Spirants*, *surd*		**s**	**f**
5. Mutes, comprising			
1. *Sonant Mutes*	**g**	**d**	**b**
2. *Surd Mutes*	**c, k, q**	**t**	**p**

Note 1.—Observe that the consonants are divided,

- I. According to the organs chiefly employed in their production, into
  - 1. Gutturals—*throat letters*, also called Palatals;
  - 2. Dentals—*teeth letters*, also called Linguals;
  - 3. Labials—*lip letters.*
- II. According to the manner in which they are uttered, into
  - 1. Sonants, or *voiced letters;*
  - 2. Surds, or *voiceless letters.*[2]

Note 2.—*X* = *cs*,[3] and *z* = *ds*, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant *s*.

4. Diphthongs are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

Note.—The most common diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, and *eu*. *Ei*, *oi*, and *ui* are rare.[4]

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.[5]

5. Vowels.—The vowel sounds are the following:

---

[1] With the sound of *n* in *concord*, *linger*. It occurs before gutturals: *congrĕssus*, meeting.

[2] The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant *b* and its corresponding surd *p* in such words as *bad*, *pad*. *B* is vocalized, *p* is not.

[3] *X* often represents the union of *g* and *s*, but in such cases *g* is probably first assimilated to *c*; see **30**, **33**, 1.

[4] Proper diphthongs were formed originally by the union of an open or medial vowel, *a*, *e*, or *o*, with a close vowel, *i* or *u*, as *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*. An improper diphthong was also formed by the union of the two close vowels, as *ui*. For the weakening of these original diphthongs, see **23**, note.

[5] In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman*, the *English*, and the *Continental Methods*. The researches of Corssen and others have revealed laws of phonetic change of great value in tracing the history of Latin words. Accordingly, whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted for actual use in the class-room, the pupil should sooner or later be made familiar with the leading features of the Roman Method, which is at least an approximation to the ancient pronunciation of the language.

LONG.	SHORT.
ā like *ä* in f**a**ther: *ā'-ris.*[1]	**a** like *a* in Cub**a**:[3] *a'-met.*
ē " *e* " pr**e**y:[2] *ē'-dī.*	**e** " *e* " n**e**t: *re'-get.*
ī " *ï* " mach**i**ne:[2] *ī'-rī.*	**i** " *i* " c**i**gar: *vi'-det.*
ō " *ō* " **o**ld: *ō'-rās.*	**o** " *o* " **o**bey: *mo'-net.*
ū " *ų̈* " r**u**le:[2] *ū'-nō.*	**u** " *u* " f**u**ll: *su'-mus.*

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,[4] *u* as in *sum*, *su'-mus.* But see **16**, note 2.

2. **Y**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *i* and *u*, similar to the French *u* and the German *ü*: *Nȳ'-sa.*

3. **I** preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet* (7): *A-chā'-ia* (Ā-kā'-yā).

4. **U**[5] in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwē), *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwă), *suā'-sit* (swā'-sit).

6. DIPHTHONGS.—In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae (for *ai*) like the English **ay** (yes): *mēn'-sae.*[6]
au like *ow* in **how**: *cau'-sa.*
oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in **coin**: *foe'-dus.*

1. **Ei** as in *veil*, **eu** with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi* = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein*,[7] *neu'-ter*, *proin.*[7]

7. CONSONANTS.—Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like *k* in king: *cē'-lēs* (kay-lace), *cī'-vī* (kē-wē).
g " *g* " get: *re'-gunt*, *re'-gis*, *ge'-nus.*

---

[1] The Latin vowels marked with the sign ¯ are *long in quantity*, i. e., in the duration of the sound (**16**); those not marked are *short in quantity*; see **16**, note 3.

[2] Or *ē* like *ā* in made, *ī* like *ē* in me, and *ū* like *oo* in moon.

[3] The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

[4] Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see **16**, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

[5] This is sometimes called the parasitic *u*, as having been developed in many instances by the preceding consonant, and as being dependent upon it. See Papillon, p. 50; Peile, p. 383; Corssen, I., pp. 69, 70, and 85.

[6] Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

[7] When pronounced as monosyllables in poetry (**608**, III.); otherwise as dissyllables: *de'-in*, *pro'-in.*

j like *y* in yet: *jū'-stum* (yoo-stum), *ja'-cet.*
s " *s* " son: *sa'-cer, so'-ror, A'-si-a.*
t " *t* " time: *ti'-mor, tō'-tus, ăc'-ti-ŏ.*
v " *w* " we: *va'-dum, vī'-ci, vi'-ti-um.*[1]

NOTE.—Before *s* and *t*, *b* has the sound of *p*: *urbs, sub'-ter*, pronounced *urps, sup'-ter.*[2] *Ch* has the sound of *k*: *cho'-rus* (ko'-rus).

8. SYLLABLES.—In dividing words into syllables,

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re, per-suā'-dē, mēn'-sae.*

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:[3] *pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, nō'-scit, si'-stis, clau'-stra, mēn'-sa, bĕl'-lum, tem'-plum, ĕmp'-tus.* But—

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es, ob-ī'-re.*

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.[4]

9. VOWELS.—Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.[5]

10. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:

Se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mi'-sy.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong:

De'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, ni'-hi-lum.[6]

---

[1] There is some uncertainty in regard to the sound of *v*. Corssen gives it at the beginning of a word the sound of the English *v*, in all other situations the sound of *w*.

[2] On *Assimilation in Sound* in this and similar cases, see p. 17, foot-note 1.

[3] By some grammarians any combination of consonants which can begin either a Latin or a Greek word is always joined to the following vowel, as *o'-mnis, i'-pse.* Roby, on the contrary, thinks that the Romans pronounced with each vowel as many of the following consonants as could be readily combined with it.

[4] Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they pronounce their own languages. Accordingly in England and in this country the English Method has in general prevailed, though of late the Roman pronunciation has gained favor in many quarters.

[5] These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them. Thus, before *r*, when *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'tus*, as in *quarter*.

[6] In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h*: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

3. In penultimate[1] syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid:

Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris, A'-thos, O'-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid:

Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.

1) **A** *unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in *America: men'-sa, a-cu'-tus, a-ma'-mus.*[2]

2) **I** and **y** *unaccented*, in any syllable except the first and last, generally have the short sound: *nob'-i-lis* (nob'-e-lis), *Am'-y-cus* (Am'-e-cus).

3) **I** preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel[3] with the sound of *y* in *yet: A-cha'-ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pom-pe'-ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *La-to'-ia* (La-to'-ya), *Har-py'-ia* (Har-py'-ya).

4) **U** has the short sound before *bl*, and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl: Pub-lic'-o-la, Ag-la'-o-phon, At'-las.*

5) **U**[4] in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w: qui* (kwi), *qua; lin'-gua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis; sua'-de-o* (swa'-de-o).

6) COMPOUND WORDS.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the *short* sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est.* But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the *long* sound before a consonant (**11**, 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam, hos'-ce. E'-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.[5]

11. SHORT SOUNDS.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant:

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'gros.*

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (**10**, 3 and 4):

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.

---

[1] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

[2] Some give the same sound to *a final* in monosyllables: *da*, *qua;* while others give it the *long* sound according to **10**, 1.

[3] Sometimes written *j*.

[4] This is sometimes called the parasitic *u*, as having been developed in many instances by the preceding consonant and as being dependent upon it. See Papillon, p. 50; Peile, p. 383; Corssen, I., pp. 69, 70, and 85.

[5] *Etiam* is compounded of *et* and *jam; quoniam*, of *quom* = *quum*, *cum*, and *jam*.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants:

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But—

1) **A**, **e**, or **o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e*, *i*, or *y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas.*

3) Compounds; see **10**, 6).

12. Diphthongs.—Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

Ae like *e: Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus.*[1]
Oe like *e: Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus.*[1]
Au as in author: *au'-rum.*
Eu as in neuter: *neu'-ter.*

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height*, *coin: hei*, *proin;* see Synaeresis, **608**, III.

2. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic.*

13. Consonants.—The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus—

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi; ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.* But

1. *C* has the sound of *sh*—

1) Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us);

2) Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-y-on).

2. *Ch* is hard like *k: cho'-rus* (ko'-rus), *Chi'-os* (Ki'-os).

3. *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger.*

II. **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son*, *time*, *expect: sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But—

1. *S*, *T*, and *X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel—*s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh: Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). But

1) *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x: Os'-ti-a, At'-ti-us, mix'-ti-o;* (2) in old infinitives in *ier: flec'-ti-er;* (3) generally in proper names in *tion* (*tyon*): *Phi-lis'-ti-on, Am-phic'-ty-on.*

---

[1] The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to **10**, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-a-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-i-pus* (Ed'-i-pus), according to **11**, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

2. *S* is pronounced like *z*—

1) At the end of a word, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*;

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser, miserable, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

14. SYLLABLES.—In dividing words into syllables—

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (**10–12**): *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*; *gen'-e-ri*, *dom'-i-nus*; *bel'-lum*, *pat'-ri-bus*; *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*; *rex'-i*, *anx'-i-us*; *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.[1]

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.[2]

15. For the Continental Method, as adopted in this country, take—

1. The Roman pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs; see **5** and **6**.
2. The English pronunciation of the consonants;[3] see **13**.
3. The Roman division of words into syllables; see **8**.

QUANTITY.

16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.[4]

I. LONG.—A syllable is long in quantity—

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec*, *rēs*.[5]

---

[1] Observe that compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant (**10**, 4, 6), as *post'-quam*; that in other cases, after a vowel with a long sound, consonants are joined to the following syllable, as in the first four examples, *pa'-ter*, etc., and that, after a vowel with a short sound, a single consonant is joined to such vowel, as in *gen'-e-ri* and *dom'-i-nus*; that two consonants are separated, as in *bel'-lum*, etc.; that of three or four consonants, the last, or, if a mute and a liquid, the last two, are joined to the following syllable, as in *emp'-tus*, etc., but that the double consonant *x* is joined to the preceding vowel, as in *rex'-i*, *anx'-i-us*.

[2] Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

[3] Though the pronunciation of the consonants varies somewhat in different institutions.

[4] Common—i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

[5] See note 3 below.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, or *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid:[1] *dux*, *rēx*, *sunt*.[2]

II. Short.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h*: *di'-ēs*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.

III. Common.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute and a liquid: *a'-grī*.

Note 1.—Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.[3]

Note 2.—Vowels are long before *ns* and *nf*, generally also before *gn* and *j*: *cōn'-sul*, *īn-fē'-līx*, *rēg'-num*, *hū'-jus*.[4]

Note 3.—The signs ¯, ˘̄ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short: *a-mā'-bō̆*. All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.[5]

Note 4.—Diphthongs are always long.

ACCENTUATION.[6]

17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *mēn'-sa*.

Note.—Monosyllables are also accented.

18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on

---

[1] That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

[2] Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx*, but short in *dux* and *sunt*.

[3] Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in *rēx*, *dux*, *sunt*; see foot-note 4, p. 4. But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

[4] See Schmitz, pp. 3–33, also p. 56; Kühner, I., p. 137; also H. A. J. Munro's pamphlet on the Pronunciation of Latin, pp. 24–26.

[5] See p. 4, foot-note 4. In many works short vowels are marked with the sign ˘: *rĕgĭs*.

[6] With the ancient Romans accent probably related not to *force* or *stress of voice*, as with us, but to *musical pitch*. It was also distinguished as *acute* or *circumflex*. Thus all monosyllables and all words in which the vowel of the penult is long and the final syllable short were said to have the circumflex accent, while all other accented words were said to have the acute. The distinction is of no practical value in pronunciation. On the general subject of Accent, see Ellis, pp. 8-10; Roby, I., pp. 98-100; Kühner, I., p. 148; Corssen, II., pp. 806–808.

the *Penult*,[1] if that is long in quantity,[2] otherwise on the *Antepenult*:[1] *ho-nō'-ris, cōn'-su-lis.*

1. Certain words which have lost a syllable retain the accent of the full form. Thus—

1) Genitives in *ī* for *iī* and vocatives in *ī* for *ie: in-ge'-nī* for *in-ge'-ni-ī*, *Mer-cu'-rī* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e.*

2) Certain words which have lost a final *e: il-līc'* for *il-lī'-ce*, *il-lāc'* for *il-lā'-ce*, *is-tīc'* for *is-tī'-ce*, etc.; *bo-nān'* for *bo-nā'-ne*, *il-lān'* for *il-lā'-ne*, *tan-tōn'* for *tan-tō'-ne*, *au-dīn'* for *au-dīs'-ne*, *ē-dūc'* for *ē-dū'-ce.*[3]

Note 1.—Prepositions standing before their cases are treated as *Proclitics*—i. e., are so closely united in pronunciation with the following word as to have no accent of their own: *sub jū'-di-ce*, *in-ter rē'-gēs.*

Note 2.—Penults *common* in quantity take the accent when used as *long.*

2. Compounds are accented like simple words; but—

1) The enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, *ce*, *met*, etc., throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *ho'-mi-ne'-que*,[4] *mēn-sa'-que*,[5] *e-go'-met.*

2) *Faciŏ*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *ca-le-fa'-cit.*[4]

3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt*, *mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus*,[6] *īn-stau'-rā-vē'-runt.*

Note.—A few long words admit two secondary or subordinate accents: *ho'-nō-rif'-ĭ cen-tis'-si-mus.*[6]

PHONETIC CHANGES.

19. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with phonetic laws.[7]

---

[1] The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

[2] Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*; see **16**, I., 2.

[3] According to Priscian, certain contracted words, as *ves-trās'* for *ves-trā'-tis*, or with the circumflex accent, *ves-trâs* for *ves-trâ-tis*, *Sam-nīs* for *Sam-nī-tis*, also retained the accent of the full form; but it is not deemed advisable to multiply exceptions in a school grammar. See Priscian, IV., 22.

[4] By the English method, *hom'-i-ne'-que*, *cal'-e-fa'-cit.*

[5] A word accented upon the penult thus loses its own accent before an enclitic: *mēn'-sa*, *mēn-sa'-que.*

[6] By the English method, *mon'-u-ē'-runt*, *mon'-u-e-rā'-mus*, *hon'-ō-rif'-i-cen-tis'-si-mus.*

[7] In the history of the ancient languages of the Indo-European family, to which the Latin, Greek, and English alike belong, the general direction of phonetic change has been from the extremes of the alphabetic scale—i. e., from the open *a* at one extreme and

I. CHANGES IN VOWELS.

20. Vowels are often lengthened:

1. In compensation for the dropping of consonants:

Servoms,[1] *servōs*, slaves; *rēgems*, *rēgēs*, kings; *posnō*, *pōnō*, I place; *magior*,[1] *māior* or *mājor*, greater.

2. In the inflection of verbs:

Legō, *lēgī*,[2] I read, I have read; *edō*, *ēdī*, I eat, I have eaten; *fugiō*, *fūgī*, I flee, I have fled.

NOTE 1.—Sometimes vowels are changed, as well as lengthened: *agō*, *ēgī*, I drive, I have driven; *faciō*, *fēcī*, I make, I have made; see **255**, II.

NOTE 2.—Different forms from the same stem or root sometimes show a variable vowel: *ducis*, *dūcis*, of a leader, you lead; *regis*, *rēgis*, you rule, of a king; *tegō*, *toga*, I cover, a covering, the toga.[3] See also **22**, 1.

21. Vowels are often shortened:[4]

1. Regularly in final syllables before *m* and *t:*

Erām, *eram*,[5] I was; *moneām*, *moneam*, let me advise; *audiām*, *audiam*, let me hear; *erāt*, *erat*, he was; *amāt*, *amat*, he loves; *monēt*, *monet*, he advises; *sīt*, *sit*, may he be; *audīt*, *audit*, he hears.

2. Often in other final syllables. Thus—

1) Final ā[6] is shortened (1) in the Plural of Neuter nouns and adjectives,[6] and (2) in the Nominative and Vocative Singular of Feminine[7] nouns and adjectives of the first declension:

---

from the close mutes at the other—toward the middle of the scale, where the vowels and consonants meet; see **3**. Accordingly, in Latin words we shall not unfrequently find *e* or *o*, or even *i* or *u*, occupying the place of a primitive *a;* and we shall sometimes find a *liquid* or a *fricative* occupying the place of a *primitive mute*. See Whitney, p. 68; Papillon, p. 49; Peile, pp. 199 and 312.

[1] *O* short in *servoms* is lengthened in *servōs* to compensate for the loss of *m*, and *a* short in *magior* is lengthened in *māior*, *mājor*, to compensate for the loss of *g*.

[2] The short vowel of the present tense is here lengthened in the perfect; see **255**, II.

[3] In *ducis*, *dūcis*, and in *regis*, *rēgis*, the variation is simply in the *quantity* of the vowel, but in *tegō*, *toga*, the vowel itself is changed, appearing as *e* in *tegō* and *o* in *toga*. Sometimes a single vowel appears in one form while a diphthong appears in another: *fides*, faith, *foedus*, treaty.

[4] See Corssen, II., p. 486 *seq.*

[5] In all these examples, the form with the long vowel in the final syllable is the earlier form, and, in general, is found only in inscriptions and in the early poets, as Plautus, Ennius, etc.; while the form with the short vowel belongs to the classical period.

[6] Corssen regards numerals in *-gintā*, as *trī-gintā*, *quadrā-gintā*, etc., as Plural Neuters, and *ā* as the original ending. He recognizes also the Neuter Plural of the pronoun with *ā* in *ant-eā*, *post-eā*, *inter-eā*, *praeter-eā*, *ante-hā-c*, *praeter-hā-c*. See Corssen, II., p. 455. For a different explanation, see **304**, IV., N. 2.

[7] In masculine nouns of the first declension *a* final was short in the Nominative even in early Latin: *scrība*, a scribe. But most stems in *a* weakened *a* to *o*, and thus passed into the second declension.

Templā, *templa*, temples; *generā*, *genera*, kinds; *graviā*, *gravia*, heavy; *mūsā*, *mūsa*, muse; *bonā*, *bona*, good.

2) In **ār**, **ōr**, and **āl** final, *ā* and *ō* are regularly shortened:

Regār, *regar*, let me be ruled; *audiār*, *audiar*, let me be heard; *audiōr*, *audior*, I am heard; *honōr*, *honor*, honor; *ōrātōr*, *ōrātor*, orator; *moneōr*, *moneor*, I am advised; *animāle*, *animāl* (27), *animal*, an animal.

3) Final **ē**, **ī**, and **ō** are sometimes shortened:

Benē, *bene*, well; *nūbē*, *nūbe*, with a cloud; *nisī*, *nisi*, unless; *ibī*, *ibi*, there; *leō*, *leŏ*, a lion; *egō*, *ego*, I.

22. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., are often changed to weaker vowels.[1]

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows:

a, **o**, **u**, **e**, **i**.[2]

Thus **a** is changed to **o** . . . **u** . . . **e** . . . **i**.
o to **u** . . . **e** . . . **i**.
u to **e** . . . **i**.
e to **i**.

Note.—The change from *a* through *o* to *u* is usually arrested at *u*, while *a* is often changed directly through *e* to *i* without passing through *o* or *u*.[3]

1. Vowels are often weakened in consequence of the lengthening of words by inflection, composition, etc.:

Carmen,[4] *carmenis*, *carminis*, a song, of a song; *frūctus*, *frūctubus*, *frūctibus*, fruit, with fruits; *faciō*, *cōn-faciō*, *cōn-ficiō*, I make, I accomplish; *factus*, *īn-factus*, *īn-fectus*, made, not made; *damnō*, *con-damnō*, *condemnō*, I doom, I condemn; *teneō*, *con-teneō*, *con-tineō*, I hold, I contain; *cadō*, *ca-cad-ī*, *ce-cid-ī*, I fall, I have fallen; *tuba*, *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*, a flute, a flute-player.

---

[1] See Corssen, II., pp. 1–436. The process by which vowels are shortened (21), weakened, or dropped (27), and by which diphthongs are weakened to single vowels, and consonants assimilated, or otherwise changed, is generally known as Phonetic Decay. It may result from indistinct articulation, or from an effort to secure ease of utterance. For a difficult sound, or combination of sounds, it substitutes one which requires less physical effort.

[2] But *u*, *e*, and *i* differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

[3] That is, the open *a* is changed either to the close *u* through the medial *o*, as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close *i* through the medial *e*, as seen on the left side:

Open vowel			*a*		
Medial vowels		*e*		*o*	
Close vowels	*i*				*u*

[4] The syllable *men* was originally *man*. The original *a* has been weakened to *e* in *carmen* and to *i* in *carmin-is*.

2. Vowels are often weakened without any such special cause:[1]

Puerom, *puerum*, a boy; *fīlios*, *fīlius*, son; *sont*, *sunt*, they are; *regont*, *regunt*, they rule; *decumus*, *decimus*, tenth; *māxumus*, *māximus*, greatest; *lēgitumus*, *lēgitimus*, lawful; *aestumŏ*, *aestimŏ*, I estimate.

23. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted:

1. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mēnsā-ī*, *mēnsai*, *mēnsae*, tables; see 4.

2. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus **e** and **i** often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o:*

Amāverat, *amaerat*, *amārat*, he had loved; *amāvisse*, *amaisse*, *amāsse*, to have loved; *flēvērunt*, *fleērunt*, *flērunt*, they have wept; *nōvisse*, *noisse*, *nōsse*, to know; *servoī*, *servō*, for the slave.

NOTE.—The proper diphthongs of early Latin were changed or weakened as follows:

ai[2] generally into **ae**; sometimes into **ē** or **ī**.
oi generally into **oe**; sometimes into **ū** or **ī**.
ei generally into **ī**; sometimes unchanged.
au sometimes into **ō** or **ū**; generally unchanged.
eu generally into **ū**; rarely unchanged.
ou regularly into **ū**.

Aidīlis, *aedīlis*, an aedile; *Rōmai*, *Rōmae*, at Rome; *amaimus*, *amēmus*, let us love; *in-caedit*, *in-cīdit*, he cuts into; *mēnsais*, *mēnsīs*, with tables; *foidus*, *foedus*, treaty; *coira*, *coera*, *cūra*, care; *loidos*, *loedus*, *lūdus*,[3] play; *puerois*, *puerīs*, for the boys; *ceivis*, *cīvis*, citizen; *lautus*, *lōtus*,[4] elegant; *ex-claudŏ*, *ex-clūdŏ*, I shut out; *doucit*, *dūcit*, he leads; *jous*, *jūs*,[5] right.

24. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus—

---

[1] That is, by the ordinary process of phonetic decay, a process which in many words has changed an original *a* of the parent language to *e* or *o* in Latin, and in some words to *i* or *u*. Corssen cites upward of four hundred Latin words in which he supposes a primitive *a* to have been weakened to *o*, *e*, or *i*. Even the long vowels are sometimes weakened. Compare the following forms, in which the Sanskrit retains the vowel of the parent language.

SANSKRIT.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.	SANSKRIT.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
sapta,	septem,	*seven.*	padas,	pedēs,	*feet.*
nava,	novem,	*nine.*	navas,	novus,	*new.*
daça,	decem,	*ten.*	vāk,	vōx,	*voice.*
mātā,	māter,	*mother.*	vācas,	vōcis,	*of a voice.*
sadas,	sēdēs,	*seat.*	vācam,	vōcem,	*voice.*

[2] The forms *ai*, *oi*, *ei*, *au*, *eu*, and *ou* are all found in early Latin, as in inscriptions; but in the classical period *ai* had been already changed to *ae*, *oi* to *oe*, and *ou* to *ū*.

[3] *Loidos*, the earliest form, became *loedus* by weakening *oi* to *oe*, and *o* to *u* (22, 2); then *loedus* became *lūdus* by weakening *oe* to *ū*.

[4] *Lautus*, the earlier, is also the more approved form.

[5] As *eu* and *ou* were both weakened to *ū*, it is not easy to give trustworthy examples of the weakening of *eu* to *ū*.

1. **E** is the favorite vowel before *r*, *x*, or two or more consonants:

Cinisis, *cineris*[1] (31), of ashes; *jūdix*, *jūdex*, judge; *mīlitis*, *mīlets*, *mīles*,[2] of a soldier, a soldier.

Note.—*E* final is also a favorite vowel: *servo*, *serve*, O slave; *monēris*, *monēri*, *monēre*,[3] you are advised; *mari*, *mare*, sea.

2. **I** is the favorite vowel before *n*, *s*, and *t:*

Homonis, *hominis*, of a man; *pulver* or *pulvis*,[4] dust; *salūtes*, *salūtis*, of safety; *vērotās*, *vēritās*, truth; *genetor*, *genitor*, father.

3. **U** is the favorite vowel before *l* and *m*, especially when followed by another consonant:

Epistola, *epistula*, letter; *volt*, *vult*, he wishes; *facilitās*, *faciltās* (27), *facultās*, faculty; *monēmentum*, *monumentum*, monument; *colomna*, *columna*, column.

25. Assimilation.—A vowel is often assimilated by a following vowel. Thus—

1. A vowel before another vowel is often partially[5] assimilated. *I* is thus changed to *e* before *a*, *o*, or *u:* *ia*, *ea*, this; *iō*, *eō*, I go; *iunt*, *eunt*, they go; *iadem*, *eadem*, same; *dīvus*, *dīus* (36, 4), *deus*, god.

Note.—When the first vowel is thus adapted to the second, the assimilation is said to be *regressive*, but sometimes the second vowel is adapted to the first, and then the assimilation is *progressive*. Thus the ending *iā* (21, 2), instead of becoming *ea* as above, may become *iē:* *lūxuriā* (perhaps for *lūxuriās*), *lūxuriēs*, luxury; *māteriā*, *māteriēs*,[6] material.

2. A vowel may be completely assimilated by the vowel of the following syllable from which it is separated by a consonant. Thus—

1) *E* is assimilated to *i:* *mehī*, *mihī*, for me; *tebī*, *tibī*, for you; *sebī*, *sibī*, for himself; *nehil*, *nihil*, nothing.
2) *U* is assimilated to *i:* *cōnsulium*, *cōnsilium*, counsel; *exsulium*, *exsilium*, exile.
3) Other vowels are sometimes assimilated; *o* to *e:* *bonē*, *benē*, *bene* (21, 2), well; *e* to *u:* *tegurium*, *tugurium*, hut; *ē* to *ō:* *sēcors*, *sōcors*, stupid.

26. Dissimilation.—A vowel is often changed by dissimilation,

---

[1] *Cinisis*, from *cinis*, becomes *cineris* by changing *s* to *r* between two vowels, making *ciniris* (31, 1), and by then changing *i* to *e* before *r*.

[2] Observe that the vowel which appears as *i* in *mīlitis* before *t*, takes the form of *e* in *mīlets* before *ts*, as also in *mīles* for *mīlets*.

[3] *Monēris* becomes *monēre* by dropping *s* (36, 5), and changing final *i* to *e*.

[4] Observe that the form in *r* has *e*, while that in *s* has *i*.

[5] That is, it is made like it, adapted to it, but does not become identical with it. Thus *i* before *a* may be changed to *e*, but not to *a*.

[6] Thus from nouns in *iā* of the first declension were developed nearly all nouns in *iēs* of the fifth.

i. e., by being made unlike the following vowel: *ĭī*, *eī*, these; *ĭīs*, *eīs*, for these.[1]

Note.—The combination *ii* is sometimes avoided by the use of *e* in place of the second *i*: *pietās* instead of *piitās*, piety; *societās*, society; *varietās*, variety.

27. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning:

Tempulum, *templum*, temple; *vinculum*, *vinclum*, band; *benigenus*, *benīgnus*,[2] benignant; *amaŏ*, *amō*, I love; *temploa*, *templa*, temples; *animāle*, *animal*,[3] an animal; *sī-ne*, *sīn*, if not; *dīce*, *dīc*, say; *esum*, *sum*, I am; *esumus*, *sumus*, we are.

Note.—After a word ending in a vowel or in *m*, *est*, he is, often drops the initial *e*, and becomes attached to the preceding word: *rēs optuma est*, *rēs optumast*, the thing is best; *optumum est*, *optumumst*, it is best; *domī est*, *domīst*, he is at home. In the same way *es*, thou art, is sometimes attached to the preceding word, when that word ends in a vowel: *homŏ es*, *homŏs*, you are a man. For the loss of a final *s* from the preceding word, see **36**, 5, 1), note.

II. Interchange of Vowels and Consonants.

28. The vowel *i* and the consonant *i*—also written *j*—are sometimes interchanged:

Altior,[4] higher; *magior*, *māior* or *mājor*, greater; *ipsīus*, of himself; *ĕius* or *ĕjus*, of him.

29. The vowel *u* and the consonant *u*—generally written *v*—are often interchanged:

Col-uī,[5] I have cultivated; *vocā-vī*,[5] I have called; *nāvita*, *nāvta*, *nauta*, sailor; *volvtus*, *volūtus*, rolled; *lăvtus*, *lautus* or *lōtus*,[6] washed; *movtus*, *moutus*, *mōtus*,[6] moved.

Note.—The Liquids and Nasals are sometimes so fully vocalized as to develop vowels before them.[1] Thus *agr* (for *agrus*) becomes *ager*,[2] field; *ācr* (for *ācris*), *ācer*,[2] sharp; *regm*, *regem*, king; *sm* (for *esm*), *sum*, I am; *snt* (for *esnt*), *sunt*, they are.

---

[1] The combination *uu* was also avoided in early Latin either by retaining the second vowel in the form of *o*, instead of weakening it to *u*, or by changing *qu* to *c*: *equos*, afterward *equus*, a horse; *quom*, or *cum*, afterward, though not properly in classical times, *quum*, when. Observe that when *o* becomes *u*, a preceding *qu* becomes *c*: *quom*, *cum*; *loquŏtŭs*, *locūtus*, having spoken. See Brambach, p. 5.

[2] See **16**, note 2.

[3] Observe that after *e* is dropped, *ā* is shortened in the final syllable: *animāl*, *animal*; see **21**, 2.

[4] In the comparative ending *ior*, as seen in *altior*, *i* is a vowel, but in the same ending, as seen in *māior*, *major*, it is a consonant, and in this grammar is generally written *j*. *I* thus becomes *j* between two vowels; see **2**, 4, foot-note. So in the genitive ending *ius*, *i* is sometimes a vowel and sometimes a consonant.

[5] The ending which appears as *uī* in *col-uī* becomes *vī* in *vocā-vī*. *U* becomes *v* between two vowels.

[6] If a vowel precedes the *v* thus changed to *u*, a contraction takes place—*a-u* becoming *au*, rarely *ō*, *o-u* becoming *ō*, and *u-u* becoming *ū*: *lavtus*, *lautus*, *lōtus*, washed; *movtus*, *moutus*, *mōtus*, moved; *juvtus*, *juutus*, *jūtus*, assisted.

III. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

30. A Guttural—**c**, **g**,[3] **q** (**qu**), or **h**[4]—before **s** generally unites with it and forms **x**:

Ducs, *dux*, leader; *pācs*, *pāx*, peace; *rēgs*, *rēcs*,[5] *rēx*, king; *lēgs*, *lēcs*, *lēx*, law; *coqusī*, *cocsī*,[5] *coxī*, I have cooked; *trahsī*, *tracsī*, *traxī*, I have drawn.

NOTE 1.—*V* for *gv* in *vīvō*, I live, is treated as a guttural: *vīvsī*, *vīcsī*, *vīxī*, I have lived.

NOTE 2.—For the *Dropping of the Guttural* before *s*, see **36**, 3.

31. **S** is often changed to **r**:

1. Generally so when it stands between two vowels: *flōsēs*, *flōrēs*, flowers; *jūsa*, *jūra*, rights; *mēnsāsum*, *mēnsārum*, of tables; *agrōsum*, *agrōrum*, of fields; *esam*, *eram*, I was; *esāmus*, *erāmus*, we were; *fuēsunt*, *fuērunt*, they have been; *fuesit*, *fuerit*, he will have been; *amāset*, *amāret*, he would love; *regisis*, *regeris*,[6] you are ruled.

2. Often at the end of words: *honōs*, *honor*, honor; *rōbos*, *rōbus*, *rōbur*, strength; *puesus*, *puerus*, *puer*,[7] boy; *regituse*, *regiture*, *regitur*,[7] he is ruled.[8]

3. Sometimes before *m*, *n*, or *v*: *casmen*, *carmen*, song; *vetesnus*, *veternus*, old; *hodiesnus*, *hodiernus*, of this day; *Minesva*, *Minerva*, the goddess Minerva.

32. **D** is sometimes changed to **l**:

Dacrima, *lacrima*, tear; *dingua*, *lingua*, language; *odēre*, *olēre*, to emit an odor.

NOTE 1.—*D* final sometimes stands in the place of an original *t*: *id*,[9] this; *istud*, that; *illud*, that; *quod*, *quid*, what, which?

NOTE 2.—*Dv* at the beginning of a word (1) sometimes becomes *b*: *dvĕllum*, *bĕllum*, war; *dvis*, *bis*, twice; (2) sometimes drops *d*: *dvīgintī*, *vīgintī*, twenty; and (3) sometimes drops *v*: *dvis*, *dis*, inseparable particle (**308**), in two, asunder.

33. PARTIAL ASSIMILATION.—A consonant is often partially[10] assimilated by a following consonant. Thus—

---

[1] This occurs between consonants and at the end of words after consonants.

[2] The ending *us* or *is* is dropped (**36**, 5, 2), note), and *r final* vocalized to *er*; *m* becomes *em* in *regem*, and *um* in *sum*; *n* becomes *un* in *sunt*.

[3] Sometimes *gu*: *exstingusī*, *exstincsī*, *exstinxī*, I have extinguished.

[4] For an original *gh*.

[5] The process seems to be that the guttural before *s* first becomes *c*, and then unites with *s* and forms *x*: thus in *coqusī*, *qu* becomes *c*.

[6] Observe that *i* before *s* becomes *e* before *r*; see **24**.

[7] Here *s* was probably changed to *r* before the final vowel was dropped.

[8] Literally, *he rules himself*.

[9] For *it*, *istut*, etc. *D* stands for *t* also in the old Ablative in *d*: *praedād* for *praedāt*, afterward *praedā*, with booty; *magistrātūd* for *magistrātūt*, *magistrātū*, from the magistracy.

[10] That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

1. Before the surd **s** or **t**, a sonant **b** or **g** is generally changed to its corresponding surd, **p**[1] or **c**:

Scrībsī, *scrīpsī*, I have written; *scrībtus*, *scrīptus*, written; *rēgsī*, *rēcsī*, *rēxī* (**30**), I have ruled; *rēgtus*, *rēctus*, ruled. See also **35**, 3, note.

Note.—*Qu*, *h* for *gh*, and *v* for *gv* are also changed to *c* before *s* and *t*: *coqusit*,[2] *cocsit*, *coxit*, he has cooked; *coqutus*, *coctus*, cooked; *trahsit*,[3] *tracsit*,[3] *traxit*, he has drawn; *trahtus*, *tractus*, drawn; *vīvsit*,[4] *vīcsit*, *vīxit*, he has lived; *vīvtūrus*, *vīctūrus*, about to live.

2. Before a sonant **l**, **m**, **n**, or **r**, a surd **c**, **p**, or **t** is generally changed to its corresponding sonant, **g**, **b**, or **d**:

Neclegō, *neglegō*, I neglect; *sec-mentum*, *segmentum*, a cutting; *populicus*,[5] *pūplicus*, *pūblicus*,[6] public; *quatra*,[7] *quadra*, a square; *quatrāgintā*, *quadrāgintā*, forty.

3. Before a Labial **p** or **b**, **n** is generally changed to **m**:[8]

Inperō, *imperō*, I command; *inperātor*, *imperātor*, commander; *inbēllis*, *imbēllis*, unwarlike.

Note.—Before *n*, a Labial *p* or *b* is changed to *m* in a few words: *sopnus*, *somnus*, sleep; *Sabnium*, *Samnium*, the country of the Samnites.

4. **M** is changed to **n**—

1) Regularly before a *Dental Mute:*

Eumdem, *eundem*, the same; *eōrumdem*, *eōrundem*, of the same; *quemdam*, *quendam*, a certain one; *tamtus*, *tantus*, so great; *quamtus*, *quantus*, how great, as great.

2) Often before a *Guttural Mute:*

Hum-ce, *hunc*, this; *num-ce*, *nunc*,[9] now; *prīm-ceps*, *prīnceps*, first; *nūmquam* or *nūnquam*,[9] never; *quamquam* or *quanquam*, although.

---

[1] But *b* is generally retained (1) before *s* in nouns in *bs*: *urbs*, not *urps*, city, and in *abs*, from; and (2) before *s* and *t* in *ob*, on account of, and *sub*, under, in compounds and derivatives: *ob-servāns*, observant; *ob-tūsus*, obtuse; *sub-scrībō*, I subscribe; *sub-ter*, under. In these cases, however, *b* takes the sound of *p*, so that assimilation takes place in *pronunciation*, though not in *writing*. It is probable also that in some other consonants assimilation was observed even when omitted in writing: *inprīmīs* and *imprīmīs*, both pronounced *imprīmīs*. See Roby, I., p. lvii.; Munro, p. 10.

[2] *Qu*, also written *qv*, is not a syllable; nor is *u* or *v* in this combination either a vowel or a consonant, but simply a parasitic sound developed by *q*, which is never found without it.

[3] For *traghsit*; *h* is dropped, and *g* assimilated to *c*.

[4] For *gvīgvsit*; the first *g* and the second *v* are dropped: *vīgsit*, *vīcsit*, *vīxit*.

[5] From *populus*, the people.

[6] *P* is changed to *b*, and *o* is weakened to *u*; see **22**.

[7] From *quattuor*, four.

[8] That is, the dental *n* becomes the labial *m*.

[9] "Or" placed between two forms denotes that both are in good use: *nūmquam* or *nūnquam*. In other cases the last is the only approved form: *nunc*, *prīnceps*.

Note 1.—Before the ending *-que*, *m* is generally retained:[1] *quicumque*, whoever; *quemque*, every one; *namque*, for indeed.

Note 2.—*Quom-iam* or *quom-jam* becomes *quoniam*, since.

34. A consonant is often completely assimilated by a following consonant. Thus—

1. **T** or **d** is often assimilated before **n** or **s**:

Petna, *penna*, feather; *mercēdnārius*, *mercēnnārius*, mercenary; *concutsit*, *concussit*, he has shaken.

Note.—*M* before *s* is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes develops *p*: *premsit*, *pressit*, he has pressed; *sūmsit*, *sūmpsit*, he has taken.

2. **D**, **n**, or **r** is often assimilated before **l**:

Sedula, *sedla* (27), *sella*, seat; *ūnulus*, *ūnlus* (27), *ūllus*, any; *puerula*, *puerla*, *puella*, girl.

3. **B**, **g**, or **n** is often assimilated before **m**:

Sub-moveō or *sum-moveō*, I remove; *supmus*, *summus*, highest; *flagma*, *flamma*, flame; *inmōtus* or *immōtus*, unmoved.

Note.—For Assimilation in *Prepositions in Composition*, see **344**, 5.

35. Dissimilation.—The meeting of consonants too closely related and the recurrence of the same consonant in successive syllables are sometimes avoided by changing one of the consonants. Thus—

1. *Caeluleus* becomes *caeruleus*, azure; *medī-diēs*, *merīdiēs*, midday.

2. Certain suffixes of derivation have two forms, one with *r* to be used after *l*, and one with *l* to be used after *r*:[2] *āris*, *ālis*; *burum*, *brum*,[3] *bulum*;[3] *curum*, *crum*, *culum*:

Populāris,[4] popular; *rēgālis*,[4] kingly; *dēlūbrum*, shrine; *tribulum*, threshing-sledge; *sepulcrum*, sepulchre; *perīculum*, peril.

3. A Dental Mute—**d** or **t**—may unite with a following **t** in two ways:

1) **Dt** or **tt** may become **st**:[5]

Edt, *ēst*, he eats; *rōdtrum*, *rōstrum*, a beak; *equettris*, *equestris*, equestrian.

2) **Dt** or **tt** may become **ss** or **s**:[6]

Fodtus, *fōssus*, dug; *vidtus*, *vīsus*, seen; *plaudtus*, *plausus*, praised; *mettus*, *messus*, reaped; *verttus*, *versus*, turned.

---

[1] But probably with the *sound* of *n*; see p. 17, foot-note 1.

[2] This distinction is, however, not always observed. The form with *l*, probably weakened from that with *r*, became the favorite form, and was generally used if *l* did not precede.

[3] From *burum* are formed (1) *brum* by dropping *u*, and (2) *bulum* by weakening *r* into *l*. In the same way *crum* and *culum* are formed from *curum*.

[4] In *populāris*, *āris* is used because *l* precedes; but in *rēgālis*, *ālis* is used because *r* precedes. When neither *l* nor *r* precedes, the weakened form *ālis* is used.

[5] Here *d* or *t* is changed to *s* by Dissimilation.

[6] In regard to the exact process by which *dt* or *tt* becomes *ss* or *s*, there is a diversity of opinion among philologians. See Papillon, p. 75; Roby, p. 62; Corssen, I., p. 208.

Note.—*Lgt* may become *ls;*[1] *rgt, rs;*[1] *llt, ls;*[2] and *rrt, rs:*[2] *mulgtus, mulsus*, milked; *spargtus, sparsus*, scattered; *falltus, falsus*, false; *verrtus, versus*, swept.

36. Omission.—Consonants are sometimes dropped. Thus—

1. Some words which originally began with two consonants have dropped the first:

Clāmentum,[3] *lāmentum*, lamentation; *gnātus, nātus*, born; *gnōtus*,[4] *nōtus*, known; *dvīgintī, vīgintī*, twenty; *sfallit, fallit*, he deceives.

2. A Dental Mute—**d** or **t**—before **s** is generally dropped:[5]

Lapids, lapis, stone; *aetāts, aetās*, age; *mīlets, mīles*, soldier; *claudsī, clausī*, I have closed.

Note.—*D* is occasionally dropped before other consonants: *hod-ce, hōcĕ, hōc*, this; *quod-circā, quōcircā*,[6] for which reason: *ad-gnōscō, āgnōscō*, I recognize.

3. A Guttural Mute—**c**, **g**, or **q** (**qu**)—is generally dropped—

1) Between a *Liquid* and **s**:

Mulcsit, mulsit, he has appeased; *fulgsit, fulsit*, it has lightened.

2) Between a *Liquid* and **t**:

Fulctus, fultus, propped; *sarctus, sartus*, repaired.

3) Between a *Liquid* and **m**:

Fulgmen, fulmen, lightning; *torqumentum, tormentum*, engine for hurling missiles.

Note 1.—A Guttural Mute is occasionally dropped in other situations.[7] Thus—

1. *C* before *m* or *n: lūcmen, lūmen*, light; *lūcna, lūna*, moon.

2. *C* between *n* and *d* or *t: quīnctus, quīntus*, fifth; *quīncdecim, quīndecim*, fifteen.

3. *G* before *m* or *v:*[8] *exagmen, exāmen* (**20**, 1), a swarm; *jugmentum, jūmentum*, beast of burden; *magvult, māvult*, he prefers; *bregvis, brevis*, short.

Note 2.—*X* is sometimes dropped: *sexdecim, sēdecim* (**20**, 1), sixteen; *sexnī, sēnī*, six each; *texula, texla, tēla*, a web; *axula, axla, āla*, wing.

Note 3.—*N*,[9] *r*, and *s* are sometimes dropped: *in-gnōtus, īgnōtus*, unknown; *formōnsus, formōsus*, beautiful; *quotiēns*,[10] *quotiēs*, how often; *deciēns, deciēs*,[10] ten times; *mulier-bris*, *muliebris*, womanly; *prōrsa*, *prōsa*, prose; *īsdem*, *īdem*, same; *jūs-dex*, *jūdex*, judge; *audīsne*, *audīne*, *audīn*, do you hear? *vīsne*, *vīne*, *vīn*, do you wish?

---

[1] *T* is changed to *s*, and *g* is dropped.

[2] *T* is changed to *s*, and one *l* is dropped in *llt*, and one *r* in *rrt*.

[3] Compare *clāmō*, I cry out.

[4] Seen in *ī-gnōtus, īgnōtus*, unknown.

[5] Probably first assimilated and then dropped: *lapids, lapiss, lapis*. But the dental is sometimes assimilated and retained: *cēdsī, cēssī*, I have yielded: *concutsit, concussit*, he has shaken.

[6] *O* lengthened in compensation; see **20**, 1.

[7] *Sextius* becomes *Sēstius*, a proper name; *sexcentī, sēscentī*, six hundred; and *mīxtus, mīstus*, mixed, by dropping the mute contained in the double consonant *x*.

[8] *G* has also been dropped in *āiō* for *agiō*, I say; *mājor* for *magior*, greater, etc.

[9] In numerals *nt* is sometimes dropped: *ducentnī, ducēnī*, two hundred each; *vīgent-simus* or *vīcent-simus, vīgēsimus* or *vīcēsimus*, twentieth.

[10] So in all numeral adverbs in *iēns, iēs*. The approved ending in most numeral

4. A Semivowel—**j** or **v**, also written **i** or **u**—is often dropped:

Bi-jugae, *biugae*, *bīgae*, chariot with two horses; *quadri-jugae*, *quadrīgae*, chariot with four horses; *con-junctus*, *cō-junctus*, *cūnctus*, the whole; *abjiciō* or *abiciō*,[1] I throw away; *dīvitior*, *diitior*, *dītior*, richer; *nevolō*, *neolō*, *nōlō*, I am unwilling; *amāverat*, *amaerat*, *amārat*, he had loved.[2]

Note.—Separate words are sometimes united after the loss of *v*: *sī vīs*, *siīs*, *sīs*, if you wish; *sī vultis*, *siultis*, *sūltis*, if you wish.

5. Final consonants are often dropped. Thus—

1) Final **s** is often dropped:[3]

Monēris, *monēre* (24, 1, note), you are advised; *illus*, *illu*, *ille*, that; *istus*, *istu*, *iste*, that of yours; *ipsus*, *ipsu*, *ipse*, self, he; *parricīdas*,[4] *parricīda*, parricide; *magis* or *mage*, more; *sīvīs*, *sīve*, whether, lit., if you wish.

Note.—In the early poets *es*, thou art, and *est*, he is, after having dropped the initial *e*, sometimes become attached to the preceding word, which has lost its final *s*: *veritus es*, *veritu's*, you feared; *tempus est*, *tempust*, it is time; *virtūs est*, *virtūst*, it is virtue. See 27, note.

2) A final **d** or **t** is often dropped:

Cord, *cor*, heart; *praedād*, *praedā*,[5] with booty; *intrād*, *intrā*, within; *facilumēd*,[6] *facillimē*, most easily; *vēnērunt*,[7] *vēnēru*, *vēnēre*, they have come; *rēxērunt*, *rēxēre*, they have ruled.

Note.—Sometimes both a vowel and a consonant disappear at the end of a word: *puerus*, *puer*, boy (51, 2, 4)); *deinde* or *dein*, thereupon; *nihilum* or *nihil*, nothing.

3) A final **n**[8] is generally dropped in the Nominative Singular from stems in **on**:

Leōn, *leō*, lion; *praedōn*, *praedō*, robber; *homon*, *homō*, man.

---

adverbs is *iēs*, but in those formed from indefinite numerals, as *tot*, *quot*, it is *iēns*: *totiēns*, *quotiēns*.

[1] This is the approved form in verbs compounded of *jaciō* and monosyllabic prepositions; but *abiciō* is pronounced as if written *abjiciō* or *ab-iiciō*, i. e., *i* = *ji*, pronounced *ye* by the Roman method. The syllable *ab* thus remains long.

[2] Several adverbial forms were produced by the loss of *v* with the attendant changes: *revorsus*, *reorsus*, *rūrsus*, back; *subsvorsum*, *susvorsum*, *suorsum*, *sūrsum*, from below, on high.

[3] In early inscriptions proper names in *os*, afterward *us*, occur without the *s* as often as with it: *Rōscios*, *Rōscio*; *Gabīnios*, *Gabīnio*.

[4] This form actually occurs in early Latin.

[5] The Ablative singular ended anciently in *d*, originally *t*. Many prepositions and adverbs in *ā* and *ē* are ablatives in origin, and accordingly ended in *d*.

[6] Written with one *l*, afterward with two.

[7] Here final *t* was first dropped, then *n*, having become final, also disappeared, and at last final *u* was weakened to *e*; see 24, 1, note.

[8] In early inscriptions final *m* is often dropped.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. Etymology treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions,* and *Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicerō,* Cicero; *Rōma,* Rome; *domus,* house.

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicerō; Rōma.*

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir,* man; *equus,* horse. Common nouns include—

1) *Collective Nouns,* designating a collection of objects: *populus,* people; *exercitus,* army.

2) *Abstract Nouns,* designating properties or qualities: *virtūs,* virtue; *jūstitia,* justice.

3) *Material Nouns,* designating materials as such: *aurum,* gold; *lignum,* wood; *aqua,* water.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person,* and *Case.*

I. Gender.

41. There are three genders[1]—*Masculine, Feminine,* and *Neuter.*

Note.—In some nouns gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

---

[1] In English, *Gender* denotes *sex.* Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males;* feminine nouns, *females;* and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female.* In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females;* while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

42. General Rules for Gender.

I. Masculines.

1. Names of *Males: Cicerō̆; vir*, man; *rēx*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds*, and *Months: Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Mārtius*, March.

II. Feminines.

1. Names of *Females: mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands*, and *Trees: Graecia*, Greece; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

Note.—Indeclinable nouns,[1] infinitives, and all clauses used as nouns are neuter: *alpha*, the letter *a*.[2] See also **532**.

43. Remarks on Gender.

1. Exceptions.—The endings[3] of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus, some names of *rivers*, *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals* take the gender of their endings; see **53**, 1.

2. Masculine or Feminine.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine: cīvis*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. Epicene Nouns apply only to the inferior animals. They are used for both sexes, but have only one gender, and that is usually determined by their endings: *ānser*, goose, masculine; *aquila*, eagle, feminine.

II. Person and Number.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. Cases.[4]

45. The Latin has six cases:

---

[1] Except names of persons.

[2] See **128**, 1.

[3] Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

[4] The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of*.
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for*.
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from*, *with*, *by*, *in*.

1. Oblique Cases.—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. Locative.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. Stem and Suffixes.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base called the stem.

1. Meaning.—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*,[1] which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus, in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg*; the relation *of*, by the suffix *is*.

2. Cases alike.—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in Neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).[2]

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

3. Characteristic.—The last letter of the stem is called the Stem-Characteristic, or the Stem-Ending.

47. Five Declensions.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the *stem-characteristics* or by the *endings* of the *Genitive Singular*, as follows:

---

[1] Moreover, in many words the stem itself is derived from a more primitive form called a *Root*. For the distinction between *roots* and *stems*, and for the manner in which the latter are formed from the former, see 313-318.

[2] And in some nouns of Greek origin.

	Characteristics.	Genitive Endings.
Dec. I.	ā̆	ae
II.	o	ī
III.	i *or* a consonant	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	ē̆	ē̆ī

Note 1.—The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-suffixes are nearly identical in all nouns.

Note 2.—But these case-suffixes appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns with consonant-stems, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the characteristic, i. e., with the final vowel of the stem.

Note 3.—The *ending* produced by the union of the *case-suffix* with the *characteristic vowel* may for convenience be called a Case-Ending.

FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in **a** and **ē**—*feminine;* **ās** and **ēs**—*masculine.*[1]

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Ending.
	Singular.		
Nom.	mēns**a**,	*a table,*[2]	a[3]
Gen.	mēns**ae**,	*of a table,*	ae
Dat.	mēns**ae**,	*to, for a table,*	ae
Acc.	mēns**am**,	*a table,*	am
Voc.	mēns**a**,	*O table,*	a
Abl.	mēns**ā**,	*from, with, by a table,*[4]	ā
	Plural.		
Nom.	mēns**ae**,	*tables,*	ae
Gen.	mēns**ārum**,	*of tables,*	ārum
Dat.	mēns**īs**,	*to, for tables,*	īs
Acc.	mēns**ās**,	*tables,*	ās
Voc.	mēns**ae**,	*O tables,*	ae
Abl.	mēns**īs**,	*from, with, by tables.*[4]	īs

---

[1] That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *ē* are feminine, and those in *ās* and *ēs* are masculine.

[2] The Nom. *mēnsa* may be translated *a table*, *table*, or *the table;* see **48**, 6.

[3] These *case-endings* will serve as a practical guide to the learner in distinguishing the different cases. The two elements which originally composed them have undergone various changes, and in certain cases the one or the other has nearly or quite disappeared. Thus the suffix has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and appears only as *e* in four other case-forms, while the characteristic *a* has disappeared in the ending *īs*, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural; see **23**, 2, note.

[4] Still other prepositions, as *in*, *on*, *at*, are sometimes used in translating the Ablative.

1. Stem.—In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in **ă**.

2. In the Paradigm, observe that the stem is *mēnsă*, and that the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3. Examples for Practice.—Like *mēnsa* decline:

Āla, wing; *aqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. Locative.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular[1] in **ae**, denoting the *place in which* (**45**, 2), and are declined in the singular[2] number as follows:

Nom.	Rōm**a**,	*Rome,*	mīliti**a**,	*war,*[3]
Gen.	Rōm**ae**,	*of Rome,*	mīliti**ae**,	*of war,*
Dat.	Rōm**ae**,	*for Rome,*[3]	mīliti**ae**,	*for war,*
Acc.	Rōm**am**,	*Rome,*	mīliti**am**,	*war,*
Voc.	Rōm**a**,	*O Rome,*	mīliti**a**,	*O war,*
Abl.	Rōm**ā**,	*from Rome,*[3]	mīliti**ā**,	*from war,*
Loc.	Rōm**ae**,	*at Rome.*	mīliti**ae**,	*in war.*

5. Exceptions in Gender.—1. A few nouns in *a* are masculine by signification: *agricola*, husbandman; see **42**, I.—2. *Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dāmma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole.

6. Article.—The Latin has no article: *corōna*, crown, a crown, the crown; *āla*, wing, a wing, the wing.

49. Irregular Case-Endings.—The following occur:[4]

1. **ās** in the Genitive of *familia*, in composition with *pater*, *māter*, *fīlius*, and *fīlia*: *paterfamiliās*, father of a family.

2. **āī**, an old form for the Genitive ending *ae*, in the poets:[5] *aulāī*, afterward *aulae*, of a hall.

3. **ūm**[6] in the Genitive Plural: *Dardanidūm* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4. **ābus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural, especially in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *fīlius*, son: *deābus* for *deīs*, to goddesses.

---

[1] In the Plural of all nouns the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative: *Athēnīs*, at Athens. Whether, however, the form *Athēnīs* is in origin a Locative, an Ablative, or neither, is a disputed question. See Bopp, I., pp. 484 seq.; Schleicher, pp. 586, 587; Penka, p. 194; Delbrück, p. 27; Merguet, pp. 116, 117; Wordsworth, p. 59. In most nouns the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative in both numbers.

[2] The Plural when used is like the Plural of *mēnsa*.

[3] For the other prepositions which may be used in translating the Dative and the Ablative, see **45**. *Mīlitia*, war, warfare, military service.

[4] To these must be added for early Latin *ā* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *ād* in the Abl. Sing.; see **21**, 2, 1), and **36**, 5, 2).

[5] Also in inscriptions as the ending of the Genitive, Dative, and Locative.

[6] Contracted from *a-um* like the Greek *ά-ων*, *ῶν*.

Note.—Nouns in *ia* sometimes have *īs* for *iīs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural: *grātīs* for *grātiīs*, from *grātia*, favor, kindness.

50. Greek Nouns.—Nouns of this declension in **ē**, **ās**, and **ēs** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

	Epitomē, *epitome.*	Aenēās, *Aeneas.*	Pyrītēs, *pyrites.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	epitom**ē**	Aenē**ās**	pyrīt**ēs**
Gen.	epitom**ēs**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
Dat.	epitom**ae**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
Acc.	epitom**ēn**	Aenē**am**, **ān**	pyrīt**ēn**
Voc.	epitom**ē**	Aenē**ā**	pyrīt**ē**, **a**
Abl.	epitom**ē**	Aenē**ā**	pyrīt**ē**, **ā**
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	epitom**ae**		pyrīt**ae**
Gen.	epitom**ārum**		pyrīt**ārum**
Dat.	epitom**īs**		pyrīt**īs**
Acc.	epitom**ās**		pyrīt**ās**
Voc.	epitom**ae**		pyrīt**ae**
Abl.	epitom**īs**		pyrīt**īs**

Note 1.—In the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mēnsa*.

Note 2.—In nouns in *ē* and *ēs*, the stem-ending *ă* is changed to *ē* in certain cases.

Note 3.—Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mēnsa*. Many in *ē* have also a form in *a*: *epitomē*, *epitoma*, epitome.

SECOND DECLENSION: O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

er, **ir**, **us**, and **os**[1]—*masculine;* **um**, and **on**—*neuter*.

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um* are declined as follows:

	Servus,[2] *slave.*	Puer, *boy.*	Ager, *field.*	Templum, *temple.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	serv**us**[3]	puer	ager	templ**um**
Gen.	serv**ī**	puer**ī**	agr**ī**	templ**ī**
Dat.	serv**ō**	puer**ō**	agr**ō**	templ**ō**
Acc.	serv**um**	puer**um**	agr**um**	templ**um**
Voc.	serv**e**	puer	ager	templ**um**
Abl.	serv**ō**	puer**ō**	agr**ō**	templ**ō**

---

[1] Sometimes *ŏs*.

[2] Sometimes written *servos;* see 52, 1.

[3] In the Roman and in the Continental pronunciation, quantity furnishes a safe guide

PLURAL.

Nom.	serv**ī**	puer**ī**	agr**ī**	templ**a**
Gen.	serv**ōrum**	puer**ōrum**	agr**ōrum**	templ**ōrum**
Dat.	serv**īs**	puer**īs**	agr**īs**	templ**īs**
Acc.	serv**ōs**	puer**ōs**	agr**ōs**	templ**a**
Voc.	serv**ī**	puer**ī**	agr**ī**	templ**a**
Abl.	serv**īs**	puer**īs**	agr**īs**	templ**īs**

1. Stem.—In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the Paradigms, observe—

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the characteristic **o** becomes **u** in the endings *us* and *um*, and **e** in *serve*,[1] that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*,[2] *ī*, and *īs* (for *o-a*, *o-ī*, and *o-īs*),[3] and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic **o** (**47**, N. 2), are as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Neut.		Masc.	Neut.
Nom.	us[4]	um	*Nom.*	ī	a
Gen.	ī	ī	*Gen.*	ōrum	ōrum
Dat.	ō	ō	*Dat.*	īs	īs
Acc.	um	um	*Acc.*	ōs	a
Voc.	e[4]	um	*Voc.*	ī	a
Abl.	ō	ō	*Abl.*	īs	īs

4) That *puer* and *ager* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nominative and Vocative: Nom. *puer* for *puerus*, Voc. *puer* for *puere*.

5) That *e* in *ager* is developed by the final *r*.[5]

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike, ending in the plural in *a*; see **46**, 2, 1).

3. Examples for Practice.—Like servus: *dominus*, master. Like puer: *gener*, son-in-law. Like ager: *magister*, master. Like templum: *bellum*, war.

---

to the sounds of the vowels; see **5**. In the English method, on the contrary, the quantity of the vowels is entirely disregarded, except as it affects the accent of the word. Thus, *a* in *ager* is short in quantity, but long in sound (**10**, 3), while *ī* in *servīs*, *puerīs*, *agrīs*, and *templīs* is long in quantity but short in sound (**11**, 1). Accordingly, in this method, the sounds of the vowels must be determined by the rules given in **9**, **10**, and **11**. Moreover, the learner must not forget that when the quantity of the vowel is known, the quantity of the syllable, as used in poetry, is readily determined by article **16**.

[1] See **22** and **24**, 1, note.

[2] Shortened from *ā*; see **21**, 2, 1).

[3] See **23**, note, and **27**.

[4] The endings of the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*.

[5] See **29**, note.

4. NOUNS IN **er** AND **ir**.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer:*

1) Nouns in *ir: vir, virī*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armiger, armigerī*, armor-bearer; *signifer, signiferī*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtiber*,[1] Celtiberian; *gener*, son-in-law; *Iber*,[1] Spaniard; *Līber*, Bacchus; *līberī*, children; *Mulciber*,[1] Vulcan; *presbyter*, elder; *socer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. Nouns in **ius** generally contract **iī** in the Genitive Singular and **ie** in the Vocative Singular into **ī** without change of accent: *Claudī* for *Claudiī*, of Claudius, *fīlī* for *fīliī*, of a son; *Mercu'rī* for *Mercu'rie*, Mercury, *fīlī* for *fīlie*, son.[2] In the Genitive Singular of nouns in **ium** the same contraction takes place: *inge'nī* for *inge'niī*, of talent; see 18, 1.

6. DEUS is thus declined: Sing. *deus, deī, deō, deum, deus, deō:* Plur. N. and V. *deī, diī, dī;*[3] G. *deōrum, deūm;* D. and A. *deīs, diīs, dīs;*[3] Acc. *deōs*.

7. NEUTERS IN **us**.—The three neuter nouns in *us*,[4] *pelagus*, sea, *vīrus*, poison, and *vulgus*, the common people, are declined in the singular as follows:

Nom., Acc., Voc.	pelagus	vīrus	vulgus[5]
Gen.	pelagī	vīrī	vulgī
Dat., Abl.	pelagō	vīrō	vulgō

NOTE.—*Pelagus* is a Greek noun (54, N. 2), and in general is used only in the singular, though *pelagē* occurs as an Acc. Plur. *Vīrus* and *vulgus* are used only in the singular. *Vulgus* has a masculine Acc., *vulgum*, in addition to the neuter form *vulgus*.

8. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular[6] in **ī**, denoting the *place in which* (45, 2), and are declined in the singular[7] number as follows:

Nom.	Ephes**us**,	*Ephesus*,	bell**um**,	*war*,
Gen.	Ephes**ī**,	*of Ephesus*,	bell**ī**,	*of war*,
Dat.	Ephes**ō**,	*for Ephesus*,	bell**ō**,	*for war*,
Acc.	Ephes**um**,	*Ephesus*,	bell**um**,	*war*,
Voc.	Ephes**e**,	*O Ephesus*,	bell**um**,	*O war*,
Abl.	Ephes**ō**,	*from Ephesus*,	bell**ō**,	*from, by war*,
Loc.	Ephes**ī**,	*at Ephesus*.	bell**ī**,	*in war*.

---

[1] *Celtiber* and *Iber* have *e long* in the Gen., and *Mulciber* sometimes drops *e*.

[2] Nouns in *ēius* sometimes contract *ēie* in the Voc. Sing. into *ēī*; *Pompēī* or *Pompēī*, Pompey.

[3] *Dī* and *dīs* are the approved forms, but *deī, diī* and *deīs, diīs* also occur.

[4] Originally *s-stems* which by the loss of *s* in the oblique cases have become *o-stems*; see 62, I., 1, foot-note.

[5] Also written *volgus*.

[6] In the Plural the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative: *Gabiīs*, at Gabiī; see 48, 4, foot-note.

[7] The Plural, when used, is like the Plural of *servus, puer*, etc.

52. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:[1]

1. **os** and **om**, old endings for *us* and *um*, sometimes used after *v* and *u*:[2] *servos* for *servus*, *servom* for *servum*; *mortuos* for *mortuus*, dead.

2. **us** for *e* in the Vocative of *deus*, god; rare in other words.

3. **ūm** in the Genitive Plural, especially common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *talentūm* for *talentōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deūm* for *deōrum*; *līberūm* for *līberōrum*; *Argīvūm* for *Argīvōrum*.

NOTE.—The ending *ūm* occurs also in the Genitive Plural of many other words, especially in poetry.

53. GENDER.—Nouns in **er**, **ir**, **us**, and **os** are masculine, those in **um** and **on** are neuter; except—

1. *The Feminines*:—(1) See **42**, II., but observe that many names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees* follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of gems and ships are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *carbasus*, sail; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. *The Neuters*:—*pelagus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus*, common people. For declension, see **51**, 7.

54. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **os**, **ōs**, and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows:

	Dēlos, F.,[3] *Delos.*	Androgeōs, *Androgeos.*	Īlion, *Ilium.*
Nom.	Dēl**os**	Androge**ōs**	Īli**on**
Gen.	Dēl**ī**	Androge**ō**, **ī**	Īli**ī**
Dat.	Dēl**ō**	Androge**ō**	Īli**ō**
Acc.	Dēl**on**	Androge**ōn**, **ō**	Īli**on**
Voc.	Dēl**e**	Androge**ōs**	Īli**on**
Abl.	Dēl**ō**	Androge**ō**	Īli**ō**

NOTE 1.—The Plural of nouns in *os* and *on* is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *oe* in the Nominative Plural, and *ōn* in the Genitive.

NOTE 2.—Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, and are declined like *servus* and *templum*. Many in *os* or *on* have also a form in *us* or *um*.

NOTE 3.—For Greek nouns in *eus*, see **68** and **68**, 1.

NOTE 4.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*. For *pelagus*, see **51**, 7, note.

---

[1] To these must be added for early Latin: 1) *ōd* in Abl. Sing., and *ā* in Nom., Acc., and Voc. of the Neut. Plur.; see **36**, 5, 2), and **21**, 2, 1); 2) *os* in Gen. Sing.; *oe*, *ē*, *ēs*, *eis*, and *īs* in Nom. Plur.: *poploe*=populī; *ploirumē*=plūrimī; *virēs*=virī; *leibereis* or *leiberīs*=līberī.

[2] Some recent editors have adopted *vos*, *uos*, *vom* and *uom*, for *vus*, *uus*, *vum* and *uum*, but the wisdom of such a course is at least questionable. See Brambach, p. 8.

[3] M. stands for *masculine*, F. for *feminine*, and N. for *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, ī, ŏ, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and **x.**

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.[1]

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: B OR P.

Prīnceps, M.,[2] *a leader, chief.*

	SINGULAR.		CASE-SUFFIXES
Nom.	prīncep**s**,	*a leader,*	s
Gen.	prīncip**is**,	*of a leader,*	is
Dat.	prīncip**ī**,	*to, for a leader,*	ī
Acc.	prīncip**em**,	*a leader,*	em
Voc.	prīncep**s**,	*O leader,*	s
Abl.	prīncip**e**,	*from, with, by a leader,*	e
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	prīncip**ēs**,	*leaders,*	ēs
Gen.	prīncip**um**,	*of leaders,*	um
Dat.	prīncip**ibus**,	*to, for leaders,*	ibus
Acc.	prīncip**ēs**,	*leaders,*	ēs
Voc.	prīncip**ēs**,	*O leaders,*	ēs
Abl.	prīncip**ibus**,	*from, with, by leaders.*	ibus

1. STEM AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In this Paradigm observe—

1) That the stem is *prīncep*, modified before an additional syllable to *prīncip*; see **22**, 1, and **57**, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem;[3] see **46**, 1, and **47**, note 2.

2. VARIABLE VOWEL.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short **e** or **i** generally takes the form of *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *prīnceps*,

---

[1] For Gender, see **99-115**.

[2] See foot-note 8, p. 29.

[3] Thus, *prīncep-s*, *prīncip-is*, etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vowel of the stem in such forms as *mēnsīs*, *puerī*, *agrīs*, etc.

prīncipis,[1] and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), alike have *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and *i* in all the other cases, though in *prīnceps* the original form of the radical vowel is **e**, and in *jūdex*, **i**. For a similar change in the vowel of the stem, see *mīles*, *mīlitis* (58), and *carmen*, *carminis*[2] (60). See also *opus*, *operis* (61).

3. In monosyllables in *bs* the stem ends in **i**; see *urbs*, **64**.
4. For the LOCATIVE IN THE THIRD DECLENSION, see **66**, 4.
5. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see **87**, **89**.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: **D** OR **T**.

	Lapis, M., *stone.*	Aetās, F., *age.*	Mīles, M., *soldier.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	lapi**s**	aetā**s**	mīle**s**
Gen.	lapid**is**	aetāt**is**	mīlit**is**
Dat.	lapid**ī**	aetāt**ī**	mīlit**ī**
Acc.	lapid**em**	aetāt**em**	mīlit**em**
Voc.	lapi**s**	aetā**s**	mīle**s**
Abl.	lapid**e**	aetāt**e**	mīlit**e**
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	lapid**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	mīlit**ēs**
Gen.	lapid**um**	aetāt**um**	mīlit**um**
Dat.	lapid**ibus**	aetāt**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**
Acc.	lapid**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	mīlit**ēs**
Voc.	lapid**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	mīlit**ēs**
Abl.	lapid**ibus**	aetāt**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**

	Nepōs, M., *grandson.*	Virtūs, F., *virtue.*	Caput, N., *head.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	nepō**s**	virtū**s**	caput
Gen.	nepōt**is**	virtūt**is**	capit**is**
Dat.	nepōt**ī**	virtūt**ī**	capit**ī**
Acc.	nepōt**em**	virtūt**em**	caput
Voc.	nepō**s**	virtū**s**	caput
Abl.	nepōt**e**	virtūt**e**	capit**e**
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capit**a**
Gen.	nepōt**um**	virtūt**um**	capit**um**
Dat.	nepōt**ibus**	virtūt**ibus**	capit**ibus**

---

[1] See **22**, 1.

[2] See **22**, 1, foot-note.

Acc.	nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capit**a**
Voc.	nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capit**a**
Abl.	nepōt**ibus**	virtūt**ibus**	capit**ibus**

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In these Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *lapid*, *aetāt*, *mīlit*, *nepōt*, *virtūt*, and *caput*.

2) That *mīles* has the variable vowel, **e**, **i**, and *caput*, **u**, **i**; see **57**, 2.

3) That the dental **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**: *lapis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetāts*, *mīles* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtūts*; see **36**, 2.

4) That the case-suffixes, except in the *neuter*, *caput* (**46**, 2), are the same as those given above; see **57**.

5) That the *neuter*, *caput*, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, **a** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. NEUTER STEMS IN **at** drop **t** in the Nominative Singular and end in **a**: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poēmatis*; Stem, *poēmat*. These nouns sometimes have *is* for *ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural: *poēmatīs* for *poēmatibus*.

3. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see **69**, **78–84**.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR G.

	Rēx, M., *king*.	Jūdex, M. & F., *judge*.	Rādix, F., *root*.	Dux, M. & F., *leader*.
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	rēx	jūdex	rādīx	dux
Gen.	rēg**is**	jūdic**is**	rādīc**is**	duc**is**
Dat.	rēg**ī**	jūdic**ī**	rādīc**ī**	duc**ī**
Acc.	rēg**em**	jūdic**em**	rādīc**em**	duc**em**
Voc.	rēx	jūdex	rādīx	dux
Abl.	rēg**e**	jūdic**e**	rādīc**e**	duc**e**
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	rēg**ēs**	jūdic**ēs**	rādīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
Gen.	rēg**um**	jūdic**um**	rādīc**um**	duc**um**
Dat.	rēg**ibus**	jūdic**ibus**	rādīc**ibus**	duc**ibus**
Acc.	rēg**ēs**	jūdic**ēs**	rādīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
Voc.	rēg**ēs**	jūdic**ēs**	rādīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
Abl.	rēg**ibus**	jūdic**ibus**	rādīc**ibus**	duc**ibus**

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *rādīc*, and *duc*; *jūdic* with the variable vowel, **i**, **e**; see **57**, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes are those given in **57**.

3) That **s** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *x*; see **30**.

2. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see NOUNS IN **x**, **91–98**.

60. STEMS ENDING IN L, M, N, OR R.

	Sōl, M., *sun.*	Cōnsul, M., *consul.*	Passer, M., *sparrow.*	Pater, M., *father.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
Gen.	sōl**is**	cōnsul**is**	passer**is**	patr**is**
Dat.	sōl**ī**	cōnsul**ī**	passer**ī**	patr**ī**
Acc.	sōl**em**	cōnsul**em**	passer**em**	patr**em**
Voc.	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
Abl.	sōl**e**	cōnsul**e**	passer**e**	patr**e**
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	sōl**ēs**[1]	cōnsul**ēs**	passer**ēs**	patr**ēs**
Gen.		cōnsul**um**	passer**um**	patr**um**
Dat.	sōl**ibus**	cōnsul**ibus**	passer**ibus**	patr**ibus**
Acc.	sōl**ēs**	cōnsul**ēs**	passer**ēs**	patr**ēs**
Voc.	sōl**ēs**	cōnsul**ēs**	passer**ēs**	patr**ēs**
Abl.	sōl**ibus**	cōnsul**ibus**	passer**ibus**	patr**ibus**

	Pāstor, M., *shepherd.*	Leō, M., *lion.*	Virgō, F., *maiden.*	Carmen, N., *song.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	pāstor	leō̆	virgō̆	carmen
Gen.	pāstōr**is**	leōn**is**	virgin**is**	carmin**is**
Dat.	pāstōr**ī**	leōn**ī**	virgin**ī**	carmin**ī**
Acc.	pāstōr**em**	leōn**em**	virgin**em**	carmen
Voc.	pāstor	leō̆	virgō̆	carmen
Abl.	pāstōre	leōn**e**	virgin**e**	carmin**e**
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	pāstōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	carmin**a**
Gen.	pāstōr**um**	leōn**um**	virgin**um**	carmin**um**
Dat.	pāstōr**ibus**	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	carmin**ibus**
Acc.	pāstōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	carmin**a**
Voc.	pāstōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	carmin**a**
Abl.	pāstōr**ibus**	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	carmin**ibus**

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *cōnsul*, *passer*, *patr*,[2] *pāstōr*, *leōn*, *virgon*, and *carmen*.

---

[1] Many monosyllables want the Gen. Plur.; see **133**, 5.

[2] That is, the stem is *patr* when followed by a vowel; but when *r* becomes final, it develops *e* before it, and *patr* becomes *pater;* see **29**, note.

2) That *virgŏ* (virgon) has the variable vowel, **o**, **i**, and *carmen*, **e**, **i**.

3) That in the Nominative and Vocative Singular **s**, the usual case-suffix for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pāstōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop **n**; see **21**, 2, 2), and **36**, 5, 3).

2. HIEMS, the only stem in **m**, takes *s* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. Also *sanguīs* (for *sanguīns*), blood, and *Salamīs* (for *Salamīns*), Salamis, which drop *n* before *s*; see **36**, 3, note 3.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in **er** are declined like *passer*, but those in **ter**, and a few others, are declined like *pater*; see **77**, 2.

4. LEŎ, VIRGŎ.—Most nouns in **o** are declined like *leŏ*, but those in **dŏ** and **gŏ**, with a few others, are declined like *virgŏ*; see **72**, with exceptions.

5. FOUR STEMS IN **or** change *o* to *u*; see **77**, 4.

6. For the LOCATIVE IN THE THIRD DECLENSION, see **66**, 4.

7. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see **72**, **75–77**.

61. STEMS ENDING IN S.

	Flōs, M., *flower.*	Jūs, N., *right.*	Opus, N., *work.*	Corpus, N., *body.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
Gen.	flōr**is**	jūr**is**	oper**is**	corpor**is**
Dat.	flōr**ī**	jūr**ī**	oper**ī**	corpor**ī**
Acc.	flōr**em**	jūs	opus	corpus
Voc.	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
Abl.	flōr**e**	jūr**e**	oper**e**	corpor**e**
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	flōr**ēs**	jūr**a**	oper**a**	corpor**a**
Gen.	flōr**um**	jūr**um**	oper**um**	corpor**um**
Dat.	flōr**ibus**	jūr**ibus**	oper**ibus**	corpor**ibus**
Acc.	flōr**ēs**	jūr**a**	oper**a**	corpor**a**
Voc.	flōr**ēs**	jūr**a**	oper**a**	corpor**a**
Abl.	flōr**ibus**	jūr**ibus**	oper**ibus**	corpor**ibus**

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *opos*,[1] and *corpos*.

2) That *opus* has the variable vowel, **e**, **u**, and *corpus*, **o**, **u**.

3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*); see **31**, 1.

4) That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. omit the case-suffix; see **60**, 1, 3).

2. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see **79**, **80**, **82–84**.

---

[1] *Opos* occurs in early Latin. In *os*, from the Primary Suffix *as* (**320**), *o* was weakened to *u* in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. of *opus* and *corpus*, while in all the other case-forms it was weakened to *e* in *opus*, but retained unchanged in *corpus*; see **22**.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Nouns in* **is** and **ēs**, not increasing in the Genitive.[1]

	Tussis, F., *cough.*	Turris, F., *tower.*	Ignis, M., *fire.*	Hostis, M. & F., *enemy.*	Nūbēs,[2] F., *cloud.*
			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	tuss**is**	turr**is**	ign**is**	host**is**	nūb**ēs**
Gen.	tuss**is**	turr**is**	ign**is**	host**is**	nūb**is**
Dat.	tuss**ī**	turr**ī**	ign**ī**	host**ī**	nūb**ī**
Acc.	tuss**im**	turr**im**, **em**	ign**em**	host**em**	nūb**em**
Voc.	tuss**is**	turr**is**	ign**is**	host**is**	nūb**ēs**
Abl.	tuss**ī**	turr**ī**, **e**	ign**ī**, **e**	host**e**	nūb**e**
			PLURAL.		
Nom.	tuss**ēs**	turr**ēs**	ign**ēs**	host**ēs**	nūb**ēs**
Gen.	tuss**ium**	turr**ium**	ign**ium**	host**ium**	nūb**ium**
Dat.	tuss**ibus**	turr**ibus**	ign**ibus**	host**ibus**	nūb**ibus**
Acc.	tuss**ēs**, **īs**	turr**ēs**, **īs**	ign**ēs**, **īs**	host**ēs**, **īs**	nūb**ēs**, **īs**
Voc.	tuss**ēs**	turr**ēs**	ign**ēs**	host**ēs**	nūb**ēs**
Abl.	tuss**ibus**	turr**ibus**	ign**ibus**	host**ibus**	nūb**ibus**

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, *igni*, *hosti*, and *nūbi*.[3]

2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic i, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	is, ēs	ēs
Gen.	is	ium
Dat.	ī	ibus
Acc.	im, em	ēs, īs
Voc.	is	ēs
Abl.	ī, e	ibus

---

[1] That is, having as many syllables in the Nom. Sing. as in the Gen. Sing.

[2] Observe (1) that *tussis*, *turris*, *ignis*, and *hostis* differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing., *tussis* showing the final *i* of the stem in both those cases, *turris* sometimes in both, *ignis* sometimes in the Abl., not in the Acc., *hostis* in neither (2) that *nūbēs* differs from the other four in taking *ēs* instead of *is* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.

[3] Nouns in *ēs*, Gen. *is*, are best treated as *i*-stems, although some of them were originally *s*-stems (**61**). Thus, originally the stem of *nūbēs* was itself *nūbēs*, but *s* was finally treated as the Nom. suffix, and the word was accordingly declined like the large class of *i*-nouns mentioned under **62**, V. The origin of *i*-stems is obscure. A few correspond to *i*-stems in the cognate tongues, as *ignis*, *ovis*, *turris;* a few are weakened from *a*-stems or *o*-stems, as *foris*, a door, Gr. *θύρα*, *imber*=*imbris*, rain-storm, Gr. *ὄμβρος;* some are formed from *s*-stems, as *nūbēs*, just mentioned. Upon the general subject of *i*-stems, see Roby, pp. 136–149; Schleicher, pp. 384, 432, 453; Corssen, I. 281, 571, 788 seq.; II. 227; Merguet, pp. 36–40, 51, 67, 95, etc.

II. Like TUSSIS—ACC. **im**, ABL. **ī**—are declined—

1. *Būris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sitis*, thirst.

2. In the Singular: (1) Names of *rivers* and *places* in **is** not increasing in the Genitive: *Tiberis*, *Hispalis;* see **582.** (2) Greek nouns in **is**, Gen. *is*, and some others.

III. Like TURRIS—ACC. **im**, **em**, ABL. **ī**, **e**—are declined—

Clāvis, key; *febris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *nāvis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *secūris*, axe; *sēmentis*, sowing; *strigilis*, strigil.

1. *Araris*, or *Arar* (for *Araris*),[1] the Saône, and *Liger* (for *Ligeris*),[1] the Loire, have Acc. **im**, **em**, Abl. **ī**, **e**.

IV. Like IGNIS—ACC. **em**, ABL. **ī**, **e**—are declined—

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *avis*, bird; *bīlis*, bile; *cīvis*, citizen; *clāssis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *fīnis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives in **er** (for *ris*) and those in **is** have the Ablative in **ī** (**153**, **154**). Accordingly, when such adjectives are used *substantively*, the *ī* is generally retained: *September*, *Septembrī*, September; [2] *familiāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names have **e**: *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

NOTE 2.—*Imber* (for *imbris*), storm; *vesper* (for *vesperis*), evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Ablative in **ī**.

V. Like HOSTIS—ACC. **em**, ABL. **e**—are declined all nouns in *is*, Gen. *is*, not provided for under II., III., and IV.[3]

VI. Like NŪBĒS are declined all nouns in *ēs*, Gen. *is*.[4]

63. STEMS ENDING IN ī.—*Neuters in* e, al, *and* ar.

	Mare, *sea.*	Animal, *animal.*	Calcar, *spur.*	
	SINGULAR.			CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	mar**e**	animal	calcar	e—[6]
Gen.	mar**is**	animāl**is**	calcār**is**	is
Dat.	mar**ī**	animāl**ī**	calcār**ī**	ī
Acc.	mar**e**	animal	calcar	e—[6]
Voc.	mar**e**	animal	calcar	e—[6]
Abl.	mar**ī**[5]	animāl**ī**	calcār**ī**	ī

---

[1] The shortening of *Araris* to *Arar* and of *Ligeris* to *Liger* is similar to the shortening of *puerus* to *puer;* see **51**, 2, 4); **36**, 5, 2), note.

[2] Names of months are adjectives used substantively. Originally *mēnsis*, month, was understood.

[3] Except *canis* and *juvenis*, which are consonant-stems, but have assumed *i* in the Nom. Sing. In the plural they have *um* in the Gen. and *ēs* in the Acc. *Apis*, *mēnsis*, and *volucris* often have *um* for *ium* in the Gen.

[4] Except *struēs* and *vātēs*, which generally have *um* in Gen. Pl., and *sēdēs*, which has *um* or *ium*. *Compēs*, Gen. *edis*, has also *ium*.

[5] See 2 below.

[6] The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

		PLURAL.		
Nom.	mar**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	ia
Gen.	mar**ium**	animāl**ium**	calcār**ium**	ium
Dat.	mar**ibus**	animāl**ibus**	calcār**ibus**	ibus
Acc.	mar**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	ia
Voc.	mar**ia**	animāl**ia**	calcār**ia**	ia
Abl.	mar**ibus**	animāl**ibus**	calcār**ibus**	ibus

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *mare*, and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*); see **24**, 1, note; **37**; **21**, 2, 2).

2) That the case-endings include the characteristic **i**.

2. The following have **e** in the Ablative Singular:—(1) Names of towns in **e**; *Praeneste*.—(2) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *mare*.

NOTE.—Neuters in *ar*, with *a* short in the Genitive, are consonant-stems: *nectar, nectaris*, nectar; also *sāl*, salt, and *fār*, corn.

64. STEMS ENDING IN I.—*Nouns in* s *and* x *generally preceded by a consonant.*

	Cliēns, M. & F., *client.*	Urbs, F., *city.*	Arx, F., *citadel.*	Mūs,[1] M., *mouse.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	cliēn**s**	urb**s**	arx[3]	mū**s**
Gen.	client**is**[2]	urb**is**	arc**is**	mūr**is**[4]
Dat.	client**ī**	urb**ī**	arc**ī**	mūr**ī**
Acc.	client**em**	urb**em**	arc**em**	mūr**em**
Voc.	cliēn**s**	urb**s**	arx	mū**s**
Abl.	client**e**	urb**e**	arc**e**	mūr**e**
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	client**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**	mūr**ēs**
Gen.	client**ium**	urb**ium**	arc**ium**	mūr**ium**
Dat.	client**ibus**	urb**ibus**	arc**ibus**	mūr**ibus**
Acc.	client**ēs, īs**	urb**ēs, īs**	arc**ēs, īs**	mūr**ēs, īs**
Voc.	client**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**	mūr**ēs**
Abl.	client**ibus**	urb**ibus**	arc**ibus**	mūr**ibus**

---

[1] *Cliēns* is for *clientis*, *urbs* for *urbis*, *arx* for *arcis*, and *mūs* for *mūsis*; see **36**, 5, 2), note. *Mūs*, originally an *s*-stem, Greek μῦς, became an *i*-stem in Latin by assuming *i*.

[2] The vowel *e* is here short before *nt*, but long before *ns*; see **16**, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that *nt* and *nd* shorten a preceding vowel, as *ns* lengthens it. See Müller, p. 27; Ritschl, Rhein. Museum, xxxi., p. 488.

[3] *X* in *arx*=*cs*, *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. suffix.

[4] *Mūris* is for *mūsis*; *s* changed to *r* between two vowels; see **31**, 1.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1) That the stems are *clienti*, *urbi*, *arci*, and *mūri*.

2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.[1]

2. This class of *i*-stems includes—

1) Most nouns in *ns* and *rs*:[2] *cliēns*, *clientis*, client; *cohors*, *cohortis*, cohort.

2) Monosyllables in *s* and *x* preceded by a consonant,[3] and a few in *s* and *x* preceded by a vowel:[4] *urbs*, city; *arx*, citadel; *līs*, strife; *nox*, night.

3) Names of nations in *ās* and *īs*, or, if plural, in *ātēs* and *ītēs*: *Arpīnās*, pl. *Arpīnātēs*, an Arpinatian, the Arpinates; *Samnīs*, pl. *Samnītēs*, the Samnites.

4) *Optimātēs*, the aristocracy; *Penātēs*, the household gods, and occasionally other nouns in *ās*.

NOTE 1.—*Carŏ*, flesh, has a form in *is*, *carnis* (for *carinis*), from which are formed *carnī*, *carnium*, etc.

NOTE 2.—*Pars*, part, sometimes has *partĭm* in the Accusative.

NOTE 3.—*Rūs*, country, *sors*, lot, *supellex*, furniture, and a few other words sometimes have the Ablative in *ī*.

65. SUMMARY OF I-STEMS.—To I-stems belong—

1. All nouns in **is** and **ēs** which do not increase in the Genitive; see **62**. Here belong also—

1) Names of months in *ber* (for *bris*): *September*, *Octōber*, etc.; see **62**, N. 1.

2) The following nouns in *ber* and *ter* (for *bris* and *tris*): *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *ūter*, leathern sack; *venter*, belly; generally also *Īnsuber*, an Insubrian.

2. Neuters in **e**, **al** (for **ālis**) and **ar** (for **āris**); see **63**; also **63**, 2, note.

3. Many nouns in **s** and **x**—especially (1) nouns in **ns** and **rs**, and (2) monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant; see **64**, 2.

---

[1] Nouns thus declined are most conveniently treated as *i*-nouns, though the stem appears to end in a consonant in the Sing., and in *i* in the Plur. In some of these nouns the stem has lost its final *i* in the Sing., while in others it ended originally in a consonant, but afterward assumed *i* in the Plur., at least in certain cases; see **62**, I., foot-note.

[2] Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *parēns*, parent, generally has.

[3] Except (*ops*) *opis* and the Greek nouns, *grȳps*, *lynx*, *sphinx*.

[4] Namely, *faux*, *glīs*, *līs*, *mās*, *nix*, *nox*, *os* (ossis), *vīs*, generally *fraus* and *mūs*.

66. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

	Sūs, M. & F., *swine.*	Bōs, M. & F., *ox, cow.*	Nix, F., *snow.*	Senex, M., *old man.*	Vīs, F., *force.*
			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	sū**s**	bō**s**[1]	nix	senex	v**īs**
Gen.	su**is**	bov**is**	niv**is**	sen**is**	v**īs**[2]
Dat.	su**ī**	bov**ī**	niv**ī**	sen**ī**	v**ī**[2]
Acc.	su**em**	bov**em**	niv**em**	sen**em**	v**im**
Voc.	sū**s**	bō**s**	nix	senex	v**īs**
Abl.	su**e**	bov**e**	niv**e**	sen**e**	v**ī**
			PLURAL.		
Nom.	su**ēs**	bov**ēs**	niv**ēs**	sen**ēs**	vīr**ēs**
Gen.	su**um**	bov**um** bo**um**	niv**ium**	sen**um**	vīr**ium**
Dat.	su**ibus** su**bus**	bō**bus**[1] bū**bus**[1]	niv**ibus**	sen**ibus**	vīr**ibus**
Acc.	su**ēs**	bov**ēs**	niv**ēs**	sen**ēs**	vīr**ēs**
Voc.	su**ēs**	bov**ēs**	niv**ēs**	sen**ēs**	vīr**ēs**
Abl.	su**ibus** su**bus**	bō**bus** bū**bus**	niv**ibus**	sen**ibus**	vīr**ibus**

1. The STEMS are *su*; *bov*; *nig* (nix=nigs), *niv*, *nivi*;[3] *senec*, *sen*; *vī* (sing.), *vīri* (for *vīsi*, plur.);[4] see **31**, 1.

2. Sūs, and GRŪS, *crane*, the only **u** stems in this declension, are declined alike, except in the Dative and Ablative Plural, where *grūs* is regular: *gruibus*.

3. JŪPPITER, *Jupiter*, is thus declined: Jūppiter, Jovis, Jovī, Jovem, Jūppiter, Jove. STEMS, *Jūppiter* and *Jov*.

4. LOCATIVE.—Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in **ī** or **e** denoting the *place in which* (**45**, 2). Thus:

Nom.	Karthāgō̆,	*Carthage,*	Tībur,	*Tibur,*
Gen.	Karthāgin**is**,	*of Carthage,*	Tībur**is**,	*of Tibur,*
Dat.	Karthāgin**ī**,	*for Carthage,*	Tībur**ī**,	*for Tibur,*
Acc.	Karthāgin**em**,	*Carthage,*	Tībur,	*Tibur,*
Voc.	Karthāgō̆,	*O Carthage,*	Tībur,	*O Tibur,*
Abl.	Karthāgin**e**,	*from Carthage,*	Tībur**e**,	*from Tibur,*
Loc.	Karthāgin**ī** or **e**,	*at Carthage.*	Tībur**ī** or **e**,	*at Tibur.*

---

[1] *Bōs* = bovs, bous; *bōbus*, *būbus* = bovibus, boubus.

[2] The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vīs*, *vī*—are rare.

[3] For *nigvi*, from which *nig* is formed by first dropping *i* and then *v*; see **27**, **36**, 3, note 1.

[4] *Vī* is formed from *vīsi* by first dropping *i* and then *s*.

67. CASE-SUFFIXES AND CASE-ENDINGS.[1]

SINGULAR.

	CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	s,—[2]	—[2]	is, ēs, s	e,—[2]
Gen.	is	is	is	is
Dat.	ī	ī	ī	ī
Acc.	em	—	im, em	e,—
Voc.	s	—	is, ēs, s	e,—
Abl.	e	e	ī, e	ī

PLURAL.

Nom.	ēs	a	ēs	ia
Gen.	um	um	ium	ium
Dat.	ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus
Acc.	ēs	a	ēs, īs	ia
Voc.	ēs	a	ēs	ia
Abl.	ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus

NOTE.—The following irregular case-endings occur:[3]

1. *Ĕ*, for *ī*, in the Dat. Sing.:[4] *aerĕ* for *aerī*.
2. *Eis*, for *īs*, in the Acc. Plur.: *civeis* for *cīvīs*, *cīvēs*.
3. For GREEK ENDINGS, see **68**.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples:

	Lampas, F., *torch.*	Phryx, M. & F., *Phrygian.*	Hērōs, M., *hero.*
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	lampa**s**	Phryx	hērō**s**
Gen.	lampad**is**, **os**	Phryg**is**, **os**	hērō**is**
Dat.	lampad**ī**, **i**	Phryg**ī**, **i**	hērō**ī**, **i**
Acc.	lampad**em**, **a**	Phryg**em**, **a**	hērō**em**, **a**
Voc.	lampa**s**	Phryx	hērō**s**
Abl.	lampad**e**	Phryg**e**	hērō**e**

---

[1] On the distinction between Case-Suffixes and Case-Endings, see **46**, 1, and **47**, note 3.

[2] The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

[3] To these should be added for early Latin—1) *us* and *es* in the Gen. Sing.: *hominus* = *hominis*; *salūtes* = *salūtis*; 2) *īd* and *ē* in the Abl. Sing.: *conventiōnīd* = *conventiōne*; *patrē* = *patre*; 3) *īs* and *eis* in the Nom. Plur. of *i*-nouns: *fineis*, *fīnīs* = *fīnēs*. On the *Case-Endings* of the Third Declension in early Latin, see Wordsworth, pp. 68–73; Kühner, I., pp. 178–179.

[4] This *e* is generally long.

PLURAL.

Nom.	lampad**ēs**, **es**	Phryg**ēs**, **es**	hērō**ēs**, **es**
Gen.	lampad**um**	Phryg**um**	hērō**um**
Dat.	lampad**ibus**	Phryg**ibus**	hērō**ibus**
Acc.	lampad**ēs**, **as**	Phryg**ēs**, **as**	hērō**ēs**, **as**
Voc.	lampad**ēs**, **es**	Phryg**ēs**, **es**	hērō**ēs**, **es**
Abl.	lampad**ibus**	Phryg**ibus**	hērō**ibus**

	Periclēs, M., *Pericles.*	Paris, M., *Paris.*	Dīdō, F., *Dido.*	Orpheus, M., *Orpheus.*
		SINGULAR.[1]		
Nom.	Pericl**ēs**	Pari**s**	Dīdō	Orpheu**s**[2]
Gen.	Pericl**is**, **ī**	Parid**is**, **os**	Dīd**ūs**, ōn**is**	Orph-e**os**, e**ī**, **ī**
Dat.	Pericl**ī**, **i**	Parid**ī**, **i**	Dīdō, ōn**ī**, ōn**i**	Orph-e**ī**, e**i**, **ī**, e**ō**
Acc.	Pericl**em**, **ea**, **ēn**	Parid**em**, **a** Pari**m**, i**m**	Dīdō, ōn**em**	Orphe**a**, e**um**
Voc.	Pericl**ēs**, **es**, **ē**	Pari	Dīdō	Orpheu
Abl.	Pericl**e**	Parid**e**	Dīdō, ōn**e**	Orphe**ō**

1. Observe that these PARADIGMS fluctuate in certain cases—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampadis*, *os*; *lampadem*, *a*; *hērōes*, *as*:—(2) between different declensions: PERICLĒS, between Dec. I., *Periclēn*, *Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclī* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclis*, etc.: ORPHEUS, between Dec. II., *Orpheī*, *Orpheō*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheos*, etc.

2. NOUNS IN *ys* have Gen. *yos*, *ȳs*, Acc. *ym*, *yn*: *Othrys*, *Othryos*, *Othrym*, *Othryn*.

3. The VOCATIVE SINGULAR drops *s*—(1) in nouns in *eus*, *ys*, and in proper names in *ās*, Gen. *antis*: *Atlās*, *Atlā*:—(2) generally in nouns in *is*, and sometimes in other words: *Pari*.

4. In the GENITIVE PLURAL, the ending *ōn* occurs in a few titles of books: *Metamorphōsēs* (title of a poem), *Metamorphōseōn*.

5. In the DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL the ending *si*, before vowels *sin*, occurs in poetry: *Troades*, *Troasin*.

6. A few neuters used only in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative have *os* in the Singular and *ē* in the Plural: *melos*, *melē*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. NOUNS ENDING IN A VOWEL.

69.

Nouns in **a**:[3]	Genitive in **atis**:	Stem in **at**:
poēma, *poem*,	poēmatis,	poēmat.

---

[1] The Plural is of course generally wanting; see **130**, 2.

[2] *Eu* is a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc.; *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen. and Dat.

[3] These are of Greek origin.

70. Nouns in **e**:	Genitive in **is**:	Stem in **i**:
mare, *sea*,	maris,	mari.

71. Nouns in **ĭ**:[1]	Genitive in **is**:	Stem in **i**:
sinăpĭ, *mustard*,	sinăpis,	sinăpi.

NOTE.—Many nouns in *ĭ* are indeclinable. Compounds of *melĭ* have *itis* in the Genitive: *oxymelĭ*, *oxymelitis*, oxymel.

72. Nouns in **ŏ** or **ō**:	Genitive in **ōnis**:	Stem in **ōn**:
leŏ, *lion*,	leōnis,	leōn.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in—

1. **onis**:—most national names: *Macedŏ*, *Macedonis*, Macedonian.
2. **inis**:[2]—*Apollŏ; homŏ*, man; *nēmŏ*, nobody; *turbŏ*, whirlwind; and nouns in **dŏ** and **gŏ**: *grandŏ*, *grandinis*, hail; *virgŏ*, *virginis*, maiden; except—*harpagŏ*, ōnis; *ligŏ*, ōnis; *praedŏ*, ōnis, also *comedŏ*, *cūdŏ*, *mangŏ*, *spadŏ*, *ūnedŏ*, *ūdŏ*.
3. **nis**:—*carŏ*, *carnis* (for *carinis*[2]), flesh; see **64**, 2, note 1.
4. **ĕnis**:—*Aniŏ*, *Aniĕnis*, river Anio; *Nēriŏ*, *Nēriĕnis*.
5. **ūs**:—a few Greek feminines: *Dīdō*, *Dīdūs*; see **68**.

73. Nouns in **y**[3]:	Gen. in **yis** (yos, ȳs):	Stem in **y**:
misy, *copperas*,	misyis (yos, ȳs),	misy.

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: *ālēc*, *ālēcis*, pickle; *lāc*, *lāctis*,[4] milk.

75. Nouns in **l**:	Genitive in **lis**:	Stem in **l**:
sōl, *sun*,	sōlis,	sōl.

NOTE.—*Fel*, *fellis*, gall; *mel*, *mellis*, honey; *sāl*, *salis*, salt. On neuters in *al*, see **63**.

76. Nouns in **n**:	Genitive in **nis**:	Stem in **n**:
paeān, *paean*,	paeānis,	paeān.
flūmen, *stream*,	flūminis,	flūmen, in.

NOTE 1.—Nouns in **en** have the variable radical vowel—**e**, **i**; see **60**, 1, 2).

NOTE 2.—There are a few Greek words in **ōn**, Gen. in **onis**, **ōntis**, St. in **on**, **ōnt**: *aēdōn*, *aēdonis*, nightingale; *Xenophōn*, *Xenophōntis*, Xenophon.

77. Nouns in **r**:	Genitive in **ris**:	Stem in **r**:
carcer, *prison*,	carceris,	carcer.

1. Nouns in **ār**, **ar**: (1) **ār**, G. **āris**, St. **āri**: *lār*, *lāris*, house; (2) *pār*, *paris*, pair; *fār*, *farris*, corn; *hēpar*, *hēpatis*, liver. For *ar*, G. *āris*, and *ar*, G. *aris*, see **63**.

2. Nouns in **ter**: Gen. in **tris**: *pater*, *patris*, father; except *later*, *lateris*, tile; *iter*, *itineris*, way; *Jūppiter*, *Jovis;* and Greek nouns: *crātēr*, *crātēris*, bowl.

---

[1] These are of Greek origin.

[2] Stem in *on*, *in*, or *oni*, *ini*, *ni;* see **60**, 1, 2).

[3] Nouns in *y* are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

[4] The only nouns in *c*.

NOTE.—*Imber* and names of months in **ber** have *bris* in the Genitive; *imber*, *imbris*, shower; *September*, *Septembris*, September; see **62**, IV., notes 1 and 2.

3. Nouns in **or**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *pāstor*, *pāstōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. **oris**, St. **or**: *arbor*, *arboris*, tree; *aequor*, sea; *marmor*, marble. But *cor*, *cordis*, heart.

4. Four in **ur**: G. **oris**, St. **or**: *ebur*, ivory; *femur*, thigh; *jecur*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *femur* has also *feminis*, and *jecur*, *jecinoris*, *jecineris*, and *jocineris*.

78. Nouns in **ut**:	Genitive in **itis**:	Stem in **ut**, **it**:
caput, *head*,	capitis,	caput, it.

III. NOUNS ENDING IN S.

79. Nouns in **ās**:	Genitive in **ātis**:	Stem in **āt**:
aetās, *age*,	aetātis,	aetāt.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **aris**:—*mās*, *maris*, a male;—stem, *mas*, *mari*; see **31**, 1.
2. **āsis**:—*vās*, *vāsis*, vessel.[1]
3. **assis**:—*ās*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
4. **antis**:—only masculine Greek nouns: *adamās*, *antis*, adamant.

NOTE.—*Anas*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns in *as* have *atis*: *anas*, *anatis*. *Vas*, surety, *Arcas*, Arcadian, and feminine Greek nouns in *as* have *adis*: *vas*, *vadis*, *lampas*, *lampadis*.[2]

80. Nouns in **ēs**:	Genitive in **is**:	Stem in **i**:[3]
nūbēs, *cloud*,	nūbis,	nūbi.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ēdis**:—*hērēs*, *hērēdis*, heir; *mercēs*, reward.
2. **edis**:—*pēs*, *pedis*, foot, and its compounds: *compēs*, *edis*, a fetter.
3. **eris**:—*Cerēs*, *Cereris*.[4]
4. **ētis**:—*quiēs*, rest, with compounds, *inquiēs*, *requiēs*, and a few Greek words: *lebēs*, *tapēs*.
5. **etis**:—*abiēs*, fir-tree; *ariēs*, ram; *pariēs*, wall.

NOTE.—*Bēs*, *bēssis*, two-thirds; *aes*, *aeris*,[4] copper; *praes*, *praedis*, surety.

81. Nouns in **es**:	Genitive in **itis**:	Stem in **et**, **it**:
mīles, *soldier*,	mīlitis,	mīlet, it.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **etis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *seges*, crop; *teges*, covering.
2. **idis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president; see **57**, 2.

---

[1] *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels; see **61**, 1, 3).

[2] Greek nouns sometimes have *ados* for *adis*.

[3] But see **64**, 1.

[4] See **61**, 1, 3).

82. Nouns in **is**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **i**:
avis, *bird*, avis, avi.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **eris**:—*cinis*, *cineris*,[1] ashes; *cucumis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmis*, ploughshare.
2. **idis**:—*capis*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lapis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek[2] words: as *tyrannis*, *idis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis*, and *tigris*.
3. **inis**:—*pollis* or *pollen*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.

Note.—*Glīs*, *glīris*, dormouse; *līs*, *lītis*, strife; *sēmis*, *sēmissis*, half an as; *Dīs*, *Dītis*; *Quirīs*, *Quirītis*; *Samnīs*, *Samnītis*.

83. Nouns in **ōs**: Genitive in **ōris**: Stem in **ōs**:
mōs, *custom*, mōris, mōs.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **ōtis**:—*cōs*, *cōtis*, whetstone; *dōs*, dowry; *nepōs*, grandson; *sacerdōs*, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. **ōdis**:—*cūstōs*, *cūstōdis*, guardian; see **36**, 2.
3. **ōis**:—a few masculine Greek nouns: *hērōs*, hero; *Mīnōs*, *Trōs*.

Note.—*Arbōs* or *arbor*, *arboris*, tree; *os*, *ossis*, bone; *bōs*, *bovis*, ox; see **66**.

84. Nouns in **ūs**, Gen. in **ūris** or **ūtis**: stem in **ūs** or **ūt**.

1. **ūris**:—*crūs*, leg; *jūs*, right; *jūs*, soup; *mūs*, mouse; *pūs*, pus; *rūs*, country; *tūs* (*thūs*), incense; *tellūs*, earth.
2. **ūtis**:—*juventūs*, youth; *salūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, servitude; *virtūs*, virtue; see **36**, 2.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **ūdis**:—*incūs*, anvil; *palūs*, marsh; *subscūs*, dovetail.
2. **uis**:—*grūs*, *gruis*, crane; *sūs*, swine.
3. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trapezūs*, *untis*.
4. **odis**:—Greek compounds in *pūs*: *tripūs*, *tripodis*, tripod.

Note.—*Fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, *laudis*, praise; see **64**, **2**, **2**), foot-note. For Greek nouns in *eus*, see **68**.

85. Nouns in **us**: Gen. in **eris** or **oris**: stem in **os**.

1. **eris**:—*latus*, *lateris*, side: stem, *latos*.[3] So also: *acus*, *foedus*, *fūnus*, *genus*, *glomus*, *mūnus*, *olus*, *onus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scelus*, *sīdus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *Venus*, *viscus*, *vulnus*.

2. **oris**:—*corpus*, *corporis*, body: stem, *corpos*.[3] So also *decus*, *dēdecus*,

---

[1] Stem *cinis*, *ciner* for *cines* with variable vowel *i*, *e*; see **24**, 1; **31**, 1; and **57**, 2.

[2] Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis*; *Salamīs* has *Salamīnis*; *Simois*, *Simoentis*.

[3] See **61**, 1, foot-note.

facinus, faenus, frīgus, lepus, lītus, nemus, pectus, pecus, penus, pignus, stercus, tempus, tergus.

Note.—*Pecus, pecudis,* a head of cattle; *Ligus, Liguris,* Ligurian; see **31.**

86. Nouns in **ys**:[1] Genitive in **yis, yos, ȳs**: Stem in **y**:
Othrys, Othryos, Othry.

87. Nouns in **bs**: Genitive in **bis**: Stem in **bi**:[2]
urbs, *city*, urbis, urbi.

88. Nouns in **ms**: Genitive in **mis**: Stem in **m**:
hiems, *winter*, hiemis, hiem.

89. Nouns in **eps**: Genitive in **ipis**: Stem in **ep, ip.**
prīnceps, *prince*, prīncipis, prīncep, ip.

Note.—But *auceps, aucupis,* fowler. Other nouns in **ps** retain the stem-vowel unchanged; *merops, meropis,* bee-eater. *Gryps,* griffin, has *gryphis.*

90. Nouns in **s** after **l, n,** or **r**: Gen. in **tis**: Stem in **ti**:
puls, *broth*, pultis, pulti.
mēns, *mind*, mentis, menti.[3]
ars, *art*, artis, arti.

Note.—*Frōns, frondis,* leaf; *glāns, glandis,* acorn; *jūglāns, jūglandis,* walnut; see **64,** 2.

IV. NOUNS ENDING IN X.

91. Nouns in **āx**: Genitive in **ācis**: Stem in **āc**:
pāx, *peace*, pācis, pāc.

Note.—*Fax, facis,* torch; so also a few Greek nouns. *Astyanax, actis;* so a few Greek names of men.

92. Nouns in **ēx**: Genitive in **ēcis** or **ēgis**: Stem in **ēc, ēg**:
1. **ēcis**:—*ālēx,* pickle; *vervēx,* wether.
2. **ēgis**:—*lēx,* law; *rēx,* king, and their compounds.

93. Nouns in **ex**: Genitive in **icis**: Stem in **ic, ec**:
jūdex, *judge*, jūdicis, jūdic, ec.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
1. **ecis**:—*nex,* murder; *fēnisex,* mower; (*prex*), *precis,* prayer.
2. **egis**:—*grex,* flock; *aquilex,* water-inspector.
3. **igis**:—*rēmex, rēmigis,* rower; see **24,** 1.

Note.—*Faex, faecis,* lees; *senex, senis,* old man (**66**); *supellex, supellectilis,* furniture.

94. Nouns in **īx**: Genitive in **īcis**: Stem in **īc**:
rādīx, *root*, rādīcis, rādīc.

---

[1] These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ydis: chlamys, chlamydis,* cloak.

[2] Dissyllables have the stem in *b*.

[3] Dissyllables in *ns* have the stem in *t*.

95. Nouns in **ix**: Genitive in **icis**: Stem in **ic**:
calix, *cup*, calicis, calic.

Note.—*Nix*, *nivis* (66), *snow; strix*, *strigis*, screech-owl; a few Gallic names also have the Genitive in *igis: Dumnorix*, *Orgĕtorix*.

96. Nouns in **ōx** or **ox**: *vōx*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

Note.—There are also a few national names in **ox**, Gen. in **ocis** or **ogis**: *Cappadox*, *Cappadocis; Allobrox*, *Allobrogis*.

97. Nouns in **ux**: Genitive in **ucis**: Stem in **uc**:
dux, *leader*, ducis, duc.

Note 1.—*Lūx*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollūx*, *Pollūcis*, Pollux; *frūx*, *frūgis*, fruit.

Note 2.—Greek nouns in *ȳx* and *yx* are variously declined: *Eryx*, *Erycis*, Eryx; *bombȳx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stygis*, Styx; *coccȳx*, *coccȳgis*, cuckoo; *onyx*, *onychis*, onyx.

98. Nouns in **x** after **n** or **r**: Genitive in **cis**: Stem in **ci**:
arx, *citadel*, arcis, arci.

Note 1.—*Conjunx* or *conjux*, *conjugis*, spouse.

Note 2.—Most nouns in *x* preceded by *n* are of Greek origin: *lynx*, *lyncis*, lynx; *phalanx*, *phalangis*, phalanx.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in **ō, or, ōs, er,** and in **ēs** and **es** *increasing in the Genitive*,[1] are masculine: *sermō*, discourse; *dolor*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *agger*, mound; *pēs*, Genitive *pedis*, foot.

100. Nouns in **Ō** are masculine, except the *Feminines*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **ō**, Gen. *inis*, except *cardō*, *ōrdō*, *turbō*, masc., *cupīdō* and *margō*, masc. or fem.
2. *Carō*, flesh, and the Greek *Argō*, *ēchō*, echo.
3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **iō**: *ratiō*, reason; *contiō*, an assembly.

101. Nouns in **OR** are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminine:—arbor*, tree.
2. *The Neuters:—ador*, spelt; *aequor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

102. Nouns in **ŌS** are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminines:—arbōs*, tree; *cōs*, whetstone; *dōs*, dowry; *ēōs*, dawn.
2. *The Neuter:—ōs*, mouth.

Note.—*Os*, bone, and a few Greek words in *os* are neuter: *chaos*, chaos.

103. Nouns in **ER** are masculine, except—

---

[1] That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

1. *The Feminine:*—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *The Neuters:*—(1) *cadāver*, corpse; *iter*, way; *tūber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *vēr*, spring; *verber*, scourge;—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *eris:* *acer*, maple-tree; *păpāver*, poppy.

104. Nouns in **ĒS** and **ES** increasing in the Genitive are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminines:*—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *merges*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest (with its compounds); *seges*, crop; *teges*, mat; sometimes *āles*, bird, and *quadrupēs*, quadruped.
2. *The Neuter:*—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in **ās, as, is, ys, x,** in **ēs** *not increasing in the Genitive,* and in **s** *preceded by a consonant,*

are feminine:[1] *aetās,* age; *nāvis,* ship; *chlamys,* cloak; *pāx,* peace; *nūbēs,* cloud; *urbs,* city.

106. Nouns in **ĀS** and **AS** are feminine, except—

1. *The Masculines:*—*ās*, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in **as**, Gen. *antis*.
2. *The Neuters:*—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in **as**, Gen. *atis*.

107. Nouns in **IS** and **YS** are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *nātālis*, birthday; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine: *canis*, *amnis*, *cinis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis*, path;[1] *ēnsis*, sword; *lapis*, stone; *mēnsis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *sentis*, brier; *torris*, brand; *vectis*, lever; and a few others.
3. Names of mountains in **ys**: *Othrys*.

108. Nouns in **X** are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. Greek masculines: *corax*, raven; *thōrāx*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *nex*, (*prex*), *supellex*.
3. *Calix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *trādux*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in **yx**.
4. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, lynx.

109. Nouns in **ĒS** not increasing in the Genitive are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

---

[1] Nouns whose gender is determined by *Signification* (42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by *Endings*. *Callis* is sometimes *feminine*.

Acīnacēs, cimeter; sometimes *palumbēs*, dove; and *veprēs*, thorn-bush.

NOTE.—For Greek nouns in *es*, see **111**, note.

110. Nouns in **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. *Dēns*, tooth; *fōns*, fountain; *mōns*, mountain; *pōns*, bridge; generally *adeps*, fat, and *rudēns*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masculine noun understood: *oriēns* (sōl), east; *cōnfluēns* (amnis), confluence; *tridēns* (raster), trident; *quadrāns* (ās), quarter.
3. *Chalybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpēns*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animāns*, animal, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and **us**

are neuter:[1] *poēma*, poem; *mare*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *corpus*, body.

NOTE.—A few Greek nouns in *es* are also neuter: *cacoēthes*, desire, passion.

112. Nouns in **L, ĀR,** and **AR** are neuter, except the *Masculines*, viz.: *Mūgil*, mullet; *sāl*,[1] salt; *sōl*, sun; *lār*, hearth; *salar*, trout.

113. Nouns in **N** are neuter, except—

1. *The Masculines:*—*pecten*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **ān, ēn, īn, ōn**: *paeān*, paean; *canōn*, rule.
2. *The Feminines:*—*aēdōn*, nightingale; *alcyōn* (*halcyōn*), kingfisher; *īcōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. Nouns in **UR** are neuter, except the *Masculines*, viz.: *Furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtle-dove; *vultur*, vulture.

115. Nouns in **ŪS** and **US** are neuter, except—

1. *The Masculines:*—*lepus*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in **pūs**.
2. *The Feminines:*—*tellūs*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **ūs**, Gen. **ūtis** or **ūdis**: *virtūs*, virtue; *palūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us—*masculine;* **ū**—*neuter.*

They are declined as follows:

---

[1] See foot-note, page 47. *Sal* is sometimes *neuter* in the singular.

Frūctus, *fruit*. Cornū, *horn*.

		SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
Nom.	frūct**us**	corn**ū**	us	ū
Gen.	frūct**ūs**	corn**ūs**	ūs	ūs
Dat.	frūct**uī**, **ū**[1]	corn**ū**	uī, ū[1]	ū
Acc.	frūct**um**	corn**ū**	um	ū
Voc.	frūct**us**	corn**ū**	us	ū
Abl.	frūct**ū**	corn**ū**	ū	ū
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	frūct**ūs**	corn**ua**	ūs	ua
Gen.	frūct**uum**	corn**uum**	uum	uum
Dat.	frūct**ibus**	corn**ibus**	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)
Acc.	frūct**ūs**	corn**ua**	ūs	ua
Voc.	frūct**ūs**	corn**ua**	ūs	ua
Abl.	frūct**ibus**	corn**ibus**	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

1. The Stem in nouns of the fourth declension ends in **u**: *frūctu*, *cornu*.

2. The Case-Endings here given contain the characteristic **u**, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus*; see **22**.

117. The following Irregular Case-Endings occur:[2]

1. **Ubus** for *ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural—

1) Regularly in *acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; and *tribus*, tribe.

2) Often in *artus*,[3] joint; *lacus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *portus*, harbor; *specus*, cave; and *verū*, spit.

3) Occasionally in a few other words, as *genū*, knee; *tonitrus*, thunder, etc.

2. **Uis**, the uncontracted form for *ūs*, in the Genitive: *frūctuis* for *frūctūs*.[4]

3. **Uos**, an old form[5] of the Genitive ending: *senātuos*,[6] of the senate.

118. Nouns in **us** are masculine, those in **ū** are neuter, but the following in **us** are—

---

[1] Thus *uī* is contracted into *ū*: *frūctuī*, *frūctū*.

[2] To these should be added the rare endings *ūd* for *ū* in the Abl. Sing., *uus* for *ūs* in the Gen. Sing., and *uūs* for *ūs* in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. See Wordsworth, pp. 60–62.

[3] Generally plural, *limbs*.

[4] It has been already mentioned (**47**, note 1) that the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection. The close relationship between the third declension and the fourth will be seen by comparing the declension of *frūctus*, a *u*-noun of the fourth, with that of *grūs* (**66**, 2), a *u*-noun of the third. In fact, if the old Genitive ending *uis* had not been contracted into *ūs*, there would have been no fourth declension whatever. All *u*-nouns would have belonged to the third declension.

[5] Compare the Greek Genitive in *υος*: *ἰχθύς*, *ἰχθύος*, *fish*.

[6] This was first weakened to *senātuis* (**22**), and then contracted to *senātūs* (**23**, 2), the classical form.

Feminine by Exception:—(1) *acus*, needle; *colus*, distaff; *domus*, house; *manus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe;—(2) *Īdūs*, Ides; *Quīnquātrūs*, feast of Minerva; generally *penus*, store, when of this declension; rarely *specus*, den;—(3) see **42**, II.

Note.—The only neuter nouns in common use are *cornū*, *genū*, and *verū*.[1]

119. **Second and Fourth Declensions.**—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Domus*, f., house, has a Locative form *domī*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:[2]

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs, domūs
Voc.	domus	domūs
Abl.	domō (domū)	domibus

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *fīcus*, *laurus*, *pīnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *ūs*, *us*, and *ū*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurūs*, D. *laurō*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *laurū*, etc. So also *colus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senātus*, senate, and *tumultus*, tumult, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the Genitive ending *ī* of the second; *senātī*, *tumultī*.

4. *Quercus*, oak, regularly of Decl. IV., has *quercōrum* in the Gen. Plur.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**—*feminine*, and are declined as follows:

	Diēs, *day*.	Rēs, *thing*.	
		SINGULAR.	Case-Endings.
Nom.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
Gen.	di**ēī** or di**ē**	r**ĕī** or r**ē**	ē̆ī, ē
Dat.	di**ēī** or di**ē**	r**ĕī** or r**ē**	ē̆ī, ē
Acc.	di**em**	r**em**	em
Voc.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
Abl.	di**ē**	r**ē**	ē

---

[1] But neuter forms occur in certain cases of other words. Thus, Dat. *pecuī*, Abl. *pecū*, Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. *pecua*, from obsolete *pecū*, cattle; also *artua* from *artus*; *ossua* from obsolete *ossū*, bone; *specua* from *specus*.

[2] Combining forms of the second declension with those of the fourth.

		PLURAL.	CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
Gen.	di**ērum**	r**ērum**	ērum
Dat.	di**ēbus**	r**ēbus**	ēbus
Acc.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
Voc.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
Abl.	di**ēbus**	r**ēbus**	ēbus

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *diē*, *rē*.[1]

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ĕī*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em*.

NOTE.—Traces of a Locative in *ē* are preserved in certain phrases found in early Latin, as *diē septimī*, on the seventh day; *diē crāstinī*, on the morrow; *diē prŏximī*, on the next day. *Cotīdiē*, *hodiē*, *prīdiē*, and the like are doubtless Locatives in origin.

121. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **Ī** or **ēī** for *ĕī* in the Gen. and Dat.: *aciī* for *aciēī*, of sharpness; *diēī* for *diĕī*; *rēī* for *rĕī*; *perniciī* for *perniciēī*, of destruction.

2. **Ēs** in the Gen. in early Latin: *diēs*, of a day; *rabiēs*, of madness.

122. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension want the plural, except[2]—

1. *Diēs* and *rēs*, complete in all their parts.

2. *Aciēs*, sharpness; *effigiēs*, image; *faciēs*, face; *seriēs*, series; *speciēs*, appearance; *spēs*,[3] hope, used in the Sing., and in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur.

3. *Ēluviēs*, used in the Sing. and in the Nom. Plur., and *glaciēs* in the Sing. and in the Acc. Plur.

123. GENDER.—Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine—

EXCEPT *diēs*, day, and *merīdiēs*, midday, *masculine*, though *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when it means *time*.

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.[4] Common to all declensions.

---

[1] Originally most *e*-stems appear to have been either *a*-stems or *s*-stems. Thus: 1) Most stems in *iē* are modified from *iā*: *māteriā*, *māteriē*, Nom. *māteriē-s*, material; see **25**, 1, note, with foot-note 6. In this class of words the Gen. and Dat. Sing. are formed from the stem in *iā*, not from that in *iēs*: *māteriae*, not *māteriēī*. 2) *Diēs*, *fidēs*, *plēbēs*, and *spēs* appear to have been *s*-stems, modified to *ē*-stems, as many *s*-stems in the third declension were modified to *i*-stems; see **62**, I., 1, foot-note.

[2] A few plural forms in addition to those here given are sometimes cited, but seem not to occur in writers of the classical period.

[3] In early Latin *spērēs* occurs in the Nom. and Acc. Plur., formed from *spēs* treated as a stem in *s*. Thus: *spēs*, *spēsēs*, *spērēs* (**31**, 1).

[4] For exceptions, see **43**.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS,[1] INFINITIVES, and CLAUSES *used as Nouns.*

II. Gender determined by Nominative ending.[2]

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
	DECLENSION I.	
ās, ēs.	**a, ē.**	
	DECLENSION II.	
er, ir, us, os, ōs.		**um, on.**
	DECLENSION III.	
ō, or, ōs, er, ēs and **es** *increasing in the Genitive.*	**ās, as, is, ys, x, ēs** and **es** *not increasing in the Genitive,* **s** *preceded by a consonant.*	**a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, us.**
	DECLENSION IV.	
us.		**ū.**
	DECLENSION V.	
	ēs.	

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But—

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined:[3] *rēspūblica = rēs pūblica*, republic, the public thing; *jūsjūrandum = jūs jūrandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined:[3] *paterfamiliās = pater familiās* (**49**, 1), or *pater familiae*, the father of a family.

126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	rēspūblica	jūsjūrandum	paterfamiliās
Gen.	rĕīpūblicae	jūrisjūrandī	patrisfamiliās
Dat.	rĕīpūblicae	jūrījūrandō	patrīfamiliās
Acc.	rempūblicam	jūsjūrandum	patremfamiliās
Voc.	rēspūblica	jūsjūrandum	paterfamiliās
Abl.	rēpūblicā	jūrejūrandō	patrefamiliās

---

[1] Except names of persons.

[2] For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

[3] Words thus formed, however, are not compounds in the strict sense of the term; see **340**, I., note.

PLURAL.

Nom.	rēspūblicae	jūrajūranda	patrēsfamiliās
Gen.	rērumpūblicārum		patrumfamiliās
Dat.	rēbuspūblicīs		patribusfamiliās
Acc.	rēspūblicās	jūrajūranda	patrēsfamiliās
Voc.	rēspūblicae	jūrajūranda	patrēsfamiliās
Abl.	rēbuspūblicīs		patribusfamiliās

NOTE 1.—The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *rēs pūblica; pater familiās* or *familiae.*

NOTE 2.—*Paterfamiliās* sometimes has *familiārum* in the plural: *patrēsfamiliārum.*

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*heteroclita*[1]) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*heterogenea*[2]) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns. The following are the most important:

1. The letters of the alphabet, *a*, *b*, *c*, *alpha*, *bēta*, etc.
2. Foreign words: *Jācōb*, *Iliberī;* though foreign words often are declined.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case.*

130. PLURAL WANTING.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *jūstitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold; *famēs*, hunger; *sanguis*, blood.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

1) Most names of persons and places: *Cicerō*, *Rōma.*

2) Abstract Nouns: *fidēs*, faith; *jūstitia*, justice.

3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

4) A few others: *merīdiēs*, midday; *specimen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespera*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes;* names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality: *Scīpiōnēs*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *avāritiae*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

3. In the poets, the *plural* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

---

[1] From ἕτερος, *another*, and κλίσις, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

[2] From ἕτερος, *another*, and γένος, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

131. Singular wanting.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *mājōrēs*, forefathers; *posterī*, descendants; *geminī*, twins; *līberī*, children.

2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphī*, Delphi.

3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchānālia*, *Olympia*, *Sāturnālia*.

4) *Arma*, arms; *dīvitiae*, riches; *exsequiae*, funeral rites; *exuviae*, spoils; *Īdūs*, Ides; *indūtiae*, truce; *īnsidiae*, ambuscade; *mānēs*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnia*, duties; *nūptiae*, nuptials; *rēliquiae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *ūnus ex* with the plural: *ūnus ex līberīs*, one of the children, or a child.

Note.—The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. Plural with Change of Meaning.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Aedēs, *temple;*	aedēs, (1) *temples*, (2) *a house.*[1]
Auxilium, *help;*	auxilia, *auxiliaries.*
Carcer, *prison*, *barrier;*	carcerēs, *barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *castle*, *hut;*	castra, *camp.*
Comitium, *name of a part of the Roman forum;*	comitia, *the assembly held in the comitium.*
Cōpia, *plenty*, *force;*	cōpiae, (1) *stores*, (2) *troops.*
Facultās, *ability;*	facultātēs, *wealth*, *means.*
Fīnis, *end;*	fīnēs, *borders*, *territory.*
Fortūna, *fortune;*	fortūnae, *possessions*, *wealth.*
Grātia, *gratitude*, *favor;*	grātiae, *thanks.*
Hortus, *garden;*	hortī, (1) *gardens*, (2) *pleasure-grounds.*
Impedīmentum, *hindrance;*	impedīmenta, (1) *hindrances*, (2) *baggage.*
Līttera, *letter of alphabet;*	lītterae, (1) *letters of alphabet*, (2) *epistle*, *writing*, *letters*, *literature.*
Lūdus, *play*, *sport;*	lūdī, (1) *plays*, (2) *public spectacle.*
Mōs, *custom;*	mōrēs, *manners*, *character.*
Nātālis (diēs), *birth-day;*	nātālēs, *pedigree*, *parentage.*
Opera, *work*, *service;*	operae, *workmen.*
Pars, *part;*	partēs, (1) *parts*, (2) *a party.*
Rōstrum, *beak of ship;*	rōstra, (1) *beaks*, (2) *the rostra or tribune in Rome* (adorned with beaks).
Sāl, *salt;*	salēs, *witty sayings.*

---

[1] *Aedēs* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

133. **Defective in Case.**—Some nouns are defective in case:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing.: ——, *opis*, ——, *opem*, ——, *ope*, help; ——, *vicis*,[1] ——, *vicem*, ——, *vice*, change.

2. In the Nom., Gen., and Voc. Sing.: ——, *precī*, *precem*, ——, *prece*, prayer.

3. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: ——, *dapis*,[1] *dapī*, *dapem*, ——, *dape*, food; ——, *frūgis*, *frūgī*, *frūgem*, ——, *frūge*, fruit.

4. In the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.: Most nouns of the fifth Decl.; see **122**.

Note.—Many neuters are also defective in the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.: *fār*, *fel*, *mel*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, etc., especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases also in the singular: *epos*, *melos*; also a few nouns of Decl. IV.: *metus*, *situs*, etc.

5. In the Gen. Plur.: many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex*, *pāx*, *pix*; *cor*, *cōs*, *rōs*; *sāl*, *sōl*, *lūx*.

134. **Number and Case.**—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other. The following forms occur: *fors*, *forte*, chance; *luēs*, *luem*, *lue*, pestilence; *diciōnis*, *diciōnī*, *diciōnem*, *diciōne*, sway. *Fās*, right, and *nefās*, wrong, are used in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing.; *īnstar*, likeness, *nihil*, nothing, and *opus*, need, in the Nom. and Acc.; *secus*, sex, in the Acc. only. Many verbal nouns in *ū* and a few other words have only the Ablative Singular: *jussū*, by order; *mandātū*, by command; *rogātū*, by request; *sponte*, by choice, etc.

III. HETEROCLITES.

135. Of **Declensions** II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*; see **119**.

136. Of **Declensions** II. and III. are—

1. *Jūgerum*, an acre; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur.: *jūgerum*, *jūgerī*; plural, *jūgera*, *jūgerum*, *jūgeribus*.

2. *Vās*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur.: *vās*, *vāsis*; plural, *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *ālia*: *Bacchānālia*, *Sāturnālia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancīle*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of **Declensions** III. and V. are—

1. *Requiēs*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requiē* of the fifth.

2. *Famēs*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the Ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *fame*, of the third).

138. **Forms in ia and iēs.**—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *iēs* of Decl. V.: *luxuria*, *luxuriēs*, luxury; *māteria*, *māteriēs*, material.

139. **Forms in us and um.**—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *cōnātus*, *cōnātum*, attempt; *ēventus*, *ēventum*, event.

---

[1] Defective also in the Gen. Plur.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventūs* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *juventa* (ae): *senectūs* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *senecta* (ae): *paupertās* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *pauperiēs* (ēī).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jocus, m., jest;	plural, *joci*, m., *joca*, n.
Locus, m., place;	plural, *loci*, m., topics, *loca*, n., places.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Carbasus, f., linen;	plural, *carbasi*, f., *carbasa*, n.
Margarīta, f., pearl;	plural, *margarītae*, f., *margarīta*, n.
Ostrea, f., oyster;	plural, *ostreae*, f., *ostrea*, n.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

Caelum, n., heaven;	plural, *caelī*, m.

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

Frēnum, n., bridle;	plural, *frēnī*, m., *frēna*, n.
Rāstrum, n., rake;	plural, *rāstrī*, m., *rāstra*, n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

Epulum, n., feast;	plural, *epulae*, f.

144. FORMS IN US AND UM.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *cōnātus* (ūs), *cōnātum* (ī), effort; *menda* (ae), *mendum* (ī), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is the part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bonus*, good; *māgnus*, great.

NOTE.—The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum templum*, a good temple. Thus, in the Nom. Sing., *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: A AND O STEMS.

148. Bonus, *good.*[1]

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Voc.	bon**e**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Gen.	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dat.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Voc.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

149. Līber, *free.*[2]

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	līber	līber**a**	līber**um**
Gen.	līber**ī**	līber**ae**	līber**ī**
Dat.	līber**ō**	līber**ae**	līber**ō**
Acc.	līber**um**	līber**am**	līber**um**
Voc.	līber	līber**a**	līber**um**
Abl.	līber**ō**	līber**ā**	līber**ō**
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	līber**ī**	līber**ae**	līber**a**
Gen.	līber**ōrum**	līber**ārum**	līber**ōrum**
Dat.	līber**īs**	līber**īs**	līber**īs**
Acc.	līber**ōs**	līber**ās**	līber**a**
Voc.	līber**ī**	līber**ae**	līber**a**
Abl.	līber**īs**	līber**īs**	līber**īs**

---

[1] BONUS is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (**51**), in the Fem. like *mĕnsa* of Decl. I. (**48**), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (**51**). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bonă* in the Fem.

[2] LĪBER is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (**51**), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bonus*.

150. Aeger, *sick.*[1]

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aeger	aegr**a**	aegr**um**
Gen.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ī**
Dat.	aegr**ō**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ō**
Acc.	aegr**um**	aegr**am**	aegr**um**
Voc.	aeger	aegr**a**	aegr**um**
Abl.	aegr**ō**	aegr**ā**	aegr**ō**

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**a**
Gen.	aegr**ōrum**	aegr**ārum**	aegr**ōrum**
Dat.	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**
Acc.	aegr**ōs**	aegr**ās**	aegr**a**
Voc.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**a**
Abl.	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**

NOTE.—Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *līber:*

1) *Asper*, rough; *lacer*, torn; *miser*, wretched; *prōsper*, prosperous; *tener*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it: *dexter*, *dextera*, or *dextra*.

2) *Satur*, sated; *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*.

3) Compounds in *fer* and *ger:* *mortifer*, deadly; *āliger*, winged.

151. IRREGULARITIES.—Nine adjectives have in the singular **īus**[2] in the Genitive and **ī** in the Dative, and are declined as follows:

Alius, *another.* Sōlus, *alone.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	alius[3]	alia	aliud[3]	sōlus	sōla	sōlum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus[4]	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum
Voc.				sōle	sōla	sōlum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō

---

[1] AEGER is declined in the masculine like *ager* (**51**), and in the feminine and neuter like *bonus*.

[2] *Ī* in *īus* is often shortened by the poets; regularly so in *alterĭus* in dactylic verse (**609**).

[3] Rarely *alis* and *alid.* The same stem appears in *ali-quis* (**190**, 2), some one; *ali-ter*, otherwise.

[4] For *aliīus* by contraction. *Alterĭus* often supplies the place of *alīus*.

PLURAL.

Nom.	aliī	aliae	alia	sōlī	sōlae	sōla
Gen.	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum
Dat.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs
Acc.	aliōs	aliās	alia	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla
Voc.				sōlī	sōlae	sōla
Abl.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs

1. These nine adjectives are: *alius*, *a*, *ud*, another; *nūllus*, *a*, *um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ūllus*, any; *ūnus*,[1] one; *alter*, *-tera*, *-terum*,[2] the other[3]; *uter*, *-tra*, *-trum*,[4] which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*,[4] neither.

NOTE 1.—The regular forms occasionally occur in the Gen. and Dat. of some of these adjectives.

NOTE 2.—Like *uter* are declined its compounds: *uterque*, *utervīs*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*. In *alteruter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alterĭus utrīus;* and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutrīus*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows:

Ācer, *sharp.*[5]

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer[6]	ācr**is**	ācr**e**
Gen.	ācr**is**	ācr**is**	ācr**is**
Dat.	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**
Acc.	ācr**em**	ācr**em**	ācr**e**
Voc.	ācer	ācr**is**	ācr**e**
Abl.	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**

---

[1] See declension, 175.

[2] Gen. *alterĭus*, Dat. *alterī;* otherwise declined like *līber* (149).

[3] Or *one of two*, *the one*.

[4] Gen. *utrīus*, Dat. *utrī;* otherwise like *aeger* (150). *Neuter* like *uter*.

[5] ĀCER is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

[6] These forms in *er* are like those in *er* of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in developing final *r* into *er: ācer* for *acris*, stem, *ācri*.

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ăcr**ēs**	ăcr**ēs**	ăcr**ia**
Gen.	ăcr**ium**	ăcr**ium**	ăcr**ium**
Dat.	ăcr**ibus**	ăcr**ibus**	ăcr**ibus**
Acc.	ăcr**ēs, īs**	ăcr**ēs, īs**	ăcr**ia**
Voc.	ăcr**ēs**	ăcr**ēs**	ăcr**ia**
Abl.	ăcr**ibus**	ăcr**ibus**	ăcr**ibus**

NOTE 1.—Like ĂCER are declined:

1) *Alacer*, lively; *campester*, level; *celeber*, famous; *celer*,[1] swift; *equester*, equestrian; *palūster*, marshy; *pedester*, pedestrian; *puter*, putrid; *salūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *volucer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Octōber*, *bris*.[2]

NOTE 2.—In the poets and in early Latin the form in *er*, as *ăcer*, is sometimes feminine, and the form in *is*, as *ăcris*, is sometimes masculine.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows:

	Trīstis, *sad.*[3]		Trīstior, *sadder.*[4]	
		SINGULAR.		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	trīst**is**	trīst**e**	trīstior	trīstius
Gen.	trīst**is**	trīst**is**	trīstiōr**is**	trīstiōr**is**
Dat.	trīst**ī**	trīst**ī**	trīstiōr**ī**	trīstiōr**ī**
Acc.	trīst**em**	trīst**e**	trīstiōr**em**	trīstius
Voc.	trīst**is**	trīst**e**	trīstior	trīstius
Abl.	trīst**ī**	trīst**ī**	trīstiōre (**ī**)[5]	trīstiōre (**ī**)
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	trīst**ēs**	trīst**ia**	trīstiōr**ēs**	trīstiōr**a**
Gen.	trīst**ium**	trīst**ium**	trīstiōr**um**	trīstiōr**um**
Dat.	trīst**ibus**	trīst**ibus**	trīstiōr**ibus**	trīstiōr**ibus**
Acc.	trīst**ēs, īs**	trīst**ia**	trīstiōr**ēs** (**īs**)	trīstiōr**a**
Voc.	trīst**ēs**	trīst**ia**	trīstiōr**ēs**	trīstiōr**a**
Abl.	trīst**ibus**	trīst**ibus**	trīstiōr**ibus**	trīstiōr**ibus**

NOTE 1.—Like *trīstior*, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *ī*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But *complūrēs*, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium;* Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria*; see *Plūs*, **165**.

NOTE 2.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e: cognōmine* from *cognōminis*, of the same name.

---

[1] This retains *e* in declension: *celer*, *celeris*, *celere;* and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

[2] See also 77, 2, note.

[3] *Trīstis* and *trīste* are declined like *ăcris* and *ăcre;* the stem is *trīsti*.

[4] *Trīstior* is the comparative (**160**) of *trīstis;* the stem was originally *trīstiōs*, but it has been modified to *trīstius* (**61**, 1) and *trīstiŏr* (**31**).

[5] Enclosed endings are rare.

155. Adjectives of One Ending generally end in *s* or *x*, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

156. Audāx, *audacious.*[1] Fēlīx, *happy.*[1]

	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	audāx	audāx	fēlīx	fēlīx
Gen.	audāc**is**	audāc**is**	fēlīc**is**	fēlīc**is**
Dat.	audāc**ī**	audāc**ī**	fēlīc**ī**	fēlīc**ī**
Acc.	audāc**em**	audāx	fēlīc**em**	fēlīx
Voc.	audāx	audāx	fēlīx	fēlīx
Abl.	audāc**ī** (**e**)	audāc**ī** (**e**)	fēlīc**ī** (**e**)	fēlīc**ī** (**e**)
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	audāc**ēs**	audāc**ia**	fēlīc**ēs**	fēlīc**ia**
Gen.	audāc**ium**	audāc**ium**	fēlīc**ium**	fēlīc**ium**
Dat.	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**
Acc.	audāc**ēs** (**īs**)	audāc**ia**	fēlīc**ēs** (**īs**)	fēlīc**ia**
Voc.	audāc**ēs**	audāc**ia**	fēlīc**ēs**	fēlīc**ia**
Abl.	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**	fēlīc**ibus**

157. Amāns, *loving.* Prūdēns, *prudent.*

	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
Gen.	amant**is**	amant**is**[2]	prūdent**is**	prūdent**is**[2]
Dat.	amant**ī**	amant**ī**	prūdent**ī**	prūdent**ī**
Acc.	amant**em**	amāns	prūdent**em**	prūdēns
Voc.	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
Abl.	amant**e** (**ī**)	amant**e** (**ī**)	prūdent**ī** (**e**)	prūdent**ī** (**e**)
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	amant**ēs**	amant**ia**	prūdent**ēs**	prūdent**ia**
Gen.	amant**ium**	amant**ium**	prūdent**ium**	prūdent**ium**
Dat.	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**	prūdent**ibus**	prūdent**ibus**
Acc.	amant**ēs** (**īs**)	amant**ia**	prūdent**ēs** (**īs**)	prūdent**ia**
Voc.	amant**ēs**	amant**ia**	prūdent**ēs**	prūdent**ia**
Abl.	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**	prūdent**ibus**	prūdent**ibus**

Note.—The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending **e**, and the adjective, **ī**.

---

[1] Observe that *ī* in the Abl. Sing., and *ia*, *ium*, and *īs* in the Plur., are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems; see **62** and **63**.

[2] According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the *e* which is long in *prūdēns* before *ns* is short in all other forms of the word, i. e., before *nt*. In the same manner the *a* which is long in *amāns*, is according to Ritschl short in *amantis*, *amantī*, etc.; see p. 87, footnote 2. See also Schmitz, pp. 8–26; Ritschl, Rhein. Museum, xxxi., p. 488; Müller, p. 27.

Participles used adjectively may of course take **i**. A few adjectives have only **e** in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupere*, poor; *pūbes*, *pūbere*, mature;—(2) those in **es**, G. **itis** or **idis**: *āles*, *dēses*, *dīves*, *sōspes*, *superstes*; (3) *caelebs*, *compos*, *impos*, *princeps*.

158. Vetus, *old*. Memor, *mindful*.

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	memor	memor
Gen.	veter**is**	veter**is**	memor**is**	memor**is**
Dat.	veter**ī**	veter**ī**	memor**ī**	memor**ī**
Acc.	veter**em**	vetus	memor**em**	memor
Voc.	vetus	vetus	memor	memor
Abl.	veter**e** (**ī**)	veter**e** (**ī**)	memor**ī**	memor**ī**

PLURAL.

Nom.	veter**ēs**	veter**a**	memor**ēs**
Gen.	veter**um**	veter**um**	memor**um**
Dat.	veter**ibus**	veter**ibus**	memor**ibus**
Acc.	veter**ēs** (**īs**)	veter**a**	memor**ēs** (**īs**)
Voc.	veter**ēs**	veter**a**	memor**ēs**
Abl.	veter**ibus**	veter**ibus**	memor**ibus**

1. NEUTER PLURAL.—Many adjectives like *memor*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neuter Plural; all others have the ending *ia*, as *fēlīcia*, *prūdentia*, except *ūber*, *ūbera*, fertile, and *vetus*, *vetera*.

2. GENITIVE PLURAL.—Most adjectives have **ium**, but the following have **um**:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only **e** in the Ablative Singular (**157**, note): *pauper*, *pauperum*.

2) Those with the Genitive in **eris**, **oris**, **uris**: *vetus*, *veterum*, old; *memor*, *memorum*, mindful; *cicur*, *cicurum*, tame.

3) Those in **ceps**: *anceps*, *ancipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have **um**: *inops* (ops, opum), *inopum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be—

I. INDECLINABLE: *frūgī*, frugal, good; *nēquam*, worthless; *mīlle*, thousand; see **176**.

II. DEFECTIVE: (cēterus) *cētera*, *cēterum*, the other, the rest; (lūdicer) *lūdicra*, *lūdicrum*, sportive; (sōns) *sontis*, guilty; (sēminex) *sēminecis*, half dead; *paucī*, *ae*, *a*, few, used only in the Plural; see also **158**, 1.

III. HETEROCLITES.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilarus* and *hilaris*, joyful; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: *altus, altior, altissimus,* high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON—by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	**ior**	**ius**	**issimus**	**issima**	**issimum**[1]

altus, altior, altissimus, *high*, *higher*, *highest*,
levis, levior, levissimus, *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

NOTE.—VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto*, *altior*, *altissimus*.

163. IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus:

1. Those in **er** add **rimus** to this ending:[1] *ācer*, *ācrior*, *ācerrimus*, sharp.

NOTE.—*Vetus* has *veterrimus; mātūrus*, both *mātūrrimus* and *mātūrissimus; dexter*, *dextimus*.

2. Six in **ilis** add **limus** to the stem:[1]

facilis,	difficilis,	*easy*,	*difficult*,
similis,	dissimilis,	*like*,	*unlike*,
gracilis,	humilis,	*slender*,	*low:*

facilis, *facilior*, *facillimus*. *Imbĕcillis* has *imbĕcillimus*.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

exterus,	exterior,	extrēmus *and* extimus,	*outward*,
Īnferus,	Īnferior,	Īnfimus *and* Īmus,	*lower*,
superus,	superior,	suprēmus *and* summus,	*upper*,
posterus,	posterior,	postrēmus *and* postumus,	*next*.

---

[1] The superlative ending *is-simus* is probably compounded of *is*, from *iōs*, the original comparative ending (154, foot-note 4), and *simus* for *timus; iōs-timus* = *iōs-simus* = *is-simus*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated: *facilis*, *facil-simus*, *facil-limus; ācer*, *ācer-simus*, *ācer-rimus;* but those in *ilis* drop the final vowel of the stem. See Bopp, §§ 291–307; Schleicher, pp. 488–494; Roby, p. lxvi.

164. *Egēnus*, *prōvidus*, and compounds in **dicus**, **ficus**, and **volus**, are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissimus**, as if from forms in *ēns:*

egēnus,	egentior,	egentissimus,	*needy*,
prōvidēns,	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus,	*prudent*,
maledicus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus,	*slanderous*,
mūnificus,	mūnificentior,	mūnificentissimus,	*liberal*,
benevolus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus,	*benevolent.*

NOTE.—*Mirificissimus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

165. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	*good*,
malus,	pējor,	pessimus,	*bad*,
māgnus,	mājor,	māximus,	*great*,
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	*small*,
multus,	plūs,	plūrimus,	*much.*

NOTE 1.—*Plūs* is neuter, and has in the singular only Nom. and Acc. *plūs*, and Gen. *plūris*. In the plural it has Nom. and Acc. *plūrēs* (m. and f.), *plūra* (n.), Gen. *plūrium*, Dat. and Abl. *plūribus*.

NOTE 2.—*Dīves*, *frūgī*, and *nēquam* are thus compared:

dīves,	dīvitior, dītior,	dīvitissimus, dītissimus,	*rich*,
frūgī,	frūgālior,	frūgālissimus,	*frugal*,
nēquam,	nēquior,	nēquissimus,	*worthless.*

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

citerior,	citimus,	*nearer*,	prior,	prīmus,	*former*,
dēterior,	dēterrimus,	*worse*,	propior,	prōximus,	*nearer*,
interior,	intimus,	*inner*,	ūlterior,	ūltimus,	*farther.*
ōcior,	ōcissimus,	*swifter*,			

167. COMPARATIVE WANTING.

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives:

dīversus,	dīversissimus,	*different*,	novus,	novissimus,	*new*,
falsus,	falsissimus,	*false*,	sacer,	sacerrimus,	*sacred*,
inclutus,	inclutissimus,	*renowned*,	vetus,	veterrimus,	*old.*
invītus,	invītissimus,	*unwilling*,			

NOTE.—Many participles used adjectively are compared in full: *amāns*, *amantior*, *amantissimus*, loving; *dōctus*, *dōctior*, *dōctissimus*, instructed, learned.

168. SUPERLATIVE WANTING.

1. In most verbals in **ilis** and **bilis**: *docilis*, *docilior*, docile.

2. In many adjectives in **ālis** and **īlis**: *capitālis*, *capitālior*, capital.

3. In *alacer*, *alacrior*, active; *caecus*, blind; *diūturnus*, lasting; *longīnquus*, distant; *opīmus*, rich; *prōclīvis*, steep; *propinquus*, near; *salūtāris*, salutary, and a few others.

4. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

adolēscēns,	adolēscentior,	minimus nātū,[1]	*young*,
juvenis,	jūnior,	minimus nātū,	*young*,
senex,	senior,	māximus nātū,	*old*.

169. Without Terminational Comparison.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time: aureus*, golden; *paternus*, paternal; *Rōmānus*, Roman; *aestīvus*, of summer.

2. Most adjectives in *us preceded by a vowel: idōneus*, suitable.

3. Many derivatives in *ālis*, *āris*, *īlis*, *ulus*, *icus*, *īnus*, *ōrus: mortālis* (mors), mortal.

4. *Albus*, white; *claudus*, lame; *fērus*, wild; *lassus*, weary; *mīrus*, wonderful, and a few others.

II. Adverbial Comparison.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *magis*, more, and *māxime*, most, to the positive: *arduus*, *magis arduus*, *māxime arduus*, arduous.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admodum*, *valdē*, *oppidō*, very; *imprīmīs*, *apprīmē*, in the highest degree. *Per* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very: perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening particles are also sometimes used—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multō*, *longē*, much, far: *etiam dīligentior*, even more diligent; *multō dīligentior*, much more diligent—(2) With the superlative: *multō*, *longē*, much, by far; *quam*, as possible: *multō* or *longē dīligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam dīligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

Numerals.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.[2]

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. Cardinal Numbers: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. Ordinal Numbers: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. Distributives: *singulī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added—

---

[1] Smallest or youngest in age. *Nātū* is sometimes omitted.

[2] The first ten cardinal numbers, *mīlle*, *prīmus*, *secundus*, and *semel* (once), fourteen words in all, furnish the basis of the Latin numeral system. All other numerals are formed from these either by derivation or by composition.

1. **Multiplicatives**, adjectives in *plex*, Gen. *plicis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, threefold.

2. **Proportionals**, declined like *bonus*, and denoting so many times as great: *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, three times as great.

174. Table of Numeral Adjectives:

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives
1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	prīmus, *first*	singulī, *one by one*
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus,[4] *second*	bīnī, *two by two*
3.	trēs, tria	tertius, *third*	ternī (trīnī)
4.	quattuor	quartus, *fourth*	quaternī
5.	quīnque	quīntus, *fifth*	quīnī
6.	sex	sextus	sēnī
7.	septem	septimus	septēnī
8.	octo	octāvus	octōnī
9.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
10.	decem	decimus	dēnī
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
12.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
13.	tredecim[1]	tertius decimus[5]	ternī dēnī
14.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaternī dēnī
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
16.	sēdecim *or* sexdecim[1]	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
17.	septendecim[1]	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
18.	duodēvīgintī[2]	duodēvīcēsimus[6]	duodēvīcēnī
19.	ūndēvīgintī[2]	ūndēvīcēsimus[6]	ūndēvīcēnī
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus[7]	vīcēnī
21.	vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēni singulī
	ūnus et vīgintī[3]	ūnus et vīcēsimus[3]	singulī et vīcēnī
22.	vīgintī duo	vīcēsimus secundus	vīcēnī bīnī
	duo et vīgintī	alter et vīcēsimus	bīnī et vīcēnī
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus[7]	trīcēnī
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī

---

[1] Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et trēs; decem et sex*, etc.

[2] Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo; decem et novem;* so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *vīgintī*.

[3] If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

[4] *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

[5] *Decimus*, with or without *et*, may precede: *decimus et tertius* or *decimus tertius*.

[6] Sometimes expressed by addition: *octāvus decimus* and *nōnus decimus*.

[7] Sometimes written with *g*: *vīgēsimus; trīgēsimus*.

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī
100.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī
101.	centum ūnus centum et ūnus[1]	centēsimus prīmus centēsimus et prīmus	centēnī singulī centēnī et singulī
200.	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī
600.	sēscentī[2]	sēscentēsimus[2]	sēscēnī[2]
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia[3]
2,000.	duo mīlia[3]	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus	centēna mīlia
1,000,000.	deciēs centēna mīlia[4]	deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus	deciēs centēna mīlia

1. Ordinals with *pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

Note.—Cardinal numbers with *partēs* are used in fractions when the denominator is larger than the numerator by one: *duae partēs*, two thirds, *trēs partēs*, three fourths, etc.

2. Distributives are used—

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece: ternōs dēnāriōs accēpērunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence—

2) To express *Multiplication: deciēs centēna mīlia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bīna castra*, two camps. Here for *singulī* and *ternī*, *ūnī* and *trīnī* are used: *ūnae litterae*, one letter; *trīnae litterae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes of objects spoken of in pairs: *bīnī scyphī*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bīna hastīlia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (**181**) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for *duodecim; bis septem*, for *quattuordecim*.

4. *Sēscentī* and *mīlle* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is used in English.

---

[1] In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mīlle centum vīgintī* or *mīlle et centum vīgintī*, 1120.

[2] Often incorrectly written *sexcentī*, *sexcentēsimus*, and *sexcēnī*.

[3] Often written *mīllia*. For *duo mīlia*, *bīna mīlia* or *bis mīlle* is sometimes used.

[4] Literally "ten times a hundred thousand"; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna mīlia: centiēs centēna mīlia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna mīlia* is understood, and the adverb only is expressed, and sometimes *centum mīlia* is used.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. *Ūnus, Duo,* and *Trēs* are declined as follows:

Ūnus, *one.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Voc.	ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

	Duo, *two.*			Trēs, *three.*	
Nom.	duo	duae	duo[1]	trēs, *m. and f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum[2]	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Voc.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

NOTE 1.—The plural of *ūnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun: *ūnī Ubiī*, the Ubii alone; but in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna castra*, one camp; *ūnae litterae*, one letter.

NOTE 2.—Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

NOTE 3.—*Multī*, many, and *plūrimī*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the singular. But in the poets the singular occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*: *ducentī, ae, a.*

178. *Mīlle* as an adjective is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the singular in the Nominative and Accusative,[3] but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mare* (**63**): *mīlia*,[4] *mīlium*, *mīlibus*.

NOTE.—With the *substantive mīlle*, *mīlia*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive: *mīlle hominum*, a thousand men (of men); but if a declined numeral intervenes it takes the case of that numeral: *tria mīlia trecentī mīlitēs*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the *plural* of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ūm* instead of *ōrum* in the Genitive: *bīnūm* for *bīnōrum*.

---

[1] In the ending *o* in *duo* and *ambo* (**175**, note 2), we have a remnant of the dual number which has otherwise disappeared from the Latin, though preserved in Greek and Sanskrit. Compare the Sanskrit *dva*, the Greek δύο, the Latin *duo*, and the English *two*.

[2] Instead of *duōrum* and *duārum*, *duūm* is sometimes used.

[3] Rarely in other cases in connection with *mīlium* or *mīlibus*.

[4] Generally written with one *l*: *mīlia*, but sometimes with two: *mīllia*.

180. Numeral Symbols:

Arabic.	Roman.	Arabic.	Roman.	Arabic.	Roman.
1.	I.	12.	XII.	50.	L.
2.	II.	13.	XIII.	60.	LX.
3.	III.	14.	XIV.	70.	LXX.
4.	IV.	15.	XV.	80.	LXXX.
5.	V.	16.	XVI.	90.	XC.
6.	VI.	17.	XVII.	100.	C.
7.	VII.	18.	XVIII.	200.	CC.
8.	VIII.	19.	XIX.	500.	IↃ, *or* D.
9.	IX.	20.	XX.	600.	DC.
10.	X.	30.	XXX.	1,000.	CIↃ, *or* M.[1]
11.	XI.	40.	XL.	10,000.	CCIↃↃ.

1. Latin Numeral Symbols are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IↃ *or* D = 500; CIↃ *or* M = 1,000.[2]

2. In the Combination of these symbols, except IↃ, observe—

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 5 − 1 = 4; VI = 5 + 1 = 6.

3. In the Combination of IↃ observe—

1) That each Ↄ (inverted C) after IↃ increases the value tenfold: IↃ = 500; IↃↃ = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IↃↃↃ = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as Ↄ stands after it: IↃ = 500; CIↃ = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IↃↃ = 5,000; CCIↃↃ = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IↃ = 500; IↃC = 600; IↃCC = 700.

Numeral Adverbs.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs:

1. semel, *once*
2. bis, *twice*
3. ter, *three times*
4. quater
5. quīnquiēs[3]
6. sexiēs
7. septiēs
8. octiēs
9. noviēs
10. deciēs
11. ūndeciēs
12. duodeciēs

---

[1] Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{\text{II}}$ = 2,000; $\overline{\text{V}}$ = 5,000.

[2] The origin of these symbols is uncertain. According to Mommsen, *I* is the outstretched finger; *V*, the open hand; *X*, the two hands crossed; *L*, the open hand like *V*, but in a different position; *CIↃ* is supposed to be a modification of the Greek Φ, not otherwise used by the Romans, afterward changed to *M*; *IↃ*, afterward changed to *D*, is a part of *CIↃ*; *C* is also supposed to be a modification of the Greek Θ, but it may be the initial letter of *centum*, as *M* may be that of *mīlle*.

[3] In adverbs formed from cardinal numbers, *iēs* is the approved ending, though *iēns* often occurs. In adverbs from indefinite numeral adjectives *iēns* is the approved ending: *totiēns* (from *tot*), so often; *quotiēns* (from *quot*), how often. See Brambach, p. 14.

13.	terdeciēs	20.	vīciēs	200.	ducentiēs
	tredeciēs	21.	semel et vīciēs	300.	trecentiēs
14.	quaterdeciēs	22.	bis et vīciēs	400.	quadringentiēs
	quattuordeciēs	30.	trīciēs	500.	quīngentiēs
15.	quīnquiēsdeciēs	40.	quadrāgiēs	600.	sēscentiēs
	quīndeciēs	50.	quīnquāgiēs	700.	septingentiēs
16.	sexiēsdeciēs	60.	sexāgiēs	800.	octingentiēs
	sēdeciēs	70.	septuāgiēs	900.	nōningentiēs
17.	septiēsdeciēs	80.	octōgiēs		nōngentiēs
18.	duodēvīciēs	90.	nōnāgiēs	1,000.	mīlliēs[1]
	octiēsdeciēs	100.	centiēs	2,000.	bis mīlliēs
19.	ūndēvīciēs	101.	centiēs semel	100,000.	centiēs mīlliēs
	noviēsdeciēs	102.	centiēs bis	1,000,000.	mīlliēs mīlliēs

NOTE 1.—In compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vīciēs;* the tens, however, with or without *et*, may precede.

NOTE 2.—Another class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *prīmum*, *prīmō*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertiō*, for the third time.

CHAPTER III

PRONOUNS.

182. IN construction, Pronouns[2] are used either as Substantives: *ego,* I, *tū,* thou; or as Adjectives: *meus,* my, *tuus,* your.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū,* thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus,* my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hĭc,* this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī,* who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis,* who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis,* some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns,[3] so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

---

[1] *Mīlliēs* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times.*

[2] But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing; see **314**, II., with foot-note.

[3] Also called *Substantive Pronouns,* because they are always used *substantively.*

	Ego, *I.*	Tū, *thou.*	Suī, *of himself*, etc.[1]
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	ego[2]	tū	
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī[1]
Dat.	mihĭ *or* mī	tibĭ	sibĭ
Acc.	mē	tē	sē
Voc.		tū	
Abl.	mē	tē	sē
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	nōs	vōs	
Gen.	nostrūm nostrī	vestrūm[3] vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibĭ
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē
Voc.		vōs	
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

1. The CASE-ENDINGS of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.

2. SUĪ, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

3. EMPHATIC FORMS in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egomet*, I myself; *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tū* has *tūte* and *tūtemet*, not *tūmet*.

4. REDUPLICATED FORMS.—*Sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for *sē*, *tē*, *mē*.

5. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—*Mīs* for *meī*; *tīs* for *tuī*; *mēd* and *mēpte* for *mē*; *tēd* for *tē*; *sēd*, *sēpse*, for *sē*.

6. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives:*

meus, a, um, *my;*	noster, tra, trum, *our;*
tuus, a, um, *thy*, *your;*	vester, tra, trum, *your;*
suus, a, um, *his*, *hers*, *its;*	suus, a, um, *their.*

---

[1] *Of himself*, *herself*, *itself*. The Nominative is not used.

[2] *Ego* has no connection in form with *meī*, *mihĭ*, etc., but it corresponds to the Greek ἐγών, ἐγώ. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* in the singular are derived from the Indo-European roots *ma* and *tva*. Compare the Accusative Singular of each in—

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
mā-m *or* mā,	μέ,	mē,	me.
tvā-m *or* tvā,	τέ *or* σέ,	tē,	thee.

Suī, *sibĭ*, *sē*, in both numbers are formed from the root *sva*. The origin of the plural forms of *ego* and *tū* is obscure. See Papillon, pp. 142–149; Kühner, I., pp. 378–382.

[3] *Vestrūm* and *vestrī* are also written *vostrūm* and *vostrī*, though less correctly. *Meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*, are in form strictly Possessives in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostrī* and *vestrī* have also become Plural. Thus, *memor vestrī*, 'mindful of you,' means literally *mindful of yours*, i. e., of your welfare, interest. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm*, for *nostrōrum* and *vestrōrum*, are also Possessives; see **185**.

NOTE 1.—Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meūm* instead of *meōrum*.[1]

NOTE 2.—Emphatic forms in *pte* and *met* occur: *suapte*, *suamet*.

NOTE 3.—Other possessives are: (1) *cūjus*, *a*, *um*,[2] 'whose,' and *cūjus*, *a*, *um*,[3] 'whose?' declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrās*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of our country,' *vestrās*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of your country,' and *cūjās*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of whose country,' declined as adjectives of Declension III.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

I. Hĭc, *this.*[4]

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae[7]	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus[5]	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc[6]	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

II. Iste, *that*, *that of yours;*[8] see **450.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istĭus	istĭus	istĭus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud[6]	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

---

[1] In early Latin *tuus* is sometimes written *tovos*, and *suus*, *sovos*.

[2] From the relative *quī*, *cūjus* (**187**), also written *quōius*.

[3] From the interrogative *quis*, *cūjus* (**188**), also written *quōius*.

[4] The stem of *hĭc* is *ho*, *ha*, which by the addition of *i*, another pronominal stem, seen in *i-s*, 'he,' becomes in certain cases *hī* (for *ho-i*), *hae* (for *ha-i*), as in *hĭ-c*, *hae-c*. The forms *ho*, *ha*, appear in *hŏ-c*, *ha-nc*. Ancient and rare forms of this pronoun are *hĕc* (for *hĭc*), *hōius* (for *hūjus*), *hoic*, *hoice* (for *huic*), *honc* (for *hunc*), *heis*, *heisce*, *hīs*, *hīsce* (for *hīce*, *hī*), *hībus* (for *hīs*).

[5] The Genitive suffix is *us*, appended to the stem after the addition of *i* (foot-note 4): *ho-i-us*, *hūjus* (*i* changed to *j* between two vowels, **28**); *isto-i-us*, *istĭus* (*i* retained after a consonant). The suffix *us*, originally *as*, is in origin the same as the suffix *is* in the third declension. In one the original vowel *a* is weakened to *u*, and in the other to *i*. See Wordsworth, p. 95; Corssen, I., p. 307.

[6] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

[7] Here the form with *c*, *haec*, is sometimes used.

[8] The stem of *iste* (for *istus*) is *isto* in the Masc. and Neut., and *ista* in the Fem. *O* is weakened to *e* in *iste* (**24**, 1, note) and to *u* in *istu-d*. Ancient and rare forms of *iste*

III. Ille, *that*,[1] *that one*, *he*, is declined like *iste;* see II. on the preceding page.

IV. Is, *he*, *this*, *that*.[2]

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	ējus	ējus	ējus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ĕī	ĕī	ĕī[3]	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id[4]	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

V. Ipse, *self*, *he*.[5]

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

VI. Īdem, *the same*.[6]

---

are *istus* (for *iste*), forms in *ī*, *ae*, *ī* (for *īus*) in the Genitive, and in *ō*, *ae*, *ō* (for *ī*) in the Dat.: *istī* (for *istīus*), *istō* (for *istī*), *istae* (for *istīus* or *istī*).

[1] The stem of *ille* (for *illus*) is *illo*, *illa*. Ancient and rare forms are (1) *illus* (for *ille*), forms in *ī*, *ae*, *ī* (for *īus*) in the Genitive Singular, and in *ō*, *ae*, *ō* (for *ī*) in the Dative Singular: *illī* (for *illīus*), etc.; (2) forms from *ollus* or *olle* (for those from *ille*): *ollus*, *olle*, *olla*, etc.

[2] The stem of *is* is *i*, strengthened in most of its case-forms to *eo*, *ea*. Ancient or rare forms of *is* are, *eis* (for *is*); *ĕ-i-ei*, *ei-ei*, *i-ei*, *eae* (for Dative Singular *ĕī*); *im*, *em* (for *eum*); *e-eis*, *i-eis*, *eis* (for Nominative Plural *eī*); *ĕ-i-eis*, *ei-eis*, *e-eis*, *ībus*, *eābus* (for *eīs*). To these may be added a few rare forms from a root of kindred meaning, *so*, *sa: sum*, *sam=eum*, *eam; sōs*, *sās=eōs*, *eās*. This root appears in *ip-sus*, *ip-sa*, *ip-sum*. *Sī*, if, and *sī-c*, thus, are probably Locatives from this root or from *sva*, the root of *suī* (184).

[3] Sometimes a diphthong in poetry. In the same way the plural forms *eī*, *iī*, *eīs*, *iīs*, are sometimes monosyllables. Instead of *iī* and *iīs*, *ī* and *īs* are sometimes written.

[4] See page 72, foot-note 6.

[5] *Ipse* (for *ipsus = i-pe-sus*) is compounded of *is* or its stem *i*, the intensive particle *pe*, 'even,' 'indeed,' and the pronominal root *so*, *sa*, mentioned in foot-note 2 above. The stem is *ipso*, *ipsa*, but forms occur with the first part declined and *pse* unchanged: *eum-pse*, *eam-pse*, etc.; sometimes combined with *rē: reāpse = rē-eāpse = rē ipsā*, 'in reality.' *Ipsus* (for *ipse*) is not uncommon.

[6] In *īdem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, only the first part is declined. *Isdem* is shortened to *īdem*, *iddem* to *idem*, and *m* is changed to *n* before *dem* (33, 4). In early Latin *eisdem* and *īsdem* occur for *īdem; eīdem* and *īdem* for *idem; eisdem* and *īsdem* in the Nominative Plural for *eīdem*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem[2] iīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	ĕīdem	ĕīdem	ĕīdem[1]	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem[2] iīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem[2] iīsdem

1. Hĭc (for *hĭ-ce*) is compounded with the demonstrative particle **ce**, meaning *here*. The forms in **c** have dropped **e**, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But **ce** is often retained for emphasis; *hīce*, *hūjusce*, *hōsce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). **Ce**, changed to **ci**, is generally retained before the interrogative **ne**: *hīcine*, *hōscine*.

2. ILLĬC AND ISTĬC,[3] also compounded with the particle **ce**, are declined alike, as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	illĭc	illaec	illŭc (illōc)	illīc	illaec	illaec
Gen.	illĭusce	illĭusce	illĭusce[4]			
Dat.	illīc	illīc	illīc	illīsce	illīsce	illīsce
Acc.	illunc	illanc	illŭc (illōc)	illōsce	illāsce	illaec
Abl.	illōc	illāc	illōc	illīsce	illīsce	illīsce

3. SYNCOPATED FORMS, compounded of *ecce* or *ēn*, 'lo,' 'see,' and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Accusative of *ille* and *is*, occur: *eccŭm* for *ecce eum*; *eccōs* for *ecce eōs*; *ēllum* for *ēn illum*; *ēllam* for *ēn illam*.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tot*, so many; *totus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

NOTE.—For *tālis*, the Genitive of a demonstrative with *modī* (Genitive of *modus*, measure, kind) is often used: *hūjusmodī*, *ējusmodī*, of this kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:[5]

---

[1] Sometimes a dissyllable.

[2] *Eīdem* and *eīsdem* are the approved forms. Instead of *iīdem* and *iīsdem*, dissyllables in poetry, *īdem* and *īsdem* are often written.

[3] *Illĭc* and *istĭc* are formed from the stems of *ille* and *iste* in the same manner as *hĭc* is formed from its stem; see page 72, foot-note 4.

[4] Observe that *ce* is retained in full after *s*, but shortened to *c* in all other situations.

[5] The stem of *quī* is *quo*, *qua*, which becomes *co*, *cu* in *cūjus* and *cuī*. *Quī* and

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem[1]	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. *Quī*[2] = *quō*, *quā*, 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative *quī*.

2. *Cum*, when used with the Ablative of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

3. *Quīcumque* and *Quisquis*, 'whoever,' are called from their signification *general relatives.*[3] *Quīcumque* (quīcunque) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms, *quisquis*, *quidquid* (quicquid), *quōquō*.

NOTE.—The parts of *Quīcumque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *quā rē cumque*.

4. RELATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quot*, as many as; *quotus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *quāliscumque*, etc.

NOTE.—For *Quālis* the Genitive of the relative with *modī* is often used: *cūjusmodī*, of what kind, such as; *cūjuscumquemodī*, *cuicuimodī* (for *cūjuscūjusmodī*), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds,[4] are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

---

quae are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hī* and *hae* in *hī-c* and *hae-c* from *ho* and *ha;* see **186**, I., foot-note 4. Ancient or rare forms are *quei*, *quis* (for *quī*), Nom. Sing.; *quōius* (*i* = *j*); *quoi*, *cui* (for *cūjus*, as in *cuimodī* = *cūjusmodī*), *quoiei*, *quoi* (for *cui*); *quēs* (for *quī*), Nom. Plur.; *quai* (for *quae*), Fem. and Neut. Plur.; *queis*, *quīs* (for *quibus*).

[1] An Accusative *quom*, also written *quum* and *cum*, formed directly from the stem *quo*, became the conjunction *quom*, *quum*, *cum*, 'when,' lit. *during which*, i. e., during which time. Indeed, several conjunctions are in their origin Accusatives of pronouns: *quam*, 'in what way,' 'how,' is the Accusative of *quī;* *quamquam*, 'however much,' the Accusative of *quis-quis* (**187**, 3); *tum*, 'then,' and *tam*, 'so,' Accusatives of the pronominal stem *to*, *ta*, seen in *is-tus*, *is-te*, *is-ta* (**186**, II., foot-note 8).

[2] This is an element in *quin* = *quī-ne*, 'by which not,' 'that not,' and in *quīppe* = *quī-pe*, 'indeed.'

[3] Relative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs may be made *general* in signification by taking *cumque*, like *quī-cumque*, or by being doubled like *quis-quis: quālis-cumque*, *quālis-quālis*, of whatever kind; *ubĭ-cumque*, *ubi-ubĭ*, wheresoever.

[4] The relative *quī*, the interrogatives *quis*, *quī*, and the indefinites *quis*, *quī*, are all formed from the stem *quo*, *qua*. The ancient and rare forms are nearly the same in all; see page 74, foot-note 5.

I. Quis, *who, which, what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. Quī, *which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī.*

1. QUIS is generally used substantively, and QUĪ, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. *Quī*, how? in what way? is a Locative or Ablative of the interrogative *quis;* see **187**, 1.

3. COMPOUNDS of *quis* and *quī* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae.*

4. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quot*, how many? *quotus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? see **151**.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī,* with their compounds.

190. *Quis,* 'any one,' and *quī,* 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī.* But—

1. After *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua:* sī quae, sī qua.

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed—

1) *The Indefinites:*

aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid *or* aliquod,[1]	*some, some one.*
quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam *or* quodpiam,[2]	*some, some one.*
quīdam,	quaedam,	quiddam *or* quoddam,[3]	*certain, certain one.*
quisquam,	quaequam,	quicquam *or* quidquam,[4]	*any one.*

---

[1] *Aliquis* is compounded of *ali*, seen in *ali-us; quisquam*, of *quis* and *quam; quisque*, of *quis* and *que* (from *quī*); *quīvīs*, of *quī* and the verb *vīs* (**293**), 'you wish'—hence *quī-vīs*, 'any you wish'; *quīlibet*, of *quī* and the impersonal *libet*, 'it pleases.'

[2] Also written *quippiam*, *quoppiam.*

[3] *Quīdam* changes *m* to *n* before *d: quendam* for *quemdam.*

[4] *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

2) *The General Indefinites:*

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque *or* quodque,[1]	*every, every one.*
quīvīs,	quaevīs,	quidvīs *or* quodvīs,	*any one you please.*
quīlibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet *or* quodlibet,	*any one you please.*

Note 1.—These compounds are generally declined like *quis* and *quī*, but they have in the Neut. Sing. *quod* used *adjectively*, and *quid substantively*.

Note 2.—*Aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliquī* for *aliquis* occurs.

191. The correspondence which exists between Demonstratives, Relatives, Interrogatives, and Indefinites, is seen in the following

Table of Correlatives.

Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
quis, *quī*, who? what?[2]	*quis*, *quī*,[3] any one, any; *aliquis*,[3] some one, some; *quīdam*, certain one, certain;	*hĭc*, this one, this;[4] *iste*, that one, that; *ille*, that one, that; *is*, he, that;	*quī*,[3] who.
uter, which of two?	*uter* or *alteruter*, either of two;	*uterque*, each, both;[5]	*quī*, who.
quālis, of what kind?	*quālislibet*,[3] of any kind;	*tālis*, such;	*quālis*,[3] as.
quantus, how great?	*aliquantus*, somewhat great; *quantusvīs*, as great as you please;	*tantus*, so great;	*quantus*,[3] as, as great.
quot, how many?	*aliquot*, some;	*tot*, so many;	*quot*, as, as many.

Note.—*Nesciō quis*, 'I know not who,' has become in effect an indefinite pronoun = *quīdam*, 'some one.' So also *nesciō quī*, 'I know not which' or 'what' = 'some'; *nesciō quot* = *aliquot*, 'some,' 'a certain number.'

---

[1] In *ūnus-quisque* both parts are regularly declined.

[2] Observe that the question *quis* or *quī*, who or what? may be answered *indefinitely* by *quis*, *quī*, *aliquis*, etc., or *definitely* by a demonstrative, either alone or with a relative, as by *hĭc*, this one, or *hĭc quī*, this one who; *is*, he, or *is quī*, he who, etc.

[3] In form observe that the indefinite is either the same as the interrogative or is a compound of it: *quis*, *ali-quis*, *quī*, *quī-dam*, and that the relative is usually the same as the interrogative.

[4] On *hĭc*, *iste*, *ille*, and *is*, see **450**; **451**, 1.

[5] Or one of the demonstratives, *hĭc*, *iste*, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est,* he is; *dormit,* he is sleeping; *legit,* he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: *servum verberat,* he beats the slave.[1]

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS do not admit such an object: *puer currit,* the boy runs.[1]

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.*

I. VOICES.

195. There are two voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE[2] represents the subject as ACTING or EXISTING: *pater fīlium amat,* the father loves his son; *est,* he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject as ACTED UPON by some other person or thing: *fīlius ā patre amātur,* the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive; see **301**, 1.

2. DEPONENT VERBS[3] are Passive in form, but not in sense: *loquor,* to speak. But see **231**.

II. MOODS.

196. There are three moods:[4]

---

[1] Here *servum,* 'the slave,' is the object of the action: *beats* (what?) *the slave.* The object thus *completes* the meaning of the verb. *He beats* is incomplete in sense, but *the boy runs* is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

[2] *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, '*the father loves his son,*' the subject, *father,* is the one who *performs the action, loves,* while with the Passive Voice, '*the son is loved by the father,*' the subject, *son,* merely *receives the action, is acted upon, is loved.*

[3] So called from *dēpōnō,* to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning. For deponent verbs with the sense of the Greek Middle, see **465**.

[4] *Mood,* or *Mode,* means *manner,* and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the *fact:*

Legit, HE IS READING. *Legitne*, IS HE READING? Servius *rēgnāvit*, *Servius* REIGNED. Quis ego *sum*, *who* AM *I?*

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception.* It is best translated[1]—

1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries,[2] *let*, *may*, *might*, *should*, *would:*

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE *our country.* *Sint* beātī, MAY THEY BE *happy.* *Quaerat* quispiam, *some one* MAY INQUIRE. Hōc nēmo *dixerit*, *no one* WOULD SAY *this.* Ego *cēnseam*, *I* SHOULD THINK, or *I* AM INCLINED TO THINK. Ēnītitur ut *vincat*, *he strives that* HE MAY CONQUER.[3] Domum ubī *habitāret*, lēgit, *he selected a house where* HE MIGHT DWELL.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative*, especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will:*

Huic *cēdāmus*, SHALL WE YIELD *to this one?* Quid diēs *ferat* incertum est, *what a day* WILL BRING FORTH *is uncertain.* Dubitō num *dēbeam*, *I doubt whether* I OUGHT. Quaesīvit sī *licēret*, *he inquired whether* IT WAS LAWFUL.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative*, especially in prohibitions:

Scrībere nē *pigrēre*, DO *not* NEGLECT *to write.* Nē *trānsierīs* Ibērum, DO *not* CROSS *the Ebro.*

4. Sometimes by the English *Infinitive:*[4]

Contendit ut *vincat*, *he strives* TO CONQUER.[5] Missī sunt quī *cōnsulerent* Apollinem, *they were sent* TO CONSULT *Apollo.*

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD expresses a *command* or an *entreaty:*

Jūstitiam *cole*, PRACTISE *justice.* Tū nē *cēde* malīs, DO *not* YIELD *to misfortunes.*

---

[1] The use and proper translation of the Subjunctive must be learned from the Syntax. A few illustrations are here given to aid the learner in understanding the Paradigms of the Verbs; see **477–530**.

[2] This is generally the proper translation in simple sentences and in principal clauses (**483**), and sometimes even in subordinate clauses (**490**).

[3] Or, *he strives* TO CONQUER; see 4 below, with foot-note 4.

[4] The English has a few remnants of the Subjunctive Mood, which may also be used in translating the Latin Subjunctive: Utinam *possem*, *would that* I WERE ABLE.

[5] Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective: ut vincat, *to conquer* (lit., *that he may conquer*); quī cōnsulerent, *to consult* (lit., *who should* or *would consult*).

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amŏ*, I love, I am loving.[1]
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving, I loved.
3. Future: *amābŏ*, I shall love, I will love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amāveram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amāverŏ*, I shall have loved.

NOTE 1.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite;* and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite.*[3]

NOTE 2.—The Indicative Mood has all the six tenses; the Subjunctive has the Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect; the Imperative, the Present and Future only.[4]

198. PRINCIPAL AND HISTORICAL.—Tenses are also distinguished as—

I. PRINCIPAL or PRIMARY TENSES:

1. Present: *amŏ*, I love.
2. Present Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved.[3]
3. Future: *amābŏ*, I shall love.
4. Future Perfect: *amāverŏ*, I shall have loved.

II. HISTORICAL or SECONDARY TENSES:

1. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
2. Historical Perfect: *amāvī*, I loved.[3]
3. Pluperfect: *amāveram*, I had loved.

---

[1] Or, *I do love.* The English *did* may also be used in translating the *Imperfect* and *Perfect: I did love.*

[2] Or, *I will have loved.*

[3] Thus the Latin Perfect combines within itself the force and use of two distinct tenses—the *Perfect proper*, seen in the Greek Perfect, and the *Aorist*, seen in the Greek Aorist: amāvī = πεφίληκα, *I have loved;* amāvī = ἐφίλησα, *I loved.* The *Historical Perfect* and the *Imperfect* both represent the action as *past*, but the former regards it simply as a *historical fact—I loved;* while the latter regards it *as in progress—I was loving.*

[4] The nice distinctions of tense have been fully developed only in the Indicative. In the Subjunctive and Imperative, the *time* of the action is less prominent and is less definitely marked.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,[1] and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.[1]

NOTE.—The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense, number, and person, make up the *finite verb*.

200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:

I. The INFINITIVE is a verbal noun.[2] It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun in* ING, and sometimes by the *Indicative:*

Exīre ex urbe volō, *I wish* TO GO *out of the city.* Gestiō *scīre* omnia, *I long* TO KNOW *all things.* Haec *scīre* juvat, TO KNOW *these things affords pleasure.* *Peccāre* licet nēminī, TO SIN *is lawful for no one.* *Vincere*[3] scīs, *you know how* TO CONQUER, or *you understand* CONQUERING.[3] Tē dīcunt *esse*[4] sapientem, *they say that you* ARE[4] *wise.* Sentīmus *calēre*[4] ignem, *we perceive that fire* IS HOT.[4] See also Syntax, **532–539**.

II. The GERUND gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in ING:

Amandī, OF LOVING. *Amandī* causā, *for the sake* OF LOVING. Ars *vīvendī*, *the art* OF LIVING. Cupidus tē *audiendī*, *desirous* OF HEARING *you.* Ūtilis *bibendō*, *useful* FOR DRINKING. *Ad discendum* prōpēnsus, *inclined* TO LEARN,[5] or TO LEARNING. Mēns *discendō* alitur, *the mind is nourished* BY LEARNING. See also Syntax, **541–544**.

III. The SUPINE gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. It has a form in **um** and a form in **ū**:

Amātum, TO LOVE, FOR LOVING. *Amātū*, TO BE LOVED, FOR LOVING, IN

---

[1] As in Nouns; see **44**.

[2] The Infinitive has the characteristics both of verbs and of nouns. As a verb, it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers; as a noun, it is itself governed. In origin it is a verbal noun in the Dative or Locative. See Jolly, pp. 179–200.

[3] Observe that the infinitive *vincere* may be translated by the English infinitive, *to conquer*, or by the verbal noun, *conquering*.

[4] Observe that the infinitives *esse* and *calēre* are translated by the indicative *are* and *is* (*is hot*); and that the Acc. *tē*, the subject of *esse*, is translated by the Nom. *you*, the subject of *are;* and that the Acc. *ignem*, the subject of *calēre*, is translated by the Nom. *fire*, the subject of *is*.

[5] Occasionally the Gerund, especially with a preposition, may be thus translated by the English *infinitive*.

LOVING. Auxilium *postulātum* vēnit, *he came* TO ASK *aid.* Difficile *dictū* est, *it is difficult* TO TELL. See Syntax, **545–547**.

NOTE.—The Supine in *um* is an Accusative in form, while the Supine in *ū* may be either a Dative or an Ablative; see **116**.

IV. The PARTICIPLE in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.[1] It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause:*

Amāns, LOVING. *Amātūrus*, ABOUT TO LOVE. *Amātus*, LOVED. *Amandus*, DESERVING TO BE LOVED. Platō *scrībēns* mortuus est, *Plato died* WHILE WRITING, OR WHILE HE WAS WRITING. Sōl *oriēns* diem cōnficit, *the sun* RISING, OR WHEN IT RISES,[2] *causes the day.* Rediit bēllī cāsum *tentātūrus*, *he returned* TO TRY (lit., *about to try*) *the fortune of war.* In amīcīs *ēligendīs*,[3] *in* SELECTING *friends.* See Syntax, **548–550**.

NOTE.—A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future, *amāns*, *amātūrus;* and two in the Passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive,[3] *amātus*, *amandus.*

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations,[4] distinguished from each other by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
CONJ. I.	**ā**	**ā-re**
II.	**ē**	**ē-re**
III.	**e**	**e-re**
IV.	**ī**	**ī-re**

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

---

[1] Participles are verbs in force, but adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs, they govern oblique cases; as adjectives, they agree with nouns.

[2] Or *by its rising.*

[3] Sometimes called the *Future Passive Participle.* In agreement with a noun, it is often best translated like a gerund governing that noun; see **544**.

[4] The Four Conjugations are only varieties of one general system of inflection, as the differences between them have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of suffixes; see Comparative View of Conjugations, **213–216**.

NOTE 1.—In the inflection of verbs it is found convenient to recognize four stems:

1) The *Verb-Stem*, which is the basis of the entire conjugation. This is often called simply the *Stem*.

2) Three *Special Stems*, the Present Stem, the Perfect Stem, and the Supine Stem.

NOTE 2.—The *Special Stems* are formed from the *Verb-Stem*, unless they are identical with it.[1]

203. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.[2]

1. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are—

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
sum, *I am*,	esse, *to be*,	fuī, *I have been*.

NOTE 1.—*Sum* has no Supine.

NOTE 2.—Two independent *stems* or *roots*[3] are used in the conjugation of this verb, viz.: (1) *es*, seen in *s-um* (for *es-um*) and in *es-se*, and (2) *fu*, seen in *fu-ī*.

---

[1] For the treatment of Stems, see **249–256**. In many verbs the stem is itself derived from a more primitive form called a *Root*. For the distinction between *roots* and *stems*, and for the manner in which the latter are formed from the former, see **313–318**.

[2] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the parts derived from the present stem (**222**, I.) each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

[3] The forms of irregular verbs are often derived from different roots. Thus in English, *am*, *was*, *been*; *go*, *went*, *gone*. Indeed, the identical roots used in the conjugation of *sum* are in constant use in our ordinary speech. The root *es*, Greek *ἐς*, originally *as*, is seen in *am* (for *as-mi*), *art* (for *as-t*), *are* (for *as-e*); the root *fu*, Greek *φυ*, originally *bhu*, is seen in *be* (for *bhe*), *been*. The close relationship existing between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English is seen in the following comparative forms; *ἐσ-σί* is Homeric, and *ἐ-ντί* Doric:

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
as-mi	*εἰ-μί*	s-um	a-m
as-i	*ἐσ-σί*	es	ar-t
as-ti	*ἐσ-τί*	es-t	is
s-mas	*ἐσ-μέν* for *ἐσ-μές*	s-umus	ar-e
s-tha	*ἐσ-τέ*	es-tis	ar-e
s-anti	*ἐ-ντί* for *ἐσ-ντι*	s-unt	ar-e

Every verbal form is thus made by appending to the stem, or root, a pronominal ending meaning *I*, *thou*, *he*, etc. Thus *mi*, seen in the English *me*, means *I*. It is retained in *as-mi* and *εἰ-μί*, but shortened to *m* in *s-u-m* and *a-m*. *Ti*, meaning *he*, is preserved in *as-ti* and *ἐσ-τί*, but shortened to *t* in *es-t* and lost in *is*. The stem also undergoes various changes: in Sanskrit it is *as*, sometimes shortened to *s*; in Greek *ἐς*, sometimes shortened to *ἐ*; in Latin *es*, sometimes shortened to *s*, as in Sanskrit; in English *a*, *ar*, or *is*.

204. Sum, *I am.*—Stems, *es, fu.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.[1]
sum,	esse,	fuī,	—

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sum,[2]	*I am,*	sumus,	*we are,*
es,	*thou art,*[3]	estis,	*you are,*
est,	*he is ;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

eram,	*I was,*	erāmus,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*[3]	erātis,	*you were,*
erat,	*he was ;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

erŏ,[4]	*I shall be,*[5]	erĭmus,	*we shall be,*
erĭs,	*thou wilt be,*	erĭtis,	*you will be,*
erit,	*he will be ;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

fuī,	*I have been,*[5]	fuĭmus,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistis,	*you have been,*
fuit,	*he has been ;*	fuērunt, fuēre,	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

fueram,	*I had been,*	fuerāmus,	*we had been,*
fuerās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuerātis,	*you had been,*
fuerat,	*he had been ;*	fuerant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

fuerŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuerĭmus,	*we shall have been,*
fuerĭs,	*thou wilt have been,*	fuerĭtis,	*you will have been,*
fuerit,	*he will have been ;*	fuerint,	*they will have been.*

---

[1] The Supine is wanting.

[2] *Sum* is for *esum*, *eram* for *esam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *es* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *eram*, *erŏ;* see **31**, 1. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.

[3] Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were; thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

[4] In verbs, final *o*, marked ŏ, is generally long.

[5] Or, Future, *I will be;* Perfect, *I was;* see **197**, note 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sim,	*may I be*,[1]	**sīmus**,	*let us be*,
sīs,	*mayst thou be*,[2]	**sītis**,	*be ye, may you be*,
sit,	*let him be, may he be;*	**sint**,	*let them be.*

IMPERFECT.

es**sem**,	*I should be*,[1]	es**sēmus**,	*we should be*,
es**sēs**,	*thou wouldst be*,	es**sētis**,	*you would be*,
es**set**,	*he would be;*	es**sent**,	*they would be.*

PERFECT.

fu**erim**,	*I may have been*,[1]	fu**erīmus**,	*we may have been*,
fu**erīs**,	*thou mayst have been*,	fu**erītis**,	*you may have been*,
fu**erit**,	*he may have been;*	fu**erint**,	*they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

fu**issem**,	*I should have been*,	fu**issēmus**,	*we should have been*,
fu**issēs**,	*thou wouldst have been*,	fu**issētis**,	*you would have been*,
fu**isset**,	*he would have been;*	fu**issent**,	*they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	es,	*be thou*,	es**te**,	*be ye.*
Fut.	es**tō**,	*thou shalt be*,[3]	es**tōte**,	*ye shall be*,
	es**tō**,	*he shall be;*[3]	**suntō**,	*they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. es**se**, *to be.*

Perf. fu**isse**, *to have been.*

Fut. fu**tūrus** es**se**,[4] *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. fu**tūrus**,[4] *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es;* all others from the stem *fu.*[5]

2. RARE FORMS:—*forem*, *forēs*, *foret*, *forent*, *fore*, for *essem*, *essēs*, *esset*, *essent*, *futūrus esse;* *siem*, *siēs*, *siet*, *sient*, or *fuam*, *fuās*, *fuat*, *fuant*, for *sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, *sint*.

---

[1] On the translation of the Subjunctive, see **196**, II., and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may often be rendered *I am*, and *fuerim*, *I have been*.

[2] Or *be thou*, or *may you be*.

[3] The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let: be thou; let him be*.

[4] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse*.

[5] *Es* and *fu* are *roots* as well as *stems*. As the basis of this paradigm they are properly *stems*, but as they are not derived from more primitive forms, they are in themselves *roots*.

FIRST CONJUGATION : A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amŏ, *I love.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *amā.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
am**ō**,	am**āre**,	am**āvī**,	am**ātum**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
am**ō**,[1]	*I love,*[2]	am**āmus**,	*we love,*
am**ās**,	*you love,*[3]	am**ātis**,	*you love,*
am**at**,	*he loves ;*	am**ant**,	*they love.*

IMPERFECT.

am**ābam**,	*I was loving,*	am**ābāmus**,	*we were loving,*
am**ābās**,	*you were loving,*	am**ābātis**,	*you were loving,*
am**ābat**,	*he was loving ;*	am**ābant**,	*they were loving.*

FUTURE.

am**ābō**,	*I shall love,*[4]	am**ābimus**,	*we shall love,*
am**ābis**,	*you will love,*	am**ābitis**,	*you will love,*
am**ābit**,	*he will love ;*	am**ābunt**,	*they will love.*

PERFECT.

amāv**ī**,	*I have loved,*[5]	amāv**imus**,	*we have loved,*
amāv**istī**,	*you have loved,*	amāv**istis**,	*you have loved,*
amāv**it**,	*he has loved ;*	amāv**ērunt**, **ēre**,	*they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv**eram**,	*I had loved,*	amāv**erāmus**,	*we had loved,*
amāv**erās**,	*you had loved,*	amāv**erātis**,	*you had loved,*
amāv**erat**,	*he had loved ;*	amāv**erant**,	*they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv**erō**,	*I shall have loved,*[4]	amāv**erimus**,	*we shall have loved,*
amāv**eris**,	*you will have loved,*	amāv**eritis**,	*you will have loved,*
amāv**erit**,	*he will have loved ;*	amāv**erint**,	*they will have loved.*

---

[1] The final *ā* of the stem disappears in *amŏ* for *ama-ŏ*, *amem*, *amēs*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-īs*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-īr*, etc.; see **23**; **27**. Final *o*, marked ŏ, is generally long.

[2] Or *I am loving*, *I do love*. So in the Imperfect, *I loved*, *I was loving*, *I did love.*

[3] Or *thou lovest.* So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving*, *thou wilt love*, etc.

[4] Or *I will love.* So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved* or *I will have loved.*

[5] Or *I loved ;* see **197**, note 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
am**em**,	*may I love,*[1]	am**ēmus**,	*let us love,*
am**ēs**,	*may you love,*	am**ētis**,	*may you love,*
am**et**,	*let him love ;*	am**ent**,	*let them love.*

IMPERFECT.

am**ārem**,	*I should love,*	am**ārēmus**,	*we should love,*
am**ārēs**,	*you would love,*	am**ārētis**,	*you would love,*
am**āret**,	*he would love ;*	am**ārent**,	*they would love.*

PERFECT.

amāv**erim**,	*I may have loved,*[2]	amāv**erīmus**,	*we may have loved,*
amāv**eris**,	*you may have loved,*	amāv**erītis**,	*you may have loved,*
amāv**erit**,	*he may have loved ;*	amāv**erint**,	*they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv**issem**,	*I should have loved,*	amāv**issēmus**,	*we should have loved,*
amāv**issēs**,	*you would have loved,*	amāv**issētis**,	*you would have loved,*
amāv**isset**,	*he would have loved ;*	amāv**issent**,	*they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	am**ā**,	*love thou ;*	am**āte**,	*love ye.*
Fut.	am**ātō**,	*thou shalt love,*	am**ātōte**,	*ye shall love,*
	am**ātō**,	*he shall love ;*	am**antō**,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	am**āre**,	*to love.*
Perf.	amāv**isse**,	*to have loved.*
Fut.	amāt**ūrus**[3] **esse**,	*to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	am**āns**,[4]	*loving.*
Fut.	amāt**ūrus**,[3]	*about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen.	am**andī**,	*of loving,*
Dat.	am**andō**,	*for loving,*
Acc.	am**andum**,	*loving,*
Abl.	am**andō**,	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	amāt**um**,	*to love,*
Abl.	amāt**ū**,	*to love, be loved.*

---

[1] On the translation of the Subjunctive, see **196**, II.

[2] Often best rendered *I have loved.* So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved ;* see **196**, II.

[3] Decline like *bonus*, **148**.

[4] For declension, see **157**.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*

Verb Stem and Present Stem, *amā.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
am**or**,	am**ārī**,	am**ātus sum.**

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am**or**	am**āmur**
am**āris**, *or* **re**	am**āminī**
am**ātur**	am**antur**

Imperfect.

I was loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am**ābar**	am**ābāmur**
am**ābāris**, *or* **re**	am**ābāminī**
am**ābātur**	am**ābantur**

Future.

I shall or *will be loved*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am**ābor**	am**ābimur**
am**āberis**, *or* **re**	am**ābiminī**
am**ābitur**	am**ābuntur**

Perfect.

I have been loved or *I was loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus **sum**[1]	amātī **sumus**
amātus **es**	amātī **estis**
amātus **est**	amātī **sunt**

Pluperfect.

I had been loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus **eram**[1]	amātī **erāmus**
amātus **erās**	amātī **erātis**
amātus **erat**	amātī **erant**

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus **erō**[1]	amātī **erimus**
amātus **eris**	amātī **eritis**
amātus **erit**	amātī **erunt**

---

[1] *Fuī*, *fuistī*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.: *amātus fuī* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram*, *fuerās*, etc., for *eram*, etc.: also *fuerō*, etc., for *erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am**er**	am**ēmur**
am**ēris**, *or* **re**	am**ēminī**
am**ētur**	am**entur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.[1]

am**ārer**	am**ārēmur**
am**ārēris**, *or* **re**	am**ārēminī**
am**ārētur**	am**ārentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or *I have been loved.*[1]

amāt**us** **sim**[2]	amāt**ī** **sīmus**
amāt**us** **sīs**	amāt**ī** **sītis**
amāt**us** **sit**	amāt**ī** **sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.[1]

amāt**us** **essem**[2]	amāt**ī** **essēmus**
amāt**us** **essēs**	amāt**ī** **essētis**
amāt**us** **esset**	amāt**ī** **essent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. am**āre**, *be thou loved;*	am**āminī**, *be ye loved.*
Fut. am**ātor**, *thou shalt be loved,*	
am**ātor**, *he shall be loved;*	am**antor**, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. am**ārī**, *to be loved.*	
Perf. amāt**us** **esse**,[2] *to have been loved.*	*Perf.* amāt**us**, *having been loved.*
Fut. amāt**um** **īrī**, *to be about to be loved.*	*Ger.*[3] am**andus**, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see **196**, II.

[2] *Fuerim*, *fueris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim*, *sīs*, etc.—So also *fuissem*, *fuissēs*, etc., for *essem*, *essēs*, etc.: rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.

[3] *Ger.* = Gerundive; see **200**, IV., note.

SECOND CONJUGATION: Ē VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneō, *I advise.*

VERB STEM, *mon*, *moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
mone**ō**,	mon**ēre**,	mon**uī**,	mon**itum**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mone**ō**	mon**ēmus**
mon**ēs**	mon**ētis**
mone**t**	mone**nt**

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, or *I advised.*

mon**ēbam**	mon**ēbāmus**
mon**ēbās**	mon**ēbātis**
mon**ēbat**	mon**ēbant**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will advise.*

mon**ēbō**	mon**ēbimus**
mon**ēbis**	mon**ēbitis**
mon**ēbit**	mon**ēbunt**

PERFECT.

I have advised, or *I advised.*

monu**ī**	monu**imus**
monu**istī**	monu**istis**
monu**it**	monu**ērunt**, *or* **ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

monu**eram**	monu**erāmus**
monu**erās**	monu**erātis**
monu**erat**	monu**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have advised.*

monu**erō**	monu**erīmus**
monu**erīs**	monu**erītis**
monu**erit**	monu**erint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mone**am**	mone**āmus**
mone**ās**	mone**ātis**
mone**at**	mone**ant**

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

mon**ērem**	mon**ērēmus**
mon**ērēs**	mon**ērētis**
mon**ēret**	mon**ērent**

PERFECT.

I may have advised, or *I have advised.*[1]

monu**erim**	monu**erĭmus**
monu**erĭs**	monu**erĭtis**
monu**erit**	monu**erint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have advised, he would have advised.[2]

monu**issem**	monu**issēmus**
monu**issēs**	monu**issētis**
monu**isset**	monu**issent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	mon**ē**,	*advise thou;*	mon**ēte**,	*advise ye.*
Fut.	mon**ētō**,	*thou shalt advise,*	mon**ētōte**,	*ye shall advise,*
	mon**ētō**,	*he shall advise;*	mon**entō**,	*they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLE.		
Pres.	mon**ēre**,	*to advise.*	*Pres.*	mon**ēns**,	*advising.*
Perf.	monu**isse**,	*to have advised.*			
Fut.	monit**ūrus esse**,	*to be about to advise.*	*Fut.*	monit**ūrus**,	*about to advise.*

GERUND.			SUPINE.		
Gen.	mon**endī**,	*of advising,*			
Dat.	mon**endō**,	*for advising,*			
Acc.	mon**endum**,	*advising,*	*Acc.*	monit**um**,	*to advise,*
Abl.	mon**endō**,	*by advising.*	*Abl.*	monit**ū**,	*to advise, be advised.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see **196**, II.

[2] The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: *I had advised, you had advised,* etc.

SECOND CONJUGATION: Ē VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*

VERB STEM, *mon, moni;* PRESENT STEM, *monē.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
mon**eor**,	mon**ērī**,	mon**itus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mon**eor**	mon**ēmur**
mon**ēris**, *or* **re**	mon**ēminī**
mon**ētur**	mon**entur**

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mon**ēbar**	mon**ēbāmur**
mon**ēbāris**, *or* **re**	mon**ēbāminī**
mon**ēbātur**	mon**ēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be advised.*

mon**ēbor**	mon**ēbimur**
mon**ēberis**, *or* **re**	mon**ēbiminī**
mon**ēbitur**	mon**ēbuntur**

PERFECT.

I have been advised, I was advised.

monit**us sum**[1]	monit**ī sumus**
monit**us es**	monit**ī estis**
monit**us est**	monit**ī sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

monit**us eram**[1]	monit**ī erāmus**
monit**us erās**	monit**ī erātis**
monit**us erat**	monit**ī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been advised.*

monit**us erō**[1]	monit**ī erimus**
monit**us eris**	monit**ī eritis**
monit**us erit**	monit**ī erunt**

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mone**ar**	mone**āmur**
mone**āris**, *or* **re**	mone**āminī**
mone**ātur**	mone**antur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

mon**ērer**	mon**ērēmur**
mon**ērēris**, *or* **re**	mon**ērēminī**
mon**ērētur**	mon**ērentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or *I have been advised.*

monit**us sim**[1]	monit**ī sīmus**
monit**us sīs**	monit**ī sītis**
monit**us sit**	monit**ī sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.[2]

monit**us essem**[1]	monit**ī essēmus**
monit**us essēs**	monit**ī essētis**
monit**us esset**	monit**ī essent**.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	mon**ēre**, *be thou advised;*	mon**ēminī**, *be ye advised.*
Fut.	mon**ētor**, *thou shalt be advised,*	
	mon**ētor**, *he shall be advised;*	mon**entor**, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. mon**ērī**, *to be advised.*	
Perf. monit**us esse**,[1] *to have been advised.*	*Perf.* monit**us**, *advised.*
Fut. monit**um īrī**, *to be about to be advised.*	*Ger.* mon**endus**, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

---

[1] See **206**, foot-notes.

[2] Or *I had been advised, you had been advised*, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—**Regō**, *I rule.*

VERB STEM, *reg;* PRESENT STEM, *rege.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
reg**ō**,	reg**ere**,	rēx**ī**,[2]	rēc**tum**.[2]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg**ō**	reg**imus**
reg**is**	reg**itis**
reg**it**	reg**unt**

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or *I ruled.*

reg**ēbam**	reg**ēbāmus**
reg**ēbās**	reg**ēbātis**
reg**ēbat**	reg**ēbant**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will rule.*

reg**am**	reg**ēmus**
reg**ēs**	reg**ētis**
reg**et**	reg**ent**

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or *I ruled.*

rēx**ī**	rēx**imus**
rēx**istī**	rēx**istis**
rēx**it**	rēx**ērunt**, *or* **ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēx**eram**	rēx**erāmus**
rēx**erās**	rēx**erātis**
rēx**erat**	rēx**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

rēx**erō**	rēx**erimus**
rēx**eris**	rēx**eritis**
rēx**erit**	rēx**erint**

---

[1] The characteristic is a variable vowel—*ŏ, u, e, i:* reg*ŏ*, reg*u*nt, reg*e*re, reg*i*s; Curtius calls it the *thematic vowel;* see Curtius, I., p. 199, but on *ŏ*, see also Meyer, 441.

[2] See **254**; **30**; **33**, 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg**am**	reg**āmus**
reg**ās**	reg**ātis**
reg**at**	reg**ant**

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

reg**erem**	reg**erēmus**
reg**erēs**	reg**erētis**
reg**eret**	reg**erent**

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or *I have ruled.*

rēx**erim**	rēx**erīmus**
rēx**erīs**	rēx**erītis**
rēx**erit**	rēx**erint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēx**issem**	rēx**issēmus**
rēx**issēs**	rēx**issētis**
rēx**isset**	rēx**issent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	reg**e**, *rule thou ;*	reg**ite**, *rule ye.*
Fut.	reg**itō**, *thou shalt rule,*	reg**itōte**, *ye shall rule,*
	reg**itō**, *he shall rule ;*	reg**untō**, *they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. reg**ere**, *to rule.*
Perf. rēx**isse**, *to have ruled.*
Fut. rēct**ūrus esse**, *to be about to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. reg**ēns**, *ruling.*
Fut. rēct**ūrus**, *about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen. reg**endī**, *of ruling,*
Dat. reg**endō**, *for ruling,*
Acc. reg**endum**, *ruling,*
Abl. reg**endō**, *by ruling.*

SUPINE.

Acc. rēct**um**, *to rule,*
Abl. rēct**ū**, *to rule, be ruled.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see **196**, II.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

VERB STEM, *reg;* PRESENT STEM, *rege.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
reg**or**,	reg**ī**,	rēc**tus**[1] **sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg**or**	reg**imur**
reg**eris**, *or* **re**	reg**iminī**
reg**itur**	reg**untur**

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

reg**ēbar**	reg**ēbāmur**
reg**ēbāris**, *or* **re**	reg**ēbāminī**
reg**ēbātur**	reg**ēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

reg**ar**	reg**ēmur**
reg**ēris**, *or* **re**	reg**ēminī**
reg**ētur**	reg**entur**

PERFECT.

I have been ruled, or *I was ruled.*

rēct**us** **sum**[2]	rēct**ī** **sumus**
rēct**us** **es**	rēct**ī** **estis**
rēct**us** **est**	rēct**ī** **sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rēct**us** **eram**[2]	rēct**ī** **erāmus**
rēct**us** **erās**	rēct**ī** **erātis**
rēct**us** **erat**	rēct**ī** **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been ruled.*

rēct**us** **erō**[2]	rēct**ī** **erimus**
rēct**us** **eris**	rēct**ī** **eritis**
rēct**us** **erit**	rēct**ī** **erunt**

---

[1] See **209**, foot-notes.

[2] See **206**, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg**ar**	reg**āmur**
reg**āris**, *or* **re**	reg**āminī**
reg**ātur**	reg**antur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

reg**erer**	reg**erēmur**
reg**erēris**, *or* **re**	reg**erēminī**
reg**erētur**	reg**erentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or *I have been ruled.*

rēct**us** **sim**[1]	rēct**ī** **sīmus**
rēct**us** **sīs**	rēct**ī** **sītis**
rēct**us** **sit**	rēct**ī** **sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēct**us** **essem**[1]	rēct**ī** **essēmus**
rēct**us** **essēs**	rēct**ī** **essētis**
rēct**us** **esset**	rēct**ī** **essent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	reg**ere**, *be thou ruled;*	reg**iminī**, *be ye ruled.*
Fut.	reg**itor**, *thou shalt be ruled,* reg**itor**, *he shall be ruled;*	reg**untor**, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. reg**ī**, *to be ruled.*	
Perf. rēct**us** **esse**,[1] *to have been ruled.*	*Perf.* rēct**us**, *ruled.*
Fut. rēct**um** **īrī**, *to be about to be ruled.*	*Ger.* reg**endus**, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

---

[1] See **206**, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō, *I hear.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audī*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
audi**ō**,	aud**īre**,	aud**īvī**,	aud**ītum**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ō**	aud**īmus**
aud**īs**	aud**ītis**
audi**t**	audi**unt**

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or *I heard.*

audi**ēbam**	audi**ēbāmus**
audi**ēbās**	audi**ēbātis**
audi**ēbat**	audi**ēbant**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audi**am**	audi**ēmus**
audi**ēs**	audi**ētis**
audi**et**	audi**ent**

PERFECT.

I have heard, or *I heard.*

audīv**ī**	audīv**imus**
audīv**istī**	audīv**istis**
audīv**it**	audīv**ērunt**, *or* **ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīv**eram**	audīv**erāmus**
audīv**erās**	audīv**erātis**
audīv**erat**	audīv**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīv**erō**	audīv**erimus**
audīv**eris**	audīv**eritis**
audīv**erit**	audīv**erint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**am**	audi**āmus**
audi**ās**	audi**ātis**
audi**at**	audi**ant**

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

aud**īrem**	aud**īrēmus**
aud**īrēs**	aud**īrētis**
aud**īret**	aud**īrent**

PERFECT.

I may have heard, or *I have heard.*

audīv**erim**	audīv**erīmus**
audīv**erīs**	audīv**erītis**
audīv**erit**	audīv**erint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīv**issem**	audīv**issēmus**
audīv**issēs**	audīv**issētis**
audīv**isset**	audīv**issent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	aud**ī**,	*hear thou;*	aud**īte**,	*hear ye.*
Fut.	aud**ītō**,	*thou shalt hear,*	aud**ītōte**,	*ye shall hear,*
	aud**ītō**,	*he shall hear;*	audi**untō**,	*they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	aud**īre**,	*to hear.*
Perf.	audīv**isse**,	*to have heard.*
Fut.	audīt**ūrus esse**,	*to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	audi**ēns**,	*hearing.*
Fut.	audīt**ūrus**,	*about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	audi**endī**,	*of hearing,*
Dat.	audi**endō**,	*for hearing,*
Acc.	audi**endum**,	*hearing,*
Abl.	audi**endō**,	*by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	audīt**um**,	*to hear,*
Abl.	audīt**ū**,	*to hear, be heard.*

---

[1] **But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, II.**

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audī.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
audi**or**,	aud**īrī**,	aud**ītus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**or**	aud**īmur**
aud**īris**, *or* **re**	aud**īminī**
aud**ītur**	audi**untur**

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audi**ēbar**	audi**ēbāmur**
audi**ēbāris**, *or* **re**	audi**ēbāminī**
audi**ēbātur**	audi**ēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audi**ar**	audi**ēmur**
audi**ēris**, *or* **re**	audi**ēminī**
audi**ētur**	audi**entur**

PERFECT.

I have been heard, or *I was heard.*

aud**ītus sum**[1]	aud**ītī sumus**
aud**ītus es**	aud**ītī estis**
aud**ītus est**	aud**ītī sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

aud**ītus eram**[1]	aud**ītī erāmus**
aud**ītus erās**	aud**ītī erātis**
aud**ītus erat**	aud**ītī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

aud**ītus erō**[1]	aud**ītī erimus**
aud**ītus eris**	aud**ītī eritis**
aud**ītus erit**	aud**ītī erunt**

---

[1] See **206**, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ar**	audi**āmur**
audi**āris**, *or* **re**	audi**āminī**
audi**ātur**	audi**antur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

aud**īrer**	aud**īrēmur**
aud**īrēris**, *or* **re**	aud**īrēminī**
aud**īrētur**	aud**īrentur**

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or *I have been heard.*

audīt**us** **sim**[1]	audīt**ī** **sīmus**
audīt**us** **sīs**	audīt**ī** **sītis**
audīt**us** **sit**	audīt**ī** **sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audīt**us** **essem**[1]	audīt**ī** **essēmus**
audīt**us** **essēs**	audīt**ī** **essētis**
audīt**us** **esset**	audīt**ī** **essent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	aud**īre**, *be thou heard;*	aud**īminī**, *be ye heard.*
Fut.	aud**ītor**, *thou shalt be heard,* aud**ītor**, *he shall be heard;*	audi**untor**, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
Pres.	aud**īrī**, *to be heard.*		
Perf.	audīt**us** **esse**,[1] *to have been heard.*	*Perf.*	audīt**us**, *heard.*
Fut.	audīt**um** **īrī**, *to be about to be heard.*	*Ger.*	audi**endus**, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

---

[1] See **206**, foot-notes.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

213. ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT SYSTEM.[1]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am	-ō̆	-ās,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
mon	-eō̆,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
reg	-ō̆	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
aud	-iō̆,	-īs,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ābam,	-ābās,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
mon	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
reg	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
aud	-iēbam,	-iēbās,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

FUTURE.

am	-ābō̆,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābimus,	-ābitis,	-ābunt.
mon	-ēbō̆,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbimus,	-ēbitis,	-ēbunt.
reg	-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
aud	-iam,	-iēs,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

am	-em,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
mon	-eam,	-eās,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
reg	-am,	-ās,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
aud	-iam,	-iās,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ārem,	-ārēs,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
mon	-ērem,	-ērēs,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
reg	-erem,	-erēs,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
aud	-īrem,	-īrēs,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

IMPERATIVE.

	PRESENT.		FUTURE.			
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
am	-ā,	-āte;	-ātō̆,	-ātō̆;	-ātōte,	-antō̆.
mon	-ē,	-ēte;	-ētō̆,	-ētō̆;	-ētōte,	-entō̆.
reg	-e,	-ite;	-itō̆,	-itō̆;	-itōte,	-untō̆.
aud	-ī,	-īte;	-ītō̆,	-ītō̆;	-ītōte,	-iuntō̆.

	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
am	-āre;	-āns;	-andī.
mon	-ēre;	-ēns;	-endī.
reg	-ere;	-ēns;	-endī.
aud	-īre;	-iēns;	-iendī.

NOTE.—Verbs in *iō̆* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV.; see **217**.

---

[1] For the *Present System*, see **222**, I.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

214. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT SYSTEM.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

am	-or,	-āris	*or* āre,[1]	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
mon	-eor,	-ēris	*or* ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
reg	-or,	-eris	*or* ere,	-itur;	-imur,	-iminī,	-untur.
aud	-ior,	-īris	*or* īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īminī,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

am	-ābar,	-ābāris	*or* ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāminī,	-ābantur.
mon	-ēbar,	-ēbāris	*or* ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
reg	-ēbar,	-ēbāris	*or* ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
aud	-iēbar,	-iēbāris	*or* iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāminī,	-iēbantur.

Future.

am	-ābor,	-āberis	*or* ābere,	-ābitur;	-ābimur,	-ābiminī,	-ābuntur.
mon	-ēbor,	-ēberis	*or* ēbere,	-ēbitur;	-ēbimur,	-ēbiminī,	-ēbuntur.
reg	-ar,	-ēris	*or* ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
aud	-iar,	-iēris	*or* iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēminī,	-ientur.

Subjunctive.

Present.

am	-er,	-ēris	*or* ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
mon	-ear,	-eāris	*or* eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāminī,	-eantur
reg	-ar,	-āris	*or* āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
aud	-iar,	-iāris	*or* iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāminī,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

am	-ārer,	-ārēris	*or* ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēminī,	-ārentur.
mon	-ērer,	-ērēris	*or* ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēminī,	-ērentur.
reg	-erer,	-erēris	*or* erēre,	-erētur;	-erēmur,	-erēminī,	-erentur.
aud	-īrer,	-īrēris	*or* īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēminī,	-īrentur.

Imperative.

	Present.		Future.			
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
am	-āre,	-āminī;	-ātor,	-ātor;	——	-antor.
mon	-ēre,	-ēminī;	-ētor,	-ētor;	——	-entor.
reg	-ere,	-iminī;	-itor,	-itor;	——	-untor.
aud	-īre,	-īminī;	-ītor,	-ītor;	——	-iuntor.

Pres. Infinitive.		Gerundive.
am	-ārī;	-andus.
mon	-ērī;	-endus.
reg	-ī;	-endus.
aud	-īrī;	-iendus.

---

[1] In these and the following endings *re* takes the place of *ris: āris* or *āre*, *ābāris* or *ābāre*. *Re* is formed from *ris* by dropping final *s* and then changing final *i* to *e;* see **36**, 5; **24**, 1, note; also **237**.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

215. ACTIVE VOICE.

PERFECT SYSTEM.[1]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	ī,	-īstī,	-it;	-imus,	-īstis,	-ērunt, ēre.[2]

PLUPERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-eram,	-erās,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-erō̆,	-erī̆s,	-erit;	-erī̆mus,	-erī̆tis,	-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-erim,	-erī̆s,	-erit;	-erī̆mus,	-erī̆tis,	-erint.

PLUPERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-issem,	-issēs,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-isse.

SUPINE SYSTEM.[1]

	FUT. INFINITIVE.	FUT. PARTICIPLE.	SUPINE.
amāt monit rēct audīt	-ūrus esse.	-ūrus.	-um, -ū.

---

[1] For the *Perfect System*, see **222**, II.; for the *Supine System*, **222**, III.

[2] From the comparative view presented in **213–216**, it will be seen that the four conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*. See also **201**, foot-note.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

216. PASSIVE VOICE.

SUPINE SYSTEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us sum,	-us es,	-us est;	-ī[1] sumus,	-ī estis,	-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us eram,	-us erās,	-us erat;	-ī erāmus,	-ī erātis,	-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us erŏ,	-us eris,	-us erit;	-ī erimus,	-ī eritis,	-ī erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us sim,	-us sīs,	-us sit;	-ī sīmus,	-ī sītis,	-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us essem,	-us essēs,	-us esset;	-ī essēmus,	-ī essētis,	-ī essent.

INFINITIVE.

	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
amāt monit rēct audīt	-us esse.	-um īrī.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-us.

---

[1] In the plural, *-us* becomes *-ī*: *amāt-ī sumus*, etc.

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **iō̆, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are—

1. *Capiō̆*, to take; *cupiō̆*, to desire; *faciō̆*, to make; *fodiō̆*, to dig; *fugiō̆*, to flee; *jaciō̆*, to throw; *pariō̆*, to bear; *quatiō̆*, to shake; *rapiō̆*, to seize; *sapiō̆*, to be wise, with their compounds.

2. The compounds of the obsolete verbs, *laciō̆*, to entice, and *speciō̆*,[1] to look; *alliciō̆*, *ēliciō̆*, *illiciō̆*, *pelliciō̆*, etc.; *aspiciō̆*, *cōnspiciō̆*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *gradior*, to go; *morior*, to die; *patior*, to suffer; see **231**.

218. ACTIVE VOICE.—Capiō̆, *I take.*

VERB STEM, *cap;* PRESENT STEM, *cape.*[2]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
capiō̆,	capere,	cēpī,	captum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT TENSE.	capiō̆, capis, capit;	capimus, capitis, capiunt.
IMPERFECT.	capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
FUTURE.	capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.
PERFECT.	cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, *or* ēre.
PLUPERFECT.	cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	cēperō̆, -erī̆s, -erit;	cēperī̆mus, -erī̆tis, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	capiam, -iās, -iat;	capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
IMPERFECT.	caperem, -erēs, -eret;	caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.
PERFECT.	cēperim, -erī̆s, -erit;	cēperī̆mus, -erī̆tis, -erint.
PLUPERFECT.	cēpissem, -issēs, -isset;	cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

---

[1] *Speciō̆* occurs, but is exceedingly rare.

[2] With variable vowel—*e, i: cape, capi.*

IMPERATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	cape;	capite.
Fut.	capitō̆, capitō̆;	capitōte, capiuntō̆.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
Pres.	capere.	*Pres.*	capiēns.
Perf.	cēpisse.		
Fut.	captūrus esse.	*Fut.*	captūrus.

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Gen.	capiendī,		
Dat.	capiendō,		
Acc.	capiendum,	*Acc.*	captum,
Abl.	capiendō.	*Abl.*	captū.

219. PASSIVE VOICE.—Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND
capior,	capī,	captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT TENSE.	capior, caperis, capitur;	capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.
IMPERFECT.	capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;	capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, -iēbantur.
FUTURE.	capiar, -iēris, -iētur;	capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.
PERFECT.	captus sum, es, est;	captī sumus, estis, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.	captus eram, erās, erat;	captī erāmus, erātis, erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	captus erō̆, eris, erit;	captī erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
capiar, -iāris, -iātur;	capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
IMPERFECT.	
caperer, -erēris, -erētur;	caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.
PERFECT.	
captus sim, sīs, sit;	captī sīmus, sītis, sint.
PLUPERFECT.	
captus essem, essēs, esset;	captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;	capiminī.
Fut. capitor, capitor;	capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. capī.	
Perf. captus esse.	*Perf.* captus.
Fut. captum īrī.	*Fut.* capiendus.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

220. The PRINCIPAL PARTS are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including the characteristic vowels, **ā**, **ē**, **e**, **ī**:

CONJ. I.	**ō,**	**āre,**	**āvī,**	**ātum,**	
	amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum,	*to love.*
CONJ. II. *In a few verbs:*	**eō,**	**ēre,**	**ēvī,**	**ētum,**	
	dēleō,	dēlēre,	dēlēvī,	dēlētum,	*to destroy.*
In most verbs:	**eō,**	**ēre,**	**uī,**	**itum,**	
	moneō,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum,	*to advise.*
CONJ. III. *In consonant stems:*	**ō,**	**ere,**	**sī,**	**tum,**	
	carpō,	carpere,	carpsī,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
In vowel stems:	**ō,**	**ere,**	**ī,**	**tum,**	
	acuō,	acuere,	acuī,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
CONJ. IV.	**iō,**	**īre,**	**īvī,**	**ītum,**	
	audiō,	audīre,	audīvī,	audītum,	*to hear.*

221. COMPOUNDS of verbs with dissyllabic Supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts:

I. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **e** *of the simple verb:*

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the **e**:[1]

regō,	regere,	rēxī,	rēctum,	*to rule.*
dī-rigō,	dīrigere,	dīrēxī,	dīrēctum,	*to direct.*

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the **e**:[1]

teneō,	tenēre,	tenuī,	tentum,	*to hold.*
dē-tineō,	dētinēre,	dētinuī,	dētentum,	*to detain.*

II. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **a** *of the simple verb:*

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect, and the Supine takes **e**,[1] sometimes **a**:

capiō,	capere,	cēpī,	captum,	*to take.*
ac-cipiō,	accipere,	accēpī,	acceptum,	*to accept.*

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e**:[1]

rapiō,	rapere,	rapuī,	raptum,	*to seize.*
dī-ripiō,	dīripere,	dīripuī,	dīreptum,	*to tear asunder.*

Note.—For *Reduplication in compounds*, see **255**, I., 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

222. All the forms of any regular verb arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems:

I. The Present System, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises—

1. The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present* and *Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active Participle.*
6. The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive.*

Note.—These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending **re**: *amāre*, present stem AMĀ; *monēre*, MONĒ; *regere*, REGE; *audīre*, AUDĪ.

II. The Perfect System, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active Voice—

1. The *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect Indicative.*
2. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
3. The *Perfect Infinitive.*

Note.—These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active, by dropping **ī**: *amāvī*, perfect stem AMĀV; *monuī*, MONU.

III. The Supine System, with the Supine as its basis, comprises—

---

[1] The favorite vowel before *x*, or two or more consonants; see **24**, 1.

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *ū*, the former of which with *īrī* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive.*

2. The *Future Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System.*

NOTE.—These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping **um**: *amātum*, supine stem AMĀT; *monitum*, MONIT.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION

FIRST CONJUGATION.

223. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō̆, *I love.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amō̆, amāre, amāvī, amātum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *amā.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	amō̆	amem	amā	amāre	amāns
Imp.	amābam	amārem			
Fut.	amābō̆		amātō̆		

Gerund, amandī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM; STEM, *amāv.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Perf.	amāvī	amāverim		amāvisse	
Plup.	amāveram	amāvissem			
F. P.	amāverō̆				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *amāt.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Fut.				amātūrus esse	amātūrus

Supine, amātum, amātū.

224. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amor, amārī, amātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *amā.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	amor	amer	amāre	amārī	
Imp.	amābar	amārer			
Fut.	amābor		amātor		

Gerundive, amandus.

3. Supine System; Stem, *amāt.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Perf.	amātus sum	amātus sim		amātus esse	amātus
Plup.	amātus eram	amātus essem			
F. P.	amātus erŏ				
Fut.				amātum īrī	

SECOND CONJUGATION.

225. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneŏ, *I advise.*

1. Principal Parts.

moneŏ, monēre, monuī, monitum.

2. Present System; Stem, *monē.*

Pres.	moneŏ	moneam	monē	monēre	monēns
Imp.	monēbam	monērem			
Fut.	monēbŏ		monētŏ		

Gerund, monendī, dō, etc.

3. Perfect System; Stem, *monu.*

Perf.	monuī	monuerim		monuisse	
Plup.	monueram	monuissem			
F. P.	monuerŏ				

4. Supine System; Stem, *monit.*

Fut.				monitūrus esse	monitūrus

Supine, monitum, monitū.

226. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*

1. Principal Parts.

moneor, monērī, monitus sum.

2. Present System; Stem, *monē.*

Pres.	moneor	monear	monēre	monērī	
Imp.	monēbar	monērer			
Fut.	monēbor		monētor		

Gerundive, monendus.

3. Supine System; Stem, *monit.*

Perf.	monitus sum	monitus sim		monitus esse	monitus
Plup.	monitus eram	monitus essem			
F. P.	monitus erŏ				
Fut.				monitum īrī	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

227. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regŏ, *I rule.*

1. Principal Parts.

regŏ, regere, rēxī, rēctum.

2. Present System; Stem, *rege.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	regŏ	regam	rege	regere	regēns
Imp.	regēbam	regerem			
Fut.	regam		regitŏ		

Gerund, regendī, dō, etc.

3. Perfect System; Stem, *rēx.*

Perf.	rēxī	rēxerim		rēxisse	
Plup.	rēxeram	rēxissem			
F. P.	rēxerŏ				

4. Supine System; Stem, *rēct.*

Fut.				rēctūrus esse	rēctūrus

Supine, rēctum, rēctū.

228. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

1. Principal Parts.

regor, regī, rēctus sum.

2. Present System; Stem, *rege.*

Pres.	regor	regar	regere	regī	
Imp.	regēbar	regerer			
Fut.	regar		regitor		

Gerundive, regendus.

3. Supine System; Stem, *rēct.*

Perf.	rēctus sum	rēctus sim		rēctus esse	rēctus
Plup.	rēctus eram	rēctus essem			
F. P.	rēctus erŏ				
Fut.				rēctum īrī	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

229. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō̆, *I hear.*

1. Principal Parts.

audiō̆, audīre, audīvī, audītum.

2. Present System; Stem, *audī.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	audiō̆	audiam	audī	audīre	audiēns
Imp.	audiēbam	audīrem			
Fut.	audiam		audītō̆		

Gerund, audiendī, dō, etc.

3. Perfect System; Stem, *audīv.*

Perf.	audīvī	audīverim		audīvisse	
Plup.	audīveram	audīvissem			
F. P.	audīverō̆				

4. Supine System; Stem, *audīt.*

Fut.				audītūrus esse	audītūrus

Supine, audītum, audītū.

230. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard.*

1. Principal Parts

audior, audīrī, audītus sum.

2. Present System; Stem, *audī.*

Pres.	audior	audiar	audīre	audīrī	
Imp.	audiēbar	audīrer			
Fut.	audiar		audītor		

Gerundive, audiendus.

3. Supine System; Stem, *audīt.*

Perf.	audītus sum	audītus sim		audītus esse	audītus
Plup.	audītus eram	audītus essem			
F. P.	audītus erō̆				
Fut.				audītum īrī	

DEPONENT VERBS.

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But—

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

Note.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, *I exhort.*

1. Principal Parts.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum.

2. Present System; Stem, *hortā.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	hortor[1]	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
Imp.	hortābar	hortārer			
Fut.	hortābor		hortātor		

Gerund, hortandī. *Gerundive*, hortandus.

3. Supine System; Stem, *hortāt.*

Perf.	hortātus sum	hortātus sim		hortātus esse	hortātus
Plup.	hortātus eram	hortātus essem			
F. P.	hortātus erŏ				
Fut.				hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus

Supine, hortātum, hortātū.

Note.—For the Principal Parts of Deponent Verbs in the other conjugations, see **268**, **283**, and **288**. From these Principal Parts the pupil, by the aid of the paradigms already learned, will be able to inflect any Deponent Verb.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

233. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action:

---

[1] The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *hortor*, *hortāris*, *hortātur*, *hortāmur*, *hortāminī*, *hortantur*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. The *Gerundive*, as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see **301**, 1.

Amātūrus sum, *I am about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres.	amātūrus sum[1]	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
Imp.	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
Fut.	amātūrus erō̆		
Perf.	amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
Plup.	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem	
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō̆[1]		

234. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty.*

Amandus sum, *I must be loved.*[2]

Pres.	amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
Imp.	amandus eram	amandus essem	
Fut.	amandus erō̆		
Perf.	amandus fuī	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
Plup.	amandus fueram	amandus fuissem	
F. P.	amandus fuerō̆		

Note.—The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum;* but as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amāns est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

235. Perfects in **āvī, ēvī, īvī,** and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**, and sometimes before **t.** Thus—

Ā with the following vowel becomes **ā**: *amāvistī* (amaīstī), *amāstī; amāveram* (amaeram), *amāram; amāvisse* (amaisse), *amāsse; amāvit* (amait), *amāt.*

Ē with the following vowel becomes **ē**: *nēvī* (to spin), *nēvistī* (neīsti), *nēstī; nēvērunt* (neērunt), *nērunt.*

Ī-I and **I-i** become **ī**: *audīvistī* (audiīstī), *audīstī; audīvissem* (audiissem), *audīssem; audīvit* (audiit), *audīt.*

1. Perfects in *ivi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s: audīvī, audiī, audiit, audieram; audīvistī, audiīstī* or *audīstī.*

---

[1] The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amātūrus sum, es, est.* The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

[2] Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved.*

2. Perfects in *ōvī*.—The perfects of *nōscō*, to know, and *moveō*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvistī*, *nōstī*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, *is*, or *sis*: *scrīpsistī*, *scrīpstī*; *dīxisse*, *dīxe*; *accēssistis*, *accēstis*.

236. The ending **ēre** for **ērunt** in the Perfect is common in Livy and the poets, but rare in Cicero and Caesar.

Note.—The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *erunt* occurs.

237. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Person of the Passive is rare in the Present Indicative, but common in the other tenses.

238. **Dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *face*, and *fere*, are the Imperatives of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

Note 1.—*Dīce*, *dūce*, and *face* occur in poetry.

Note 2.—Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *faciō*, which change *a* into *i*: *cōnfice*.

239. **Undus** and **undī** for *endus* and *endī* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV., especially after *i*: *faciundus*, from *faciō*, to make; *dīcundus*, from *dīcō*, to say.

240. Ancient and Rare Forms.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in—

1. **ībam** for *iēbam*, in the Imperfect Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *sciēbam*. See Imperfect of *eō*, to go, **295**.

2. **ībo**, **ībor**, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Future of Conj. IV.: *servībō* for *serviam*; *opperībor* for *opperiar*. See Future of *eō*, **295**.

3. **im** for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *edim*, *edīs*, etc., for *edam*, *edās*, etc.; *duim* (from *duō*, for *dō*), for *dem*.—In *sim*, *velim*, *nōlim*, *mālim* (**204** and **293**), *im* is the common ending.

4. **āssō**, **ēssō**, and **sō**, in the Future Perfect, and **āssim**, **ēssim**, and **sim**, in the Perfect Subjunctive of Conj. I., II., III.: *faxō* (facsō) for *fēcerō*[1] (from *faciō*); *faxim* for *fēcerim*[1]; *ausim* for *ausus sim* (for *auserim*, from *audeō*). Rare examples are: *levāssō* for *levāverō*; *prohibēssō* for *prohibuerō*; *jūssō* for *jūsserō*; *capsō* for *cēperō*; *axō* for *ēgerō*; *occīsit* for *occīderit*; *taxīs* for *tetigerīs*.

5. **tō** and **minō** for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Future Imperative, Passive and Deponent: *arbitrātō*, *arbitrāminō* for *arbitrātor*; *ūtuntō* for *ūtuntor*.

6. **ier** for **ī** in the Present Passive Infinitive: *amārier* for *amārī*; *vidērier* for *vidērī*.

---

[1] Remember that *r* in *erō* and *erim* was originally *s*; see **31, 1**; **204**, foot-note 2.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements:

1. The TENSE-SIGN: **ba** in *amā-ba-m*, *regē-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL: **ā** in *mone-ā-s*, *reg-ā-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING: **s** in *mone-ā-s*, *reg-ā-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign: *amā-s*. So also the Future[1] in Conjugations III. and IV.

243. In the other tense-forms of all regular verbs, the tense-sign is found in the auxiliary with which these forms are all compounded:

Amā-bam,[2] *amāv-eram*; *amā-bŏ*, *amāv-erŏ*; *monē-bam*, *monu-eram*.

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—**ā**, **ē**,[3] or **ī**[4]—before the Personal Endings:

Mone-ā-mus, *mone-ā-tis*, *am-ē-mus*, *am-ē-tis*, *s-ī-mus*, *s-ī-tis*.

NOTE.—This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and generally in the Perfect before *s*, *mus*, and *tis*. *moneam*, *amet*, *sit*, *fuerĭs*, *amāverĭmus*, *amāverĭtis*.

---

[1] This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative; see foot-note 4 below.

[2] *Bam* and *eram* are both auxiliary verbs in the Imperfect, the former from the stem *bhu*, the old form of *fu* in *fu-ī*, and the latter from the stem *es*; the former added to the Present stem forms the Imperfect, the latter added to the Perfect stem forms the Pluperfect. *Bŏ* and *erŏ* are Future forms, the former from *bhu*, the latter from *es*; the former added to the Present stem forms the Future in Conjugations I. and II., the latter added to the Perfect stem forms the Future Perfect. In the Subjunctive the tense-forms, except the Present, are compounded with Subjunctive tense-forms from *es*; thus, *erem* in *regerem* is for *esem*, the old form of *essem*; *erim* in *rēx-erim* is for *esim* = *sim*, and *issem* in *rēx-issem* is for *essem*; thus the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum* added to the Perfect stem form the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

[3] This *ē* comes from *a-ī*, of which the *ī* alone is the true Mood-Sign.

[4] The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods—the Subjunctive with the sign *ā*, and the Optative with the sign *ī*, sometimes contained in *ē* for *a-ī*. Thus: Subjunctive, *mone-ā-mus*, *audi-ā-tis*; Optative, *s-ī-mus*, *rexer-ī-tis*, *am-ē-mus* for *ama-ī-mus*, *reger-ē-s* for *regera-ī-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mone-ā-mus*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *am-ē-mus*, an Optative form. The First Person Singular of Futures in *am*—*regam*, *audiam*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *regēs*, *et*, etc., *audiēs*, *et*, etc., are in form Optatives.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings; see **247**, 3.

III. Personal Endings.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows:

	Person.	Active.	Passive.	Meaning.
Singular.[1]	*First*	m	r	*I*
	Second	s	ris	*thou, you*
	Third	t	tur	*he, she, it*
Plural.[2]	*First*	mus	mur	*we*
	Second	tis	minī[3]	*you*
	Third	nt	ntur	*they*

EXAMPLES.

amāba-m	amāba-r	regŏ	rego-r
amābā-s	amābā-ris	regi-s	rege-ris
amāba-t	amābā-tur	regi-t	regi-tur
amābā-mus	amābā-mur	regi-mus	regi-mur
amābā-tis	amābā-minī	regi-tis	regi-minī
amāba-nt	amāba-ntur	regu-nt	regu-ntur

1. Omitted.—In the Present,[4] Perfect, and Future Perfect Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Future Ind. of Conjugations I. and II., the ending *m* does not appear. In these forms the First Person ends in *ŏ*:[5] *amŏ, amābŏ, amāverŏ;* except in the Perfect, where it ends in *ī*:[6] *amāvī.*

2. The endings of the Perfect Active are peculiar. They are the same as in *fuī:*

---

[1] In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each—(1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, I; *s*, thou, you; *t*, he; and (2) in the Passive two such stems, one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice: thus, in the ending *tur*, *t* (tū) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

[2] In the Plural the Endings contain each—(1) in the Active two pronominal stems: *mu-s* = *m* (mu) and *s*, I and you, i. e., we; *tis* = *t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tū*, thou) and *s*, = *s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e., you; *nt* = *n* and *t*, he and he, i. e., they; and (2) in the Passive three such stems, the third denoting the Passive Voice: thus in *ntur*, *nt* (ntu) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

[3] *Minī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (μενοι). *Amāminī*, originally *amāminī estis*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estis* means *you have been loved.*

[4] Except in *sum*, I am, and *inquam*, I say.

[5] The origin of this final *ŏ* is uncertain. Curtius regards it as simply the *thematic* vowel, but Meyer recognizes in it a *suffix* combined with the *thematic* vowel; see Curtius, Verbum, I., pp. 199, 200; Meyer, p. 349.

[6] Probably a part of the stem; but see Curtius, Verbum, II., p. 178; Papillon, pp. 194-196; also two papers by the author, on the Formation of the Tenses for Completed Action in the Latin Finite Verb; Transactions of the Am. Phil. Assoc., 1874 and 1875.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Pers.	fu-ī[1]	fu-i-mus
Second	fu-īs-tī	fu-īs-tis
Third	fu-i-t	fu-ēru-nt *or* ēre

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings:

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. Second Pers.	—[2]	te	re	minī
Fut. Second	tŏ	tōte	tor	
Third	tŏ	ntŏ	tor	ntor

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines are formed with the following endings:

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Infinitive	*Present*	re (ere)	rī (erī), ī
	Perfect	isse	us esse
	Future	ūrus esse	um īrī
Participle	*Present*	ns	
	Future	ūrus	
	Perfect		us
	Gerundive		ndus
Gerund		ndī	
Supine		um, ū	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem, found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping *re*, is generally the same as the Verb Stem in the First and in the Fourth Conjugations, and sometimes in the Second. Thus, *amā*, *dēlē*, and *audī*[3] are both Present Stems and Verb Stems.

---

[1] *M* is omitted in the first person, and *tī*, an ancient form of *sī*, *s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *tī* and *tis* are preceded by *īs*, and *ĕrunt* in *fu-ĕrunt* is for *esunt*, the full form for *sunt*. Thus *fu-ērunt* is a compound of *fu* and *esunt* for *sunt*. *Fu-īstis*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istis* for *estis*, and *fu-īstī*, of *fu* and *istī* for *estī* for *es*.

[2] In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *te* and *re* are shortened from *tis* and *ris* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *i* into *e*; see **24**, 1, note. In the Future, *tŏ* of the second person corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind.; *tŏ* and *ntŏ* of the third person to *t* and *nt*. *Tor* and *ntor* add *r* to *tŏ* and *ntŏ*. *Tōte* doubles the pronominal stem.

[3] The final vowels are generally explained as derived from *aja*, which became, in Conj. I., *ajo*, shortened to *ŏ* in *am-ŏ*, and to *ā* in the other forms, as *am-ā-mus;* in

251. The Present Stem, when not the same as the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods:

1. By adding a short vowel, called the *Thematic vowel:*[1]

regŏ;	*Stem*, reg;	*Present Stem*, rege;	*to rule.*
canŏ;	“ can;	“ cane;	*to sing.*

2. By adding a *Thematic vowel* preceded by **n**, **sc**, or **t**:

sinŏ;	*Stem*, si;	*Present Stem*, sine;	*to permit.*
spernŏ;	“ sper, sprē;	“ sperne;	*to spurn.*
temnŏ;	“ tem;	“ temne;	*to despise.*
veterāscŏ;	“ veterā;	“ veterāsce;	*to grow old.*
crēscŏ;	“ crē;	“ crēsce;	*to increase.*
plectŏ;	“ plec;	“ plecte;	*to braid.*

3. By adding a *Thematic vowel* preceded by **i** or **j**:

capiŏ;	*Stem*, cap;	*Present Stem*, cap-je, cape;[2]	*to take.*
pellŏ;	“ pel;	“ pel-je, pelle;[2]	*to drive.*
currŏ;	“ cur;	“ cur-je, curre;[2]	*to run.*

4. By adding a *Thematic vowel* and inserting **n**—changed to **m** before a labial, **b** or **p**; see **33**, 3:

frangŏ;	*Stem*, frag;	*Present Stem*, frange;	*to break.*
fundŏ;	“ fud;	“ funde;	*to pour.*
rumpŏ;	“ rup;	“ rumpe;	*to burst.*

5. By adding **ā**, **ē**, or **ī**:

juvŏ;	*Stem*, juv;	*Present Stem*, juvā;	*to assist.*
videŏ;	“ vid;	“ vidē;	*to see.*
hauriŏ;	“ haur *for* haus;	“ haurī;	*to draw.*

6. By reduplicating the stem:

sistŏ;	*Stem*, sta;	*Present Stem*, sista,[3] siste;	*to place.*
serŏ;	“ sa;	“ sisa, sise, sere;[4]	*to sow.*

NOTE.—Sometimes two of these methods are united in the same stem:

gīgnŏ;	*Stem*, gen;	*Present Stem*, gigene, gīgne;[5]	*to beget.*
nanciscor;	“ nac;	“ nancisce;[6]	*to obtain.*

Conj. II., *ejo*, shortened to *eŏ* in *dēl-eŏ*, and to *ē* in *dēl-ē-mus;* and in Conj. IV., *ijo*, shortened to *iŏ* in *aud-iŏ*, to *iu* in *aud-iu-nt*, and to *ī* in *aud-ī-mus;* see **335**, foot-note.

[1] This *Thematic vowel*, originally *a*, is generally weakened to *e* or *i: reg-e-re*, *reg-i-mus;* but sometimes it appears to take the form of *ŏ* or *u: reg-ŏ*, *reg-u-nt*. There is, however, some difference of opinion in regard to the origin of *ŏ* in such cases; see **247**, 1, foot-note 5.

[2] With variable Thematic vowel; see foot-note 1, above. *J*, pronounced *y*, assimilated to *l* and *r* in *pelle* and *curre*, as in the Greek *βάλλω*, from *βάλ-jω*. See Curtius, Verbum, I., p. 300.

[3] For *stista* for *stasta*. The *e* in *siste* takes the several forms of the Thematic vowel.

[4] *S* changed to *r* between two vowels; see **31**, 1. The vowel *a* of the stem is weakened to *i* before *s*, but to *e* before *r;* see **24**, 1 and 2.

[5] Reduplication with Thematic vowel.

[6] *N* inserted and *i-sc-e* added.

II. PERFECT STEMS.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

amō (a-ō),	amāvī;	*Stem*,	amā;	*Perfect Stem*,	amāv;	*to love.*
dēleō,	dēlēvī;	"	dēlē;	"	dēlēv;	*to destroy.*
audiō,	audīvī;	"	audī;	"	audīv;	*to hear.*

1. In verbs in *uō*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem:

acuō,	acuī;	*Stem*,	acu;	*Perfect Stem*,	acu;	*to sharpen.*

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

alō,	aluī;	*Stem*,	al;	*Perfect Stem*,	alu;	*to nourish.*
fremō,	fremuī;	"	frem;	"	fremu;	*to rage.*
teneō,	tenuī;	"	ten;	"	tenu;	*to hold.*
doceō,	docuī;	"	doc;	"	docu;	*to teach.*

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

regō,	rēxī;	*Stem*,	reg;	*Perfect Stem*,	rēx = regs;	*to rule.*
scrībō,	scrīpsī;	"	scrīb;	"	scrīps = scrībs;	*to write.*
carpō,	carpsī;	"	carp;	"	carps;	*to pluck.*

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these—

I. Some reduplicate the stem:[1]

canō,	cecinī;	*Stem*,	can;	*Perfect Stem*,	cecin;	*to sing.*

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples under **271**, 1, and **272**, 1.

2. The STEM-VOWEL *a* is generally weakened to *i*, sometimes to *e*: *cadō*, *cecidī* (for *cecadī*), to fall.

3. In VERBS BEGINNING WITH *Sp* OR *St*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeō*, *spopondī* (for *spospondī*), to promise; *stō*, *stetī* (for *stestī*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *dō*, to give; *stō*, to stand; *discō*, to learn; *poscō*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *currō*, to run; *re-spondeō*, *re-spondī*, to answer; *circum-dō*, *circum-dedī*; *circum-stō*, *circum-stetī*, to encircle. The compounds of *dō* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-dō*, *ad-didī* (for *ad-dedī*), to add; see **259**, 1.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel:[2]

emō,	ēmī;	*Stem*,	em;	*Perfect Stem*,	ēm;	*to buy.*
agō,	ēgī;	"	ag;	"	ēg;	*to drive.*
ab-igō,	ab-ēgī;	"	abig;	"	abēg;	*to drive away.*

NOTE.—The stem-vowels *a* and (in compounds) *i* generally become *ē*, as in *agō* and *ab-igō*.

---

[1] See lists, **271**, 1, and **272**, 1.

[2] See lists, **271**, 2; **272**, 2

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:[1]

īcō̆,	īcī;	*Stem*,	īc;	*Perfect Stem*,	īc;	*to strike.*
vīsō̆,	vīsī;	"	vīs;	"	vīs;	*to visit.*

Note.—Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-syllable long.

III. Supine Stem.

256. The Supine Stem adds **t** to the Verb Stem:

amō̆,[2]	amātum;	*Stem*,	amā;	*Supine Stem*,	amāt;	*to love.*
dīcō̆,	dictum;	"	dīc;	"	dict;	*to say.*
moneō̆,	monitum;	"	moni;[3]	"	monit;	*to advise.*
dēleō̆,	dēlētum;	"	dēlē;	"	dēlēt;	*to destroy.*
audiō̆,	audītum;	"	audī;	"	audīt;	*to hear.*
carpō̆,	carptum;	"	carp;	"	carpt;	*to pluck.*

1. Stems in **d** and **t**, most stems in **l** and **r**, and a few others, change **t** into **s**:

laedō̆,	laesum;	*Stem*,	laed;	*Supine Stem*,	laes;[4]	*to hurt.*
vertō̆,	versum;	"	vert;	"	vers;[4]	*to turn.*
verrō̆,	versum;	"	verr;	"	vers;	*to brush.*
fallō̆,	falsum;	"	fall;	"	fals;	*to deceive.*

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.[5]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Class I.—Stem in ā: Perfect in **vī** or **uī**.

257. Principal Parts in—**ō, āre, āvī, ātum.**[6]

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

dōnō	dōnāre	dōnāvī	dōnātum,	*to bestow.*
honōrō	honōrāre	honōrāvī	honōrātum,	*to honor.*
līberō	līberāre	līberāvī	līberātum,	*to free.*
nōminō	nōmināre	nōmināvī	nōminātum,	*to name.*
pūgnō	pūgnāre	pūgnāvī	pūgnātum,	*to fight.*
spērō	spērāre	spērāvī	spērātum,	*to hope.*

Note 1.—*Pōtō, āre, āvī, ātum*, to drink, has also a supine, *pōtum*.

Note 2.—*Cēnātus*, from *cēnō*, 'to dine,' and *jūrātus*, from *jūrō*, 'to swear,' are active in meaning, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōtō*, is also sometimes active in meaning.

---

[1] See list, 272, 3.

[2] For *amaō̆*.

[3] See 207.

[4] *Laes* is for *laedt*, *plaus* for *plaudt*, *vīs* for *vidt*, *vers* for *vertt*, *fals* for *fallt*, *vers* for *verrt;* see 35, 3, 2), note.

[5] The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

[6] It is deemed unnecessary longer to retain the double mark ⏑̄ over final *o* in verbs. The pupil has now learned that this vowel may be short, though it is generally long in the Augustan poets.

258. Principal Parts in—ō, āre, uī, itum.[1]

crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitum,[2]	*to creak.*
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitum,[3]	*to recline.*
domō	domāre	domuī	domitum,	*to tame.*
ēnecō	ēnecāre	ēnecuī	ēnectum,[4]	*to kill.*
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	frictum, fricātum,	*to rub.*
micō	micāre	micuī	————[5]	*to glitter.*
plicō	plicāre	plicāvī plicuī	plicātum, plicitum,[6]	*to fold.*
secō	secāre	secuī	sectum,[7]	*to cut.*
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	sonitum,[7]	*to sound.*
tonō	tonāre	tonuī	————	*to thunder.*
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitum,	*to forbid.*

CLASS II.—PERFECT IN Ī.

259. Principal Parts in—ō, āre, ī, tum.

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.[8]

dō	dare	dedī	datum,	*to give.*
stō	stāre	stetī	stătum,	*to stand.*

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.[8]

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtum,[7]	*to assist.*
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	lavātum,[9] lautum, lōtum,	*to wash.*

NOTE 1.—In *dō* the characteristic *a* is short by exception:[10] *dabam*, *dabō*, *darem*, etc. Four compounds of *dō*—*circumdō*, *pessumdō*, *satisdō*, and *vēnumdō*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are of the Third Conjugation (**271**). The basis of several of these compounds is *dō*, 'to place,' originally distinct from *dō*, 'to give.'

NOTE 2.—Compounds of *stō* generally want the Supine. In the Perfect they have *stetī*, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise *stitī*: *adstō*, *adstāre*, *adstitī*. *Distō* and *exstō* want Perfect and Supine.

---

[1] Note deviations in the Supine.

[2] *Increpō*, *āre*, *uī* (*āvī*), *itum* (*ātum*); *discrepō*, *āre*, *uī* (*āvī*), ——.

[3] Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbō*, etc., are of Conj. III.; see **273**.

[4] The simple *necō* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvī* and *ātum* occur.

[5] *Dīmicō*, *āre*, *āvī* (*uī*), *ātum*; *ēmicō*, *āre*, *uī*, *ātum*.

[6] *Duplicō*, *multiplicō*, *replicō*, and *supplicō*, are regular: *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

[7] *Secō* has participle *secātūrus*; *sonō*, *sonātūrus*; *juvō*, *juvātūrus*, in compounds also *jūtūrus*. *Resonō* has Perfect *resonāvī*. Most compounds of *sonō* want the Supine.

[8] See **255**, I. and II.

[9] In poetry, *lavō* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lavŏ*, *lavere*, *lāvī*, etc.

[10] This short vowel is explained by the fact that *dō* is a root-verb formed directly from the root *da* without the suffix from which the *ā* is derived in other verbs in this conjugation; see **250**, foot-note.

260. Deponent Verbs.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum,	*to endeavor.*
hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum,	*to exhort.*
mīror	mīrārī	mīrātus sum,	*to admire.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Class I.—Stem in ē: Perfect in vī or uī.

261. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, ēvī, ētum.**

These endings belong to the following verbs :

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum,	*to destroy.*
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum,[1]	*to fill.*
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētum,	*to weep.*
neō	nēre	nēvī	nētum,[2]	*to spin.*

262. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, uī, itum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitum,	*to owe.*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum,	*to have.*
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum,	*to advise.*
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum,	*to hurt.*
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	pāritum,	*to obey.*
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitum,	*to please.*
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	tacitum,	*to be silent.*

Note 1.—Many verbs with the Perfect in **uī** want the Supine. The following are the most important:

candeō,	*to shine.*	madeō,	*to be wet.*	sorbeō,	*to swallow.*
egeō,	*to want.*	niteō,	*to shine.*	splendeō,	*to shine.*
ēmineō,	*to stand forth.*	oleō,	*to smell.*	studeō,	*to study.*
flōreō,	*to bloom.*	palleō,	*to be pale.*	stupeō,	*to be amazed.*
frondeō,	*to bear leaves.*	pateō,	*to be open.*	timeō,	*to fear.*
horreō,	*to shudder.*	rubeō,	*to be red.*	torpeō,	*to be torpid.*
lateō,	*to be hid.*	sileō,	*to be silent.*	vireō,	*to be green.*

Note 2.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important:

albeō,	*to be white.*	hebeō,	*to be blunt.*	maereō,	*to be sad.*
calveō,	*to be bald.*	ūmeō,	*to be moist.*	polleō,	*to be powerful.*
cāneō,	*to be gray.*	immineō,	*to threaten.*	renīdeō,	*to shine.*
flāveō,	*to be yellow.*	lacteō,	*to suck.*	squāleō,	*to be filthy.*

---

[1] So other compounds of the obsolete *pleō: expleō, impleō*, etc.

[2] To these may be added *aboleō, abolēre, abolēvī, abolitum*, 'to destroy,' with Supine in *itum*. See also *abolēscō*, 277.

Class II.—Stem in **c, n, r,** or **s**: Perfect in **uī**.[1]

263. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, uī, tum** or **sum.**[2]

These endings belong to the following verbs :

cēnseō	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsum,[3]	*to think.*
doceō	docēre	docuī	dōctum,	*to teach.*
misceō	miscēre	miscuī	mīstum, mīxtum,	*to mix.*
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentum,[4]	*to hold.*
torreō	torrēre	torruī	tostum,	*to roast.*

Class III.—Stem in a Consonant : Perfect in **sī** or **ī**.

264. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, sī, tum.**

augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum,	*to increase.*
indulgeō	indulgēre	indulsī	indultum,	*to indulge.*
torqueō	torquēre	torsī	tortum,	*to twist.*

265. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, sī, sum.**[2]

algeō	algēre	alsī	———	*to be cold.*
ārdeō	ārdēre	ārsī	ārsum,	*to burn.*
cōnīveō	cōnīvēre	cōnīvī cōnīxī	———	*to wink at.*
frīgeō	frīgēre	frīxī (*rare*)	———	*to be cold.*
fulgeō	fulgēre	fulsī	———[5]	*to shine.*
haereō	haerēre	haesī	haesum,[6]	*to stick.*
jubeō	jubēre	jūssī	jūssum,	*to order.*
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	———	*to shine.*
lūgeō	lūgēre	lūxī	———	*to mourn.*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum,	*to remain.*
mulgeō	mulgēre	mulsī	mulsum,	*to milk.*
mulceō	mulcēre	mulsī	mulsum,[7]	*to soothe.*
rīdeō	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsum,	*to laugh.*
suādeō	suādēre	suāsī	suāsum,	*to advise.*
tergeō	tergēre	tersī	tersum,	*to wipe.*
turgeō	turgēre	tursī (*rare*)	———	*to swell.*
urgeō (urgueō)	urgēre	ursī	———	*to press.*

Note.—*Cieō*, *ciēre*, *cīvī*, *citum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *ciō*, *cīre*, *cīvī*, *cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its Perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call*, *call forth*.

---

[1] For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 383.

[2] The *Present Stem* adds *ē*; see **251**, 5. For *phonetic changes*, see **33–36**.

[3] Participle *cēnsus* and *cēnsītus*.—*Percēnseō* wants Supine : *recēnseō* has *recēnsum* and *recēnsītum*.

[4] In most compounds the Supine is rare.

[5] Poetic, *fulgō*, *fulgere*, etc.

[6] The stem of *haereō* is *haes*. The Present adds *ē* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesī* and *haesum*, *s* standing for *ss* or *st* is not changed.

[7] In compounds sometimes *mulctum*.

266. Principal Parts in—eō, ēre, ī, tum.

With Lengthened Stem-Vowel.

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	cautum,	*to beware.*
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum,	*to favor.*
foveō	fovēre	fōvī	fōtum,	*to cherish.*
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum,	*to move.*
paveō	pavēre	pāvī	———	*to fear.*
voveō	vovēre	vōvī	vōtum,	*to vow.*

267. Principal Parts in—eō, ēre, ī, sum.

1. With Reduplication.[1]

mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsum,	*to bite.*
pendeō	pendēre	pependī	pēnsum,	*to hang.*
spondeō	spondēre	spopondī	spōnsum,	*to promise.*
tondeō	tondēre	totondī	tōnsum,	*to shear.*

2. With Lengthened Stem-Vowel.

sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sēssum,[2]	*to sit.*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum,	*to see.*

3. With Unchanged Stem.

cōnīveō	cōnīvēre	cōnīvī, cōnīxī	———[3]	*to wink at.*
ferveō	fervēre	fervī, ferbuī	———	*to boil.*
langueō	languēre	languī	———	*to be languid.*
liqueō	liquēre	liquī, licuī	———	*to be liquid.*
prandeō	prandēre	prandī	prānsum,[4]	*to dine.*
strīdeō	strīdēre	strīdī	———	*to creak.*

268. Deponent Verbs.

1. *Regular.*

liceor	licērī	licitus sum,	*to bid.*
mereor	merērī	meritus sum,	*to deserve.*
polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum,	*to promise.*
tueor	tuērī	tuitus sum, tūtus sum,	*to protect.*
vereor	verērī	veritus sum,	*to fear.*

2. *Irregular.*

fateor	fatērī	fassus sum,[5]	*to confess.*
medeor	medērī	———	*to cure.*
misereor	miserērī	miseritus sum, misertus sum,	*to pity.*
reor	rērī	ratus sum,	*to think.*

---

[1] For reduplication in compounds, see 255, I., 4.

[2] So *circumsedeō* and *supersedeō*. Other compounds thus: *assideō*, *ēre*, *assēdī*, *assēssum*; but *dissideō*, *praesideō*, and *resideō*, want Supine.

[3] Observe that the *supine stem* is wanting in most of these verbs.

[4] Participle, *prānsus*, in an active sense, *having dined.*

[5] *Cōnfiteor*, *ērī*, *cōnfessus*: so *profiteor*.

3. *Semi-Deponent—Deponent in the Perfect.*

audeō	audēre	ausus sum,	*to dare.*
gaudeō	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum,	*to rejoice.*
soleō	solēre	solitus sum,	*to be accustomed.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

NOTE.—This conjugation contains the *primitive* verbs of the language; see **335**.

CLASS I.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **SĪ** OR **Ī**.

269. Principal Parts in—**ō** (or **iō**), **ere**, **sī**, **tum**.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples:[1]

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptum,[2]	*to pluck.*
cingō	cingere	cinxī (*gsī*)	cinctum,	*to gird.*
dīcō	dīcere	dixī	dictum,	*to say.*
dūcō	dūcere	duxī	ductum,	*to lead.*
exstinguō	exstinguere	exstinxī	exstinctum,[3]	*to extinguish.*
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestum,	*to carry.*
nūbō	nūbere	nūpsī	nūptum,	*to marry.*
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum,[2]	*to rule.*
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptum,	*to take.*
trahō	trahere	traxī	tractum,	*to draw.*
ūrō	ūrere	ūssī	ūstum,	*to burn.*
vehō	vehere	vēxī	vēctum,	*to carry.*
vīvō	vīvere	vīxī	vīctum,	*to live.*

270. Principal Parts in—**ō** (or **iō**), **ere**, **sī**, **sum**.[1]

cēdō	cēdere	cēssī	cēssum,	*to yield.*
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum,[4]	*to close.*
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsum,	*to divide.*
ēvādō	ēvādere	ēvāsī	ēvāsum,[5]	*to evade.*
fīgō	fīgere	fīxī	fīxum,	*to fasten.*
flectō	flectere	flēxī	flēxum,	*to bend.*
frendō	frendere	——	frēsum, frēssum,	*to gnash.*
laedō	laedere	laesī	laesum,[4]	*to hurt.*
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum,	*to play.*
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missum,	*to send.*
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersum,	*to dip.*
nectō	nectere	nēxī nēxuī[6]	nēxum,	*to bind.*
pectō	pectere	pēxī	pēxum,	*to comb.*

---

[1] For *Phonetic Changes*, see **30–36**.

[2] The stem-vowel is often changed in compounds: *carpō*, *dē-cerpō*; *regō*, *dī-rigō*; for this change, see **344**, **4**; also **221**.

[3] So other compounds of *stinguō* (rare): *dīstinguō*, etc.

[4] Compounds of *claudō* have *ū* for *au*, *con-clūdō*; those of *laedō*, *ī* for *ae*, *il-līdō*; those of *plaudō* generally *ō* for *au*, *ex-plōdō*; those of *quatiō*, *cu* for *qua*, *con-cutiō*.

[5] So other compounds of *vādō*.

[6] Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

plectō	plectere	plēxī	plēxum,	*to plait.*
plaudō	plaudere	plausī	plausum,[1]	*to applaud.*
premō	premere	pressī[2]	pressum,	*to press.*
quatiō	quatere	quassī[2]	quassum,[1]	*to shake.*
spargō	spargere	sparsī	sparsum,	*to scatter.*
rādō	rādere	rāsī	rāsum,	*to shave.*
rōdō	rōdere	rōsī	rōsum,	*to gnaw.*
tergō	tergere	tersī	tersum,[3]	*to wipe off.*
trūdō	trūdere	trūsī	trūsum,	*to thrust.*

271. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, ī, tum.

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.

abdō	abdere	abdidī	abditum,[4]	*to hide.*
canō	canere	cecinī	cantum,[5]	*to sing.*
crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditum,[6]	*to believe.*
discō	discere	didicī	———	*to learn.*
pangō	pangere	pepigī	pāctum,	*to bargain.*
pangō	pangere	panxī pēgī	panctum,[7] pāctum,	*to fix in.*
pariō	parere	peperī	partum,[8]	*to bring forth.*
sistō	sistere	stitī	statum,[9]	*to place.*
tangō	tangere	tetigī	tāctum,[10]	*to touch.*
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentum,[10] tēnsum,	*to stretch.*
tollō	tollere	sustulī	sublātum,[11]	*to raise.*
vēndō	vēndere	vēndidī	vēnditum,[6]	*to sell.*
pungō	pungere	pupugī	punctum,[12]	*to prick.*

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

agō	agere	ēgī	āctum,[13]	*to drive.*
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum,[14]	*to take.*
emō	emere	ēmī	ēmptum,[15]	*to buy.*

---

[1] See page 127, foot-note 4.

[2] See 34, 1, note; 35, 3, 2).

[3] Also *tergeō*, *tergēre*, etc.; compounds take this form; see 265.

[4] So all compounds of *dō* except those of Conjugation I.; see 259, note 1.

[5] *Concinō*, *ere*, *concinuī*, ——; so *occinō* and *praecinō;* other compounds want Perfect and Supine.

[6] Explained as a compound of *dō;* see *abdō.*

[7] *Compingō*, *ere*, *compēgī*, *compactum;* so also *impingō.* *Dēpangō* wants Perfect; *repangō*, Perfect and Supine.

[8] Participle, *paritūrus:* compounds are of Conjugation IV.

[9] Compounds thus: *cōnsistō*, *ere*, *cōnstitī*, *cōnstitum;* but *circumstetī* also occurs.

[10] Compounds drop the reduplication.

[11] *Attollō* and *extollō* want Perfect and Supine.

[12] Compounds thus: *compungō*, *ere*, *compunxī*, *compunctum.*

[13] So *circumagō* and *peragō;* *satagō* wants Perfect and Supine. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Present: *abigō*, *ere*, *abēgī*, *abāctum;* but *coigō* becomes *cōgō*, *ere*, *coēgī*, *coāctum*, and *deigō*, *dēgō*, *ere*, *dēgī*, without Supine. *Prōdigō* wants Supine, and *ambigō*, Perfect and Supine.

[14] So *antecapiō;* other compounds thus: *accipiō*, *ere*, *accēpī*, *acceptum.*

[15] So *coemō;* other compounds thus: *adimō*, *ere*, *adēmī*, *adēmptum.*

faciō	facere	fēcī	factum,[1]	*to make.*
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitum,	*to flee.*
jaciō	jacere	jēcī	jactum,[2]	*to throw.*
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctum,[3]	*to break.*
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctum,[4]	*to read.*
linquō	linquere	līquī	——[5]	*to leave.*
scabō	scabere	scābī	——	*to scratch.*
vincō	vincere	vīcī	vīctum,	*to conquer.*
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptum,	*to burst.*

272. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, ī, sum.[6]

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.

cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsum,[7]	*to fall.*
caedō	caedere	cecīdī	caesum,[8]	*to cut.*
currō	currere	cucurrī	cursum,[9]	*to run.*
fallō	fallere	fefellī	falsum,[10]	*to deceive.*
parcō	parcere	pepercī (parsī)	parsum,[11]	*to spare.*
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsum,[12]	*to drive.*
pendō	pendere	pependī	pēnsum,[12]	*to weigh.*
poscō	poscere	poposcī	——[13]	*to demand.*
tundō	tundere	tutudī	tūnsum,[12] tūsum,	*to beat.*

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

edō	edere	ēdī	ēsum,	*to eat.*
fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossum,	*to dig.*
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsum,	*to pour.*

3. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

accendō	accendere	accendī	accēnsum,[14]	*to kindle.*
cūdō	cūdere	cūdī	cūsum,	*to forge.*
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsum,[14]	*to defend.*

---

[1] Passive irregular: *fīō, fierī, factus sum;* see **294**. So *satisfaciō* and compounds of *faciō* with verbs; but compounds with prepositions thus: *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum;* with regular Passive, *cōnficior, cōnficī, cōnfectus sum.*

[2] *Superjaciō* has *jactum* or *jectum* in Supine: compounds with monosyllabic prepositions thus: *abiciō, abicere, abjēcī, abjectum;* see page 20, foot-note 1.

[3] Compounds thus: *cōnfringō, ere, cōnfrēgī, cōnfrāctum.*

[4] So compounds, except (1) *colligō, ere, collēgī, collectum;* so *dēligō, ēligō, sēligō*—(2) *dīligō, ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum;* so *intellegō, neglegō*, though *nēglēgī* occurs in the Perfect.

[5] Compounds with Supine: *relinquō, ere, relīquī, relictum.*

[6] For *Phonetic Changes*, see **30–36**.

[7] *Incidō, ere, incidī, incāsum;* so *occidō* and *recidō;* other compounds want Supine.

[8] Compounds thus: *concīdō, ere, concīdī, concīsum.*

[9] *Excurrō* and *praecurrō* generally retain the reduplication: *excucurrī, praecucurrī;* other compounds generally drop it.

[10] *Refellō, ere, refellī,* without Supine.

[11] *Comparcō, ere, comparsī, comparsum,* also with *e* for *a: compercō, ere,* etc. *Imparcō* and *reparcō* want Perfect and Supine.

[12] Compounds drop reduplication, **255**, I., 4.

[13] Compounds retain reduplication, **255**, I., 4.

[14] So other compounds of the obsolete *candō* and *fendō*.

findō	findere	fidī (findī)	fissum,	*to part.*
īcō	īcere	īcī	īctum,	*to strike.*
mandō	mandere	mandī	mānsum,	*to chew.*
pandō	pandere	pandī	passum, pānsum,	*to open.*
pīnsō (pīsō)	pīnsere	pīnsī pīnsuī	pīnsitum, pīstum, pīnsum,	*to pound.*
prehendō	prehendere,	prehendī	prehēnsum,[1]	*to grasp.*
scandō	scandere	scandī	scānsum,	*to climb.*
scindō	scindere	scidī	scissum,	*to rend.*
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtum,[2]	*to loose.*
vellō	vellere	vellī (vulsī)	vulsum,	*to pluck.*
verrō	verrere	verrī	versum,	*to brush.*
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum,[3]	*to turn.*
vīsō	vīsere	vīsī	vīsum,	*to visit.*
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtum,	*to roll.*

Note 1.—Some verbs with the Perfect in *sī* or *ī* want the Supine:

angō, ere, anxī,	*to squeeze.*	metuō, ere, ī,	*to fear.*
annuō, ere, ī,	*to assent.*	pluō, ere, ī, *or* plūvī,	*to rain.*
batuō, ere, ī,	*to beat.*	psallō, ere, ī,	*to play the harp.*
bibō, ere, ī,	*to drink.*	sīdō, ere, ī,[4]	*to sit down.*
congruō, ere, ī,	*to agree.*	ningō, ere, ninxī,	*to snow.*
ingruō, ere, ī,	*to assail.*	strīdō, ere, ī,	*to creak.*
lambō, ere, ī,	*to lick.*	sternuō, ere, ī,	*to sneeze.*

Note 2.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine:

clangō,	*to clang.*	hīscō,	*to gape.*
claudō,	*to be lame.*	vādō,	*to go.*[5]
fatīscō,	*to gape.*	temnō,	*to despise.*[6]
glīscō,	*to grow.*	vergō,	*to incline.*

Class II.—Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in uī.

273. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), **ere, uī, itum.**

accumbō	accumbere	accubuī	accubitum,[7]	*to recline.*
alō	alere	aluī	alitum, altum,	*to nourish.*
depsō	depsere	depsuī	depsitum, depstum,	*to knead.*
ēliciō	ēlicere	ēlicuī	ēlicitum,[8]	*to elicit.*
fremō	fremere	fremuī	fremitum,	*to rage.*
gemō	gemere	gemuī	gemitum,	*to groan.*
gignō	gignere	genuī	genitum,	*to beget.*
molō	molere	moluī	molitum,	*to grind.*

---

[1] Often written *prēndō*, *prendere*, etc.

[2] *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *solūtum* for *solvtum*.

[3] Compounds of *dē*, *prae*, *re*, are generally deponent in the Present, Imperfect, and Future.

[4] Perfect and Supine generally supplied from *sedeō*; hence *sēdī*, *sēssum*. So in compounds.

[5] See *ēvādō*, **270.**

[6] But *contemnō*, *ere*, *contempsī*, *contemptum*.

[7] So other compounds of *cumbō*, *cubō*; see *cubō*, **258.**

[8] Other compounds of *laciō* thus: *alliciō*, *allicere*, *allēxī*, *allēctum*.

pīnsō	pīnsere	pīnsuī pīnsī	pīnsitum, pīstum, pīnsum,	*to crush.*
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum,	*to place.*
strepō	strepere	strepuī	strepitum,	*to make a noise.*
vomō	vomere	vomuī	vomitum,	*to vomit.*

NOTE.—*Compēscō*, 'to restrain'; *excellō*,[1] 'to excel'; *furō*, 'to rage'; *stertō*, 'to snore'; and *tremō*, 'to tremble,' have the Perfect in *uī*, but want the Supine.

274. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), **ere, uī, tum.**

colō	colere	coluī	cultum,	*to cultivate.*
cōnsulō	cōnsulere	cōnsuluī	cōnsultum,	*to consult.*
occulō	occulere	occuluī	occultum,	*to hide.*
rapiō	rapere	rapuī	raptum,[2]	*to snatch.*
serō	serere	seruī	sertum,	*to connect.*
texō	texere	texuī	textum,	*to weave.*

275. Principal Parts in—ō, **ere, suī, sum.**

metō	metere	messuī[3]	messum,	*to reap.*
nectō	nectere	nexī nexuī	nexum,	*to bind.*

CLASS III.—STEM IN A VOWEL: PERFECT IN **VĪ** OR **Ī**.

276. The following verbs have the Perfect in **āvī** from a stem in **ā**:

pāscō[4]	pāscere	pāvī	pāstum,	*to feed.*
sternō	sternere	strāvī	strātum,	*to strew.*
veterāscō	veterāscere	veterāvī	———	*to grow old.*

277. The following verbs have the Perfect in **ēvī** from a stem in **ē**:

abolēscō	abolēscere	abolēvī	abolitum,[5]	*to disappear.*
cernō	cernere	crēvī	crētum,	*to decide.*
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētum,[6]	*to grow.*
quiēscō	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētum,	*to rest.*
spernō	spernere	sprēvī	sprētum,	*to spurn.*
suēscō	suēscere	suēvī	suētum,	*to become accustomed.*

NOTE.—Serō, serere, sēvī, satum,[7] *to sow.*

278. The following verbs have the Perfect in **īvī** from a stem in **ī**:

arcēssō	arcēssere	arcēssīvī	arcēssītum,	*to call for.*
capessō	capessere	capessīvī	capessītum,	*to lay hold of.*
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītum,	*to desire.*
facessō	facessere	facessīvī facessī	facessītum,	*to make.*

---

[1] Other compounds of *cellō* want the Perfect and Supine, except *percellō*, *percellere*, *perculī*, *perculsum*.

[2] Compounds thus: *corripiō*, *corripere*, *corripuī*, *correptum*.

[3] The Perfect in *suī* seems to be a double formation, *sī* enlarged to *suī*.

[4] The stem of *pāscō* is *pā*, *pās*; the Present Stem adds *sce*; see 251, 2.

[5] So *inolēscō*; but *adolēscō* has Supine *adultum*; *exolēscō*, *exolētum*; *obsolēscō*, *obsolētum*.

[6] *Incrēscō* and *succrēscō* want the Supine.

[7] Compounds thus: *cōnserō*, *cōnserere*, *cōnsēvī*, *cōnsitum*.

incēssō	incēssere	incēssīvī incēssī	———	*to attack.*
lacessō	lacessere	lacessīvī	lacessītum,	*to provoke.*
linō	linere	līvī, lēvī	litum,	*to smear.*
nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	nōtum,[1]	*to know.*
petō	petere	petīvī	petītum,	*to ask.*
quaerō	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītum,[2]	*to seek.*
rudō	rudere	rudīvī	rudītum,	*to bray.*
sapiō	sapere	sapīvī, sapuī	———	*to taste.*
sinō	sinere	sīvī	situm,	*to permit.*
terō	terere	trīvī	trītum,	*to rub.*

279. Principal Parts in—ō, ere, ī, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs with **u**-stems. The following are examples:

acuō	acuere	acuī	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
arguō	arguere	arguī	argūtum,	*to convict.*
imbuō	imbuere	imbuī	imbūtum,	*to imbue.*
minuō	minuere	minuī	minūtum,	*to diminish.*
ruō	ruere	ruī	rutum,	*to fall.*
statuō	statuere	statuī	statūtum,	*to place.*
tribuō	tribuere	tribuī	tribūtum,	*to impart.*

NOTE.—*Fluō* and *struō* have the Perfect in **xī**.

fluō	fluere	flūxī[3]	flūxum,	*to flow.*
struō	struere	strūxī[3]	strūctum,	*to build.*

INCEPTIVES.

280. Inceptives end in **scō**, and denote the beginning of an action.

NOTE.—When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives.*

281. Most VERBAL INCEPTIVES want the Supine, but take the Perfect of their primitives:

acēscō	(*aceō*)	acēscere	acuī	——	*to become sour.*
ārēscō	(*āreō*)	ārēscere	āruī	——	*to become dry.*
calēscō	(*caleō*)	calēscere	caluī	——	*to become warm.*
flōrēscō	(*flōreō*)	flōrēscere	flōruī	——	*to begin to bloom.*
tepēscō	(*tepeō*)	tepēscere	tepuī	——	*to become warm.*
virēscō	(*vireō*)	virēscere	viruī	——	*to become green.*

NOTE.—The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives:

concupīscō	(*con, cupiō*)	ere	concupīvī	concupītum,	*to desire.*
convalēscō	(*con, valeō*)	ere	convaluī	convalitum,	*to grow strong.*
exārdēscō	(*ex, ārdeō*)	ere	exārsī	exārsum,	*to burn.*
inveterāscō	(*inveterō*)	ere	inveterāvī	inveterātum,	*to grow old.*
obdormīscō	(*ob, dormiō*)	ere	obdormīvī	obdormītum,	*to fall asleep.*
revīvīscō	(*re, vīvō*)	ere	revīxī	revīctum,	*to revive.*
scīscō	(*sciō*)	ere	scīvī	scītum,	*to enact.*

---

[1] So *ignōscō; āgnōscō* and *cōgnōscō* have *itum* in Supine, *āgnitum; dīgnōscō* and *internōscō* want Supine.

[2] Compounds thus: *acquīrō, ere, acquīsīvī, acquīsītum.*

[3] For *flug-sī, strug-sī,* formed not from *u*-stems, but from *consonant*-stems.

282. Most Denominative Inceptives want both Perfect and Supine:

dītēscō	(*dīves*),	*to grow rich.*	mītescō	(*mītis*),	*to grow mild.*
dulcescō	(*dulcis*),	*to become sweet.*	mollescō	(*mollis*),	*to grow soft.*
grandescō	(*grandis*),	*to grow large.*	puerāscō	(*puer*),	*to become a boy.*

Note.—The following have the Perfect in **uī**:

crēbrescō	(*crēber*)	ere	crēbruī,	*to become frequent.*
dūrēscō	(*dūrus*)	ere	dūruī,	*to become hard.*
innōtēscō	(*in, nōtus*)	ere	innōtuī,	*to become known.*
macrēscō	(*macer*)	ere	macruī,	*to become lean.*
mātūrescō	(*mātūrus*)	ere	mātūruī,	*to ripen.*
obmūtescō	(*ob, mūtus*)	ere	obmūtuī,	*to grow dumb.*
recrūdescō	(*re, crūdus*)	ere	recrūduī,	*to bleed afresh.*
vīlescō	(*vīlis*)	ere	vīluī,	*to become worthless.*

283. Deponent Verbs.

amplector	ī	amplēxus sum,	*to embrace.*
apiscor	ī	aptus sum,[1]	*to obtain.*
comminiscor	ī	commentus sum,[2]	*to devise.*
expergiscor	ī	experrēctus sum,	*to awake.*
fatiscor	ī[3]	————	*to gape.*
fruor	ī	frūctus sum, fruitus sum,	*to enjoy.*
fungor	ī	functus sum,	*to perform.*
gradior	ī	grēssus sum,[4]	*to walk.*
īrāscor	ī	————	*to be angry.*
lābor	ī	lāpsus sum,	*to fall.*
līquor	ī	————	*to melt.*
loquor	ī	locūtus sum,	*to speak.*
morior	ī (īrī, *rare*)	mortuus sum,[5]	*to die.*
nanciscor	ī	nactus (nanctus) sum,	*to obtain.*
nāscor	ī	nātus sum,[5]	*to be born.*
nītor	ī	nīsus sum, nīxus sum,	*to strive.*
oblīviscor	ī	oblītus sum,	*to forget.*
paciscor	ī	pactus sum,	*to bargain.*
patior	ī	passus sum,	*to suffer.*
proficiscor	ī	profectus sum,	*to set out.*
queror	ī	questus sum,	*to complain.*
reminiscor	ī	————	*to remember.*
ringor	ī	rīctus sum,	*to growl.*
sequor	ī	secūtus sum,	*to follow.*
ulciscor	ī	ultus sum,	*to avenge.*
ūtor	ī	ūsus sum,	*to use.*
vēscor	ī	————	*to eat.*

Semi-Deponent—Deponent in the Perfect.

fīdo	fīdere	fīsus sum,	*to trust.*

---

[1] *Adipiscor*, ī, *adeptus sum;* so *indipiscor.*

[2] *Com-miniscor* is compounded of *con*, and the obsolete *miniscor; re-miniscor* wants the Perfect.

[3] *Dē-fetiscor*, ī, *dē-fessus sum.*

[4] Compounds thus: *aggredior*, ī, *aggrēssus sum.*

[5] *Morior* has future participle *moritūrus; nāscor*, *nāscitūrus.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **ī**: PERFECT IN **vī.**

284. Principal Parts in—**iō, īre, īvī, ītum.**

The following are examples:

fīniō	fīnīre	fīnīvī	fīnītum,	*to finish.*
lēniō	lēnīre	lēnīvī	lēnītum,	*to alleviate.*
mūniō	mūnīre	mūnīvī	mūnītum,	*to fortify.*
pūniō	pūnīre	pūnīvī	pūnītum,	*to punish.*
sciō	scīre	scīvī	scītum,	*to know.*
sepeliō	sepelīre	sepelīvī	sepultum,[1]	*to bury.*
sitiō	sitīre	sitīvī	————	*to thirst.*
vāgiō	vāgīre	vāgīvī	————	*to cry.*

NOTE 1.—*V* is often dropped in the Perfect: *audiī* for *audīvī;* see **235**, 1.

NOTE 2.—Desideratives (**338**, III.)—except *ēsuriō*, *īre*, ——, *ītum; nūpturiō*, *īre*, *īvī*, and *parturiō*, *īre*, *īvī*—want both Perfect and Supine. Also a few others:

bālbūtiō,	*to stammer.*	ferōciō,	*to be fierce.*	sāgiō,	*to be wise.*
caecūtiō,	*to be blind.*	ganniō,	*to bark.*	superbiō,	*to be proud.*
feriō,	*to strike.*	ineptiō,	*to trifle.*	tussiō,	*to cough.*

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, l,** OR **r**: PERFECT IN **uī.**

285. Principal Parts in—**iō, īre, uī, tum.**

amiciō	amicīre	amicuī (xī)	amictum,	*to clothe.*
aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertum,	*to open.*
operiō	operīre	operuī	opertum,	*to cover.*
saliō	salīre	saluī (iī)	(saltum),[2]	*to leap.*

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **sī** OR **ī.**

286. Principal Parts in—**iō, īre, sī, tum.**

farciō	farcīre	farsī	fartum,[3] farctum,	*to stuff.*
fulciō	fulcīre	fulsī	fultum,	*to prop.*
hauriō[4]	haurīre	hausī	haustum, hausum,	*to draw.*
saepiō	saepīre	saepsī	saeptum,	*to hedge in.*
granciō	sancīre	sanxī	sancītum, sanctum,	*to ratify.*
sarciō	sarcīre	sarsī	sartum,	*to patch.*
vinciō	vincīre	vinxī	vinctum,	*to bind.*

---

[1] Supine irregular.

[2] Compounds thus: *dēsiliō, īre, uī (iī), (dēsultum).*

[3] Compounds thus: *cōnferciō, īre, cōnfersī, cōnfertum.*

[4] The stem of *hauriō* is *haus.* The Present adds *ī* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausī* and *hausum*, *s* standing for *ss or st* is not changed.

287. Principal Parts in—**iō, īre, sī, sum.**

rauciō	raucīre	rausī	rausum,	*to be hoarse.*
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsum,	*to feel.*

Note.—The following verbs have the Perfect in *ī*:

comperiō	comperīre	comperī	compertum,	*to learn.*
reperiō	reperīre	repperī	repertum,	*to find.*
veniō	venīre	vēnī[1]	ventum,	*to come.*

288. Deponent Verbs.

1. *Regular.*

blandior	īrī	blandītus sum,	*to flatter.*
largior	īrī	largītus sum,	*to bestow.*
mentior	īrī	mentītus sum,	*to lie.*
mōlior	īrī	mōlītus sum,	*to strive.*
partior	īrī	partītus sum,	*to divide.*
potior[2]	īrī	potītus sum,	*to obtain.*
sortior	īrī	sortītus sum,	*to draw lots.*

2. *Irregular.*

assentior[3]	īrī	assēnsus sum,	*to assent.*
experior	īrī	expertus sum,	*to try.*
mētior	īrī	mēnsus sum,	*to measure.*
opperior	īrī	oppertus sum, opperītus sum,	*to await.*
ordior	īrī	orsus sum,	*to begin.*
orior	īrī	ortus sum,[4]	*to rise.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs.* They are *sum, edō, ferō, volō, fīō, eō, queō,* and their compounds.

290. *Sum,* 'I am,' and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (**204**); its numerous compounds—*absum,*[5] *adsum, dēsum, praesum,*[5] etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum,* are conjugated in the same way.

---

[1] With lengthened stem-vowel.

[2] In the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, forms of Conjugation III. occur.

[3] Compounded of *ad* and *sentiō;* see **287**.

[4] Participle, *oritūrus.*—Present Indicative, Conjugation III., *oreris, oritur.* Imperfect Subjunctive, *orīrer* or *orerer.*—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conjugation IV.

[5] *Absum* and *praesum,* like *possum,* have Present Participles, *absēns* and *praesēns,* used as adjectives, *absent, present.*

II. Possum, pōsse, potuī, *to be able.*

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	possum, potes, potest;	possumus, potestis, possunt.
Imp.	poteram;[1]	poterāmus.
Fut.	poterō;	poterimus.
Perf.	potuī;	potuimus.
Plup.	potueram;	potuerāmus.
F. P.	potuerō;	potuerĭmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	possim, possīs, possit;	possīmus, possītis, possint.
Imp.	pōssem;	pōssēmus.
Perf.	potuerim;	potuerĭmus.
Plup.	potuissem;	potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. pōsse.	*Pres.* potēns (*as an adjective*).
Perf. potuisse.	

NOTE 1.—*Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'to be.' The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *potis sum*, *potis sumus*, etc.

NOTE 2.—In *possum* observe—

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potuī* for *potfuī*.

3) That the Infinitive *pōsse* and Subjunctive *pōssem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

NOTE 3.—FOR OLD AND RARE FORMS, see **204**, 2.

III. *Prōsum*, 'I profit,' is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, 'for,' and *sum*, 'to be.' It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. Edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum, *to eat.*

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms similar, except in quantity,[2] to those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus—

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	edō,	edis, ēs,[2]	edit; ēst;	edimus,	editis, ēstis.	edunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imp.	ederem, ēssem,	ederēs, ēssēs,	ederet; ēsset;	ederēmus, ēssēmus,	ederētis, ēssētis,	ederent. ēssent.

---

[1] Inflected regularly through the different persons: *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *potuī*, *potuistī*, etc.

[2] These forms have *ē* long before *s*, while the corresponding forms of *sum* have *e* short.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ede; ēs;[1]	edite. ēste.	
Fut.	editō; ēstō;	editōte, ēstōte.	eduntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	edere.	ēsse.

NOTE 1.—In the PASSIVE, *ēstur* for *editur* and *ēssētur* for *ederētur* also occur.

NOTE 2.—FORMS IN IM for *am* occur in the Present Subjunctive: *edim*, *edīs*, *edit*, etc., for *edam*, *edās*, *edat*, etc.

NOTE 3.—COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comedō* has in the Supine *comēsum* or *comēstum*.

292. Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis,[2] ferunt.
Imp.	ferēbam;[3]	ferēbāmus.
Fut.	feram;	ferēmus.
Perf.	tulī;	tulimus.
Plup.	tuleram;	tulerāmus.
F. P.	tulerō;	tulerĭmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	feram;	ferāmus.
Imp.	ferrem;	ferrēmus.[4]
Perf.	tulerim;	tulerĭmus.
Plup.	tulissem;	tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fer;[5]	ferte.
Fut.	fertō,	fertōte,
	fertō;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
Pres.	ferre.[4]	*Pres.*	ferēns.
Perf.	tulisse.		
Fut.	lātūrus esse.	*Fut.*	lātūrus.

---

[1] See page 136, foot-note 2.

[2] *Fer-s*, *fer-t*, *fer-tis*, like *es-t*, *es-tis*, dispense with the usual thematic vowel ĭ. With such vowel the forms would be *feris*, *ferit*, *feritis*.

[3] Inflect the several tenses in full: *ferēbam*, *ferēbās*, etc.

[4] *Ferrem*, etc., for *fererem*, etc.; *ferre* for *ferere* (*e* dropped).

[5] *Fer* for *fere*; *fertō*, *ferte*, *fertōte*, *ferris*, *fertur*, without thematic vowel.

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Gen.	ferendī,		
Dat.	ferendō,		
Acc.	ferendum,	*Acc.*	lātum,
Abl.	ferendō.	*Abl.*	lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

feror, ferrī, lātus sum, *to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur;[1]	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
Imp.	ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
Fut.	ferar;	ferēmur.
Perf.	lātus sum;	lātī sumus.
Plup.	lātus eram;	lātī erāmus.
F. P.	lātus erō;	lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	ferar;	ferāmur.
Imp.	ferrer;[1]	ferrēmur.
Perf.	lātus sim;	lātī sīmus.
Plup.	lātus essem;	lātī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ferre;[1]	feriminī.
Fut.	fertor,[1]	———
	fertor;	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
Pres.	ferrī.[1]		
Perf.	lātus esse.	*Perf.*	lātus.
Fut.	lātum īrī.	*Ger.*	ferendus.

1. *Ferō* has two principal irregularities:

1) Its forms are derived from three independent stems, seen in *ferō*, *tulī*, *lātum*.

2) It dispenses with the thematic vowel, *e* or *i*, before *r*, *s*, and *t*.

2. COMPOUNDS of *ferō* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

ab-	auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātum
ad-	adferō	adferre	attulī	allātum
con-	cōnferō	cōnferre	contulī	collātum
dis-	differō	differre	distulī	dīlātum
ex-	efferō	efferre	extulī	ēlātum
in-	īnferō	īnferre	intulī	illātum
ob-	offerō	offerre	obtulī	oblātum
sub-	sufferō	sufferre	sustulī	sublātum

---

[1] Without thematic vowel.

Note.—*Sustulī* and *sublātum* are not often used in the sense of *sufferō*, to bear, but they supply the Perfect and Supine of *tollō*, to raise; see 271.

293. Volŏ, velle, voluī, *to be willing.*
Nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*
Mālo, mālle, māluī, *to prefer.*

Indicative.

Pres.	volŏ,	nōlō,	mālō,
	vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
	vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
	volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
	volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
Imp.	volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
Fut.	volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
Perf.	voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
Plup.	volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
F. P.	voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	velim.[1]	nōlim.	mālim.
Imp.	vellem.[2]	nōllem.	māllem.
Perf.	voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
Plup.	voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

Imperative.

Pres.	nōlī,	nōlīte.
Fut.	nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
	nōlītō;	nōluntō.

Infinitive.

Pres.	velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
Perf.	voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

Participle.

Pres.	volēns.	nōlēns.	

Note 1.—The stem of *volŏ* is *vol*, with variable stem-vowel, o, e, u.

Note 2.—Nōlō is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volŏ*; mālō, of *magis* and *volŏ*.

Note 3.—Rare Forms.—(1) Of volŏ: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sīs*, *sūltis*, for *sī vīs*, *sī vultis*; *vīn'* for *vīsne*.—(2) Of nōlō: *nēvīs*, *nēvult* (*nēvolt*),

---

[1] *Velim* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

[2] *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem*, *velere*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated: *velerem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velere*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nōllem* and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere*; *māllem* and *mālle*, for *mālerem* and *mālere*.

nēvelle, for *nōn* (*nē*) *vīs*, *nōn* (*nē*) *vult*, *nōlle*.—(3) Of MĀLŌ: *māvolō*, *māvelim*, *māvellem*, for *mālō*, *mālim*, *māllem*.

294. Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to become, be made.*[1]

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit;	fīmus, fītis, fīunt.
Imp.	fīēbam;	fīēbāmus.
Fut.	fīam;	fīēmus.
Perf.	factus sum;	factī sumus.
Plup.	factus eram;	factī erāmus.
F. P.	factus erō;	factī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fīam;	fīāmus.
Imp.	fierem;	fierēmus.
Perf.	factus sim;	factī sīmus.
Plup.	factus essem;	factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fī;	fīte.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
Pres.	fierī.		
Perf.	factus esse.	*Perf.*	factus.
Fut.	factum īrī.	*Ger.*	faciendus.

295. Eō, īre, īvī, itum, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	eō, īs, it;	īmus, ītis, eunt.
Imp.	ībam;	ībāmus.
Fut.	ībō;	ībimus.
Perf.	īvī;	īvimus.
Plup.	īveram;	īverāmus.
F. P.	īverō;	īverĭmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	eam;	eāmus.
Imp.	īrem;	īrēmus.
Perf.	īverim;	īverĭmus.
Plup.	īvissem;	īvissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ī;	īte.
Fut.	ītō,	ītōte,
	ītō;	euntō.

---

[1] COMPOUNDS of *fīō* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cōnfit*, *dēfit*, and *īnfit* are defective; see **297**, III., 2.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. īre.	*Pres.* iēns, *Gen.* euntis.
Perf. īvisse.	
Fut. itūrus esse.	*Fut.* itūrus.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. eundī,	
Dat. eundō,	
Acc. eundum,	*Acc.* itum,
Abl. eundō.	*Abl.* itū.

1. *Eō* is a verb of the Fourth Conjugation, but it forms the Supine with a short vowel (*itum*), and is irregular in several parts of the Present System. It admits contraction according to **235**: *ītis* for *īvistis*, etc.

2. *Eō*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *ītur*, *ībātur*, etc. (**301**, 1), but *īrī*, the Passive Infinitive, occurs as an auxiliary in the Future Infinitive Passive of the regular conjugations: *amātum īrī*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eō* generally shorten *īvī* into *iī*. *Vēneō* (*vēnum eō*) has sometimes *vēnīēbam* for *vēnībam*. Many compounds want the Supine, and a few admit in the Future a rare form in *eam*, *iēs*, *iet*.

NOTE 1.—Transitive compounds have the Passive: *adeō*, to approach; *adeor*, etc.

NOTE 2.—*Ambiō* is regular, like *audiō*, though *ambībam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. *Queō*, *quīre*, *quīvī*, *quitum*, to be able, and *nequeō*, *nequīre*, *nequīvī* (*iī*), *nequitum*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eō*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.[1]

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important:[2]

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepī, *I have begun.*	Meminī, *I remember.*	Ōdī, *I hate.*
	INDICATIVE.	
Perf. coepī.	meminī.	ōdī.
Plup. coeperam.	memineram.	ōderam.
F. P. coeperō.	meminerō.	ōderō.
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Perf. coeperim.	meminerim.	ōderim.
Plup. coepissem.	meminissem.	ōdissem.
	IMPERATIVE.	
	Sing. mementō.	
	Plur. mementōte.	

---

[1] A Passive form, *quītur*, *nequītur*, etc., occurs before a Passive Infinitive.

[2] For many verbs which want the Perfect or Supine, or both, see **262–284**.

INFINITIVE.

Perf.	coepisse.	meminisse.	ōdisse.
Fut.	coeptūrus esse.		ōsūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf.	coeptus.		ōsus.[1]
Fut.	coeptūrus.		ōsūrus.

1. With PASSIVE INFINITIVES, *coepī* generally takes the Passive form: *coeptus sum*, *eram*, etc. *Coeptus* is Passive in sense.

2. *Meminī* and *ōdī* are Present in sense; hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect they have the sense of the Imperfect and Future. *Nōvī*, 'I know,' Perfect of *nōscō*, 'to learn,' and *cōnsuēvī*, 'I am wont,' Perfect of *cōnsuēscō*, 'to accustom one's self,' are also Present in sense,

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Ăiō, *I say, say yes.*[2]

Indic.	*Pres.*	ăiō,	ais,[3]	ait;	——	——	ăiunt.
	Imp.	ăiēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.[4]
	Perf.	——	——	ait;	——	——	——
Subj.	*Pres.*	——	ăiās,	ăiat;	——	——	ăiant.
Imper.	*Pres.*	aī (*rare*).					
Part.	*Pres.*	ăiēns.					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

Indic.	*Pres.*	inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquimus,	inquitis,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	——	——	inquiēbat;[4]	——	——	——
	Fut.	——	inquiēs,	inquiet;	——	——	——
	Perf.	——	inquīstī,	inquit;	——	——	——
Imper.	*Pres.*	inque.	*Fut.* inquitō.				

3. Fārī, *to speak.*[5]

Indic.	*Pres.*	——	——	fātur;	——	——	——
	Fut.	fābor,	——	fābitur;	——	——	——
	Perf.	fātus sum,	es,	est;	fātī sumus,	estis,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātus eram,	erās,	erat;	fātī erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
Subj.	*Perf.*	fātus sim,	sīs,	sit;	fātī sīmus,	sītis,	sint.
	Plup.	fātus essem,	essēs,	esset;	fātī essēmus,	essētis,	essent.
Imper.	*Pres.*	fāre.					
Infin.	*Pres.*	fārī.					
Part.	*Pres.*	(fāns) fantis.			*Perf.* fātus.		*Ger.* fandus.

Gerund, *Gen.* and *Abl.* fandī, dō. *Supine*, *Abl.* fātū.

---

[1] *Ōsus* is Active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

[2] In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *ă-yō*, *ā-yunt*; see **10**, 4, 3).

[3] The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened into *aĭn'*.

[4] *Aībam*, *aībās*, etc., occur; also *inquībat* for *inquiēbat*.

[5] *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *adfāmur*, *adfāminī*, *adfābar*; *effāberis*.

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.

havē,	havēte;	havētō;	*Inf.* havēre,[1]	*hail.*
salvē,	salvēte,	salvētō;[2]	salvēre,	*hail.*
cedŏ,	cette,			*tell me, give me.*
apage,				*begone.*

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.			
PRESENT.		FUTURE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	INFINITIVE.	
cōnfit;	——	——	cōnfīat;	cōnfieret;	cōnfierī,	*to be done.*
dēfit,	dēfīunt;	dēfīet;	dēfīat;	——	dēfierī,	*to be wanting.*
īnfit,	īnfīunt,	——	——	——	——	*to begin.*

Sub. Imp. forem, forēs, foret, —— —— forent. *Inf.* fore.[3]
Ind. Pres. ovat, *he rejoices.* *Part.* ovāns.
Ind. Pres. quaesō, quaesumus,[4] *I pray.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it: licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves.[5] They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. The most important Impersonal Verbs are—

decet,	decuit,	*it becomes.*[6]	piget,	piguit, pigitum est,	*it grieves.*
libet,	libuit, libitum est,	*it pleases.*[6]	paenitet,	paenituit,	*it causes regret.*[7]
licet,	licuit, licitum est,	*it is lawful.*[6]	pudet,	puduit, puditum est,	*it shames.*
liquet,	licuit,	*it is evident.*[6]	taedet,	taeduit, taesum est,	*it wearies.*[8]
miseret,	miseritum est,	*it excites pity.*[7]			
oportet,	oportuit,	*it behooves.*			

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libēns*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licēns*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from PAENITET: *paenitēns*, penitent; *paenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudēns*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenitendum*, *pudendō*.

---

[1] Also written *avē*, *avēte*, etc.

[2] The Future *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperative.

[3] *Forem* = *essem*; *fore* = *futūrum esse*; see **204**, 2.

[4] Old forms for *quaerō* and *quaerimus*.

[5] The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a *thing*, but not a *person*: *hōc fierī oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

[6] These four occur in the third person plural, but without a *personal* subject.

[7] *Mē miseret*, I pity; *mē paenitet*, I repent.

[8] Also the compound, *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*, it greatly wearies.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature :

Fulminat, it lightens ; *grandinat*, it hails ; *lūcēscit*, it grows light ; *pluit*, it rains ; *rōrat*, dew falls ; *tonat*, it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally :

Accidit, it happens ; *appāret*, it appears ; *cōnstat*, it is evident ; *contingit*, it happens ; *dēlectat*, it delights ; *dolet*, it grieves ; *interest*, it concerns ; *juvat*, it delights ; *patet*, it is plain ; *placet*, it pleases ; *praestat*, it is better ; *rēfert*, it concerns.

1. In the Passive Voice intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihĭ crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed; *tibĭ crēditur*, you are believed; *crēditum est*, it was believed; *certātur*, it is contended; *curritur*, there is running, people run; *pūgnātur*, it is fought, they, we, etc., fight; *vīvitur*, we, you, they live.

2. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihĭ scribendum est, I must write; *tibĭ scribendum est*, you must write; *illī scribendum est*, he must write.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. The Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles:* the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly; *tam celer*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. In their origin, Adverbs are mainly the oblique cases[1] of nouns, adjectives, participles, and pronouns.

I. Accusatives.—Many Adverbs were originally Accusatives:

1. Accusatives of Nouns: *partim*, partly; *forās*,[1] out of doors; *diū*[1] (for *dium*[2]), for a long time. Here belong numerous adverbs in *tim* and *sim*, chiefly from verbal nouns[3] no longer in use:[1] *contemptim*, contemptuously;

---

[1] Some, indeed, are the oblique cases of words not otherwise used in Latin, and some are formed by means of case-endings no longer used in the regular declensions.

[2] Accusative of *dius* = *diēs*.

[3] Some adverbs in *tim* and *sim* are from adjectives: *singulātim*, one by one. In time doubtless *tim*, *ātim*, *sim*, and *im* came to be regarded simply as adverbial suffixes, and were so used in forming new adverbs.

sēnsim, perceptibly, slowly; *raptim*, hastily; *statim*, steadily; *fūrtim*, by stealth.

2. Accusatives of Nouns with Prepositions: *ad-modum*, very, to the full measure; *in-vicem*, in turn; *in-cassum*, in vain; *ob-iter*, on the road, in passing; *ob-viam*, in the way, against; *post-modum*, after a short time; *inter-diū*[1] and *inter-dius*,[1] during the day; *inter-dum*,[1] during the time, in the mean time.

3. Accusatives of Adjectives:

1) Neuters in *um*, *a*, *e*, *us*, *is*: *sōlum*, only; *multum*, *multa*, much; *nimium*, too much; *parum*, little; *secundum*, secondly; *cēterum*,[2] *cētera*, as to the rest; *vērum*,[2] truly; *abunde*,[3] abundantly; *facile*, easily; *saepe*,[4] often; *plūs*, more; *minus*, less; *saepius*, more frequently; *magis*, more, rather.[5]

2) Feminines in *am*, *ās*: *bifāriam*,[6] in two parts; *multifāriam*, in many parts; *clam* = *calam*, secretly; *palam*, openly; *perperam*, wrongly; *aliās*, otherwise.

4. Accusatives of Pronouns: *quam*,[7] how much; *tam*,[7] so much; *tum*, then; *tun-c*, at that time; *nun-c*, now.

II. Ablatives.—Many Adverbs were originally Ablatives:

1. Ablatives of Nouns in *ō*, *e*, *īs*: *ergō*, accordingly;[8] *numerō*, exactly; *forte*, by chance; *jūre*, rightly; *sponte*, willingly; *grātiīs*, or *grātīs*, gratuitously; *forīs*, out of doors.

Note.—The ablative is sometimes accompanied by a preposition or by an adjective: *ex-templō*, immediately—lit., from the moment; *īlico* for *in locō*, on the spot; *quot-annīs*, yearly; *multi-modīs*, in many ways; *ho-diē* (*hōc-diē*), to-day; *quā-rē*, wherefore, by which thing.

2. Ablatives of Adjectives and Participles in *ā*, Feminine, *ō*, *ē*,[9] and *ī*, Neuter: *dextrā*[10] = *dexterā*, on the right; *extrā*,[11] on the outside; *īnfrā*,[11] on the under side; *intrā*, on the inside;—*intrō*, within; *ūltrō*, beyond; *perpetuō*, continually; *rārō*, rarely; *subitō*, suddenly; *auspicātō*, after taking the aus-

---

[1] *Diū* and *dum* are explained as forms of *dium* = *diem*, and *dius* as for *diēs*; see Corssen, I., pp. 232–236; II., 458.

[2] Often becoming conjunctions—*cēterum*, but. *Nōn*, from *ne-ūnum*, also belongs here.

[3] From obsolete *abundis*.

[4] Here may be added *semel*, 'once,' and *simul*, 'at the same time,' both for *simile*.

[5] *Secus*, 'otherwise'; *tenus*, 'as far as'; *prōtinus*, 'straightforward'; and *versus*, 'toward,' doubtless belong here.

[6] Originally *partem* or *viam* may have been used.

[7] *Quam*, from stem *qua*, in *quī*, *quae*; *tam*, *tum*, from stem *ta*, *to*, in the final syllable of *iste*, for *is-tu-s*, *is-ta*; *tun-c* = *tum-ce*, *nun-c* = *num-ce*, in which *num* is from the stem *no*, seen also in *num*, 'whether,' and also in its original form, *na*, in *nam*, 'for.'

[8] Literally, *by the deed*. Compare Greek ἔργον, ἔργῳ.

[9] That *ē* is here an ablative ending is proved by the fact that it appears in early Latin in the form of *ēd*, an undoubted ablative ending.

[10] With these feminines, *parte* or *viā* may have been originally used.

[11] Often becoming prepositions. In fact, all prepositions in *ā* are derived from adverbs which were originally ablatives in *ād*, afterward *ā*.

pices; *cōnsultō*, after deliberating; *sortītō*, by lot, i. e., after casting lots;—*doctē*, learnedly; *līberē*, freely; *certē*,[1] surely; *rēctē*, rightly; *vērē*, truly;—*doctissimē*, most skillfully; *māximē*,[2] especially;—*brevī*, briefly.

3. Ablatives of Pronouns: *eā*, there, in that way; *hāc*, here, in this way; *quā*, where, in which way; *eādem*, by the same road, in the same way.

Note.—Several pronominal adverbs denote direction toward a point: *eō*, to that place; *hōc*, *hūc*, to this place;[3] *illō*, *illō-c*, *illū-c*, to that place; *istō*, *istō-c*, *istū-c*, to the place where you are; *quō*, to which place.

III. Locatives.—Some Adverbs were originally Locatives:

1. Locatives of Nouns and Adjectives in ī or ē: *herī*, yesterday; *temperī*, in time; *vesperī*, in the evening; *peregrī*, or *peregrē*, in a foreign land.

2. Locatives of Pronouns: *hīc*,[4] here; *illīc*,[4] there; *istīc*, there where you are; *sīc*, in this way, thus; *utī*,[5] *ut*, in which way; *ibĭ*,[6] there; *ubĭ*, where.

Note.—Locative forms in *im* also occur: *ōlim*, formerly; *utrim-que*, on both sides; *illim*, *illin-c*, from that place; *hin-c*, from this place; often with *dē*: *utrin-de*, from both sides; *in-de*, from that point, thence.

IV. Adverbs in **tus** and **ter**.—Adverbs are also formed by means of the endings **tus**[7] and **ter**:[7]

Fundi-tus, from the foundation; *rādīci-tus*, from the roots, utterly; *dīvīni-tus*, by divine appointment, divinely; *forti-ter*, bravely; *ācri-ter*, sharply; *dūri-ter*, harshly; *ēlegan-ter*, elegantly; *aman-ter*, lovingly; *prūden-ter*, prudently.

Note 1.—The stem-vowel before *tus* becomes *i*, and consonant stems assume *i*: *fundi-tus*,[8] *rādīc-i-tus*. The stem-vowel before *ter* also becomes *i*: *dūri-ter*.[8] Consonant stems, however, do not assume *i*, but drop final *t*: *amant-ter*, *aman-ter*.

Note 2.—Many adverbs are simply adverbial phrases or clauses whose parts have become united in writing. In these compound forms prepositions are especially common, and sometimes seem to be used with cases with which they do not otherwise occur: *ant-eā*,[1] before, before that; *inter-eā*, in the mean time; *post-eā*, after; *ante-hāc*,[1] before this; *quem-ad-modum*, in what manner; *parum-per*, for a while; *nū-per* = *novum-per*, lately; *tantīs-per*, for so long a time; *vidĕlicet* = *vidēre licet*, clearly—lit., 'it is permitted to see'; *scīlicet* = *scīre licet*, certainly; *forsitan* = *fors sit an*, perhaps.

---

[1] As *ē* is an ablative ending, *certō* and *certē* are only different forms of the same word; so also *rēctō* and *rēctē*, *vērō* and *vērē*, though the two forms do not always have precisely the same meaning: *vērō*, in truth; *vērē*, truly.

[2] This is the regular ending in superlatives.

[3] These are sometimes explained as *Datives*, but they are probably *Ablatives*; *illō*, lit., *by that way* or *road*, finally came to mean *to that place*, i. e., to the place to which the road leads.

[4] Here the Locative ending is ī: *hī*, *illī*, *istī*, *sī*; *c* for *ce* is a demonstrative ending, meaning *here*. *Sīc* is the Locative of *sa*; see **313**, foot-note.

[5] *Utī* contains two stems—*u* or *cu* (seen in *cui*), and *ta* or *to* (seen in *te* in *is-te*).

[6] In *ibĭ* and *ubĭ* the ending is *bĭ*; *i* in *ibĭ* is the stem of *is*, he; *u* in *ubĭ* is the same as in *utī*.

[7] Seen also in *in-ter*, in the midst; *in-tus*, within; *sub-ter* and *sub-tus*, below. These suffixes are of uncertain origin; the former appears to be a case-suffix with ablative meaning, no longer used in declension; the latter, like *ter* in *al-ter*, *nos-ter*, and *dex-ter*, has lost its case-suffix, and may therefore represent either *terō* with an ablative suffix, or *terum* with an accusative suffix. See Corssen, II., p. 299; Kühner, I., p. 679.

[8] The stem-vowel *o* is changed to *i*.

305. Many Pronominal Adverbs, like the pronouns from which they are formed (**191**), are correlatives of each other, as will be seen in the following

TABLE OF CORRELATIVES.

INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.
		I. PLACE IN WHICH.	
ubĭ, where?[2]	*alicubĭ*, somewhere; *uspiam*, *usquam*, anywhere; *ubivīs*, where you please.	*hīc*, here;[3] *istīc*, there; *illīc*, there; *ibĭ*, there.	*ubĭ*, where.
		II. PLACE TO WHICH.	
quō, whither?	*aliquō*, to some place; *quōlibet*, *quōvīs*, whither you please.	*hūc*, to this place;[3] *istūc*, to that place; *illūc*, to that place; *eō*, to that place; *eōdem*, to the same place.	*quō*, whither.
quōrsum,[4] to what place? to what end?	*aliquō-vorsum*,[4] to some place.	*hōrsum*,[4] to this place.	*quōrsum*, to which place *or* end.
		III. PLACE FROM WHICH.	
unde, whence?	*alicunde*, from some place; *undelibet*, from any place.	*hinc*, from this place; *istinc*, from that place; *illinc*, from that place; *inde*, from that place.	*unde*, whence.

---

[1] Some scholars, regarding *eā* and *hāc* in these and similar cases as ablatives, think that all such compounds had their origin at a time when *ante*, *post*, *inter*, etc., admitted that case; but Corssen treats *eā* and *hāc* in all such cases as *neuters* in the *accusative plural*. See Corssen, II., p. 455; Bücheler, p. 82.

[2] Observe that the question *ubĭ*, 'where?' may be answered *indefinitely* by *alicubĭ*, *uspiam*, etc., or *definitely* by a demonstrative either alone or with a relative: *hīc*, 'here'; *hīc*, *ubĭ*, 'here, where.'

[3] *Hīc*, 'here,' 'near me'; *istīc*, 'there,' 'near you'; *illīc*, 'there,' 'near him'; *ibĭ*, 'there,' a weak demonstrative and the most common correlative of *ubĭ*, 'where.' See distinction in pronouns (**191**). A similar distinction exists in *hūc*, *istūc*, *illūc*, and *eō*.

[4] For *quō-vorsum* = *quō-versum*, 'whither turned'; *aliquō-vorsum*, *hūc-vorsum*.

Table of Correlatives.—(*Continued.*)

Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
IV. Time.			
quandō, when? *quotiēns*, how often?	*quandō*, *aliquandō*, *unquam*, at any time. *aliquotiēns*, somewhat often.	*nunc*, now; *tum*, then; *tunc*, at that very time; *ibī*, then. *totiēns*, so often.	*quom*, *cum*, *quum*, when. *quotiēns*, as, as often.
V. Way, Manner, Degree.			
quā, by *or* in what way?	*aliquā*, by *or* in some way; *quāvis*, by any way.	*hāc*, by this way; *istāc*, by that way; *illāc*, by that way; *eā*, by that way; *eādem*, by the same way.	*quā*, by which way.
ut, *utī*, how?	*aliquā*, in some way, etc.	*ita*, *sīc*, so, thus.	*ut*, *utī*, in which way, as.
quam, how much?	*aliquam*, somewhat.	*tam*, so much.	*quam*, as.

Note 1.—From *Relative Adverbs* are formed *General* or *Indefinite Relatives* by appending *-cumque* or by reduplicating the form: *ubīcumque*, *ubiubī*, wheresoever; *quōcumque*, *quōquō*, whithersoever.

Note 2.—Other examples are—

1) Place:—*alibī*, elsewhere; *ibīdem*, in the same place; *necubī*, lest anywhere, that nowhere; *sīcubī*, if anywhere; *aliō*, to another place; *citrō*, to this side; *ūltrō citrōque*, to and fro; *utrōque*, to both places; *aliunde*, from another place; *indidem*, from the same place; *utrimque*, from *or* on both sides; *undique*, from all sides.

2) Time:—*hodiē*, to-day; *herī*, yesterday; *crās*, to-morrow; *prīdiē*, the day before; *postrīdiē*, the day after; *jam*, already; *jam tum*, even then; *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum*, *jamprīdem*, long ago; *quondam*, at a certain time; *ōlim*, formerly, hereafter; *interim*, *intereā*, meanwhile; *anteā*, *prius*, before; *post*, *posteā*, afterward; *unquam*, ever; *nūnquam*, never; *semper*, at all times.

3) Way, Manner, Degree:—*adeō*, so; *aliter*, otherwise; *magis*, more; *paene*, almost; *palam*, openly; *prōrsus*, wholly; *rīte*, rightly; *valdē*, greatly; *vix*, scarcely.

4) Cause:—*cūr*, why; *eō*, for this reason; *ideō*, *idcircō*, *proptereā*, on this account; *ergō*, *igitur*, *itaque*, therefore, accordingly.

Note 3.—*Nesciō*, with an interrogative adverb, is often equivalent to an indefinite adverb: *nesciō quōmodo*, I know not in what way = *quōdammodo*, in some way; *nesciō ubī* = *alicubī*, in some place; *nesciō unde* = *alicunde*, from some place; see also **191**, note.

Note 4.—Adverbial phrases are formed by combining *mīrum* or *nimium* with *quantum*: *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, wonderfully; *nimium quantum*, exceedingly. *Mīrum quam*, *sānē quam*, and *valdē quam* have a similar force: *how wonderfully*, *how very*, *how greatly* = *exceedingly*, *wonderfully*.

Note 5.—For Interrogative Particles, see **311**, 8.

Note 6.—For Negative Particles, see **552**.

306. Comparison.—Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the accusative neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē*:[1]

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	*lofty.*
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	*loftily.*
prūdēns,	prūdentior,	prūdentissimus,	*prudent.*
prūdenter,	prūdentius,	prūdentissimē,	*prudently.*

1. When the adjective is compared with *magis* and *māximē*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

ēgregius,	magis ēgregius,	māximē ēgregius,	*excellent.*
ēgregiē,	magis ēgregiē,	māximē ēgregiē,	*excellently.*

2. When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	*good.*
bene,	melius,	optimē,	*well.*
male,	pējus,	pessimē,	*badly.*

3. When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

———	dēterior,	dēterrimus,	*worse.*
———	dēterius,	dēterrimē,	*worse.*
novus,	———	novissimus,	*new.*
novē,	———	novissimē,	*newly.*

4. A few not derived from adjectives are compared:

diū,	diūtius,	diūtissimē,	*for a long time.*
saepe,	saepius,	saepissimē,	*often.*
satis,	satius,	———	*sufficiently.*
nūper,	———	nūperrimē,	*recently.*

5. Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (**169**), are not compared: *hīc*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgāriter*, commonly.

6. Superlatives in *ō* or *um* are used in a few adverbs: *prīmō*, *prīmum*, *potissimum*.

PREPOSITIONS.

307. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other:

In Ītaliā esse, *to be* IN *Italy*; *ante* mē, BEFORE *me*.

Note 1.—Prepositions were originally adverbs, and, like other adverbs (**304**), are in origin petrified case-forms.[2]

---

[1] See **304**, II., 2.

[2] Thus prepositions in *ā* are in origin ablatives: *circā*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *īnfrā*, etc; while those in *m* are accusatives: *circum*, *cōram*, *cum*, etc. These case-forms passed into adverbs denoting *direction*, *situation*, etc.; but they finally became associated with nouns in the accusative or ablative as auxiliary to the case-ending: *locō*

NOTE 2.—For the USE of Prepositions, see **432–437**.

NOTE 3.—For the FORM and MEANING of Prepositions in Composition, see **344**, 5.

308. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.[1]—*Ambi*, *amb*, 'around,' 'about'; *dis*, *dī*, 'asunder'; *in*, 'not,' 'un-'; *por*, 'toward,' 'forth'; *re*, *red*, 'back'; *sē*, *sēd*, 'aside,' 'apart'; and *vē*, 'not,' are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

NOTE.—For the FORM and MEANING of the Inseparable Prepositions in Composition, see **344**, 6.

CONJUNCTIONS.

309. Conjunctions are mere connectives. They are either *Coordinate* or *Subordinate*.

1. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS connect similar constructions:

Labor voluptāsQUE,[2] *labor* AND *pleasure*. Karthāginem cēpit ĀC[2] dīruit, *he took* AND *destroyed Carthage*.

2. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS connect subordinate with principal constructions:

Haec DUM[2] colligunt, effugit, WHILE *they collect these things, he escapes*.

310. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS comprise—

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting UNION:

Et, *que*, *atque*,[3] *āc*, and; *etiam*, *quoque*, also; *neque*, *nec*, and not; *neque—neque*, *nec—nec*, *neque—nec*, neither—nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting SEPARATION:

Aut,[4] *vel*, *ve*, *sive* (*seu*), or; *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*, either—or; *sive—sive*, either—or.

NOTE.—Here belong interrogative particles in double or disjunctive questions: *utrum*, *num*, or *ne—an*, whether—or; *an*, or; *annōn*, *necne*, or not; see **353**.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting OPPOSITION:

= FROM a place; *ex locō* = OUT OF a place; *aliquid locō movēre*, to move anything FROM a place; *aliquid ex locō movēre*, to move anything OUT OF a place. An adverb thus separated from the verb and brought into connection with a noun ceased to be an *adverb* and became a *preposition*.

[1] Like other prepositions, these were doubtless originally case-forms.

[2] Thus *que* connects two nominatives, *ăc* two indicatives which are entirely coördinate, *took* AND *destroyed*, but *dum* connects the subordinate clause, *haec—colligunt*, with the principal clause, *effugit—he escapes* WHILE *they collect these things*.

[3] Copulative conjunctions are *et* = Greek ἔτι, *que* = καί, and their compounds—*et-iam* or *et-jam*, *at-que*, *quo-que*, *ne-que*. *Ăc* is a shortened form of *at-que*; *nec*, of *ne-que*.

[4] Disjunctives are *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, with their compounds: *vel* = *velīs*, 'should you wish,' offering a choice, *ve* = *vīs*, 'you wish,' as in *qui-vīs*, 'any you please'; *sive* = *sīvīs*, 'if you wish.'

Sed,[1] *autem*, *vērum*, *vērō*, but; *at*, but, on the contrary; *atquī*, rather; *cēterum*, but still, moreover;[2] *tamen*, yet.

4. Illative Conjunctions, denoting inference:

Ergō, *igitur*, *inde*, *proinde*, *itaque*, hence, therefore; see also **554**, IV., 2.

5. Causal Conjunctions, denoting cause:

Nam, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim*, for.[3]

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise—

1. Temporal Conjunctions, denoting time:

Quandō, *quom*,[4] *cum*, or *quum*, when; *ut*, *ubī̆*, as, when; *cum* (*quom* or *quum*) *prīmum*, *ut prīmum*, *ubī̆ prīmum*, *simul*, *simulāc*, *simul āc*, *simulatque*, *simul atque*, as soon as; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*,[5] while, until, as long as; *antequam*, *priusquam*, before; *posteāquam*, after.

2. Comparative Conjunctions, denoting comparison:

Ut, *utī*, *sīcut*, *sīcuti*, as, so as; *velut*, just as; *praeut*, *prout*, according as, in comparison with; *quam*, as; *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut sī*, *āc sī*, *velut sī*, as if.

3. Conditional Conjunctions, denoting condition:

Sī,[6] if; *sī nōn*, *nisi*, *nī*, if not; *sīn*, but if; *sī quidem*, if indeed; *sī modo*, *dum modo*, *dummodo*, if only, provided.

4. Concessive Conjunctions, denoting concession:

Quamquam, *licet*,[7] *cum* (*quom*,[4] or *quum*), although; *etsī*, *tametsī*, *etiamsī*, even if; *quamvīs*,[7] *quantumvīs*, *quantumlibet*,[7] however much, although; *ut*, grant that; *nē*, grant that not.

5. Final Conjunctions, denoting purpose or end:

Ut, *utī*, that, in order that; *nē*, *nēve* (*neu*), that not; *quō*, that; *quōminus*,[8] that not.

6. Consecutive Conjunctions, denoting consequence or result:

Ut, so that; *ut nōn*, *quīn*,[8] so that not.

---

[1] Conjunctions, like adverbs, consist largely of case-forms, chiefly from pronominal stems. Thus, *sed*, *vērō*, *ergō*, etc., are explained as ablatives (*sed* from *suī*); *autem*, *vērum*, *cēterum*, *quam*, *quod*, *quom*, or *cum*, etc., as accusatives; *que*, *ubī̆*, *utī*, *ut*, etc., as locatives.

[2] Lit., *as to the rest.*

[3] But most Causal Conjunctions are subordinate; see **311**, 7.

[4] *Quom*, the original form out of which *cum* and *quum* were developed (**22**; **26**, foot-note), occurs in early Latin, as in Plautus. *Cum* is the approved form in classical Latin.

[5] See **304**, I., 1 and 2, foot-notes.

[6] Probably locative, possibly instrumental; see page 73, foot-note 2.

[7] *Licet* is strictly a verb, meaning *it is permitted; vīs*, in *quam-vīs* and *quantum-vīs*, is also a verb: *quam-vīs*, 'as much as you wish'; as is also *libet*, 'it pleases,' in *quantum-libet*, 'as much as is pleasing.'

[8] *Quōminus* = *quō minus*, 'by which less'; *quīn* = *quī nē*, 'by which not.'

7. **Causal Conjunctions**, denoting **cause**:

Quia, *quod*, *quoniam*,[1] *quandŏ*, because, inasmuch as; *cum* (*quom*, *quum*), since; *quandŏquidem*, *siquidem*,[2] *utpote*, since indeed.

8. **Interrogative Conjunctions**, denoting **inquiry**:[3]

Ne, *nōnne*, *num*, *utrum*, *an*, whether; *an nōn*, *necne*, or not.

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address.[4] They may express—

1. Astonishment: *ō*, *hem*, *ehem*, *atat*, *bubae*, *vāh*, *ĕn*, *ecce*.
2. Joy: *iŏ*, *ĕvoe*, *euge*, *ĕja*, *ō*, *papae*.
3. Sorrow: *vae*, *ei*, *heu*, *ĕheu*, *ŏhĕ*, *āh*, *au*, *prŏ*.
4. Disgust: *aha*, *phȳ*, *apage*.
5. Calling: *heus*, *ō*, *eho*, *ehodum*.
6. Praise: *eu*, *euge*, *ĕja*, *hĕja*.

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

SECTION I.

ROOTS.—STEMS.—SUFFIXES.

313. Words are formed from stems (**46**, 1), and stems from roots or from other stems.

Note 1.—Thus *status*, 'position,' is formed from the stem *statu* by adding the nominative suffix *s*,[5] but the stem *statu* is itself formed from the root *sta* by appending the derivative suffix *tu*.

---

[1] Compounded of *quom-jam*, when now.

[2] Lit., *if indeed*.

[3] These are sometimes classed as *Adverbs*. In some of their uses they are plainly *Conjunctions*, while in other cases they approach closely to the nature of *Adverbs*. As a matter of convenience they may be called *Interrogative Particles*; see **351**, 1.

[4] Some interjections seem to be the simple and natural utterance of feeling, and accordingly do not appear to have been built up, like other words, from roots and stems, but to be themselves specimens of the unorganized elements of human speech. Others, however, are either inflected forms, as *age*, 'come,' *apage* = ἄπαγε, 'begone,' or mutilated sentences or clauses: *meherculēs*, *mehercule*, etc., = *mē Herculēs juvet*, 'may Hercules protect me'; *mēcastŏr*, 'may Castor protect me'; *mēdius fidius*, 'may the true God help me'; *ĕcastŏr* = *ĕn Castŏr*, 'lo Castor.'

[5] This *s* is doubtless a remnant of an old demonstrative, *sa*, meaning *that*, *he*, *she*.

NOTE 2.—Words are either simple or compound:

1. *Simple*, when formed from single roots with or without suffixes.

2. *Compound*, when formed by the union of two or more roots or stems; see **340**, III.

314. ROOTS.—Roots are the primitive elements out of which all words in our family of languages have been formed.[1] They are of two kinds:

I. PREDICATIVE ROOTS, also called VERBAL ROOTS.[2] These designate or name objects, actions, or qualities: *es* in *es-t*, he is; *i* in *ī-re*, to go; *duc* in *duc-s* = *dux*, leader; *doc* in *doc-ilis*, docile.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS,[3] also called PRONOMINAL ROOTS. These do not name objects or actions, but simply point out the relation of such objects or actions to the speaker: *me* in *meī*, of me; *tu* in *tuī*, of you; *i* in *is*, that, that one, he.

315. The STEMS[4] of simple words may be divided into three classes: *Root Stems*, *Primary Stems*, and *Secondary Stems*.

316. ROOT STEMS are either identical with roots, or are formed from them without the aid of suffixes:

Duc-is, 'of a leader,' root-stem *duc*;[5] *es-tis*, 'you are,' root-stem *es*; *rēg-ēs*, 'kings,' root-stem *rēg*; *vōc-is*, 'of the voice,' root-stem *vōc*; *murmur-is*, 'of a murmur,' root-stem *murmur*.

317. PRIMARY STEMS are formed from roots by means of suffixes:[6]

---

[1] These roots were probably all monosyllabic, and were once used separately as words, but not as parts of speech. Thus *es*, the root of *sum*, *esse*, 'to be,' and *i*, the root of *eŏ*, *īre*, 'to go,' were doubtless used in their original form, as significant words, long before the verbs themselves had an existence.

[2] Observe that from this class of roots, whether called *Predicative* or *Verbal*, may be formed the stems, not only of verbs, but also of nouns, adjectives, and, in fact, of all the parts of speech except pronouns.

[3] The learner should note the difference in signification between *Predicative* and *Demonstrative* Roots. Thus *dux* has a definite meaning, and must always designate *one who leads*; while the pronoun *ego* is not the name of any person or thing, but may be used by any and every person in speaking of himself.

[4] The learner has already become familiar with the use of stems in the inflection of nouns, adjectives, etc.; but stems, like roots, were probably once used as words.

[5] The basis of every inflected word is a stem. *Duc* is therefore the stem of *duc-is*, but as it can not be derived from a more primitive form, it is also a *root*. According to some authorities, *rēg*, the stem of *rēg-ēs*, and *vōc*, the stem of *vōc-ēs*, are not roots, but derived from more primitive forms—*reg* in *reg-ō*, and *voc* in *voc-ō*; according to other authorities, however, *reg* and *rēg* are only two forms of the same root; so also *voc* and *vōc*, *duc* and *dūc*. The stem *murmur* is not a root, but formed from the root *mur* by reduplication. See Curtius, Chron., p. 25; Schleicher, pp. 341–350; Meyer, pp. 8, 371–376.

[6] Any suffix used to form a *Primary Stem* is called a *Primary Suffix*; see **320**.

Root.	Suffix.	Stem.	Word.	
ar,	vo,	ar-vo,	ar-vu-m,[1]	*field.*
fac,	to,	fac-to,	fac-tu-s,[1]	*made.*
sta,	tu,	sta-tu,	sta-tu-s,	*position.*

Note.—All stems formed from verb-stems are also generally classed as *Primary Stems:*[2] *cūrā-tor*, 'guardian,' 'curator,' from *cūrō*, 'to care for,' from *cūra*, 'care.'

318. Secondary Stems are formed from other stems[3] by means of suffixes:[4]

Stem.	Suffix.	Secondary Stem.	Word.	
cīvi,[5]	co;	cīvi-co,	cīvicus,	*civic.*
vīctōr,[5]	iă;	vīctōr-iă,	vīctōria,	*victory.*
vīctōr,	īc;	vīctōr-ic,	vīctrīx,[6]	*victress.*

319. The Stems of Compound Words are formed by the union of two or more stems, or of a stem with a root:

fu-erā,[7]	fu-erā-s,	*you had been.*
grand-aevo,[8]	grand-aevu-s,	*of great age.*
igni-colōr,[9]	igni-color,	*fire-colored.*
māgn-animo,[10]	māgn-animu-s,	*great-souled.*

Note 1.—Words are formed from Stems by means of the Suffixes of Inflection; see **46** and **202**, note 1.

Note 2.—A single root often gives rise to a large class of forms. Thus, from the root *sta*, 'to stand,' are derived—

1. The numerous forms which make up the conjugation of the verb *stō*, *stāre*, *stetī*, *stătum*, to stand.

2. All the forms of the verb *sistō*, *sistere*, *stitī*, *statum*, 'to place.'

3. Numerous other forms. Thus (1), *sta-bilis*, 'stable,' 'firm,' from which are derived *stabiliō*, 'to make firm'; *stabilitās*, 'firmness,' and *stabiliter*, 'firmly'; (2) *stabulum*, 'a standing place,' 'stable,' from which are derived *stabulō*, and *stabulor*, 'to have a standing place'; (3) *stāmen*, 'something standing,' 'warp in an upright loom'; (4) *statim*, 'in standing,' 'at once'; (5) *statiŏ*, 'standing'; (6) *statīvus*, 'stationary'; (7) *stator*, 'a stayer'; and (8) *status*, 'position,' from which is derived *statuŏ*, 'to place,' which in turn becomes the basis of *statua*, 'a statue,' and *statūra*, 'stature.'

---

[1] *Ar-vo-m* weakened to *arvum*, *fac-to-s* to *factus;* see **22**, 2.

[2] This is a matter of convenience, as new stems, or words, are formed from verb-stems in the same manner as from roots; see Schleicher, p. 347.

[3] Except verb-stems. Remember that stems formed from verb-stems are treated as Primary; see **317**, note.

[4] Any suffix used to form a *Secondary* stem is called a *Secondary* suffix, but many suffixes may be either *primary* or *secondary*. Thus *co* in *cīvicus* is Secondary, as it is added to a stem; but in *locus*, 'place,' it is Primary, as it is added to a root.

[5] *Cīvi* is the stem of *cīvis*, citizen; *vīctōr* of *vīctor*, conqueror.

[6] For *vīctōrix*, by contraction.

[7] Compounded of root *fu* with stem *erā* from the root *es;* see **203**, note 2, and **243**.

[8] For *grandi-aevo*.

[9] Compounded of *igni*, the stem of *ignis*, 'fire,' and of *colōr*, the stem of *color*, 'color.'

[10] Compounded of *māgno*, the stem of *māgnus*, 'great,' and of *animo*, the stem of *animus*, 'soul'; *māgno-animo* becoming *māgnanimo*.

320. Suffixes.—Most suffixes[1] appear to have been formed from a comparatively small number of primitive elements called

Primary Suffixes.

I.	II.[2]	Examples.
a,	ā̆,[3] o, ē, e, i, ō̆, u,	**ā̆** and **o** in nouns and adjectives, **ē** in nouns, and **e**, **i**, **ō̆**, and **u** in verbs: *scrīb-a*, writer; *fug-a*, flight; *jug-o*, Nom. *jug-u-m*,[4] yoke; *fid-ē*, Nom. *fid-ē-s*, faith; *reg-e*,[5] rule thou; *reg-i-s*, you rule; *reg-ō*, I rule; *reg-u-nt*, they rule.
i,	i,	in a few nouns: *av-i*, Nom. *av-i-s*, bird; *arc-i*, Nom. *arc-i-s*, *arc-s*,[6] *arx*, citadel.
u,	u,	in nouns:[7] *ac-u*, Nom. *ac-u-s*, needle.
an,	on, ōn, en, in,	denoting either the act or the agent; *asperg-on*, Nom. *aspergŏ*[8] (G. *inis*), sprinkling; *ger-ōn*, *gerŏ*[8] (G. *ōnis*), a carrier; *pect-en* (G. *inis*), a comb.
ant,[9]	ent, unt,	in present participles:[10] *audient-s*,[10] *audiēns*, hearing; *ab-es-ent-s*, *ab-sēns*, absent; *amā-ent-s*, *amāns*, loving.

---

[1] Most suffixes appear to be of pronominal origin, i. e., from pronominal stems or roots, but, according to Bopp, Corssen, and others, a few may be of verbal origin. Thus in several suffixes beginning with *b*—seen in *ber*, *bilis*, *bulum*, etc.—Corssen recognizes the root *bhar* = *fer* in *fer-ō*, 'to bear'; in some beginning with *t*—seen in *ter*, *tor*, *tūrus*, etc.—the root *tar*, 'to accomplish'; in some beginning with *c*—seen in *cer*, *culum*, *crum*, etc.—the root *kar* = *cer*, *cre* in *cre-ō*, 'to make.' For a discussion of the subject, see Bopp, III., pp. 186–201; Corssen, I., p. 567; II., pp. 40, 68; Schleicher, p. 448.

[2] Column I. shows the suffix in its *supposed* original form, while column II. shows the various forms which the suffix has assumed in Latin.

[3] Originally long in Latin in feminine forms; see **21**, 2, 1).

[4] Observe that these suffixes form *stems*, not *cases*. Sometimes the Nominative Singular is in form identical with the stem; but in most cases, the Nominative is formed from the stem by adding the Nominative suffix, as *s* in *fidē-s*, *m* in *jugu-m* for *jugo-m* (*o* weakened to *u*, **22**, 2).

[5] Observe that the Present stem takes the several forms, *reg-e*, *reg-i*, *reg-ō*, *reg-u*; but see page 118, foot-note 5.

[6] Often thus dropped; sometimes changed to *e*, *ē*: *mari*, *mare*, sea; *caedi*, *caede*, *caedē-s*, slaughter.

[7] Also in adjectives, in union with *i* making *ui*: *ten-ui-s*, thin.

[8] *N* dropped; see **36**, 5, 3).

[9] This is the base of several compound suffixes: *ent-o*, *ent-iā*, *ent-io*—Nom. *ent-um*, *ent-ia*, and *ent-ium*; *flu-ent-um*, stream; *sapi-ent-ia*, wisdom; *sil-ent-ium*, silence.

[10] Also in a few adjectives and nouns: *frequ-ent-s*, *frequēns*, frequent; *pari-ent-s*, *parēns*. Here *s* is the Nominative ending.

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.—(*Continued.*)

I.	II.	EXAMPLES.
as,	**os, us, es,**[1] **ōs, ŏr, ur,**	*gen-os*, *gen-us*,[2] birth; *corp-us*,[3] body; *nūb-ēs*, cloud; *rōb-ur*,[3] strength; *sop-or* (**21**, 2), sleep.
ja[4] = *ya*,	**iă**,[5] **io, iē,**	**iă** and **io** in adjectives; **iē** in nouns: *ex-im-iă*, *ex-im-io*, Nom. *ex-im-iu-s*, *ex-im-ia*, *ex-im-iu-m*, select; *fac-iē*, Nom. *fac-iē-s*, appearance.
ja[6] = *ya*,	**e, i, iŏ, iu,**	in verbs: *cap-e*, take thou; *cap-e-re*, to take; *cap-i-s*, you take; *cap-i-mus*, we take; *cap-iŏ*, I take; *cap-iu-nt*, they take.
jans[7] = *yans*,	**iōs, iŏr, ius, jŏr, ŏr,**	in comparatives: *mag-iōs*, *mag-iŏr*, *mā-jŏr*, Nom. *mā-jor* (**21**, 2), greater; *min-ŏr*, *min-or* (**21**, 2), smaller; see **162**, **165**.
ka,	**că, co,**	rare:[8] *pau-că*, *pau-co*, *pau-cus*, *a*, *um*, small; *lo-co*, *locus*, place.
la,	**lă, lo, li,**	see *ra*.
ma,[9]	**mă, mo,**	*for-ma*, form; *prī-mo*, *prī-mus*, first; *sup-mo*, *sum-mo* (**34**, 3), *sum-mus*, highest; *al-mo*, *al-mus*, cherishing.

---

[1] This suffix seems to be used in forming the Latin Infinitive, in origin the Dative of a verbal noun: *reg-es-e*, *reg-ere* (**31**, 1), 'to rule'—lit., *for ruling; e* is the Dative ending (**67**, note); see Schleicher, p. 472. See also page 81, foot-note 2.

[2] With variable vowel (**57**, 2); in early Latin *o*, in classical Latin *u* in Nominative Singular, *e* in other cases. We thus have in early Latin *os* in *gen-os*, and in classical Latin *us* in *gen-us*, and *es* changed to *er* (**31**, 1) in *gen-er-is*, *gen-er-ī*, etc. Words of this class take no Nominative ending.

[3] With variable vowel—*o*, *u*. We thus have *corp-us*, *corp-or-is*, with *s* changed to *r* (**31**, 1). *S* final is also changed to *r* in *rōbur*; see **31**, 2.

[4] Doubtless a pronominal stem. It is common as a secondary suffix (page 154, foot-note 4): *pater-io*, *patr-io*, Nom. *patr-ius*, paternal; *victōr-ia*, victory; *lūxur-ia*, *lūxur-iēs*, luxury; see **325**.

[5] Originally long in Latin, see **21**, 2, 1).

[6] Probably the verbal root *ja*, identical with *ī* in *īre*, to go. So explained by Curtius, Verbum, I., pp. 290–295. *Ja* was also used as a secondary suffix, appended to the stems of nouns and adjectives, in forming denominative verbs; see **335**, foot-note.

[7] This suffix is generally secondary: *alt-ior*, *alt-ius*, higher; *sapient-ior*, wiser; see **162**.

[8] It seems to appear without its final vowel in some nouns in *x: apĕ-c-s*, *apex*, point, top. It is common as a secondary suffix: *cīvi-co*, *cīvi-cus*, civic (**330**); and is also used in compound suffixes, as *cu-lo*, *ci-no*, *ti-co: flōs-cu-lus*, a small flower; *vāti-ci-nus*, prophetic. See Schleicher, p. 478; Corssen, II., pp. 205, 806, 807.

[9] This is also an element in *ti-mă*, *ti-mo*, *si-mă*, *si-mo*, *is-si-mă*, *is-si-mo: op-ti-mus*, *a*, *um*, best; *alt-is-si-mus*, highest.

Primary Suffixes.—(*Continued.*)

I.	II.	Examples.
man,[1]	**men,**[2] **min,**[2] **mōn,**	denoting the means of the action, sometimes the act itself, or its result: *tegi-men*, or *teg-men*,[2] a covering; *nō-men*,[3] name; *certā-men*, contest; *ser-mōn*, *ser-mō*,[4] discourse.
na,[5]	**nă, no,**	1. in adjectives with the force of perfect participles:[5] *plēnă*, *plē-no*, *plē-nus*, *a*, *um*, filled, full; *rēg-no*, *rēg-num*, kingdom, that which is ruled. 2. in nouns and adjectives with various meanings:[6] *sop-no*, *som-no* (**33**, 3, note), *som-nus*, sleep.
ni,	**ni,**[7]	*ig-ni*, *ig-nis*, fire; *pā-ni*, *pā-nis*, bread.
nu,	**nu,**	very rare: *ma-nu*, *ma-nus*, hand.
ra,[8] **la,**	**ră, ro, lă, lo, li,**	*ag-ro* (*agrus*), *ager*, field; *sac-ro* (*sac-rus*), *sacer*, *sac-ra*, *sac-rum*, sacred; *sed-lă*, *sel-la* (**34**, 2), seat; *candē-la*, a light; *tē-lo*, *tē-lum*, weapon; *doci-li*, *doci-lis*, docile.
ta,[9]	**tă, to, să, so,**	1. in perfect participles:[10] *amā-tŏ*, *amā-tus*, *a*, *um*, loved; *plaud-to*, *plau-so* (**35**, 3), *plau-sus*, applauded; *cōnā-tus*, having tried; *prān-sus*, having taken lunch. 2. in a few adjectives: *sex-to*, *sex-tus*, sixth.

---

[1] This is an element in *men-to*, *mōn-iă*, and *mōn-io*: *nūtri-men-tum*, nutriment; *queri-mōn-ia*, complaint; *testi-mōn-ium* (secondary suffix), testimony.

[2] With variable vowel (**57**, 2). The suffix *man* is weakened to *men* in the Nominative Singular, and to *min* in the other cases.

[3] For *gnō-men*, 'name,' the *means* by which one is known.

[4] *N* is dropped; see **36**, 5, 3).

[5] Nearly equivalent to *ta*. In some languages it forms passive participles like *ta*.

[6] Often secondary: *pater-no*, *pater-nus*, paternal; sometimes preceded by *ā*, *ī*, or *ē*: *font-ā-nus*, of a fountain; *can-ī-nus*, canine; *ali-ē-nus*, belonging to another; see **327**, **329**, and **330**.

[7] As *ta* and *na* are closely related in meaning and use, so are *ti* and *ni*. They are sometimes united in the same suffix: *ti-ō-ni* (**326**).

[8] *Ra* and *la* are only different forms of the same suffix. In Latin and Greek this suffix often forms verbal adjectives which sometimes pass into nouns: *gnā-rus*, 'knowing,' from *gnā* in *nō-scō*, 'to know'; δῶ-ρον, 'gift,' 'something given,' from δο in δίδωμι, 'to give.'

[9] In the form of *ti* it is the first element in *ti-mus*, *a*, *um*: *op-ti-mus*, best; and the second element in *is-si-mus*, *a*, *um*: *alt-is-si-mus*, highest. In the form of *tā*, it is the first element in *tā-ti*, shortened to *tāt*: *cīvi-tās* = *cīvi-tāt-s*, state.

[10] Often becoming adjectives or nouns: *al-to*, *al-tus*, high; *nā-tus*, son.

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.—(*Continued.*)

I.	II.	EXAMPLES.
tar,	**ter, tŏr,**	see *tra*.
ti,[1]	**ti,**[2] **si,**	in verbal nouns: *vĕs-ti*, *vĕs-tis*, garment; *met-ti*, *met-tis*, *messis* (**35**, 3), reaping, harvest.
tu,	**tŭ,**[3]	in verbal nouns, including supines: *sta-tu*, *sta-tus*, standing; *i-tu*, *i-tus*, going; *dic-tū* (supine), in telling, to tell.
tar,[4] **tra,**[4]	**ter, tŏr, tro,**	**ter**[5] and **tŏr** denoting AGENCY; **tro,** MEANS: *pa-ter*, father; *mā-ter*, mother; *vīc-tor*, conqueror; *audī-tor*, hearer; *arā-trum*, plough.
vă,	**vo, uo,**	in nouns and adjectives: *ar-vo*, *ar-vum*, ploughed field; *vac-uo*, *vac-uus*, empty.

SECTION II.

DERIVATION OF WORDS.

FORMATION OF NOUNS BY SUFFIXES.

I. FROM THE STEMS OF OTHER NOUNS.

321. DIMINUTIVES generally end in—

lus, la, lum; ulus, ula, ulum; culus, cula, culum:[6]

---

[1] *Ti* is the first element in *ti-ă*, *ti-o*, *ti-ē*, *ti-ō-ni*, *ti-ōn* (*i* dropped): *jūsti-tia*, justice; *servi-tio*, *servi-tium*, service; *dūri-tiē*, *dūri-tiēs*, hardness; *sta-tiōn*, *sta-tiŏ* (*n* dropped), station.

[2] *I* often disappears: *men-ti*, *men-tis*, *men-ts*, *mēns* (**36**, 2), mind.

[3] *Tu* is the first element in the suffixes, *tu-ă*, *tu-o*; *tū-ti*, *tūt*, and *tū-don*: *sta-tua*, statue; *mor-tuus*, dead; *servi-tūti*, *servi-tūt* (*servi-tūts*), *servi-tūs*, servitude; *turpi-tūdon*, *turpi-tūdŏ* (*n* dropped), turpitude.

[4] Perhaps of verbal origin (**320**, foot-note 1). This suffix seems to be the basis of several compound suffixes: *tōr-iă*, *tōr-io*, *tūră*, *tūro*, *trīc* for *tōr-ī-c*, etc.; see examples, **324**, **326**, **330**.

[5] *Ter* is used in names denoting *family relationship*, originally AGENCY: *pa-ter*, lit., *protector*, from the root *pa*, to protect.

[6] For the convenience of the learner the suffixes are given in the Nominative form, i. e., with the Nominative ending and the modified stem-vowel. Observe that the stem suffix in *lu-s* and *lu-m* is *lo*. The endings, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, were developed irregularly after the analogy of *u-lus*, *u-la*, *u-lum* in such words as *hortu-lus*, *virgu-lus*, *oppidu-lum*, where the *u* is the modified stem-vowel. Thus the *u* in *rēg-u-lus* and *capit-u-lum* is an irregularity introduced from the Diminutives of *a* and *o* stems. *Lus*, *la*, *lum* are formed from the suffix *la* or *ra*, often used in forming Primary Stems (**320**). *Culus*, *cula*, *culum* are compound suffixes in which the first part, *cu*, is formed from the suffix, originally *ka*, modified in Latin to *co*, *cu*, seen in *lo-co-s*, *locus*, place; see **320**, *ka*, foot-note.

fīlio-lus,	*a little son,*	from	fīlius,	*son.*
fīlio-la,	*a little daughter,*	"	fīlia,	*daughter.*
atrio-lum,	*a small hall,*	"	atrium,	*hall.*
alveo-lus,	*a small cavity,*	"	alveus,	*cavity.*
hortu-lus,	*a small garden,*	"	hortus,	*garden.*
virgu-la,	*a small branch,*	"	virga,	*branch.*
oppidu-lum,	*a small town,*	"	oppidum,	*town.*
rēg-ulus,	*a petty king,*	"	rēx,	*king.*
capit-ulum,	*a small head,*	"	caput,	*head.*
flōs-culus,	*a small flower,*	"	flōs,	*flower.*
parti-cula,	*a small part,*	"	pars,	*part.*
mūnus-culum,	*a small present,*	"	mūnus,	*present.*

1. **Lus**, **la**, **lum**, are appended to **a** and **o** stems; **ulus**, **ula**, **ulum**, to *Dental* and *Guttural* stems; **culus**, **cula**, **culum**, to **e**, **i**, and **u** stems, and to *Liquid* and **s** stems; see examples.

2. Before **lus**, **la**, **lum**, the stem-vowels **ă** and **o** take the form of **o** after **e** or **i**, and the form of **u** in other situations: *fīlio-lus*, *fīlio-la* for *fīliă-la*, *hortu-lus* for *horto-lus*.

3. Before **culus**, **cula**, **culum**, stems in **u** change **u** into **i**, and stems in **on** change **o** into **u**: *versi-culus*, 'a little verse,' from *versus; homunculus*, 'a small man,' from *homŏ*. Like nouns in **on**, a few other words form diminutives in *un-culus*, *un-cula: av-unculus*, 'maternal uncle,' from *avus*, 'grandfather.'[1]

4. **El-lus**, **el-la**, **el-lum**, **il-lus**, **il-la**, **il-lum**,[2] are used when the stem of the primitive ends in **ă** or **o**, preceded by **l**, **n**, or **r**: *ocel-lus*,[2] 'small eye,' from *oculus; fābel-la*, 'short fable,' from *fābula; vīl-lum*,[2] 'a small wine,' from *vīnum*.

NOTE.—The endings **leus** and **ciō** occur: *ecu-leus*,[3] 'a small horse,' from *equus; homun-ciō*, 'a small man,' from *homō*.

322. PATRONYMICS, or names of DESCENT, generally end in—

dēs, stem-suffix **dă**, *masculine;* **s** for **ds**, stem-suffix **d**, *feminine*.

Tantali-dēs,	*son of Tantalus;*	Tantali-s,	*daughter of Tantalus.*[4]
Thēsī-dēs,	*son of Theseus;*	Thēsēi-s,	*daughter of Theseus.*
Thestia-dēs,	*son of Thestius;*	Thestiă-s,	*daughter of Thestius.*

NOTE.—The suffix *nē*, preceded by *ī* or *ō*, is sometimes used in forming feminine Patronymics: *Neptūnī-nē*, daughter of Neptune; *Ācrisiō-nē*, daughter of Acrisius.

---

[1] *Nūbē-cula*, *plēbē-cula*, and *vulpē-cula* are formed as if from *e-stems*.

[2] The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem. The quantity of the vowel *e* or *i* is therefore determined by the primitive: thus, *oculus*, *oculu-lus* = *ocul-lus* = *ocel-lus; vīnum*, *vīnu-lum* = *vīn-lum* = *vīl-lum*.

[3] Also written *equuleus*, but *eculeus* is the approved form.

[4] The vowel preceding the suffix is usually *i*, as in *Tantali-dēs*, *Tantali-s*, modified from the stem-vowel *o*. Primitives in *eus* generally change *eu* to *ī* or *ēi*, as in *Thēsī-dēs*, *Thēsēi-s;* and primitives in *ius* change stem-vowel *o* to *a*, as in *Thestia-dēs*. Other nouns sometimes form Patronymics after the analogy of nouns in *ius: Lāertiadēs*, son of Laertes. *Aenēās* has *Aeneadēs*, masculine, and *Aenēis*, feminine.

323. Designations of Place are often formed with the endings—

ārium, ētum, tum, īle.[1]

columb-ārium,	*a dovecot,*	from	columba,	*dove.*
querc-ētum,	*a forest of oaks,*	"	quercus,	*oak.*
salic-tum,	*a thicket of willows,*	"	salix,	*willow.*
ov-īle,	*a sheepfold,*	"	ovis,	*sheep.*

1. **Ārium** designates the PLACE where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, 'treasury,' from *aes*, money.

2. **Ētum, tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the PLACE where they flourish: *olīvētum*, 'an olive-grove,' from *olīva*, 'olive-tree.'

3. **Īle**, used with names of animals, designates their STALL OR FOLD: *bovīle*, 'stall for cattle,' from *bōs*, stem *bov*.

4. Other Examples are—

Aestu-ārium, 'tidal bay,' from *aestus*, 'tide'; *avi-ārium*, 'aviary,' from *avis*, 'bird'; *dōn-ārium*, 'place for offerings,' from *dōnum*, 'gift'; *pōm-ārium*, 'orchard,' from *pōmum*, 'fruit'; *aescul-ētum*, 'forest of oaks,' from *aesculus*, 'oak'; *pīn-ētum*, 'pine-forest,' from *pīnus*, 'pine'; *ros-ētum*, 'rose-bed,' from *rosa*, 'rose'; *vīn-ētum*, 'vineyard,' from *vīnum*, 'vine'; *virgul-tum*, 'a thicket,' from *virgula*, 'bush'; *capr-īle*, 'goat-stall,' from *caper*, 'goat.'

324. Derivatives are also formed with several other endings, especially with—

ārius, iŏ, ium, itium, īna, imōnium, itās, tūs, ātus.[2]

statu-ārius,	*a statuary,*	from	statua,	*statue.*
mūl-iŏ,	*muleteer,*	"	mūlus,	*mule.*
sacerdōt-ium,	*priesthood,*	"	sacerdōs,	*priest.*
serv-itium,	*servitude,*	"	servus,	*slave.*
rēg-īna,	*queen,*	"	rēx,	*king.*
patr-imōnium,	*patrimony,*	"	pater,	*father.*
cīv-itās,	*citizenship,*	"	cīvis,	*citizen.*
vir-tūs,	*virtue,*	"	vir,	*man.*
cōnsul-ātus,	*consulship,*	"	cōnsul,	*consul.*

1. **Ārius** and **iŏ** generally designate PERSONS by their *occupations*.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote OFFICE, CONDITION, OR COLLECTION: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

---

[1] *Ārium* and *īle* are the endings of neuter adjectives used substantively (**330**). The vowels *ā* and *ī* were probably developed out of the stem-vowel of the primitive, but they were afterward treated as a part of the suffix. For an explanation of such vowels, see **330**, foot-note. Many derivative endings were thus formed originally by the union of certain suffixes with the stem-vowel of the primitive; accordingly, when added to vowel stems, they generally take the place of the stem-vowel: *columb-ă*, *columb-ārium*; *querc-o*, *querc-ētum*.

[2] *Ārius* is identical in origin with the adjective ending *ārius* (**330**), and *ātus* with *ātus* in participles. In each the initial *ā* was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive. *Īna* is the same formation as the adjective ending *īnus* (**330**). On *i-tium*, *i-mōnium*, *i-tās*, and *tūs*, see *ti*, *ta*, *tu*, *man*, *mōn*, with foot-notes, **320**; remember that the initial *i* was developed from the stem-vowel of the primitive.

3. **Īna** and **imōnium** are used with some variety of signification; see examples under 7 below.

4. **Itās** and **tūs** designate some CHARACTERISTIC OR CONDITION: *hērēd-i-tās*, 'heirship,' from *hērēs*, 'heir'; *virtūs*, 'manliness,' 'virtue,' from *vir*.

5. **Ātus** denotes RANK, OFFICE, COLLECTION: *cōnsulātus*, 'consulship,' from *cōnsul; senātus*, 'senate,' 'collection of old men,' from *senex*.

6. For PATRIAL or GENTILE NOUNS, see **331**, note 1.

NOTE.—The endings *āgŏ*, *īgŏ*, and *ūgŏ*[1] also occur: *vir-āgŏ*, 'heroic maiden,' from *vir*, 'hero'; *ferr-ūgŏ*, 'iron-rust,' from *ferrum*, 'iron.'

7. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Lībr-ārius, 'transcriber of books,' from *liber*, 'book'; *līgn-ārius*, 'joiner,' from *līgnum*, 'wood'; *quadrīg-ārius*, 'driver of a four-horse chariot,' from *quadrīga*, 'four-horse chariot'; *arbitr-ium*, 'decision,' from *arbiter*, 'arbiter'; *conjug-ium*, 'wedlock,' from *conjunx*, 'spouse'; *magis-ter-ium*, 'presidency,' from *magis-ter*, 'president'; *ōs-tium*, 'door,' from *ōs*, 'mouth'; *gall-īna*, 'hen,' from *gallus*, 'cock'; *dōctr-īna*, for *dōctōr-īna*, 'doctrine,' from *dōctor*, 'learned man,' 'doctor'; *mātr-imōnium*, 'matrimony,' from *māter*, 'mother'; *aedīl-itās*, 'office of edile,' from *aedīlis*, 'edile'; *auctōr-itās*, 'authority,' from *auctōr*, 'founder,' 'author'; *senec-tūs*, 'old age,' from *senex*, 'old man'; *tribūn-ātus*,[2] 'office of tribune,' from *tribūnus*, 'tribune.'

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

325. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings—

ia, itia, ta, tās, itās, tūs, ēdŏ, itūdŏ, imōnia.[3]

dīligent-ia,	*diligence*,	from	dīligēns,	*diligent*.
superb-ia,	*haughtiness*,	"	superbus,	*haughty*.
amīc-itia,	*friendship*,	"	amīcus,	*friendly*.
juven-ta,	*youth*,	"	juvenis,	*young*.
līber-tās,	*freedom*,	"	līber,	*free*.
bon-itās,	*goodness*,	"	bonus,	*good*.
pi-etās,[4]	*piety*,	"	pius,	*pious*.
juven-tūs,	*youth*,	"	juvenis,	*young*.
dulc-ēdŏ,	*sweetness*,	"	dulcis,	*sweet*.
sōl-itūdŏ,	*solitude*,	"	sōlus,	*alone*.
ācr-imōnia,	*sharpness*,	"	ācer,	*sharp*.

---

[1] These endings were formed, according to Corssen, by appending the suffix *an* to *ag*, the root of *agō*, to put in motion, make, do; see Corssen, I., p. 577.

[2] As if formed from a verb, *tribūnō, āre*, like *equit-ātus*, 'cavalry,' from *equitō, āre*, 'to ride,' from *eques*, 'a horseman.'

[3] When appended to vowel stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. Originally the initial *i* in *i-tia*, *i-tās*, *i-tūdŏ*, and *i-mōnia* formed no part of the suffix, but represented the stem-vowel of the primitive. On *ia*, *tia*, and *ta*, see *ja*, *ti*, and *ta*, 320; on *i-tās* and *tūs*, see page 160, foot-note 2; on *i-tūdŏ* and *i-mōnia*, see *tu* and *man*, 320. The origin of *ē-dŏ*, *ē-din* is obscure.

[4] For *pi-itās* by dissimilation (26).

NOTE 1.—Instead of *ia* and *itia*, *iēs* and *itiēs* occur: *pauper*, *pauper-iēs*, poverty; *dūrus*, *dūr-itia* or *dūr-itiēs*, hardness.

NOTE 2.—Before *tās* the stem of the adjective is sometimes slightly changed: *facilis*, *facultās*, faculty; *difficilis*, *difficultās*, difficulty; *potēns*, *potestās*, power.

NOTE 3.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both *itās* and *itūdŏ*: *firmus*, *firm-itās*, *firmitūdŏ*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* often suffer contraction before these endings: *honestās* for *honest-itās*, 'honesty,' from *honestus*; *sōllicitūdŏ*, for *sōl-licit-itūdŏ*, 'solicitude,' from *sōllicitus*.

1. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Audāc-ia, 'boldness,' from *audāx*, 'bold'; *jūst-itia*, 'justice,' from *jūstus*, 'just'; *saev-itia*, 'cruelty,' from *saevus*, 'cruel'; *senec-ta*, 'old age,' from *senex*, 'old'; *aequāl-itās*, 'equality,' from *aequālis*, 'equal'; *cār-itās*, 'dearness,' from *cārus*, 'dear'; *anxi-etās*, 'anxiety,' from *anxius*, 'anxious'; *alt-itūdŏ*, 'height,' from *altus*, 'high'; *fort-itūdŏ*, 'bravery,' from *fortis*, 'brave'; *māgn-itūdŏ*, 'greatness,' from *māgnus*, 'great.'

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS AND FROM ROOTS.

326. From the Stems of Verbs and from Roots are formed numerous nouns with the suffixes—[1]

ter, tor,[2] trīx, trum, tūra, tus, tiŏ, iŏ.[3]

pa-ter,	*father*,	from the root	pa,	*to protect.*
frā-ter,	*brother*,	“	bhra, fra,	*to support.*
amā-tor,	*lover*,	“	amā-re,	*to love.*
audī-tor,	*hearer*,	“	audī-re,	*to hear.*
dēfēn-sor,	*defender*,	“	dēfend-ere,	*to defend.*
vēnā-tor,	*hunter*,	“	vēnā-rī,	*to hunt.*
vēnā-trīx,	*huntress*,	“	“	“
gubernā-trīx,	*directress*,	“	gubernā-re,	*to direct.*
arā-trum,	*plough*,	“	arā-re,	*to plough.*
rōs-trum,[4]	*beak*,	“	rōd-ere,	*to gnaw.*
pīc-tor,	*painter*,	“	ping-ere,	*to paint.*
pīc-tūra,	*painting*,	“	“	“
ū-sūra,[5]	*using*,	“	ūt-ī,	*to use.*
audī-tus,	*hearing*,	“	audī-re,	*to hear.*
vī-sus,[5]	*sight*,	“	vid-ēre,	*to see.*
audī-tiŏ,	*hearing*,	“	audī-re,	*to hear.*
moni-tiŏ,[6]	*advising*,	“	monē-re,	*to advise.*
vī-siŏ,[5]	*seeing*,	“	vid-ēre,	*to see.*
leg-iŏ,	*a selecting*,	“	leg-ere,	*to select.*
occīd-iŏ,	*a slaying*,	“	occīd-ere,	*to slay.*

---

[1] These endings appear to be true suffixes, as they do not contain the stem-vowel of the primitive.

[2] For the phonetic change by which *t* in *tor*, *tūra*, etc., unites with a preceding *d* or *t* and produces *ss* or *s*, as in *dēfend-tor*, *dēfēnsor*, see **35**, 3, 2).

[3] On *ter*, *tor*, *trīx*, and *tūra*, see *tar*, *tra*; on *tus* and *tiŏ*, see *tu* and *ti*; and on *iŏ*, see *ja*, **320**.

[4] For *rōd-trum*; see **35**, 3, 1).

[5] For *ūt-tūra*, *vid-tus*, *vid-tiŏ*; see **35**, 3, 2).

[6] From stem *moni*, seen in *moni-tum*.

1. **Ter, tor,** and **trīx** designate the AGENT OR DOER; **trum,** the MEANS of the action; and **tūra, tus, tiŏ,** and **iŏ,** the ACT itself; see examples. But nouns in **tus** and **iŏ** sometimes become *concrete*, and denote the RESULT of the action: *quaes-tus*, 'gain,' from *quaes-ere*, 'to gain'; *leg-iŏ*, 'a selecting' and then 'a legion' (the men selected), from *leg-ere*, 'to select'; *exerci-tus*, 'exercise,' 'drill,' and then 'an army' (a collection of trained men), from *exercē-re*, 'to exercise.'

2. **Us, a, ŏ**[1] sometimes designate the AGENT of the action: *coqu-us* = *coquus*, cook, from *coqu-ere*, to cook; *scrīb-a*, writer, from *scrīb-ere*; *err-ŏ*, wanderer, from *err-āre.*

NOTE 1.—*Tor*, *trīx*, *tūra*, and *tus* are sometimes added to noun stems with or without change: *viā-tor*, 'traveler,' from *via*, 'way'; *senā-tor*, 'senator,' from *senex* (Genitive *senis*, stem *sen*), 'old man'; *jāni-tor*, 'janitor,' and *jāni-trīx*, 'janitrix,' from *jānua*, 'gate'; *lītterā-tūra*, 'writing,' from *līttera*, 'letter'; *cōnsul-ā-tus*, 'consulship,' from *cōnsul*, 'consul.'

NOTE 2.—For nouns in *iŏ* from the stems of other nouns, see **324**, with 1.

3. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Accūsā-tor, 'accuser,' from *accūsā-re*, 'to accuse'; *cūrā-tor*, 'keeper,' from *cūrā-re*, 'to take care of'; *da-tor*, 'giver,' from *da-re*, 'to give'; *vic-tor*, 'victor,' from *vinc-ere*,[2] 'to conquer'; *inven-trīx*, 'a female discoverer,' from *inven-īre*, 'to discover'; *mōnstrum* = *mon-es-trum*,[3] 'prodigy,' from *mon-ēre*, 'to admonish'; *rās-trum*, 'rake,' from *rād-ere*, 'to rake,' 'scrape'; *armā-tūra*, 'arming,' 'equipment,' from *armā-re*, 'to arm'; *nā-tūra*, 'birth,' 'nature,' from *nā-scī*,[4] 'to be born'; *scrīp-tūra*, for *scrīb-tūra*,[5] 'writing,' from *scrīb-ere*, 'to write'; *āc-tus*, for *ag-tus*,[6] 'driving,' 'act,' from *ag-ere*, 'to drive,' 'act'; *āc-tiŏ*, for *ag-tiŏ*, 'action,' from *ag-ere*, 'to act'; *moni-tiŏ*, 'act of admonishing,' from *monē-re*, 'to admonish'; *mon-itus*, 'admonition,' from *monē-re*, 'to admonish'; *opīn-iŏ*, 'opinion,' from *opīn-ārī*, 'to think'; *opt-iŏ*, 'choice,' from *opt-āre*, 'to choose.'

327. From the Stems of Verbs and from Roots are formed nouns with the suffixes—

or, us, ēs, iēs, ium, en, men, mentum, mōnia, mōnium, bulum, culum, brum,[7] crum, num.[8]

---

[1] *O* and *ŏ*, the stems of *us* and *a*, are only different forms of the suffix *a*; and *ĕn*, the stem of *ŏ*, *ōnis*, is from the suffix *an*; see **320**.

[2] Root *vic*.

[3] With the compound suffix *es-trum*, from *as-tra*; see *as* and *tra*, **320**.

[4] Root *nā*.

[5] See **33**, 1.

[6] Observe change in quantity: *ag-ere*, *āc-tus*; see Gellius, IX., 6.

[7] On the forms *bulum*, *brum*, *culum*, *crum*, see **35**, 2, foot-note 8.

[8] On *or* (for *os*), *us*, and *ēs*, see *as*; on *iēs* and *ium*, see *ja*; on *en*, see *an*; on *men*, *mentum*, *mōnia*, and *mōnium*, see *man*; on *num*, see *na*—all in **320**; on *bulum*, *brum*, *culum*, *crum*, see Corssen, II., p. 40.

am-or,	*love,*	from	am-āre,	*to love.*
tim-or,	*fear,*	"	tim-ēre,	*to fear.*
gen-us,	*birth,*	"	gen *in* gign-ere,	*to bear.*
frīgus,	*cold,*	"	frīg-ere,[1]	*to be cold.*
sēd-ēs,	*seat,*	"	sed-ēre,[2]	*to sit.*
fac-iēs,	*make, face,*	"	fac-ere,	*to make.*
gaud-ium,	*joy,*	"	gaud-ēre,	*to rejoice.*
stud-ium,	*zeal, study,*	"	stud-ēre,	*to be zealous.*
pect-en,	*a comb,*	"	pect-ere,	*to comb.*
flū-men,	*a stream,*	"	flu-ere,	*to flow.*
ōrnā-mentum,	*ornament,*	"	ōrnā-re,	*to adorn.*
queri-mōnia,	*complaint,*	"	querī,	*to complain.*
ali-mōnium,	*nourishment,*	"	ale-re,	*to nourish.*
vocā-bulum,	*appellation,*	"	vocā-re,	*to call.*
vehi-culum,	*vehicle,*	"	vehe-re,	*to carry.*
dēlū-brum,	*shrine,*	"	dēlu-ere,	*to cleanse.*
simulā-crum,	*image,*	"	simulā-re,	*to represent.*
rēg-num,	*reign,*	"	reg-ere,	*to rule.*

1. **Or, us, ēs, iēs,** and **ium** generally designate the ACTION or STATE denoted by the verb, but **ēs, iēs,** and **ium** sometimes designate the RESULT of the action: *aedificium,* 'edifice,' from *aedific-āre,* 'to build.'

2. **Men, mentum, mōnia, mōnium,** and **num** generally designate the MEANS of the action, or its involuntary SUBJECT, sometimes the ACT itself, or its RESULT: *flū-men,* 'a stream,' 'something which flows,' from *flu-ere; ag-men,* 'an army in motion,' from *ag-ere.*

NOTE.—The stem or root is sometimes shortened or changed: *mŏ-mentum,* 'moving force,' from *mov-ēre.*

3. **Bulum, culum, brum,** and **crum** designate the INSTRUMENT or the PLACE of the action: *vehi-culum,* 'vehicle' (instrument of the action), from *vehe-re; sta-bulum,* 'stall' (place of the action), from *stā-re.*

NOTE.—The vowel of the stem is sometimes changed: *sepul-crum,* 'sepulchre,' from *sepel-īre,* 'to bury'; see **24**, 3.

4. In **culum, c** is dropped after *c* and *g: vinc-ulum,* 'a bond,' from *vinc-īre; reg-ula,* 'rule,' from *reg-ere.*

NOTE.—*Dŏ, la, āgŏ, īgŏ,*[3] and a few other endings also occur: *torpē-dŏ,* 'numbness,' from *torpē-re,* 'to be numb'; *cupī-dŏ,* 'desire,' from *cupe-re,* 'to desire'; *candē-la,* 'candle,' from *candē-re,* 'to shine'; *vor-āgŏ,* 'whirlpool,' from *vor-āre,* 'to swallow up'; *vert-īgŏ,* 'a turn,' from *vert-ere,* 'to turn.'

5. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Splend-or, 'brightness,' from *splend-ēre,* 'to be bright'; *op-us,* 'work,' from the root *op* for *ap,* 'work'; *dec-us,* 'ornament,' from root *dec,* in *dec-et,*

---

[1] In several of these examples the noun is not strictly derived from the verb, but both noun and verb are formed from one common root, as *frīg-us* and *frīg-ere* from the root *frīg.*

[2] *Sed-ēre* and *sēd-ēs* show a variable root-vowel—*e, ē;* see **20**, note 2.

[3] See Corssen, I., p. 577; II., pp. 802, 803.

'it is becoming'; *nūb-ēs*, 'cloud,' from the root *nūb* in *nūb-ere*, 'to veil'; *spec-iēs*, 'look,' from *spec-ere*, 'to look'; *effug-ium*, 'escape,' from *effug-ere*, 'to escape'; *imper-ium*, 'command,' from *imper-āre*, 'to command'; *certāmen*, 'contest,' from *certā-re*, 'to contend'; *docu-mentum*,[1] 'lesson,' 'document,' from *docē-re*, 'to teach'; *nūtrī-mentum*, 'nourishment,' from *nūtrī-re*, 'to nourish'; *pā-bulum*, 'fodder,' from the root *pā* in *pā-scere*, 'to feed'; *spectā-culum*, 'sight,' from *spectā-re*, 'to behold'; *lū-crum*, 'gain,' from *lu-ere*, 'to pay'; *dō-num*,[1] 'gift,' from the root *da* in *da-re*, 'to give.'

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES BY SUFFIXES.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

328. FULLNESS.—Adjectives denoting *fullness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in—

ōsus, cōsus, lēns, lentus, tus.[2]

anim-ōsus,	*full of courage,*	from	animus,	*spirit, courage.*
frūctu-ōsus,	*fruitful,*	"	frūctus,	*fruit.*
belli-cōsus,	*warlike,*	"	bellum,	*war.*
pesti-lēns,	*pestilential,*	"	pestis,	*pest.*
pesti-lentus,	"	"	"	"
vīno-lentus,	*full of wine,*	"	vīnum,	*wine.*
fraudu-lentus,	*fraudulent,*	"	fraus,	*fraud.*
ālā-tus,	*winged,*	"	āla,	*wing.*
turrī-tus,	*turreted,*	"	turris,	*turret.*
cornū-tus,	*horned,*	"	cornū,	*horn.*
jūs-tus,	*just,*	"	jūs,	*right.*

NOTE.—Before *ōsus* the stem-vowel is generally dropped, but *u* is retained: *animo-ōsus*, *anim-ōsus*, but *frūctu-ōsus*.

1. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Ann-ōsus, 'full of years,' from *annus*, 'year'; *lūxuri-ōsus*, 'luxurious,' from *lūxuria*, 'luxury'; *perīcul-ōsus*, 'dangerous,' from *perīculum*, 'danger'; *tenebr-ōsus* and *tenebri-cōsus*, 'gloomy,' from *tenebrae*, 'gloom'; *turbu-lentus*, 'riotous,' from *turba*, 'riot'; *barbā-tus*, 'bearded,' from *barba*, 'beard'; *aurī-tus*, 'long eared,' from *auris*, 'ear'; *onus-tus*, 'burdened,' from *onus*, 'burden.'

329. MATERIAL.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in—

---

[1] With modified stem or root: *docē*, *docu*; *da*, *dō*.

[2] On *ōsus*, see Schleicher, p. 408; Corssen, I., p. 62; II., p. 688. *Cōsus* is from *co* and *ōsus*; thus from *bellum*, 'war,' is formed *belli-cus*, 'belonging to war'; and from *belli-cus* is formed *bellico-ōsus*, *belli-cōsus*, 'warlike.' On *lēns*, *lentus*, see *ra*, *la*, 320. The vowel before *lēns*, *lentus*—generally *u*, sometimes *o* or *i*—was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive, as in *vīno-lentus*, *pesti-lēns*, *pesti-lentus*, but it was sometimes treated as a part of the suffix: *vi-olentus*, 'violent,' from *vīs*, 'force.' *Tus* is identical with *tus* in the passive participle, and when added to vowel-stems is preceded by *ā*, *ī*, or *ū*: *ālā-tus*, *turrī-tus*, *cornū-tus*, like *amā-tus*, *audī-tus*, *acū-tus* ('sharpened,' from *acu-o*, 'to sharpen'). It may, however, be added to consonant-stems: *jūs-tus*.

eus, nus, neus, āceus, icius.[1]

aur-eus,	*golden,*	from	aurum,	*gold.*
argent-eus,	*of silver,*	"	argentum,	*silver.*
fāg-eus,	*of beech,*	"	fāgus,	*a beech.*
fāgi-nus,[2]	"	"	"	"
fāgi-neus,[2]	"	"	"	"
pōpul-nus,[3]	*of poplar,*	"	pōpulus,	*a poplar.*
pōpul-neus,[3]	"	"	"	"
papȳr-āceus,	*of papyrus,*	"	papȳrus,	*papyrus.*
later-icius,	*of brick,*	"	later,	*brick.*

NOTE.—These endings sometimes denote *characteristic* or *possession: virgineus,* 'belonging to a maiden.'

330. CHARACTERISTIC.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from,* generally end in—

cus, icus, ālis, īlis, ānus, īnus, āris, ārius, ius, ēnsis.[4]

cīvi-cus,	*relating to a citizen,*	from	cīvis,	*citizen.*
patr-icus,	*paternal,*	"	pater,	*father.*
nātūr-ālis,	*natural,*	"	nātūra,	*nature.*
mort-ālis,	*mortal,*	"	mors,	*death.*
host-īlis,	*hostile,*	"	hostis,	*enemy.*
cīv-īlis,	*relating to a citizen,*	"	cīvis,	*citizen.*
oppid-ānus,	*of the town,*	"	oppidum,	*town.*
urb-ānus,	*of the city,*	"	urbs,	*city.*
mar-īnus,	*marine,*	"	mare,	*sea.*
equ-īnus,	*of, pertaining to a horse,*	"	equus,	*horse.*
lūn-āris,	*lunar,*	"	lūna,	*moon.*
salūt-āris,	*salutary,*	"	salūs,	*safety.*
auxili-ārius,	*auxiliary,*	"	auxilium,	*aid.*
rēg-ius,	*royal,*	"	rēx,	*king.*
ōrātōr-ius,	*of an orator,*	"	ōrātor,[5]	*orator.*
for-ēnsis,	*forensic,*	"	forum,	*forum.*

---

[1] On *eus*, stem *eo*, see Corssen, II., pp. 342–346; Bopp, III., p. 429; on *nus*, see *na*, **320.** *Neus* adds *eus* to *no*, seen in *nus; āceus* adds *eus* to *āc*, seen in *āx* (**333**, foot-note 2); and *ic-ius* adds *ius* to *ic* or *ico;* see *ja*, **320**, and *icus*, **330**.

[2] Stem-vowel changed to *i* before *nus* and *neus.*

[3] Stem-vowel dropped before *nus* and *neus.*

[4] On *cus*, see *ka*, **320.** In *i-cus*, *i* was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive, but was finally treated as a part of the suffix, as in *patr-icus.* In the same way the vowels *ā* and *ī* in *ālis*, *īlis*, *āris*, *ārius*, *ānus*, and *īnus* were developed from the stem-vowels of the primitives; thus in such words as *doc-i-lis*, 'docile,' from *doc-ē-re*, the suffix seems to have been originally *lis*, but at length the preceding *i* was treated as a part of the suffix, making *ilis.* If now *ilis* be added to *hosti*, the stem of *hostis*, we shall have *hosti-ilis* = *host-īlis;* or, with Corssen, we may suppose that from *hostis* was formed the verb *hostī-re*, and that the ending *lis* was added directly to *hostī*, making *hostī-lis.* The long initial vowel in other endings is supposed to have had a similar origin. *Ālis*, *īlis*, and *āris* are virtually the same suffix, as *l* and *r* are interchangeable; see *ra*, *la*, foot-note, **320.** *Ārius* = *āri-ius.* On *ānus*, *īnus*, and *ius*, see *ja* and *na*, **320**; on *ēnsis*, see Corssen, I., pp. 62, 254; II., pp. 688, 719.

[5] But *ōrā-tor* is formed from *ōrā-re* by adding *tor* to the stem; see **326.**

1. **Ester** or **estris**,[1] **timus**, **itimus**, **ticus**,[2] **cinus**, and a few other endings occur: *terr-ester* or *terr-estris*, 'terrestrial,' from *terra*, 'earth'; *maritimus*, 'maritime,' from *mare*, 'sea'; *lēg-itimus*, 'lawful,' from *lēx*, *lēgis*, 'law'; *rūs-ticus*, 'rustic,' from *rūs*, 'country'; *vāti-cinus*, 'prophetic,' from *vātēs*, 'prophet.'

2. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Domini-cus, 'of a master,' from *dominus*, 'master'; *serv-īlis*, 'slavish,' from *servus*, 'slave'; *vir-īlis*, 'manly,' from *vir*, 'man'; *capit-ālis*, 'of the head,' 'capital,' from *caput*, 'head'; *rēg-ālis*, 'kingly,' from *rēx*, 'king'; *cōnsul-āris*, 'consular,' from *cōnsul*, 'consul'; *mīlit-āris*, 'military,' from *mīles*, 'soldier'; *agr-ārius*, 'of *or* relating to land,' from *ager*, 'field'; *argent-ārius*, 'of silver,' from *argentum*, 'silver'; *can-īnus*, 'of a dog,' from *canis*, 'dog'; *lup-īnus*, 'of a wolf,' from *lupus*, 'wolf'; *mont-ānus*, 'of a mountain,' from *mōns*, 'mountain'; *nox-ius*, 'injurious,' from *noxa*, 'injury'; *patr-ius*, 'of a father,' from *pater*, 'father'; *imperātōr-ius*, 'of a commander,' from *imperātor*, 'commander.'

331. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in—

ānus, iānus, īnus; ius, iacus, icus; ēnsis, iēnsis; ās, aeus, ēus.[3]

Sull-ānus,	*of Sulla*,	from	Sulla,	*Sulla.*
Rōm-ānus,	*Roman*,	"	Rōma,	*Rome.*
Mari-ānus,	*of Marius*,	"	Marius,	*Marius.*
Cicerōn-iānus,	*Ciceronian*,	"	Cicerŏ,	*Cicero.*
Lat-īnus,[2]	*Latin*,	"	Latium,	*Latium.*
Plaut-īnus,	*of Plautus*,	"	Plautus,	*Plautus.*
Corinth-ius,	*Corinthian*,	"	Corinthus,	*Corinth.*
Corinth-iacus,	"	"	"	"
Britann-icus,	*British*,	"	Britannus,	*a Briton.*
Cann-ēnsis,	*of Cannae*,	"	Cannae,	*Cannae.*
Athēn-iēnsis,	*Athenian*,	"	Athēnae,	*Athens.*
Fīdēn-ās,	*of Fidenae*,	"	Fīdēnae,	*Fidenae.*
Smyrn-aeus,	*Smyrnean*,	"	Smyrna,	*Smyrna.*
Pȳthagor-ēus,	*Pythagorean*,	"	Pȳthagorās,	*Pythagoras.*

1. **Ānus** and **iānus** are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but others also occur.

NOTE 1.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Corinthiī*, the Corinthians; *Athēniēnsēs*, the Athenians.

NOTE 2.—The Roman *Gentēs* or *clans* were all designated by adjectives in *ius*, as *gēns Cornēlia*, *gēns Jūlia*.

---

[1] The ending *ester* or *estris* may be formed by adding *ter* or *tris* to *es* from the suffix *as* (320); but see Corssen, II., p. 549.

[2] On *ti-mus*, *i-ti-mus*, and *ti-cus*, see *ta*, *ma*, *ca*, 320.

[3] When appended to vowel stems, these endings take the place of the stem-vowel: *Sull-ānus*. In fact, *ānus* is formed by the union of the stem-vowel with the suffix. So in *Mari-ānus*, but in examples like this the *i* before *ānus* was finally treated as a part of the suffix, making *iānus*, as seen in *Cicerōn-iānus*. *Īnus* in *Lat-īnus* contains *io*, from *Lat-io*, the stem of *Latium*.

NOTE 3.—An adjective in *ius*, used substantively, formed a part of the name of every distinguished Roman, and designated the *gēns* to which he belonged; see *Roman Names*, **649.**

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

332. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (**321**) in—

lus, ulus, culus.[1]

ēbrio-lus,	*somewhat drunken,*	from	ēbrius,	*drunken.*
aureo-lus,	*golden,*	"	aureus,	*golden.*
long-ulus,	*rather long,*	"	longus,	*long.*
pauper-culus,	*rather poor,*	"	pauper,	*poor.*

NOTE 1.—The endings *ellus* and *illus* also occur as in nouns (**321, 4**): *nov-ellus*, 'new,' from *novus*, 'new.'

NOTE 2.—*Culus* is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-culus*, 'somewhat hard,' from *dūrior*, *dūrius*, 'harder.'

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS AND FROM ROOTS.

333. Verbal adjectives generally end in—

bundus, cundus, dus; bilis, tilis, silis, lis; āx.[2]

mīrā-bundus,	*wondering,*	from	mīrā-rī,	*to wonder.*
mori-bundus,	*dying,*	"	morī,	*to die.*
verē-cundus,	*diffident,*	"	verē-rī,	*to fear.*
cali-dus,	*warm,*	"	calē-re,	*to be warm.*
pavi-dus,	*fearful,*	"	pavē-re,	*to fear.*
amā-bilis,	*worthy of love,*	"	amā-re,	*to love.*
dūc-tilis,	*ductile,*	"	dūc-ere,	*to lead.*
flec-silis,[3] flexilis,	*flexible,*	"	flect-ere,	*to turn.*
doci-lis,	*docile,*	"	docē-re,	*to teach.*
pūgn-āx,	*pugnacious,*	"	pūgnā-re,	*to fight.*
aud-āx,	*daring,*	"	audē-re,	*to dare.*

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the participle: *laetā-bundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some *characteristic* rather than a single act or feeling: *verē-cundus*, diffident.

2. **Dus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Bilis, tilis, silis,** and **lis** denote CAPABILITY, generally in a passive sense: *amābilis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribilis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

---

[1] See p. 158, foot-note 6.

[2] *Bundus* is explained by Corssen and others as formed by appending *undus*, *endus*, the Gerundive suffix, to *bu* = *fu*, as seen in *fui*; *cundus*, by adding the same suffix to *co* (*ka*, **320**); see Corssen, II., pp. 310–312. On *dus*, see Corssen, II., pp. 302, 303; on *lis*, see *ra*, *la*, **320**; and on *bilis*, **320**, foot-note 1; also Corssen, I., pp. 166–169; on *tilis* and *silis*, Corssen, II., pp. 41, 326. The ending *āx* = *ā-c-s* is for *ā-co-s*, in which *ā* was originally the stem-vowel of an *ā-verb*: thus *pūgn-ā-co-s* becomes *pūgnā-cs*, *pūgnāx*.

[3] *Flec-silis* = *flect-tilis*; see **35, 3, 2**).

4. **Āx** denotes INCLINATION, generally a faulty one: *loquāx*, loquacious.

5. **Cus, īcus, ūcus, vus, uus, īvus, tīvus, tīcius, ius,** and **ulus**[1] also occur:

Medi-cus, 'healing,' 'medical,' from *medē-rī*, 'to heal'; *am-īcus*, 'friendly,' from *am-āre*, 'to love'; *cad-ūcus*, 'falling,' 'inclined to fall,' from *cad-ere*, 'to fall'; *sal-vus*, 'safe,' from root *sal*, 'whole,' 'sound'; *noc-uus* and *noc-īvus*, 'hurtful,' from *noc-ēre*, 'to hurt'; *cap-tīvus*, 'captive,' from *cap-ere*, 'to take'; *fictīcius*, for *fig-tīcius*, 'feigned,' from *fig*, the root of *fing-ere*, 'to form,' 'fashion,' 'feign'; *exim-ius*, 'select,' 'choice,' from *exim-ere*, 'to select out'; *crēd-ulus*, 'credulous,' from *crēd-ere*, 'to believe.'

6. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Lūdi-bundus, 'sportive,' 'playful,' from *lūde-re*, 'to play'; *rīdi-bundus*, 'laughing,' from *rīdē-re*, 'to laugh'; *fā-cundus*, 'eloquent,' from *fā-rī*, 'to speak'; *jū-cundus*, for *juv-cundus*, 'pleasant,' from *juv-āre*, 'to aid,' 'delight'; *avi-dus*, 'greedy,' from *avē-re*, 'to long for'; *cupi-dus*, 'desirous,' from *cupe-re*, 'to desire'; *timi-dus*, 'timid,' from *timē-re*, 'to fear'; *faci-lis*, 'easy,' 'capable of being done,' from *face-re*, 'to do'; *nūbi-lis*, 'marriageable,' from *nūbe-re*, 'to marry'; *ūti-lis*, 'useful,' from *ūtī*, 'to use'; *crēdi-bilis*, 'credible,' from *crēde-re*, 'to believe'; *terri-bilis*, 'terrible,' from *terrē-re*, 'to terrify'; *laudā-bilis*, 'praiseworthy,' from *laudā-re*, 'to praise'; *fer-tilis*, 'fertile,' from *fer-re*, 'to bear'; *cap-āx*, 'capacious,' from *cap-ere*, 'to take'; *ten-āx*, 'tenacious,' from *ten-ēre*, 'to hold.'

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

334. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:[2]

crās-tinus,	*of to-morrow,*	from	crās,	*to-morrow.*
contrā-rius,	*contrary,*	"	contrā,	*against.*
inter-nus,	*internal,*	"	inter,	*among, within.*
super-bus,	*haughty,*	"	super,	*above.*
super-nus,	*upper,*	"	"	"

FORMATION OF VERBS BY SUFFIXES.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

335. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called DENOMINATIVES. They end in—

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
ō, ā-re,	**eō, ē-re,**	**uō, ue-re,**[3]	**iō, ī-re.**[4]

---

[1] *Vus*, *uus*, and *ī-vus* are only different forms of the same suffix; *uus* was formed by vocalizing *v* in *vus; ī-vus*, by adding *vus* to the stem-vowel *ī; noc-ī-vus*, as if from a verb, *noc-īre* = *noc-ēre*. The other endings are composed of elements already explained.

[2] But adverbs and prepositions are in origin case-forms; see **304**; **307**, note 1.

[3] Conjugation III. contains *primitive* verbs with a few *derivatives*.

[4] According to Curtius and others, the suffix which was added to the stems of nouns and adjectives to form verbs was originally *ja*, pronounced *ya*, probably identical with *i*,

cūr-ō,	ā-re,	*to care for,*	from	cūr-a,	*care.*
fug-ō,	ā-re,	*to put to flight,*	"	fug-a,	*flight.*
pūgn-ō,	ā-re,	*to fight,*	"	pūgn-a,	*battle.*
bell-ō,	ā-re,	*to carry on war,*	"	bell-um,	*war.*
dōn-ō,	ā-re,	*to give,*	"	dōn-um,	*gift.*
firm-ō,	ā-re,	*to make firm,*	"	firm-us,	*firm.*
labōr-ō,	ā-re,	*to labor,*	"	labor,	*labor.*
līber-ō,	ā-re,	*to liberate,*	"	līber,	*free.*
nōmin-ō,	ā-re,	*to name,*	"	nōmen,	*name.*
alb-eō,	ē-re,	*to be white,*	"	alb-us,	*white.*
clār-ō,	ā-re,	*to make bright,*	"	clār-us,	*bright.*
clār-eō,	ē-re,	*to be bright,*	"	"	"
flōr-eō,	ē-re,	*to bloom,*	"	flōs,	*flower.*
lūc-eō,	ē-re,	*to shine,*	"	lūx=lūc-s,	*light.*
met-uō,	ue-re,	*to fear,*	"	met-us,	*fear.*
stat-uō,	ue-re,	*to place,*	"	stat-us,	*position.*
fīn-iō,	ī-re,	*to finish,*	"	fīn-is,	*end.*
moll-īō,	ī-re,	*to soften,*	"	moll-is,	*soft.*
vēst-iō,	ī-re,	*to clothe,*	"	vēst-is,	*garment.*
serv-iō,	ī-re,	*to serve,*	"	serv-us,	*servant.*
cūstōd-iō,	ī-re,	*to guard,*	"	cūstōs,	*guardian.*

NOTE 1.—Denominatives of the second conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

NOTE 2.—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dominor, ārī*, 'to domineer,' from *dominus*, 'master'; *mīror, ārī*, 'to wonder at,' from *mīrus*, 'wonderful'; *partior, īrī*, 'to part,' 'divide,' from *pars, partis*, 'part.'

1. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Culp-āre, 'to find fault,' from *culp-a*, 'fault'; *glōri-ārī*, 'to boast,' 'glory,' from *glōri-a*, 'glory'; *nov-āre*, 'to make new,' from *novus*, 'new'; *rēgn-āre*, 'to reign,' from *rēgnum*, 'royal power'; *lev-āre*, 'to lighten,' from *levis*, 'light'; *honōr-āre*, 'to honor,' from *honor*, 'honor'; *laud-āre*, 'to praise,' from *laus = laud-s*, 'praise'; *saev-īre*, 'to be fierce,' from *saevus*, 'fierce.'

---

the root of *ī-re*, 'to go.' This suffix added to *a*, the original stem-vowel of most nouns and adjectives, formed *a-ja*, still preserved in the ending *ajā-mi* in a large class of Sanskrit verbs. From this compound suffix *aja* are derived in Latin, in the first conjugation, (1) *aō*, contracted to *ō: cūr-ō = cūr-ajō* for *cūr-aō* for *cūr-aja;* (2) *ā: cūr-ā-s*, shortened to *a* in *cūr-a-t* for *cūr-ā-t;*—in the second conjugation, (1) *eō: lūc-eō* for *lūc-ejō* for *lūc-aja;* (2) *ē: lūc-ē-s*, shortened to *e* in *lūc-e-t* for *lūc-ē-t;* and in the fourth conjugation, (1) *iō* and *iu: serv-iō* for *serv-ijō* for *serv-aja*, *serv-iu-nt* for *serv-iju-nt* for *serv-aju-nt;* and (2) *ī: serv-ī-s*, shortened to *i* in *serv-i-t* for *serv-ī-t;* see Bopp, I., pp. 207–229; Curtius, Verbum, I., pp. 292, 326–348; Schleicher, pp. 358–361. For an objection to this explanation of the *a-verbs*, see Corssen, II., pp. 733–736.—On final *ō* of the first person, see **247**, 1, foot-note 5.—The suffix *ja*, added to original *i-stems*, formed *ija* and gave rise to *i-verbs: fīniō = fīn-i-jō = fīn-ija;* and added to *u-stems*, it formed *u-ja* and gave rise to *u-verbs: met-uō = met-u-jō = met-uja.*—In general, *a-stems* give rise to *a-verbs: cūr-a, cūr-ā-re; o-stems*, sometimes to *a-verbs*, sometimes to *e-verbs*, and sometimes to *i-verbs: firmus*, stem *firmo, firm-ā-re; albus*, stem *alb-o, alb-ē-re; servus*, stem *serv-o, serv-ī-re;* consonant stems, to *a-verbs*, *e-verbs*, or *i-verbs*, after the analogy of vowel stems: *labor* for *labōr, labōr-ā-re; flōs, flōr-ē-re* for *flōs-ē-re* (**31**, 1); *custōs*, stem *custōd, custōd-ī-re.*

II. Verbs from Verbs.[1]

336. Frequentatives or Intensives denote *repeated*, *continued*, or *intense* action. They are generally of the first conjugation, and are formed—

I. From the stem of the participle[2] in **tus** or **sus**:

cant-ō,	āre,	*to sing,*	from	cantus	from	canō,	*to sing.*[3]
capt-ō,	āre,	*to snatch,*	“	captus	“	capiō,	*to take.*
dat-ō,	āre,	*to give often,*	“	datus	“	dō,	*to give.*
habit-ō,	āre,	*to inhabit,*	“	habitus	“	habeō,	*to have.*
quass-ō,	āre,	*to shake violently,*	“	quassus	“	quatiō,	*to shake.*
territ-ō,	āre,	*to frighten often,*	“	territus	“	terreō,	*to frighten.*

II. From the present stem, by adding **tō** and changing the preceding vowel to **i**, if not already in that form:[4]

agi-tō,	āre,	*to shake,*	from	agō,	*to move, lead.*
clāmi-tō,	āre,	*to shout often,*	“	clāmō,	*to shout.*
rogi-tō,	āre,	*to ask eagerly,*	“	rogō,	*to ask.*
voci-tō,	āre,	*to call often,*	“	vocō,	*to call.*
voli-tō,	āre,	*to flit about,*	“	volō,	*to fly.*

Note 1.—Frequentatives are sometimes formed from other frequentatives:[5] *cantitō*, ‘to sing often,’ from *cantō* from *canō; dictitō*, ‘to say often,’ from *dictō* from *dīcō.*

Note 2.—A few derivatives in *essō* and *issō* also occur. They are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of the third conjugation: *faciō, facessō*, ‘to do earnestly’; *incipiō, incipissō*, ‘to begin eagerly.’

1. Other Examples are—

Dictō, ‘to say often,’ from *dīcō*, ‘to say’; *spectō*, ‘to behold,’ from *speciō*, ‘to look at’; *factitō*, ‘to do often,’ from *faciō*, ‘to do,’ ‘make’; *imperitō*, ‘to command often,’ from *imperō*, ‘to command’; *raptō*, ‘to snatch,’ from *rapiō*, ‘to seize.’

337. Inceptives or Inchoatives denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in **scō**:

---

[1] Either directly or through the medium of nouns, adjectives, or participles.

[2] They are thus strictly *denominatives* (**335**). Intransitive verbs, though without the participle in *tus* or *sus*, may form *frequentatives* after the analogy of transitive verbs: *cursō, āre*, ‘to run about,’ formed as if from *cursus* from *currō*, ‘to run’; *ventitō, āre*, ‘to come often,’ formed as if from *ventus*, from *veniō*, ‘to come.’

[3] Remember that the stem of the participle ends in *o*; thus *cantus* = *canto-s*. Observe, therefore, that the verb *cantō*, ‘I sing,’ is in form like the stem of the participle. *Cantō* was, however, originally produced by adding *ja* to *canta*, the original stem of *cantus*, making *canta-ja*, *cantajō*, *cantaō*, *cantō;* see also **335**, foot-note.

[4] The formation from the participle was doubtless the original method, but at length *tō* was regarded as the suffix, and was accordingly added to present stems, and as in many cases *i* preceded, the stem-vowel finally took this form before the suffix *tō;* see Corssen, II., p. 297.

[5] Sometimes from frequentatives no longer in use: *āctitō*, ‘to act often,’ as if from *āctō*, not in use, from *agō; scrīptitō*, ‘to write often,’ as if from *scrīptō*, not in use, from *scrībō.*

gel-ā-scō,	*to begin to freeze,*	from	gel-ō,	ā-re,	*to freeze.*
cal-ē-scō,	*to become warm,*	"	cal-eō,	ē-re,	*to be warm.*
rub-ē-scō,	*to grow red,*	"	rub-eō,	ē-re,	*to be red.*
vir-ē-scō,	*to grow green,*	"	vir-eō,	ē-re,	*to be green.*
trem-i-scō,	*to begin to tremble,*	"	trem-ō,	e-re,	*to tremble.*
obdorm-ī-scō,	*to fall asleep,*	"	obdorm-iō,	ī-re,	*to sleep.*

338. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and end in **turiō** or **suriō**:

par-turiō,	īre,	*to strive to bring forth,*	from	pariō,	*to bring forth.*
ē-suriō,	īre,	*to desire to eat,*	"	edō,	*to eat.*[1]

339. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action.[2] They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illō**:

cant-illō,	*to sing feebly,*	from	cantō,	*to sing.*
cōnscrīb-illō,	*to scribble,*	"	cōnscrībō,	*to write.*

NOTE.—For the DERIVATION OF ADVERBS, see **304**.

SECTION III.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

340. New words may be formed—

I. By the union of two or more words under one principal accent, without change of meaning:

Rēs pūblica, *rēspūblica*, republic; *agri cultūra*, *agricultūra*, agriculture; *jūris cōnsultus*, *jūriscōnsultus*, lawyer, one skilled in the law; *quem ad modum*, *quemadmodum*, in what way—*lit.*, to what measure.

NOTE.—These are compounds only in form. The separate words retain in a great measure their identity both in form and in meaning, and may in fact be written separately. *Rēs pūblica* is the approved form. Other examples of this class are: *lēgis-lātor*, lawgiver; *pater-familiās*, father of a family; *senātūs-cōnsultum*, decree of the senate; *hāctenus*, thus far; *saepe-numerō*, often in number; *bene-faciō*, to do well, benefit; *maledicō*, to revile; *satis-faciō*, to satisfy, do enough for; *animum-ad-vertō*, *anim-ad-vertō*, to notice, turn the mind to.

II. By prefixing an indeclinable particle to an inflected word, generally with some change of meaning:

Ad-sum, to be present; *dē-pōnō*, to lay down; *re-pōnō*, to replace; *ē-discō*, to learn by heart; *im-memor*, unmindful; *per-facilis*, very easy; *prō-cōnsul*, proconsul, one acting for a consul; *inter-rēgnum*, interregnum, an interval between two reigns.

---

[1] These are the only desideratives in common use, but a few others occur: *cēnā-turiō*, 'to desire to dine,' from *cēnō*, 'to dine'; *ēmp-turiō*, 'to desire to purchase,' from *emō*, 'to purchase'; *nūp-turiō*, 'to desire to marry,' from *nūbō*, 'to marry.' They were probably formed originally through the medium of a verbal noun in *tor* or *sor* (**326**, foot-note 2): thus, *cēnō*, *cēnā-tor*, 'one who dines'; *cēnā-tor-ī-re* = *cēnā-tur-ī-re* (*o* changed to *u*), 'to desire to dine'; *emō*, *ēmp-tor*, 'a purchaser'; *ēmp-tor-īre* = *ēmp-tur-ī-re*, 'to desire to purchase.'

[2] Probably *denominatives* formed from verb-stems through diminutive verbal nouns.

III. By uniting two or more simple stems or roots, and adding appropriate inflectional suffixes when needed:[1]

Igni-color,[1] fire-colored; *grandi-aevo-s*,[1] *grand-aevus*, *a*, *um*, of great age; *omni-potent-s*, *omnipotēns*, omnipotent; *māgno-animo-s*, *māgnanimus*, *a*, *um*, great-souled; *tubi-cen*, trumpeter;- *arti-fec-s*, *artifex*, artificer; *alio-quī*, *aliquis*,[2] any one.

1. In the first element of the compound observe—

1) That the stem-vowel generally takes the form of *i*: *capro-corno-s*, *capri-cornus*; *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*.

2) That consonant stems sometimes assume *i*: *honŏr-i-fico-s*, *honŏrificus*, *a*, *um*, honorable.

3) That the stem-vowel disappears before another vowel: *māgno-animus*, *māgnanimus*.

2. The stem-ending and the inflectional ending of the second element generally remain unchanged in the compound; see examples above. But observe—

1) That they are sometimes slightly changed: *aequo-nocti*, *aequi-noctio-m*,[3] *aequinoctium*, equinox; *multa-forma*, *multi-formis*, with many forms.

2) That a verbal root or stem may be the second element in a compound noun or adjective: *tubi-cen* (*cen* = *can*, the root of *canō*, to sing), trumpeter; *lēti-fer* (*fer*, root of *ferō*, to bear), death-bearing.

NOTE.—The words classed under II. and III. are regarded as real compounds, but those under III. best illustrate the distinctive characteristics of genuine compounds, as they are formed from compound stems and have a meaning which could not be expressed by the separate words. Thus, *māgnus animus* means *a great soul*, but *māgnanimus* means *having a great soul*.[4]

341. In COMPOUND NOUNS, the first part is generally the stem of a noun or adjective, sometimes an adverb or preposition; and the second part is the stem of a noun, or a stem from a verbal root:

arti-fex,	*artist*,	from	arti-fac	in	ars	and	faciō.
capri-cornus,	*capricorn*,	"	capro-cornu	"	caper	"	cornū.
aequi-noctium,	*equinox*,	"	aequo-nocti	"	aequus	"	nox.
nē-mŏ,	*nobody*,	"	ne-homon	"	nē	"	homŏ.
prō-nōmen,	*pronoun*,	"	prō-nōmen	"	prō	"	nōmen.

---

[1] Thus *igni-color* is formed by the union of two stems without inflectional suffix; but in *grand-aevu-s*, the suffix *s* is added to the stem *grandaevŏ*, compounded of *grandi* and *aevŏ*.

[2] Literally, *any other one*.

[3] *Ti*, the stem-ending of *nox*, becomes *tiŏ*, to which is added the nominative-ending *m*.

[4] Class II. occupies a position intermediate between I. and III. Some compounds of particles with verbs, for example, have developed a meaning quite distinct from that denoted by the separate parts, while others have simply retained the ordinary meaning of those parts.

1. COMPOUNDS in **ex**, **dex**, **fex**, **cen**, **cīda**, and **cola** deserve special notice:

Rēmo-ex, *rēmex*,[1] oarsman; *jūs-dex*, *jūdex*,[1] judge; *arti-fex*, artist; *tībia-cen*, *tībī-cen*,[2] flute-player; *homon-cīda*, *homi-cīda*,[3] manslayer; *agri-cola*,[4] husbandman, one who tills the soil.

NOTE.—*Ex* (for *ag-s*) is from the root *ag* in *agō*, to drive, impel; *dex* (for *dic-s*), from *dic* in *dīcō*, to make known; *fex* (for *fac-s*), from *fac* in *faciō*, to make; *cen*, from *can* in *canō*, to sing; *cīda* (for *caed-a*), from *caed* in *caedō*, to cut, slay; *cola* (for *col-a*), from *col* in *colō*, to cultivate.

342. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally the stem of a noun or adjective, sometimes an adverb or preposition; and the second is the stem of a noun or adjective, or a stem from a verbal root:

lēti-fer,	*death-bearing*,	from	lēti-fer	in	lētum	and	ferō.
māgn-animus,	*magnanimous*,	"	māgno-animo	"	māgnus	"	animus.
per-facilis,	*very easy*,	"	per-facili	"	per	"	facilis.

1. Compounds in **ceps**, **fer**, **ger**, **dicus**, **ficus**, and **volus** deserve notice:

Parti-ceps, taking part; *auri-fer*, gold-bearing; *armi-ger*, carrying arms; *fāti-dicus*, predicting fate; *mīri-ficus*, causing wonder; *bene-volus*, well-wishing.

NOTE.—*Ceps* (for *cap-s*) is from the root *cap* in *capiō*, to take; *fer*, from *fer* in *ferō*, to bear; *ger*, from *ger* in *gerō*, to carry; *dicus* (for *dic-o-s*), from *dic* in *dīcō*, to make known; *ficus* (for *fac-o-s*), from *fac* in *faciō*, to make; *volus* (for *vol-o-s*), from *vol* in *volō*, to wish.

343. COMPOUND NOUNS and ADJECTIVES are divided according to signification into three classes:

I. DETERMINATIVE COMPOUNDS, in which the second part is qualified by the first:

Inter-rēx, interrex; *merī-diēs*,[5] midday; *bene-volus*, well-wishing; *per-māgnus*, very great; *in-dīgnus*, unworthy.

II. OBJECTIVE COMPOUNDS, in which the second part is limited by the first as object:

Prīn-ceps, taking the first place; *belli-ger*, waging war; *jū-dex*, judge, one who dispenses (makes known) justice; *homi-cīda*, one who slays a man; *agri-cola*, one who tills the field. See other examples in **342**, 1.

III. POSSESSIVE COMPOUNDS, in origin mostly adjectives. They designate qualities or attributes as *possessed* by some person or thing, and are often best rendered by supplying *having* or *possessing:*

---

[1] *O* is dropped in *rēmex*, and *s* in *jūdex*; see **27**; **36**, 3, note 3.

[2] *A*, weakened to *i*, unites with the preceding *i*, forming *ī*.

[3] *N* dropped, and *o* weakened to *i*; see **36**, 3, note 3.

[4] The stem-vowel *o* of *agro* is weakened to *i*: *agri*; see **22**.

[5] From *medius* and *diēs*.

Aeni-pēs, having bronze feet;[1] *celeri-pēs*, swift-footed; *āli-pēs*, wing-footed, having wings for feet; *māgn-animus*, having a great soul; *ūn-animus*, having one mind; *long-aevus*, of great age, having a long life.

344. Compound Verbs.—Verbs in general are compounded only with prepositions, originally adverbs:[2]

Ab-eō, to go away; *ex-eō*, to go out; *prōd-eō*, to go forth; *con-vocō*, to call together; *dē-cidō*, to fall off; *prae-dīcō*, to foretell; *re-dūcō*, to lead back; *re-ficiō*, to repair, to make anew.[3]

1. *Faciō* and *fīō* may also unite with verbal stems in **e**:

Cale-faciō, to make warm; *cale-fīō*, to be made warm, become warm; *lābe-faciō*, to cause to totter; *pate-faciō*, to open, cause to be open.

2. Verbs are often united with other words in writing without strictly forming compounds:

Manū mittō or *manū-mittō*, to emancipate, let go from the hand; *satis faciō* or *satis-faciō*, to satisfy, do enough for; *animum ad-vertō* or *anim-advertō*, to notice, turn the mind to.

3. Verbs in *ficō* and *factō*, like the following, are best explained not as compounds but as denominatives:[4]

Aedi-ficō, to build, from *aedifex; ampli-ficō*,[4] to enlarge; *cale-factō*, to make warm, from *cale-factus*.

4. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes:

1) Short *a* and *e* generally become *ĭ*: *habeō, ad-hibeō; teneō, con-tineō.* But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *u*: *carpō, dē-cerpō; calcō, con-culcō.*

2) *Ae* becomes *ī*: *caedō, in-cīdō.*

3) *Au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū*: *plaudō, ex-plōdō; claudō, in-clūdō.*

5. Form and Meaning of Prepositions in Composition.—The following facts are added for reference:

A, ab, abs.—1. Form: *ā* before *m* and *v*, and sometimes before *f*; *abs* before *c*, *q*, *t*, and, with the loss of *b*, also before *p*[5]; *au* in *au-ferō* and *au-fugiō; ab* before the other consonants, and before vowels.—2. Meaning: (1) 'away,' 'off': *ā-mittō*, to send away; *abs-condō*, to hide away; *as-portō*, to carry off; *au-fugiō*, to flee away; *ab-sum*, to be away; *ab-eō*, to go away; *ab-jiciō* or *ab-iciō*,[1] to throw away; (2) in adjectives, generally *negative: ā-mēns*, without mind, frantic; *ab-similis*, unlike.

---

[1] Observe the force of the compound. *Aenus pēs* means *a brazen foot*, but *aeni-pēs* means *having brazen feet;* see also **340**, III., note.

[2] The words thus formed are strictly compounds of *verbs with adverbs*, as the original type of these compounds was formed before the adverb became a preposition.

[3] Observe in these examples the strict adverbial use of the particles *ab*, *ex*, etc., *away*, *out*, etc. Prepositions, on the other hand, always denote *relations*, and are *auxiliary* to the *case-endings;* see **307**, foot-note.

[4] In some of these the primitive is not found in actual use.

[5] As *abs-pellō*, *as-pellō*, to drive away.

Ad.—1. Form: *ad* before vowels, and before *b*, *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *m*, *n*, *q*, and *v*, sometimes before *g*, *l*, *r*, and *s*, rarely before *p* and *t; d* assimilated before *c*, generally before *p* and *t*, and sometimes before *g*, *l*, *q*, *r*, and *s;* generally dropped before *gn*, *sc*, *sp*, and *st.*[2]—2. Meaning: 'to,' 'toward,' 'to one's self'; 'on,' 'at,' 'near,' 'by'; 'besides': *ad-dūcō*, to lead to; *ac-cidō*, to fall to, happen; *ad-moveō*, to move toward; *ac-cipiō*, to receive, take to one's self; *ac-cingō*, to gird on; *ad-latrō* or *al-latrō*, to bark at; *ad-sum*, to be present *or* near; *ad-stō* or *a-stō*, to stand near, to stand by; *ad-discō*, to learn besides.

Ante.—1. Form: unchanged except in *anti-cipō*, 'to take beforehand,' and in composition with *stō: ante-stō* or *anti-stō*, to stand before.—2. Meaning: 'before,' 'beforehand': *ante-currō*, to run before; *ante-habeō*, to prefer —*lit.*, to have *or* hold before.

Circum.—1. Form: generally unchanged, but *m* is sometimes dropped in compounds of *eō*, to go: *circum-eō* or *circu-eō*, to go around.—2. Meaning: 'around,' 'about': *circum-mittō*, to send around.

Com.[3]—1. Form: *com* before *b*, *m*, *p; co* before vowels,[4] *h*, and *gn;*[5] *con* or *col* before *l; cor* before *r; con* before the other consonants.—2. Meaning: (1) 'together,' 'with,' in various senses: *com-bibō*, to drink together; *com-mittō*, to let go together; *co-eō*, to go together; *col-loquor*, to talk with; *cōn-flīgō*, to contend with; (2) 'completely,' 'thoroughly': *cōn-ficiō*, to complete, make completely; *con-citō*, to rouse thoroughly; *cōn-sūmō*, to consume, take wholly; *con-dēnsus*, very dense.

Ē, ex.—1. Form: *ex* before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*,[6] *q*, *s*,[7] *t*, and with assimilation before *f;*[8] *ē* before the other consonants.[9]—2. Meaning: (1) 'out,' 'forth,' 'without,' implying 'freedom from': *ex-eō*, to go out, go forth; *ex-cidō*, to fall out; *ē-dō*, to put forth; *ex-sanguis*, without blood, bloodless; *ex-onerō*, to unload, disburden; (2) 'thoroughly,' 'completely,' 'successfully': *ex-ūrō*, to burn up; *ē-discō*, to learn by heart; *ef-ficiō*, to effect, do successfully; *ē-dūrus*, very hard.

In.—1. Form: *n* sometimes assimilated before *l*, often before *m*[10] and *r;*

---

[1] See foot-note 1, p. 20.

[2] Sometimes retained: *ad-gnōscō* or *ā-gnōscō; ad-stō* or *a-stō.*

[3] An earlier form for *cum.*

[4] A contraction often takes place: *co-agō*, *cō-gō*. *Com* is sometimes retained before *e* or *i*, and *co* or *con* is used before *i = ji: com-edō*, *com-itor*, *co-iciō* or *con-iciō = con-iiciō* or *con-jiciō;* see foot-note 1, p. 20.

[5] *Cō* also appears in *cō-nectō*, *cō-nīveō*, *cō-nītor*, and *cō-nūbium.*

[6] But *ē-pōtō* and *ē-pōtus; ex-scendō* or *ē-scendō.*

[7] *S* is sometimes dropped after *x: exspectō* or *ex-pectō.*

[8] *C* before *f* is not recommended; *ef-ferō* is better than *ec-ferō.*

[9] But *ex-lēx.*

[10] *Im* is the approved form before *b*, *p*, and *m*, especially in *im-perātor*, *im-perō*, and *im-perium.*

often changed to *m* before *b* and *p;* in other situations unchanged.—2. MEANING: 'in,' 'into,' 'on,' 'at,' 'against': *in-colō*, to dwell in; *in-eō*, to go into; *im-migrō*, to move into; *in-nītor*, to lean on; *in-tueor*, to look at; *ir-rīdeō*, to laugh at; *im-pūgnō*, to fight against.

Inter.—1. FORM: unchanged, except in *intel-legō*, to understand.—2. MEANING: 'between,' sometimes involving *interruption*,[1] 'together': *inter-veniō*, to come between, intervene; *inter-dīcō*, to forbid, interdict; *inter-nectō*, to tie together.

Ob.—1. FORM: *b* assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p;* dropped in *o-mittō*, to omit, and in *operiō*, to cover; in other situations generally unchanged.[2]—2. MEANING: (1) 'before,' 'in the way,' 'toward,' 'against,' especially of an *obstruction* or *opposition: of-ferō*, to bring before; *ob-stō*, to stand in the way; *oc-currō*, to run toward, run to meet; *op-pūgnō*, to attack, fight against; (2) 'down,' 'completely': *oc-cīdō*, to cut down, kill; *op-primō*, to press down, to overwhelm.

Per.—1. FORM: generally unchanged, but *r* is sometimes assimilated before *l*,[3] and is dropped before *j* in compounds of *jūrō*, as *pē-jerō*,[4] to swear falsely.—2. MEANING: 'through,' 'thoroughly,' sometimes in a *bad sense* with the idea of *breaking through*, *disregarding: per-legō*, to read through; *per-discō*, to learn thoroughly; *per-fidus*, perfidious, breaking faith.

Post.—1. FORM: unchanged, except in *pō-mērium*, the open space on either side of the city-wall, and *pōs-merīdiānus*,[5] of the afternoon.—2. MEANING: 'after,' 'behind': *post-habeō*, to place after, have after, esteem less.

Prō, prōd.—1. FORM: *prō* is the usual form, both before vowels and before consonants; *prōd*, the original form, is retained in a few words before vowels.[6]—2. MEANING: 'forth,' 'forward,' 'before,' 'for': *prōd-eō*, to go forth *or* forward; *prō-currō*, to run forward; *prō-pūgnō*, to fight in front of, fight for; *pro-hibeō*, to hold aloof, i. e., out of one's reach, hence to prohibit; *prō-mittō*, to send forth, to hold out as a promise, to promise.

Sub.—1. FORM: *b* assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p*, and often before *m* and *r;* dropped before *sp;* in other situations unchanged. The form *subs*, shortened to *sus*, occurs in a few words: *sus-cipiō*, *sus-pendō*.—2. MEANING: 'under,' 'down,' 'from under,' 'up'; 'in place of,' 'secretly'; 'somewhat,' 'slightly':[7] *sub-eō*, to go under; *sub-lābor*, to slip down; *sub-dūcō*, to draw from under, withdraw; *sus-cipiō*, to undertake; *sus-citō*, to lift up, arouse;

---

[1] It is used in several compounds referring to death: *inter-eō*, to die; *inter-ficiō*, to kill.

[2] *Obs* seems to occur in a few words: *obs-olēscō*, *os-tendō* for *obs-tendō* (*b* dropped), though these words are sometimes otherwise explained; thus *ob-solēscō*, as a compound of *solēscō* from *soleō*.

[3] As *per-legō*, *pel-legō; per-liciō*, *pel-liciō;* but *per* is preferable.

[4] For *per-jūrō*.

[5] *Post-merīdiānus* is also used; *pō-merīdiānus* is not approved, though it occurs.

[6] As in *prōd-eō*, *prōd-igō*, *prōd-igus*, and before *e* in the compound of *sum: prōd-es*, *prōd-est*, etc.

[7] Mostly in adjectives: *sub-absurdus*, somewhat absurd; *sub-dolus*, somewhat crafty; *sub-impudēns*, somewhat impudent; *sub-invīsus*, somewhat odious.

sub-stituō, to put in place of, to substitute; *sub-ripiō*, to take away secretly; *sub-rīdeō*, to smile, laugh slightly; *sub-difficilis*, somewhat difficult.

Trāns.—1. Form: it generally drops *s* before *s*, and it often drops *ns* before *d*, *j*,[1] *l*, *m*, *n*; it is otherwise unchanged.—2. Meaning: 'across,' 'through,' 'completely': *trāns-currō*, to run across; *trā-dūcō*, to lead across; *trān-siliō*, to leap across; *trāns-igō*, to transact; to finish, do completely *or* thoroughly—*lit.*, to drive through.

6. Form and Meaning of the Inseparable Prepositions.—The following facts are added for reference:

Ambi, amb.[2]—1. Form: *amb* before vowels; *ambi*, *am*, or *an*,[3] before consonants.—2. Meaning: 'around,' 'on both sides,' 'in two directions': *amb-iō*,[4] to go round; *amb-igō*, to act in two ways, move in different directions, to hesitate; *am-putō*, to cut around *or* off; *an-quīrō*, to search round.

Dis, dī.—1. Form: *dis* before *c*, *p*, *q*, *t*, before *s* followed by a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; but *dir* for *dis* before a vowel or *h*; *dī* in most other situations; but both *dis* and *dī* occur before *j*.[5]—2. Meaning: 'apart,' 'asunder,'[6] 'between,' sometimes *negative*[7] and sometimes *intensive*: *dis-tineō*, to hold apart; *dī-dūcō*, to lead apart, divide; *dif-fugiō*, to flee asunder, *or* in different directions; *dir-imō*, to take in pieces, destroy; *dis-sentiō*, to think differently, dissent; *dī-jūdicō*, to judge between; *dis-pliceō*, to displease, not to please; *dif-ficilis*, difficult, not easy; *dī-laudō*, to praise highly.

In.—1. Form: *n* dropped before *gn*; otherwise like the preposition *in*. —2. Meaning: 'not,' 'un': *ī-gnōscō*, not to know, not to recollect, to pardon; *im-memor*, unmindful; *in-imīcus*, unfriendly.

Por, for **port.**[8]—1. Form: *r* assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations, *por*.—2. Meaning: 'forth,' 'forward,' 'near': *pol-liceor*, to hold forth, offer, promise; *pos-sideō*, to possess;[9] *por-rigō*, to hold out *or* forth, to offer.

Red, re.—1. Form: *red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-dō*; *re* in other situations.—2. Meaning: 'back,' 'again,' 'in return':[10] *red-eō*, to go back; *re-ficiō*, to repair, make again; *red-amō*, to love in return.

Sēd,[11] **sē.**—1. Form: *sēd* before vowels; *sē* before consonants.—2. Meaning: 'apart,' 'aside': *sē-cēdō*, to go apart, secede; *sē-pōnō*, to put aside *or* apart.

Note.—For the Composition of Adverbs, see **304**, I., 2; **304**, II., 1, note; **304**, IV., note 2.

---

[1] Or before *i* = *j* or *ji*; see foot-note 1, p. 20.

[2] Compare *ambŏ*, both, and ἀμφί, around, on both sides.

[3] *An* before *c*, *q*, *f*, and *t*.

[4] For *amb-eō*.

[5] *Dis-jungō*, *dī-jūdicō*.

[6] Both *literally* '*apart*' in respect to place or position, and *figuratively* '*apart*' in sentiment or opinion.

[7] Especially in adjectives: *dis-par*, unequal; *dis-similis*, unlike.

[8] Greek πορτί, προτί, πρός, to, toward; see Curtius, 381.

[9] *To sit near* and so *to control*.

[10] Sometimes negative, *not*, *un-*: *re-sīgnō*, to unseal; *re-clūdō*, to open.

[11] Probably an old ablative of *suī* and identical with *sed*, but.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

345. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.

347. A Simple Sentence expresses a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made (built) the world.* Cic.

348. A Complex Sentence expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs, *so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

Note 1.—In this example two simple sentences—(1) '*you will be prosperous*,' and (2) '*you will number many friends*'—are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you shall be prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

Note 2.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multōs numerābis amīcōs*—is called the *Principal* or *Independent Clause;* and the part which is dependent upon it—*dōnec eris fēlīx*—is called the *Subordinate* or *Dependent Clause.*

349. A Compound Sentence expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur, *the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded.* Verg.

350. A Declarative Sentence has the form of an assertion:

Miltiadēs accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

351. An Interrogative Sentence has the form of a question:

Quis loquitur, *who speaks?* Ter. Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit, *who does not fear poverty?* Cic. Quid ais, *what do you say?* Ter. Ecquid[1] animadvertis silentium, *do you not notice the silence?* Cic. Quālis est ōrātiō, *what kind of an oration is it?* Cic. Quot sunt, *how many are there?* Plaut. Ubī sunt, *where are they?* Cic. Ubinam gentium sumus, *where in the world are we?* Cic. Vīsne fortūnam experīrī meam, *do you wish to try my fortune?* Cic. Nōnne nōbilitārī volunt, *do they not wish to be renowned?* Cic. Num igitur peccāmus, *are we then at fault?* Cic.

1. Interrogative Words.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles:[2] *-ne*, *nōnne*, *num;* see examples above.

Note 1.—Questions with *-ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne*, 'is he writing?' *Ne* is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum:*

Numne ferre arma dēbuērunt, *ought they to have borne arms?* Cic. Utrum taceamne, an praedicem, *shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

Note 2.—Questions with *nōnne* expect the answer *yes: Nōnne scrībit*, 'is he not writing?'

Note 3.—Questions with *num* expect the answer *no: Num scrībit*, 'is he writing?'

Note 4.—For questions with *an*, see **353**, note 4.

2. The particle *-ne* is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i. e., to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to *nōn*, it forms *nōnne:*

Vīsne experīrī, *do you* WISH *to try?* Cic. *Tūne* id veritus es, *did* YOU *fear this?* Cic. *Omnisne* pecūnia solūta est, *has* ALL *the money been paid?* Cic. *Hōcinest* (= hōcine est[3]) officium patris, *is* THIS *the duty of a father?* Ter. *Unquamne* vīdistī, *have you* EVER *seen?* Cic. *Nōnne* volunt, *do they* NOT *wish?* Cic.

3. Sometimes no interrogative word is used, especially in impassioned discourse:

Crēditis, *do you believe?* Verg. Ego nōn poterō, *shall I not be able?* Cic.

4. An emphatic *tandem*, meaning *indeed*, *pray*, *then*, often occurs in interrogative sentences:

Quod genus tandem est istud glōriae, *what kind of glory is that, pray?* Cic.

Note 1.—*Nam*, appended to an interrogative, also adds emphasis:

Numnam haec audīvit, *did he hear this, pray?* Ter.

Note 2.—For *Two Interrogatives* in the same clause, and for an *Interrogative* with *tantus*, see **454**, 3 and 4.

352. Answers.—Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning *yes* or *no*, the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with *prōrsus*, *vērō*, and the like, or if negative, with *nōn:*

Dixitne causam, *did he state the cause?* Dixit, *he stated it.* Cic. Possumusne tūtī esse, *can we be safe?* Nōn possumus, *we can not.* Cic.

---

[1] *Ecquid*, though the neuter accusative of an interrogative pronoun, has become in effect a mere particle with the force of *nōnne.*

[2] See **311**, 8, foot-note.

[3] See **27**, note.

Note 1.—Sometimes the simple particle is used—affirmatively, *sānē*, *etiam*, *ita*, *vērō*, *certē*, etc.; negatively, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc.

Vēnitne, *has he come?* Nōn, *no.* Plaut.

Note 2.—Sometimes, without an actual repetition of the emphatic word, some equivalent expression is used:

Tuam vēstem dētraxit tibi, *did he strip off your coat?* Factum, *he did*—lit., *done*, for *it was done.* Ter.

353. **Double** or **Disjunctive Questions** offer a *choice* or *alternative*, and generally take one of the following forms:

1. The first clause has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second *an:*

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *is that your fault or ours?* Cic. Rōmamne veniō an hīc maneō, *do I go to Rome, or do I remain here?* Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an*, or *anne:*

Ēloquar an sileam, *shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Verg. Gabīniō dīcam anne Pompēiō, *to Gabinius, shall I say, or to Pompey?* Cic.

Note 1.—Other forms are rare.[1]

Note 2.—*Utrum* sometimes stands before a disjunctive question with *-ne* in the first clause and *an* in the second:

Utrum, taceamne, an praedicem, *which, shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

Note 3.—When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annōn* or *necne:*

Sunt haec tua verba necne, *are these your words or not?* Cic.

Note 4.—By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or*, implying a negative answer:

An hōc timēmus, *or do we fear this?* Liv.

Note 5.—Disjunctive questions sometimes have three or more members:[2]

Gabīniō anne Pompēiō an utrīque, *to Gabinius, or Pompey, or both?* Cic.

Note 6.—*Disjunctive* questions inquire *which alternative* is true. These must be distinguished—

1) From such single questions as inquire whether *either alternative* is true:

Sōlem dīcam aut lūnam deum, *shall I call the sun or the moon a god?*[3] Cic.

2) From two separate questions, introduced respectively by *num*, implying a negative answer, and by *an*, implying an affirmative answer:

Num furis? an lūdis mē? *are you mad? or do you not rather mock me?* Hor.

354. An **Imperative Sentence** has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Jūstitiam cole, *cultivate justice.* Cic.

355. An **Exclamatory Sentence** has the form of an exclamation:

Relīquit quōs virōs, *what men he has left!* Cic.

---

[1] Thus, in Vergil, *-ne* occurs in both clauses, also *-ne* in the first with *seu* in the second. In Horace, *-ne* occurs in the second clause with no particle in the first.

[2] Cicero, in his oration *Prō Domō*, xxii., 57, has a question of this kind extended to eight clauses, the first introduced by *utrum* and each of the others by *an*.

[3] Observe that in this sense *aut*, not *an*, is used.

NOTE 1.—Many sentences introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs may be so spoken as to become exclamatory:

Quibus gaudiīs exsultābis, *in what joys will you exult!* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Some declarative and imperative sentences readily become exclamatory.

NOTE 3.—Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

II. ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

356. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST SIMPLE FORM consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluīlius moritur, *Cluilius dies.*[1] Liv.

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In hīs castrīs Cluīlius, Albānus rēx, moritur, *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.*[2] Liv.

1. The subject and predicate of a sentence are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; their modifiers, the *Subordinate* elements.

2. The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1) *Simple*, when not modified by other words; see **358**.

2) *Complex*, when thus modified; see **359**.

358. The SIMPLE SUBJECT of a sentence must be a noun, a pronoun, or some word or words used as a noun:[3]

Rēx dēcrēvit, *the king decreed.* Nep. *Ego* scrībō, *I write.* Cic. Ībam, *I was walking.* Hor. Vīcimus, *we have conquered.* Cic. *Videō* idem valet, *the word* videō *has the same meaning.* Quint.

359. The COMPLEX SUBJECT consists of the simple subject with its modifiers:

Populus *Rōmānus* dēcrēvit, *the* ROMAN *people decreed.* Cic. Cluīlius *rēx* moritur, *Cluilius* THE KING *dies.* Liv. Rēx *Rutulōrum*, *the king* OF THE RUTULI. Liv. Liber *dē officiīs*, *the book* ON DUTIES. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The subject is thus modified—

1) By an ADJECTIVE: Populus *Rōmānus.*

2) By a NOUN IN APPOSITION: Cluīlius *rēx.*

3) By a GENITIVE: Rēx *Rutulōrum.*

4) By a NOUN WITH A PREPOSITION: Liber *dē officiīs.*

---

[1] Here *Cluīlius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

[2] Here *Cluīlius, Albānus rēx*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in hīs castrīs moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

[3] A pronominal subject is always contained or implied in the personal ending. Thus *m* in *ība-m* is a pronominal stem = *ego*, and is the true original subject of the verb. See also **247**; **368**, 2, foot-note.

NOTE 2.—A noun or pronoun used to *explain* or *identify* another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *Appositive;* as *Cluilius rēx*, 'Cluilius the king.'

NOTE 3.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

NOTE 4.—Sometimes adverbs occur as modifiers of nouns:

Nōn ignārī sumus *ante* malōrum, *we are not ignorant of* PAST *misfortunes.* Verg.

360. The SIMPLE PREDICATE must be either a verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiadēs *est accūsātus*, *Miltiades* WAS ACCUSED. Nep. Tū *es testis*, *you* ARE A WITNESS. Cic. Fortūna *caeca est*, *fortune* IS BLIND. Cic.

NOTE 1.—Like *sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or an adjective to form the predicate; see **362**, 2. A noun or an adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.*

NOTE 2.—*Sum* with an *adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia *rēctē* sunt, *all things are* RIGHT. Cic.

361. The COMPLEX PREDICATE consists of the simple predicate with its modifiers:

Miltiadēs *Athēnās* līberāvit, *Miltiades liberated* ATHENS. Nep. *Labōrī* student, *they devote themselves* TO LABOR. Caes. *Mē* rogāvit *sententiam*, *he asked* ME MY OPINION. Cic. Pōns *iter hostibus* dedit, *the bridge furnished* A PASSAGE TO THE ENEMY. Liv. Bella *fēlīciter* gessit, *he waged wars* SUCCESSFULLY. Cic. *In hīs castrīs* moritur, *he dies* (where?) IN THIS CAMP. Liv. *Vēre* convēnēre, *they assembled* (when?) IN THE SPRING. Liv.

1. The Predicate, when a verb, is thus modified—

1) By an ACCUSATIVE: *Athēnās* līberāvit.

2) By a DATIVE: *Labōrī* student.

3) By two ACCUSATIVES: *Mē* rogāvit *sententiam.*

4) By an ACCUSATIVE and a DATIVE: *Iter hostibus* dedit.

5) By an ADVERB: *Fēlīciter* gessit.

6) By an ADVERBIAL PHRASE: *In hīs castrīs* moritur.

NOTE 1.—Still other modifiers occur with special predicates; see **406**, **409**, **410**, **422**.

NOTE 2.—No one predicate admits all the modifiers here given. Thus only *transitive* verbs admit an Accusative (**371**); only *intransitive* verbs, a Dative alone (**384**, I.); and only *special* verbs, two Accusatives (**374**).

2. A PREDICATE NOUN is modified like the subject:

Haec virtūs *omnium* est rēgīna *virtūtum*, *this virtue is the queen* OF ALL VIRTUES. Cic. See also **359**, notes 1 and 3.

3. A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE is modified—

1) By an ADVERB: *Satis* hūmilis est, *he is* SUFFICIENTLY *humble.* Liv.

2) By an OBLIQUE CASE: Avidī *laudis* fuērunt, *they were desirous* OF PRAISE. Cic. Omnī *aetātī* mors est commūnis, *death is common* TO EVERY AGE. Cic. Dīgnī sunt *amīcitiā*, *they are worthy* OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic.

NOTE.—Any adjective may be modified like the predicate adjective:

Eques Rōmānus satis litterātus, *a Roman knight sufficiently literary.* Cic.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.[1]

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in Case:[2]

Brūtus *custōs*[3] lībertātis fuit, *Brutus was the* GUARDIAN *of liberty.* Liv. Servius *rēx* est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv. *Orestem* sē esse dixit, *he said that he was* Orestes. Cic. See **360**, note 1.

Note.—This rule applies also to nouns predicated of pronouns:[4]
Ego sum *nūntius*, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

1. A Predicate Noun with different forms for different genders must agree in Gender as well as in Case:

Ūsus *magister*[5] est, *experience is* AN INSTRUCTOR. Cic. Historia est *magistra*[5] (*not* magister), *history is* AN INSTRUCTRESS. Cic.

2. Predicate Nouns are most frequent with the following verbs:

1) With *sum* and a few intransitive verbs—*ēvādō*, *exsistō*, *appāreō*, and the like:

Homō māgnus ēvāserat, *he had become* (turned out) A GREAT MAN. Cic. Exstitit *vindex* lībertātis, *he became* (stood forth) THE DEFENDER *of liberty.* Cic. See also examples under the rule.

2) With Passive Verbs of *appointing*, *making*, *naming*, *regarding*, *esteeming*, and the like:

Servius *rēx* est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv. Mundus *cīvitās* exīstimātur, *the world is regarded as* A STATE. Cic.

Note 1.—In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audiō* = *appellor:*

Rēx audīstī, *you have been called* KING; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor. Ego dīvūm incēdō *rēgīna*, *I walk* AS QUEEN *of the gods.* Verg.

---

[1] For convenience of reference, the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 324.

[2] For *Predicate Genitive*, see **401**.

[3] In these examples *custōs*, *rēx*, and *Orestem* are all predicate nouns, and agree in case respectively with *Brūtus*, *Servius*, and *sē* (**536**).

[4] As all substantive pronouns have the construction of nouns; see **182**.

[5] Observe that in *ūsus magister est*, the masculine form, *magister*, is used to agree in gender with *ūsus;* while in *historia est magistra*, the feminine form, *magistra*, is used to agree in gender with *historia.*

NOTE 2.—For *Predicate Accusative*, see **373**, 1.

NOTE 3.—The Dative of the object for which (**390**), *prō* with the Ablative, and *locō* or *numerō* (or *in numerō*) with the Genitive, are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns: *hostī*, *prō hoste*, *locō hostis*, *numerō* (or *in numerō*) *hostium*, 'for an enemy,' *or* 'as an enemy':

Fuit omnibus *bonō*, *it was* A BENEFIT (lit., FOR A BENEFIT) *to all.* Cic. Sicilia nōbīs *prō aerāriō* fuit, *Sicily was* A TREASURY (FOR A TREASURY) *for us.* Cic. Quaestōrī *parentis locō* fuit, *he was* A PARENT (lit., IN THE PLACE OF A PARENT) *to the questor.* Cic. Is tibī *parentis numerō* fuit, *he was* A PARENT *to you.* Cic. See also *Predicate Genitive*, **401**.

3. PREDICATE NOUNS are used not only with finite verbs, but also with INFINITIVES and PARTICIPLES, and sometimes without verb or participle:

Dēclārātus *rēx* Numa, *Numa having been declared* KING. Liv. Canīniō *cōnsule*, *Caninius* BEING CONSUL. Cic. See **431**, also *Orestem* under the rule.

NOTE 1.—For a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE after the INFINITIVE *esse*, see **536**, 2, 1).

NOTE 2.—For an INFINITIVE or a CLAUSE instead of a Predicate Noun; see **539**; **501**.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies:

Cluīlius *rēx* moritur, *Cluilius* THE KING *dies.* Liv. Urbēs *Karthāgō* atque *Numantia*, *the cities* CARTHAGE *and* NUMANTIA. Cic. Saguntum, foederātam *cīvitātem*, expūgnāvit, *he took Saguntum*, *an allied* TOWN. Liv. See **359**, note 2.

1. An Appositive with different forms for different genders must agree in GENDER as well as in CASE:

Cluīlius *rēx*,[1] Cluilius THE KING. Liv. Venus *rēgīna*,[1] *Venus* THE QUEEN. Hor.

2. An Appositive often agrees with the pronoun implied in the ending of the verb:

Hostis[2] hostem occīdere voluī, *I*, AN ENEMY, *wished to slay an enemy.* Liv.

3. Appositives are kindred in force—

1) Generally to RELATIVE clauses:

Cluīlius *rēx*, *Cluilius* (who was) THE KING. Liv.

2) Sometimes to other SUBORDINATE clauses,[3] as TEMPORAL, CONCESSIVE, etc.:

Fūrius *puer* didicit, *Furius learned* WHEN HE WAS A BOY OR AS A BOY. Cic. Jūnius aedem *dictātor* dēdicāvit, *Junius dedicated the temple* WHEN DICTATOR. Liv.

4. By SYNESIS[4]—a CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE:

---

[1] See **362**, 1, foot-note.

[2] *Hostis* agrees with *ego*, implied in *voluī*, 'I wished'; see **358**, foot-note.

[3] This construction is sometimes called *Adverbial Apposition.*

[4] See *Figures of Speech*, **636**, IV., 4.

1) *Possessives* admit a *Genitive* in apposition with the Genitive of the pronoun implied in them:

Tua *ipsīus*[1] amīcitia, *your* OWN *friendship*. Cic. Meum *sōlīus* peccātum, *my fault* ALONE. Cic. Nōmen meum *absentis*, *my name* IN MY ABSENCE. Cic.

2) *Locatives* admit as an Appositive *a Locative Ablative* (**411**, **425**), with or without a preposition:

Albae cōnstitērunt *in urbe opportūnā*,[2] *they halted at Alba*, A CONVENIENT CITY. Cic. Corinthī, Achāiae *urbe*, *at Corinth*, A CITY *of Achaia*. Tac.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun:

Nōs, *id*[3] quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, *our country delights us, as it ought.* Cic. Omnēs interficī jūssit, *mūnīmentum*[3] ad praesēns, *he ordered them all to be put to death*, A MEANS OF PROTECTION *for the present*. Tac. For clauses in apposition with nouns or pronouns, see **499**, **3**; **501**, III.

364. PARTITIVE APPOSITION.—The parts may be in apposition with the whole, or the whole in apposition with the parts:

Duo rēgēs, *ille* bellō, *hīc* pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt, *two kings advanced the state*, THE FORMER *by war*, *the* LATTER *by peace*. Liv. Ptolemaeus et Cleopatra, *rēgēs*[4] Aegyptī, *Ptolemy and Cleopatra*, RULERS *of Egypt*. Liv.

SECTION II.

GENERAL VIEW OF CASES.

365. Cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations.[5]

---

[1] *Ipsīus* agrees with *tuī* (of you) involved in *tua; sōlīus* and *absentis*, with *meī* involved in *meum*. The Genitive of *ipse*, *sōlus*, *ūnus*, and *omnis* is often thus used.

[2] As a *Locative Ablative* is a genuine *Locative* in sense, there is no special irregularity here, and *in urbe opportūnā* may be explained as a separate modifier of the verb: 'They halted *at Alba*, *at a convenient city*.' Thus explained, it is not an appositive at all.

[3] *Id* quod dēbet, lit., THAT *which it owes*. *Id* and *mūnīmentum* are in apposition respectively with *nōs dēlectat* and *omnēs interficī*, and are best explained as Accusatives. A Nominative apparently in apposition with a clause is generally best explained either as an *appositive* to some *Nominative*, or as the *subject* of a separate clause.

[4] In the first example, *ille* and *hīc*, the parts, are in apposition with *rēgēs*, the whole; but in the second example, *rēgēs*, the whole, is in apposition with the parts, *Ptolemaeus* and *Cleopatra*.

[5] This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

366. The *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* have probably retained with very slight modifications their original force as developed in the mother tongue from which the Latin was derived.[1]

367. The Ablative combines within itself the separate offices of three cases which were originally distinct:[2]

1. The *Ablative* proper, denoting the relation FROM—*the place* FROM *which*.

2. The *Locative*, denoting the relation IN, AT—*the place* IN or AT *which*.

3. The *Instrumental*, denoting the relation WITH, BY—*the instrument* or *means* WITH or BY *which*.

SECTION III.

NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

I. NOMINATIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative:[3]

Servius rēgnāvit, SERVIUS *reigned.* Liv. Patent *portae*, THE GATES *are open.* Cic. *Rēx* vīcit, THE KING *conquered.* Liv. *Ego* rēgēs ējēcī, *vōs* tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, I *have banished kings*, YOU *introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. The subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively;[4] see examples under the rule.

2. A pronominal subject is always expressed or implied in the ending of the verb:[5]

---

[1] That is, in the primitive Indo-European tongue, from which have been derived, either directly or indirectly, not only the Latin, Greek, and Sanskrit, but also the English, French, German, and indeed nearly all the languages of modern Europe. Upon the general subject of *Cases*, their original formation and meaning, see Bopp, I., pp. 242–519; Merguet, pp. 17–117; Penka, Hübschmann, Holzweissig, Delbrück, and, among the earlier writers, Hartung, 'Ueber die Casus,' etc., and Rumpel, 'Casuslehre.'

[2] See Delbrück, 'Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis.'

[3] For the *Subject* of the *Infinitive*, see **536**. For the *Agreement* of the verb with its subject, see **460**.

[4] For clauses used substantively, see **540**.

[5] See **247**. Thus *moneō* means *I* (not *you*, *he*, or *we*, but *I*) *instruct.* Indeed, every verb contains a pronominal subject in itself, and in general it is necessary to add a separate subject only when it would otherwise be doubtful to whom the implied pronoun refers. Thus *rēgnāvit*, 'he reigned,' is complete of itself, if the context shows to

Discipulōs moneō[1] ut studia ame*nt*, I *instruct pupils to love* (that THEY may love) *their studies*. Quint. Nōn scholae, sed vītae disci*mus*, WE *learn not for the school, but for life*. Sen.

NOTE.—A separate pronominal subject may, however, be added for the sake of clearness, emphasis, or contrast, as in the fourth example under the rule.

3. The verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially if it is *est* or *sunt:*

Ecce tuae lītterae, *lo your letter* (comes). Cic. Tot sententiae, *there are* (sunt) *so many opinions*. Ter. Cōnsul profectus (est), *the consul set out*. Liv.

NOTE 1.—The verb *faciō* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses:

Melius hī, quam vōs, *these have done better than you*. Cic. Rēctē ille, *he does rightly*. Cic. Cotta fīnem, *Cotta closed*, lit., *made an end*. Cic. So also in Livy after *nihil aliud* (*amplius*, *minus*, etc.) *quam*, 'nothing other (more, less, etc.) than' = 'merely'; *nihil praeterquam*, 'nothing except' = 'merely': Nihil aliud quam stetērunt, *they merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv.

NOTE 2.—Certain forms of expression often dispense with the verb:

Quid, what? *quid enim*, what indeed? *quid ergō*, what then? *quid quod*, what of the fact that? *quid plūra*, why more, *or* why shall I say more? *nē plūra*, not to say more; *nē multa*, not to say much; *quid hŏc ad mē*, what is this to me? *nihil ad rem*, nothing to the subject.

NOTE 3.—For the *Predicate Nominative*, see **362**.

NOTE 4.—For the *Nominative* as an *Appositive*, see **363**.

NOTE 5.—For the *Nominative* in *Exclamations*, see **381**, note 3.

II. VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, *Laelī*, *proceed*, LAELIUS. Cic. Quid est, *Catilīna*, *why is it*, CATILINE? Cic. Tuum est, *Servī*, rēgnum, *the kingdom is yours*, SERVIUS. Liv. Ō *diī* immortālēs, *O immortal* GODS. Cic.

1. An *Interjection* may or may not accompany the Vocative.

2. In poetry, and sometimes in prose, the Nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the Vocative:

Audī tū, *populus* Albānus, *hear ye*, *Alban* PEOPLE. Liv.

3. Conversely, the Vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the Nominative:

Quibus, Hector, ab ōrīs *exspectāte* venīs, *from what shores*, *Hector*, *do you* ANXIOUSLY AWAITED *come?* Verg. *Macte* novā virtūte, puer, *a blessing on your new valor*, *boy* (lit., *be* ENLARGED *by;* supply *estō*). Verg.

---

whom the pronoun *he* refers; if not, the noun must be added: *Servius rēgnāvit*, lit., *he*, *Servius*, reigned, or *Servius*, *he* reigned. In the fourth example under the rule, *ego* and *vōs*, though already implied in the form of the verb, are expressed for *emphasis*. In impersonal verbs the subject 'it,' in English, is implied in the personal ending *t*.

[1] See preceding foot-note.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used[1]—

I. As the Direct Object of an Action;

II. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions;

III. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

NOTE 1.—For the *Predicate Accusative*, see **362** and **373**, 1.

NOTE 2.—For the *Accusative in Apposition*, see **363**.

NOTE 3.—For the *Accusative with Prepositions*, see **433**.

NOTE 4.—For the *Accusative* as the *Subject of an Infinitive*, see **536**.

I. Accusative as Direct Object.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus *mundum* aedificāvit, *God made* (built) THE WORLD. Cic. Līberā *rem pūblicam*, *free* THE REPUBLIC. Cic. Populī Rōmānī *salūtem* dēfendite, *defend* THE SAFETY *of the Roman people*. Cic.

I. The Direct Object may be—

1. An *External Object*, the person or thing on which the action of the verb is *directly* exerted, as *salūtem* above.

2. An *Internal Object;* i. e., one already *contained* or *implied* in the action itself. This embraces two varieties:

1) In a STRICT SENSE, the *Cognate Accusative*, an object having a meaning *cognate* or *kindred* to that of the verb:

Servitūtem servīre,[2] *to serve in bondage* (lit., *to serve* A SERVITUDE). Ter.

2) In a FREER SENSE, the *Accusative of Effect*, the object produced by the action:

Librum scrībere, *to write* A BOOK. Cic.

NOTE.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative:

Vītābundus castra, *avoiding the camp*. Liv. Quid tibĭ hanc cūrātiŏst (cūrātiŏ est)[3] rem = cūr hanc rem cūrās, *what care have you of this?* Plaut.

---

[1] The Accusative is probably the oldest of all the oblique cases known to our family of languages, and was therefore originally the sole modifier of the verb, expressing in a vague and general way several relations now recognized as distinct. This theory accounts for the great variety of constructions in which the Accusative is used in Latin. See Curtius, 'Zur Chronologie,' pp. 71–74; Holzweissig, pp. 34–38.

[2] The pupil will observe that the idea of *servitūtem*, 'servitude,' 'service,' is contained in the verb *servīre*, 'to serve,' 'to be a slave or servant.'

[3] See **27**, note.

II. The Cognate Accusative is generally—(1) a noun with an adjective or other modifier, or (2) a neuter pronoun or adjective. It is used quite freely both with *transitive* and with *intransitive* verbs, and sometimes even with verbs in the *passive* voice:

Eam *vītam* vīvere, *to live that* LIFE. Cic. Mīrum somniāre *somnium*, *to dream a wonderful* DREAM. Plaut. *Eadem* peccat, *he makes* THE SAME MISTAKES.[1] Cic. Hoc studet *ūnum*, *he studies this* ONE THING (this one study). Hor. *Perfidum* rīdēns Venus, *Venus smiling* A PERFIDIOUS SMILE. Hor. *Id* assentior, *I assent to* THIS (I give THIS assent). Cic. *Idem* glōriārī, *to make* THE SAME BOAST. Cic. *Quid* possunt, HOW *powerful are they*, or WHAT *power have they?* Caes. *Ea* monēmur, *we are admonished* OF THESE THINGS.[2] Cic. *Nihil* mōtī sunt, *they were* NOT AT ALL *moved.* Liv.

Note.—Here may be mentioned the following kindred constructions:

Vōx *hominem* sonat, *the voice sounds* HUMAN. Verg. Saltāre *Cyclopa*, *to dance* THE CYCLOPS. Hor. Longam *viam* īre, *to go* A *long* WAY. Verg. *Bellum* pūgnāre, *to fight* A BATTLE. Verg.

III. Special Verbs.—Many verbs of Feeling or Emotion, of Taste and Smell, admit the Accusative:

Honōrēs dēspērat, *he despairs of* HONORS. Cic. *Haec* gemēbant, *they were sighing over* THESE THINGS. Cic. *Dētrimenta* rīdet, *he laughs at* LOSSES. Hor. Olet *unguenta*, *he has the odor of* PERFUMES. Ter. Ōrātiō redolet *antīquitātem*, *the oration smacks of* ANTIQUITY. Cic.

Note 1.—Such verbs are: *dēspērō*, to despair of; *doleō*, to grieve for; *gemō*, to sigh over; *horreō*, to shudder at; *lacrimō*, to weep over; *maereō*, to mourn over; *mīror*, to wonder at; *rīdeō*, to laugh at; *sitiō*, to thirst for, etc.; *oleō*, to have the odor of; *sapiō*, to savor of, whether used literally or figuratively.[3]

Note 2.—Many verbs in Latin, as in English, are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive; see *augeō*, *dūrō*, *incipiō*, *laxō*, *ruō*, *suppeditō*, *turbō*, etc., in the Dictionary.

Note 3.—Many verbs which are usually rendered by *transitive* verbs in English are *intransitive* in Latin, and thus admit only an *indirect* object or some special construction; see **385**.

Note 4.—The object of a transitive verb is often omitted, when it can be easily supplied: *moveō* = *moveō mē*, 'I move (myself)'; *vertit* = *vertit sē*, 'he turns (himself)':

Castrīs nōn mōvit, *he did not move from his camp.* Liv. Jam verterat fortūna, *fortune had already changed.* Liv.

Note 5.—For the *Passive Construction*, see **464**.

IV. An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object:

Imperāre cupiunt, *they desire* TO RULE. Just. Optō *ut id audiātis*, *I desire* THAT YOU MAY HEAR THIS. Cic.

---

[1] *Peccat*, 'he makes a mistake'; *idem peccat*, 'he makes the same mistake,' where *idem* represents *idem peccātum*.

[2] Literally, *we are admonished* THESE THINGS, i. e., these admonitions.

[3] Observe that with the Accusative *dēspērō* means not 'to despair,' but 'to despair of,' and is accordingly *transitive*; *doleō*, not 'to grieve,' but 'to grieve for,' etc. With some of the verbs here given the object is properly a *Cognate Accusative*.

372. Many COMPOUNDS of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially compounds of verbs of motion with *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trāns*, and *super*, take the Accusative:

Murmur *contiōnem* pervāsit, *a murmur went through* THE ASSEMBLY. Liv. *Rhēnum* trānsiērunt, *they crossed* (went across) THE RHINE. Caes. Circumstant *senātum*, *they stand around* THE SENATE. Cic. *Hērēditātem* obīre, *to enter upon* THE INHERITANCE. Cic. Eās *nātiōnēs* adīre, *to go to those* NATIONS. Caes. *Undam* innātāre, *to float upon* THE WAVE. Verg. *Tēla* exīre,[1] *to avoid* THE WEAPONS. Verg. *Gallōs* praecēdunt, *they surpass* THE GAULS. Caes.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem *imperātōrem* fēcērunt, *they made Hamilcar* COMMANDER. Nep. Ancum *rēgem* populus creāvit, *the people elected Ancus* KING. Liv. Summum cōnsilium appellārunt *Senātum*, *they called their highest council* SENATE. Cic. Sē praestitit *prōpūgnātōrem* lībertātis, *he showed himself* THE CHAMPION *of liberty*. Cic. Flaccum habuit *collēgam*, *he had Flaccus* AS COLLEAGUE. Nep. Sōcratēs tōtīus mundī sē *cīvem* arbitrābātur, *Socrates considered himself* A CITIZEN *of the whole world*. Cic.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—One of the two Accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative;* see **362**.

NOTE 1.—*Habeō*, 'to have,' admits two Accusatives, but when it means 'to regard,' it usually takes, instead of the Predicate Accusative, the Dative of the *object for which* (**384**), the Ablative with *in* or *prō*, or the Genitive with *locō*, *numerō* or *in numerō*: *lūdibriō habēre*, 'to regard as an object of ridicule'; *prō hoste habēre*, *in hostibus habēre*, *locō hostium habēre*, *numerō* or *in numerō hostium habēre*, 'to regard as an enemy.' These constructions also occur with other verbs meaning to regard:

Ea *honōrī* habent, *they regard these things* AS AN HONOR. Sall. Illum *prō hoste* habēre, *to regard him* AS AN ENEMY. Caes. Jam *prō factō* habēre, *to regard it* AS *already* DONE. Cic. *In hostium numerō* habuit, *he regarded them* AS ENEMIES (lit., *in the number of*, etc.). Caes. Mē *prō dērīdiculō* putat, *he regards me* AS AN OBJECT OF RIDICULE. Ter.

NOTE 2.—The *Predicate* Accusative is sometimes an adjective:

Hominēs *caecōs* reddit avāritia, *avarice renders men* BLIND. Cic. Templa deōrum *sancta* habēbat, *he regarded the temples of the gods* AS SACRED. Nep.

2. In the PASSIVE these verbs take two Nominatives—a *Subject* and a *Predicate*—corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius *rēx* est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv. See also **362**, 2.

---

[1] Observe that an *intransitive* verb may become *transitive* by being compounded with a preposition which does not take the Accusative.

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing:*

Mē *sententiam* rogāvit, *he asked me* MY OPINION. Cic. Philosophia nōs *rēs* omnēs docuit, *philosophy has taught us all* THINGS. Cic. *Auxilia* rēgem ōrābant, *they asked* AUXILIARIES *from the king.* Liv. *Pācem* tē poscimus, *we demand* PEACE *of you.* Verg. Nōn tē cēlāvī *sermōnem, I did not conceal from you* THE CONVERSATION. Cic.

1. In the PASSIVE the PERSON becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained:

Mē *sententiam* rogāvit, *he asked me* MY OPINION. Cic. Ego *sententiam* rogātus sum, *I was asked* MY OPINION. Cic. *Artēs* ēdōctus fuerat, *he had been taught* THE ARTS. Liv.

2. Two ACCUSATIVES are generally used with *cēlō, doceō, ēdoceō;* often with *rogō, poscō, reposcō;* sometimes with *dēdoceō, exposcō, flagitō, ōrō,* etc., *cōnsulō, interrogō, percontor;* rarely with *moneō, admoneō,* and *postulō.*

NOTE 1.—*Cēlō,* 'to conceal,' takes—(1) in the Active generally *two Accusatives,* as under the rule, but sometimes the *Accusative* of the *person* and the *Ablative* of the *thing* with *dē;* (2) in the Passive, the *Accusative* of a *neuter pronoun* or the *Ablative* with *dē:*

Mē *dē* hōc *librō* cēlāvit, *he kept me ignorant* OF *this* BOOK. Cic. *Id* cēlārī, *to be kept ignorant* OF THIS. Nep. Cēlārī *dē cōnsiliō, to be kept ignorant* OF THE PLAN. Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Doceō* and *ēdoceō* generally follow the rule,[1] but sometimes they take the *Accusative* of the *person* and the *Ablative* of the *thing* with or without *dē,*[2] and sometimes the *Accusative* of the *person* with the *Infinitive:*

Dē suā *rē* mē docet, *he informs me* IN REGARD TO *his* CASE. Cic. *Litterīs* Graecīs dōctus, *instructed* IN *Greek* LITERATURE. Sall. Sōcratem *fidibus*[3] docuit, *he taught Socrates* (with) THE LYRE. Cic. Tē *sapere* docet, *he teaches you* TO BE WISE. Cic.

NOTE 3.—Most verbs of *asking* and *demanding* sometimes take two Accusatives, but verbs of *asking, questioning,* generally take the *Accusative* of the *person*[4] and the *Ablative* of the *thing*[4] with *dē,* and verbs of *imploring, demanding,* generally the *Accusative* of the *thing*[4] and the *Ablative* of the *person*[4] with *ā* or *ab:*

Tē hīs *dē rēbus* interrogō, *I ask you* IN REGARD TO *these* THINGS. Cic. Victōriam *ab dīīs* exposcere, *to implore victory* FROM THE GODS. Caes. Id *ab eō* flagitāre, *to demand this* FROM HIM. Caes.

---

[1] Other verbs of teaching—*ērudiō, īnstituō, īnfōrmō, īnstruō,* etc.—generally take the Ablative of the thing with or without a preposition, as *in* or *dē;* see Dictionary.

[2] *Doceō,* in the sense of *inform,* takes *dē* with the Ablative.

[3] Supply *canere.*

[4] The *Accusative* or *Ablative* of the *person* is often omitted, and a clause often takes the place of the *Accusative* or *Ablative* of the *thing.* For examples and for special constructions, see, in the Dictionary, *cōnsulō, interrogō, rogō;* also *flagitō, ōrō, poscō, exposcō,* and *reposcō.*

NOTE 4.—*Petō* and *postulō* generally take the *Accusative* of the *thing*[1] and the *Ablative* of the *person* with *ā* or *ab; quaerō*, the *Accusative* of the *thing*[1] and the *Ablative* of the *person* with *ē* or *ex*, *ā*, *ab*, or *dē:*

Pācem *ab Rōmanīs* petiērunt, *they asked peace* FROM THE ROMANS. Caes. Aliquid *ab amīcīs* postulāre, *to demand something* FROM FRIENDS. Cic. Quaerit *ex sōlō* ea, etc., *he asks* OF HIM IN PRIVATE (from him alone) *those questions*, etc. Caes.

375. A NEUTER PRONOUN or ADJECTIVE as a *Cognate*[2] *Accusative* occurs in connection with a Direct Object with many verbs which do not otherwise take two Accusatives:

Hōc tē hortor, *I exhort you to* THIS, *I give you* THIS *exhortation.* Cic. *Ea*[3] monēmur, *we are admonished of* THESE THINGS. Cic. So with *velle*, Caes., B. G. I., 34.

376. A few COMPOUNDS of *trāns*, *circum*, and *ad* admit two Accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpiās trājēcit, *he led his forces across* THE EBRO. Liv. Animum adverti *columellam*, *I noticed* (turned my mind to) A SMALL COLUMN. Cic.

NOTE.—In the Passive these compounds and some others admit an Accusative depending upon the preposition:

Praetervehor *ōstia* Pantagiae, *I am carried by* THE MOUTH *of the Pantagias.* Verg. *Locum* sum praetervectus, *I have been carried by* THE PLACE. Cic.

377. In POETRY, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induō*, *exuō*, *cingō*, *accingō*, *indūcō*, etc.—are sometimes used *reflexively* in the Passive, like the Greek Middle, and thus admit an Accusative:

Galeam induitur, *he puts on* HIS HELMET. Verg. Inūtile *ferrum* cingitur, *he girds on* HIS *useless* SWORD. Verg. Virginēs longam indūtae *vēstem*, *maidens attired in long* ROBES. Liv.

NOTE.—A few other verbs sometimes admit a similar construction in the poets:

Antīquum saturāta *dolōrem*, *having satisfied her old* RESENTMENT. Verg. Suspēnsī *loculōs* lacertō, *with* SATCHELS *hung upon the arm* (having hung, etc.). Hor. Pāscuntur *silvās*, *they browse on* THE FORESTS. Verg.

II. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:[4]

---

[1] The Ablative of the person is often omitted, and, instead of the Accusative of the thing, a clause is often used. With *postulō* and *quaerō* the Ablative with *dē* occurs. For examples and for other special constructions, see Dictionary.

[2] See **371**, II.

[3] As a rare exception, *moneō* admits a *noun* as the Accusative of the thing; see Plaut., Stich., 1, 2, 1.

[4] The Accusative of Specification is closely related to the *Cognate Accusative* and to the *Poetic Accusative* after Passive verbs used reflexively, both of which readily pass into an adverbial construction. Thus *capita* in *capita vēlāmur* and *galeam* in *galeam*

Capita vēlāmur, *we have* OUR HEADS *veiled* (are veiled as to OUR HEADS, *or* have veiled OUR HEADS). Verg. Nūbe *humerōs* amictus, *with* HIS SHOULDERS *enveloped in a cloud.* Hor. Mīles frāctus *membra* labōre, *the soldier with* LIMBS *shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēās *ōs* deō similis, *Aeneas like a god in* APPEARANCE. Verg.

1. In a strict sense, the *Accusative of Specification* generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See *Ablative of Specification*, **424.**

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem*, *vicem*, *nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id temporis*, *id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id genus*,[1] *omne genus*, *quod genus* (for *ējus generis*, etc.), etc.; also of *secus*, *rēs*, and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives—*hōc*, *illud*, *id*, *quid* (**454**, 2), *multum*, *summum*, *cētera*, *rĕliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose:

Māximam *partem* lacte vīvunt, *they live mostly* (as to the largest PART) *upon milk.* Caes. Locus *id* temporis vacuus erat, *the place was* AT THIS *time vacant.* Cic. Aliquid id *genus*[1] scrībere, *to write something* OF *this* KIND. Cic. Aliās *rēs* est improbus, IN *other* THINGS (as to the rest) *he is unprincipled.* Plaut. Quaerit, *quid* possint, *he inquires* HOW *powerful they are.* Caes. *Quid* vēnistī, WHY *have you come?* Plaut.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit *annōs*, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven* YEARS. Liv. Cȳrus quadrāgintā *annōs* nātus rēgnāre coepit, *Cyrus began to reign* (when) *forty* YEARS *old* (having been born forty YEARS). Cic. Quīnque *mīlia* passuum ambulāre, *to walk five* MILES. Cic. *Pedēs* octōgintā dīstāre, *to be eighty* FEET *distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor *pedēs* alta, *snow four* FEET *deep.* Liv. But—

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative, or by the Accusative with a preposition:

Pūgnātum est *hōrīs* quīnque, *the battle was fought five* HOURS. Caes. *Per annōs* vīgintī certātum est, *the war was waged* FOR *twenty* YEARS. Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative:

Mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs cōnsēdit, *he encamped* AT THE DISTANCE OF *six* MILES *from Caesar's camp.* Caes.

NOTE.—*Ab* used adverbially, meaning *off*, sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Ab mīlibus passuum duōbus castra posuērunt, *they pitched their camp two miles* OFF. Caes.

---

induitur are similar constructions, while *quid* in *quaerit quid possint* may be explained either as a *Cognate* Accusative (**371**, I., 2) or as an *Adverbial* Accusative.

[1] Some grammarians treat *genus* in all such cases as an *Appositive: aliquid, id genus*, something, this kind; see Draeger, I., p. 2.

RULE X.—Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:[1]

I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs *ad urbem* addūcit, *he is leading the legions* TO OR TOWARD THE CITY. Cic. *Ad mē* scrībunt, *they are writing* TO ME. Cic. *In Asiam* redit, *he returns* INTO ASIA. Nep. Cōnfūgit *in āram*, *he fled* TO THE ALTAR. Nep.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius *Rōmam* redit, *the messenger returns* TO ROME. Liv. Platō *Tarentum* vēnit, *Plato came* TO TARENTUM. Cic. Fūgit *Tarquiniōs*, *he fled* TO TARQUINII. Cic. But—

NOTE.—Verbs meaning *to collect*, *to come together*, etc.—*conveniō*, *cōgō*, *convocō*, etc.—are usually treated as verbs of *motion*, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning *to place*—*locō*, *collocō*, *pōnō*, etc.—are usually treated as verbs of *rest*, and thus take the Ablative (425), generally with a preposition:

Ūnum *in locum* convenīre, *to meet* IN *one* PLACE. Caes. Cōpiās *in* ūnum *locum* cōgere, *to collect forces* IN *one* PLACE. Caes. *In* alterīus *manū* vītam pōnere, *to place one's life* IN THE HAND *of another*. Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the *Accusative* with **ad** occurs—(1) to denote *to*, *toward*, *in the direction of*, *into the vicinity of*, and (2) in contrast with *ā* or *ab:*

Trēs sunt viae *ad Mutinam*, *there are three roads* TO MUTINA. Cic. *Ad Zamam* pervēnit, *he came* TO THE VICINITY OF ZAMA. Sall. Ā Diāniō *ad Sinōpēn*, *from Dianium* TO SINOPE. Cic.

2. Like NAMES OF TOWNS are used—

1) The Accusatives **domum**, **domōs**, **rūs**:

Scīpiō *domum* reductus est, *Scipio was conducted* HOME. Cic. *Domōs* abductī, *led* TO THEIR HOMES. Liv. *Rūs* ēvolāre, *to hasten* INTO THE COUNTRY. Cic. *Domum* reditiō, *a return* HOME. Caes.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of *names* of *islands* and *peninsulas:*

Lātōna cōnfūgit *Dēlum*, *Latona fled* TO DELOS. Cic. Pervēnit *Chersonēsum*, *he went* TO THE CHERSONESUS. Nep.

3) Rarely a few other Accusatives, as *exsequiās*, *īnfitiās*, etc.:[2]

Ille *īnfitiās* ībit, *he will deny* (will proceed TO A DENIAL). Ter.

3. The preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

---

[1] Originally the *place to which* was uniformly designated by the Accusative *without* a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

[2] See also the Supine in *um*, 546.

Aegyptum profŭgit, *he fled* TO EGYPT. Cic. *Ĭtaliam* vēnit, *he came* TO ITALY. Verg. Ībimus *Āfrōs*, *we shall go* TO THE AFRICANS. Verg. Lāvīnia vēnit *lītora*, *he came to the Lavinian* SHORES. Verg.

4. A POETICAL DATIVE occurs for the Accusative, with or without a preposition:

It clāmor *caelō* (for *ad caelum*), *the shout ascends* TO HEAVEN. Verg. Facilis dēscēnsus *Avernō*, *easy is the descent* TO HADES. Verg. See **385, 4.**

III. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations:

Heu mē miserum, AH ME *unhappy!* Cic. *Mē* miserum, ME *miserable!*[1] Cic. *Ō* fallācem *spem*, O *deceptive* HOPE! Cic. *Mē* caecum, *blind that* I *am!* Cic. *Prō* deōrum *fidem*, IN THE NAME *of the gods!* Cic. Hanccine *audāciam*, *this* AUDACITY?[2] Cic. But—

NOTE 1.—An adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this Accusative, as in the examples.

NOTE 2.—*Ō*, *ēheu*, and *heu* are the interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

NOTE 3.—Other cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Prō sancte *Jūppiter*, O *holy* JUPITER. Cic. Īnfēlīx *Dīdō*, *unhappy* DIDO. Verg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement:

Ēn dextra, LO THE RIGHT HAND (there is, *or* that is the right hand)! Verg. *Ecce* tuae *lītterae*, LO *your* LETTER (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *ei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *ēn*, *hem*:[3]

Ei mihĭ, WOE TO ME. Verg. *Vae tibĭ*, WOE TO YOU. Ter. *Ecce tibĭ*, LO TO YOU (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. *Ēn tibĭ*, THIS FOR YOU (lo I do this for you). Liv.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and designates the PERSON TO or FOR WHOM,[4] or the THING TO or FOR WHICH, anything is or is done.[5]

---

[1] See Milton, 'Paradise Lost,' IV., 73.

[2] The exclamation may of course be interrogative in character.

[3] This is an *Ethical Dative;* see **389.**

[4] The *Indirect Object* is generally a *person*, or *something personified*. Unlike the Direct Object, it is never contained in the action or produced by it, but is in most instances the *interested recipient* of it.

[5] Whether this was the original meaning of the Dative is not known. Delbrück

383. The Dative is used—

I. With a large class of Verbs and Adjectives;

II. With a few special Nouns and Adverbs.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tibī serviō, *I am devoted* TO YOU. Plaut. Serviunt *populō*, *they are devoted* TO THE PEOPLE. Cic. *Imperiō* pārēbant, *they were obedient* TO (obeyed) AUTHORITY. Caes. Temporī cēdit, *he yields to the time.* Cic. Labōrī student, *they devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deō pāret, *the world obeys God.*[1] Cic. Caesarī supplicābō, *I will supplicate Caesar.*[1] Cic. Nōbīs vīta data est, *life has been granted to us.* Cic. Numitōrī dēditur, *he is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs *plēbī* dedit, *he gave lands* TO THE COMMON PEOPLE. Cic. *Tibī* grātiās agō, *I give thanks* TO YOU. Cic. Nātūra hominem conciliat *hominī*, *Nature reconciles man* TO MAN. Cic. Pōns iter hostibus dedit, *the bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēgēs cīvitātibus suīs scrīpsērunt, *they prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. The INDIRECT OBJECT may be—

1) The DATIVE OF INFLUENCE,[2] designating the *person* TO *whom* something is or is done:

Serviunt *populō*, *they are devoted* TO THE PEOPLE. Cic. Agrōs *plēbī* dedit, *he gave lands* TO THE COMMON PEOPLE. Cic.

2) The DATIVE OF INTEREST,[2] designating the *person* FOR *whom* something is or is done:

Sibī Megarēnsēs vīcit, *he conquered the Megarians* FOR HIMSELF. Just.

3) The DATIVE OF PURPOSE or END,[2] designating the *object* or *end* FOR *which* something is or is done:

Receptuī cecinit, *he gave the signal* FOR A RETREAT. Liv.

---

thinks that this case originally designated the *place* or *object toward which* the action tended. See Kuhn's 'Zeitschrift,' vol. xviii., p. 81.

[1] *Is subject to God; will make supplication to Caesar.*

[2] Observe that the Dative of *Influence* is very closely connected with the verb, and is, in fact, essential to the *completeness* of the sentence; while the Dative of *Interest* and the Dative of *Purpose* are merely added to sentences which would be complete without them. Thus *Megarēnsēs vīcit* is complete in itself.

2. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit—(1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem dōnāre*, 'to present a thing to any one,' or *aliquem rē dōnāre*, 'to present any one with a thing':[1]

Praedam *mīlitibus* dōnat, *he gives the booty* TO THE SOLDIERS. Caes. Athēniēnsēs *frūmentō* dōnāvit, *he presented the Athenians* WITH GRAIN. Nep.

NOTE.—This construction may also be used of objects which are in a measure *personified*, or which involve *persons:*

Mūrum *urbī* circumdedit, *he built a wall around* THE CITY. Nep. Deus animum circumdedit *corpore*, *God has encompassed the soul* WITH A BODY. Cic.

3. **To** and **for** are not always signs of the Dative. Thus—

1) **To**, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (**380**):

Vēnī *ad urbem*, *I came* TO THE CITY. Cic. *Dēlum* vēnimus, *we came* TO DELOS. Cic.

NOTE 1.—But the Dative occurs in the poets; see **380**, 4, and **385**, 4.

NOTE 2.—*Mittō*, 'to send,' and *scrībō*, 'to write,' take the Dative, or the Accusative with *ad*, to denote the *person to whom:*

Scrībit *Labiēnō*, *he writes* TO LABIENUS. Caes. Scrībēs *ad mē*, *you will write* TO ME. Cic.

2) **For**, *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, is expressed by the Ablative with *prō; for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*, sometimes by the Accusative with *in:*

Prō patriā morī, *to die* FOR ONE'S COUNTRY. Hor. Dīmicāre *prō lībertāte*, *to fight* FOR LIBERTY. Cic. Satis *in ūsum*, *enough* FOR USE. Liv.

4. The *Dative* sometimes depends, not upon the verb alone, but upon the *Predicate as a whole:*

Tegimenta *galeīs*[2] mīlitēs facere jubet, *he orders the soldiers to make coverings* FOR THEIR HELMETS. Caes. *Līberīs* dīvitēs esse volumus, *we wish to be rich* FOR THE SAKE OF OUR CHILDREN. Cic. Quis huic *reī* testis est, *who testifies* TO THIS (lit., *is a witness* FOR *this* THING). Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Dative is used with verbs modified by *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, whether written as compounds or not:

Illīs satis facere (also written *satisfacere*), *to satisfy* THEM.[3] Caes. *Cui* bene dīxit unquam, FOR WHOM *has he ever spoken a good word?* Cic. Optimō *virō* maledīcere, *to revile a most excellent* MAN. Cic.

NOTE 2.—A *Dative* is sometimes thus added to the predicate when the English idiom would lead us to expect a *Genitive* depending upon a noun:

In cōnspectum vēnerat *hostibus*,[4] *he had come in sight* OF THE ENEMY (lit., TO THE

---

[1] This double construction occurs chiefly with *aspergō*, *circumdō*, *circumfundō*, *dōnō*, *exuō*, *impertiō*, *induō*, *īnspergō*, *interclūdō*.

[2] *Galeīs* is best explained as depending upon *tegimenta facere*, rather than upon *facere* alone; *līberīs*, as depending upon *dīvitēs esse volumus*, and *reī* upon *testis est*.

[3] Literally, *to do enough* FOR THEM.

[4] *Hostibus* does not depend at all upon *cōnspectum*, but upon the entire predicate, *in cōnspectum vēnerat*.

ENEMY). Cic. *Caesarī* ad pedēs prōicere, *to cast at the feet* OF CAESAR (lit., TO CAESAR, *at the feet*). Caes. Mihī̆ horror membra quatit, *a shudder shakes my limbs.* Verg. Urbī fundāmenta jacere, *to lay the foundations of* (for) *the city.* Liv.

NOTE 3.—The Dative is sometimes very loosely connected with the predicate, merely designating the *person with reference to whom* the statement is true:

Tū *illī* pater es, *you are a father* TO HIM. Tac. Triduī iter *expedītīs* erat, *it was a journey of three days* FOR LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIERS. Liv. Est urbe ēgressīs tumulus, *there is a mound as you go out of the city.*[1] Verg.

5. WITH IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—Verbs which admit only an *Indirect Object* in the Active are *Impersonal* in the Passive, but they may retain the Dative:

Hostibus resistunt, *they resist* THE ENEMY. Caes. Hīs *sententiīs* resistitur, *resistance is offered* TO *these* OPINIONS. Caes. Nē *mihī̆* noceant, *that they may not injure* ME. Cic. *Mihī̆* nihil nocērī potest, *no injury can be done* TO ME (lit., injury can be done TO ME not at all). Cic.

385. WITH SPECIAL VERBS.—The *Dative* of the *Indirect Object* is used with many verbs which require special mention. Thus—

I. With verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, and the like:

Sibī̆ prōsunt, *they benefit* THEMSELVES. Cic. Nocēre *alterī*, *to injure* ANOTHER. Cic. *Zēnōnī* placuit, *it pleased* ZENO. Cic. Displicet *Tullō*, *it displeases* TULLUS. Liv. Cupiditātibus imperāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deō pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgī servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostibus resistere, *to resist the enemy.* Caes.

II. With verbs signifying *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like:

Sibī̆ indulgēre, *to indulge* ONE'S SELF. Cic. *Vītae* parcere, *to spare* LIFE. Nep. *Mihī̆* īgnōscere, *to pardon* ME. Cic. Minitāns patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Īrāscī amīcīs, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihī̆ crēde, *believe me.* Cic. Iīs persuādēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

NOTE 1.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dēlectō*, *juvō*, *laedō*, *offendō*, etc.:

Marium jūvit, *he helped Marius.* Nep. Nōn mē fāma dēlectat, *fame does not delight me.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—For *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō* with the Ablative, see 425, 1, 1), note.

NOTE 3.—The force of the Dative is often found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūbō*, 'to marry' (strictly, *to veil one's self*, as the bride *for* the bridegroom); *medeor*, 'to cure' (to administer a remedy *to*); *satisfaciō*, 'to satisfy' (to do enough *for*), etc.

---

[1] Other examples are: Ā Pylīs euntī locō altō sitī sunt, *they are situated in an elevated place as you come* (lit., *to one coming*) *from Pylae.* Liv. Dēscendentibus inter duōs lūcōs, *as you descend* (lit., *to those descending*) *between the two groves.* Liv. Exscendentibus ad templum māceria erat, *there was an enclosure as you ascended to the temple.* Liv. In ūniversum aestimantī plūs penes peditem rōboris est, *to make a general estimate* (lit., *to one making*, etc.), *there is more strength in the infantry.* Tac.

1. Some verbs admit either the *Accusative* or the *Dative*, but with a difference of meaning:

Cavēre aliquem, *to ward off some one;* cavēre alicui, *to care* FOR *some one.*
Cōnsulere aliquem, *to consult*, etc.; alicui, *to consult* FOR, etc.
Metuere, timēre aliquem, *to fear;* alicui, *to fear* FOR.
Prōspicere, prōvidēre aliquid, *to foresee;* alicui, *to provide* FOR.
Temperāre, moderārī aliquid, *to govern, direct;* alicui (*of things*), *to restrain, put a check* UPON; temperāre alicui (*of persons*), *to spare:*[1]

Hunc tū cavētō, *be on your guard against* THIS ONE (lit., *ward* HIM *off*). Hor. *Eī* cavēre volō, *I wish to care* FOR HIM (i. e., *to protect him*). Cic. *Perfidiam* timēmus, *we fear* PERFIDY. Cic. *Sibī* timuerant, *they had feared* FOR THEMSELVES. Caes.

NOTE.—*Dare litterās ad aliquem* means *to address a letter* TO SOME ONE; but *dare litterās alicui* generally means *to deliver a letter* TO ONE AS A CARRIER OR MESSENGER:

Litterae *mihī ad Catilīnam* datae sunt, *a letter addressed* TO CATILINE *was delivered* TO ME. Cic.

2. A DATIVE rendered **from** occurs with a few verbs of *differing, dissenting, repelling, taking away*, etc.:

Differre *cuivis*, *to differ* FROM ANY ONE. Nep. *Sibī* dissentīre, *to dissent* FROM HIMSELF. Cic. Somnum *mihī* adimere, *to take sleep* FROM ME. Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Poetical Dative*, see 4, below; and for the *Ablative* with verbs of *Separation* or *Difference*, see **413**.

3. A DATIVE rendered **with** occurs with *misceō, admisceō*, etc., and sometimes with *faciō:*

Sevēritātem miscēre *cōmitātī*, *to unite severity* WITH AFFABILITY. Liv. Quid huic *hominī* faciās, *what are you to do* WITH (TO) this MAN? Cic. See 4 below.

4. DATIVE IN POETRY.—In the poets and in late prose-writers, the Dative is used much more freely than in classical prose. Thus it occurs with more or less frequency with the following classes of verbs:

1) With verbs denoting *Motion* or *Direction*—for the Accusative with *ad* or *in:*

Multōs dēmittimus *Orcō* (for *ad* or *in Orcum*), *we send many down* TO ORCUS. Verg. *Caelō* (for *ad caelum*) palmās tetendit, *he extended his hands* TOWARD HEAVEN. Verg. It clāmor caelō, *the shout goes to heaven.* Verg. See also **392**, I.

2) With verbs denoting *Separation* or *Difference*[2]—instead of the Ablative with *ab* or *dē*, or the Accusative with *inter:*

Sōlstitium *pecorī* (for *ā pecore*) dēfendite, *keep off the heat* FROM THE FLOCK. Verg. *Scurrae* distābit amīcus, *a friend will differ* FROM A JESTER. Hor. Serta capitī dēlāpsa, *garlands fallen from his head.* Verg.

---

[1] Many other verbs take different constructions with different meanings; see *cēdō, conveniō, cupiō, dēficiō, doleō, maneō, parcō, petō, solvō*, and *volō* in the Dictionary.

[2] Thus with *arceō, absum, differō, dissentiō, dissideō, distō*, etc.; see Dictionary.

3) With verbs denoting *Union*, *Comparison*, *Contention*, and the like[1]—instead of the Ablative with *cum*, or the Accusative with *inter:*

Miscet[2] *virīs*, *he mingles* WITH THE MEN. Verg. Concurrere *hostī* (for *cum hoste*), *to meet* THE ENEMY. Ov. Sōlus tibi certat, *he alone contends with you.* Verg. Placitōne pūgnābis amōrī, *will you contend with acceptable love?* Verg.

4) In still other instances, especially in expressions of *Place:*

Haeret *laterī* (for *in latere*) arundŏ, *the arrow sticks* IN HER SIDE. Verg. Ārdet apex *capitī*, *the helmet gleams* UPON HIS HEAD. Verg.

386. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with—

ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter,
ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super:

Adsum *amīcīs*, *I am present* WITH MY FRIENDS. Cic. *Omnibus* antestāre, *to surpass* ALL. Cic. *Terrīs* cohaeret, *it cleaves* TO THE EARTH. Sen. Hŏc *Caesarī* dēfuit, *this failed* (was wanting TO) CAESAR. Caes. Voluptātī inhaerēre, *to be connected with pleasure.* Cic. Interfuit pūgnae, *he participated in the battle.* Nep. Cōnsiliīs obstāre, *to oppose plans.* Nep. Lībertātī opēs postferre, *to sacrifice wealth to liberty.* Liv. Populō praesunt, *they rule the people.* Cic. Tibĭ prōsunt, *they are profitable to you.* Cic. Succumbere dolōribus, *to yield to sorrows.* Cic. Superfuit patrī, *he survived his father.* Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS thus compounded admit both the Accusative and the Dative:

Sē opposuit *hostibus*, *he opposed* HIMSELF TO THE ENEMY. Cic. Capitī subduxerat ēnsem, *she had removed my sword from my head.* Verg. See also *Lībertātī opēs postferre*, above.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially of *ab*, *ex*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Ablative with or without a preposition:[3]

Sibĭ lībertātem abjūdicat, *he deprives* HIMSELF (sentences himself to the loss) *of liberty.* Cic. *Mihĭ* timōrem ēripe, *free* ME *from fear* (lit., *snatch away fear* FOR ME). Cic. Pūgnā assuēscere, *to be accustomed to* (trained in) *battle.* Liv. Dicta cum factīs compōnere, *to compare words with deeds.* Sall.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative with or without a preposition:[4]

---

[1] Thus, with *cōpulō*, *jungō*, *misceō*, *admisceō*, *permisceō*, *nectō*, *sociō*, etc.; *certō*, *contendō*, *luctor*, *pūgnō*, etc.

[2] *Misceō*, as a transitive verb, occurs with the Accusative and Dative even in classical prose; see **385**, 3; also **371**, III., note 2.

[3] See *assuēscō*, *assuēfaciō*, *acquiēscō*, *coeō*, *cohaereō*, *collūdō*, *commūnicō*, *compōnō*, *concordō*, *cōnferō*, *cōnflīgō*, *congruō*, *conjungō*, *cōnsentiō*, *cōnstō*, *īnsistō*, *īnsideō*, *īnsum*, and *interdīcō*, in the Dictionary. See also Draeger, I., pp. 406-426

[4] See *accēdō*, *accidō*, *addō*, *adferō*, *adhaerēscō*, *adhibeō*, *adjungō*, *adnītor*, *adscrībō*, *adsum*, *illūdō*, *incidō*, *incumbō*, *incurrō*, *īnferō*, *offerō*, *oppōnō*, in the Dictionary.

Adīre *ārās*, *to approach* THE ALTARS. Cic. *Ad cōnsulēs* adīre, *to go* TO THE CONSULS. Cic. In bellum īnsistit, *he devotes himself to the war*. Caes. Ad omne perīculum oppōnitur, *he is exposed to every peril*. Cic.

4. Several compounds admit either the Accusative or the Dative without any special difference of meaning:[1]

Mūnītiōnibus adjacent, *they are near* THE FORTIFICATIONS. Tac. *Mare* illud adjacent, *they are near that* SEA. Nep. Quibus timor incēsserat, *whom fear had seized.* Sall. Timor patrēs incēssit, *fear seized the fathers*. Liv.

5. Many compounds which usually take the Accusative or the Ablative with a preposition in classical prose, admit a Dative in poetry:

Quid contendat hirundō *cycnīs* (for *cum cycnīs*), *why should the swallow contend* WITH SWANS? Lucr. Contendis *Homērō*, *you contend* WITH HOMER. Prop. Animīs illābī nostrīs (for *in animōs nostrōs*), *to sink into our minds*. Verg.

NOTE.—Instead of the compounds of *ad*, *ante*, etc., the poets sometimes use in the same sense the simple verbs[2] with the Dative:

Quī haeserat (= *adhaeserat*) *Ēvandrō*, *who had joined himself* TO EVANDER. Verg. Pōnis (= *appōnis*) *mihī* porcum, *you offer* ME (place BEFORE ME) *swine's flesh*. Martial.

387. The DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR is used with the verb *sum:*

Mihī est noverca, I *have* (there is TO ME) *a stepmother.*[3] Verg. *Fontī* nōmen Arethūsa est, THE FOUNTAIN *has* (there is TO THE FOUNTAIN) *the name Arethusa*. Cic. But—

NOTE 1.—The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est*, *nōmen datur*, etc.:

Scīpiōnī Āfricānō cōgnōmen fuit, SCIPIO *had the surname* AFRICANUS. Sall. Here *Āfricānō*, instead of being in apposition with *cōgnōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scīpiōnī*.

NOTE 2.—The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nōmen* occurs:

Nōmen *Mercurī* est mihī, *I have the name* OF MERCURY. Plaut.

NOTE 3.—By a GREEK IDIOM, *volēns*, *cupiēns*, or *invītus* sometimes accompanies the Dative of the possessor:

Quibus bellum *volentibus* erat, *who liked the war* (lit., *to whom* WISHING *the war was*). Tac.

388. The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT is used with the *Gerundive*, and with the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:*

---

[1] Such are *adjaceō*, *adūlor*, *antecēdō*, *anteeō*, *cōnītor*, *dēspērō* (also with *dē*), *illūdō*, *incēdō*, *īnsultō*, *invādō*, *praecurrō*, *praestō*, *praestolor*.

[2] Thus *ferō* for *adferō*, *prōferō*; *haereō* for *adhaereō*; *pōnō* for *appōnō*, *dēpōnō*, *impōnō*, etc.

[3] The *Dative* with *est* usually expresses *simple possession* or *ownership*, like the English *have*. *Habeō* is sometimes used in the same sense, but it more commonly expresses some of the shades of meaning denoted by *hold*, *keep*, *regard*, and the like: *arcem habēre*, 'to hold the citadel'; *aliquem in obsidiōne habēre*, 'to hold *or* keep one in siege'; *prō hoste habēre*, 'to regard as an enemy.'

Proelia *conjugibus* loquenda, *battles* FOR WOMEN *to talk about.*[1] Hor. Suum *cuique* incommodum ferendum est, EVERY ONE *has his own trouble to bear*, or *must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

NOTE.—Instead of the Dative of the Apparent Agent, the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* is sometimes used:

Quibus est *ā vōbīs*[2] cōnsulendum, *for whom measures must be taken* BY YOU. Cic.

1. The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

Mihī cōnsilium captum jam diū est, I *have a plan long since formed.*[1] Cic.

NOTE.—HABEŌ with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHĪ with the Participle:

Bellum habuit indictum, *he had a war* (already) *declared.* Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT, with Passive verbs, is in classical prose denoted by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*;[3] see **415**, I.

3. The DATIVE is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (TO) whom the action is performed:

Honesta bonīs *virīs* quaeruntur, *honorable things are sought* BY *good* MEN (i. e., for themselves). Cic.

4. In the POETS, the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action:

Nōn intellegor *ūllī*, *I am not understood* BY ANY ONE. Ovid. Rēgnāta arva *Saturnō*, *lands ruled* BY SATURN. Verg.

389. The ETHICAL DATIVE, denoting the person to whom the thought is of special interest, is often introduced into the Latin sentence:[4]

At *tibī* venit ad mē, *but* LO, *he comes to me.* Cic. Ad illa *mihī* intendat animum, *let him*, I PRAY, *direct his attention to those things.* Liv. Quō *mihī* abīs, *whither are you going*, PRAY? Verg. Quid *mihī* Celsus agit, *what is* MY *Celsus doing?* Hor.

---

[1] The Dative with the *Gerundive*, whether alone or in the *Periphrastic Conjugation*, designates the person who *has the work to do;* while with the compound tenses of passive verbs it designates the person who *has the work already done.*

[2] Here *ā vōbīs* is necessary, to distinguish the Agent from the Indirect Object, *quibus;* but the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* is sometimes used when this necessity does not exist.

[3] The Dative with the Gerundive is best explained as the *Dative of Possessor* or *of Indirect Object.* Thus, *suum cuique incommodum est* means 'every one has his trouble' (*cuique*, Dative of Possessor); and *suum cuique incommodum ferendum est*, 'every one has his trouble to bear.' So too, *mihī cōnsilium est*, 'I have a plan'; *mihī cōnsilium captum est*, 'I have a plan (*already*) formed.'

[4] Compare the following from Shakespeare: 'He plucked *me* ope his doublet and offered them his throat to cut.' Julius Caesar, Act I., Scene II. 'It ascends *me* into the brain.' Henry IV., Part II., Act IV., Scene III. 'He presently steps *me* a little higher.' Henry IV., Part I., Act IV., Scene III.

NOTE 1.—The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

NOTE 2.—The ETHICAL DATIVE occurs with VOLŌ and with INTERJECTIONS:

Quid *vōbīs* vultis, *what do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid *sibī* vult, *what does avarice mean?* or *what object can it have?* Cic. Ei *mihī*, *ah* ME! Verg. Vae *tibī*, *woe* TO YOU. Ter. See **381**, note 3, 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est *hominibus* avāritia, *avarice is* AN EVIL TO MEN (lit., *is* TO MEN FOR AN EVIL). Cic. Est *mihī cūrae*, *it is* A CARE TO ME. Cic. Domus *dēdecorī dominō* fit, *the house becomes* A DISGRACE TO ITS OWNER. Cic. Vēnit Atticīs auxiliō, *he came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. Hōc illī tribuēbātur īgnāviae, *this was imputed to him as cowardice* (*for cowardice*). Cic. Eīs subsidiō missus est, *he was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quīnque cohortēs *castrīs praesidiō* relīquit, *he left five cohorts* FOR THE DEFENCE OF THE CAMP (lit., TO THE CAMP FOR A DEFENCE). Caes. Periclēs agrōs suōs dōnō rĕī pūblicae dedit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit., *for a present*). Just.

NOTE 1.—The verbs which take TWO DATIVES are—

1) Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, become, go*, and the like: *sum, fīō*, etc.

2) Transitive verbs signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose*, and the like: *dō, dōnō, dūcō, habeō, mittō, relinquō, tribuō, vertō*, etc. These take in the Active two Datives with an Accusative; but in the Passive two Datives only, as the direct object of the Active becomes the subject of the Passive; see **464**.

NOTE 2.—One of the Datives is often omitted, or its place supplied by a predicate noun:

Ea sunt *ūsuī*, *these things are* OF USE (FOR USE). Caes. Tū *illī pater* es, *you are* A FATHER TO HIM. Tac. See **362**, 2, note 3.

NOTE 3.—With *audiēns* two Datives sometimes occur, *dictō* dependent upon *audiēns*, and a personal Dative dependent upon *dictō audiēns*, and sometimes *dictō oboediēns* is used like *dictō audiēns:*

Dictō sum audiēns, *I am listening to the word.* Plaut. Nōbīs dictō audiēns est, *he is obedient to us.* Cic. Magistrō dictō oboediēns, *obedient to his master.* Plaut.

RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives.

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum *omnibus* cārum est, *the soil of their country is dear* TO ALL. Cic. Id aptum est *temporī*, *this is adapted* TO THE TIME. Cic. Omnī *aetātī* mors est commūnis, *death is common* TO *every* AGE. Cic. Canis similis lupō est, *a dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Nātūrae accommodātum, *adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae ūtile, *useful to Greece.* Nep.

I. ADJECTIVES which take the DATIVE are chiefly those signifying—

Agreeable, *easy*, *friendly*, *like*, *near*, *necessary*, *suitable*, *subject*, *useful*, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning,[1] and verbals in *bilis*.

II. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1. *The Accusative with a Preposition:* (1) **in**, **ērgā**, **adversus**, with adjectives signifying *friendly*, *hostile*, etc., and (2) **ad**, to denote the *object* or *end for which*, with adjectives signifying *useful*, *suitable*, *inclined*, etc.:

Perindulgēns *in patrem*, *very kind* TO HIS FATHER. Cic. Multās *ad rēs* perūtilis, *very useful* FOR *many* THINGS. Cic. Prōnus ad lūctum, *inclined to mourning*. Cic.

2. *The Accusative without a Preposition* with *propior*, *prōximus:*

Propior *montem*, *nearer* THE MOUNTAIN. Sall. Prōximus mare, *nearest to the sea.* Caes. See **433** and **437**.

3. *The Ablative with* or *without a Preposition:*

Aliēnum *ā vītā* meā, *foreign* TO *my* LIFE. Ter. *Homine* aliēnissimum, *most foreign* TO OR FROM MAN. Cic. Ēī cum Rōsciō commūnis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscius). Cic.

4. *The Genitive:* (1) with adjectives used substantively; (2) with adjectives meaning *like*,[2] *unlike*,[2] *near*, *belonging to*, and a few others:[3]

Amīcissimus *hominum*, *the best friend* OF THE MEN (i. e., the most friendly to them). Cic. *Alexandrī* similis, *like* ALEXANDER (i. e., in character). Cic. Dispar *suī*, *unlike* ITSELF. Cic. Cūjus parēs, *like whom.* Cic. Populī Rōmānī est propria lībertās, *liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Īdem* occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit *occīdentī*, *he does the same* AS TO KILL, OR AS HE WHO KILLS. Hor.

NOTE 2.—For the *Genitive* and *Dative* with an adjective, see **399**, I., note 1.

RULE XV.—Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiō[4] *lēgibus*, *justice is obedience* TO LAWS. Cic.

---

[1] Such are *accommodātus*, *aequālis*, *aliēnus*, *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *aptus*, *cārus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *fidēlis*, *īnfidēlis*, *fīnitimus*, *grātus*, *ingrātus*, *idōneus*, *jūcundus*, *injūcundus*, *molestus*, *necessārius*, *nōtus*, *īgnōtus*, *noxius*, *pār*, *dispar*, *perniciōsus*, *propinquus*, *proprius*, *salūtāris*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *dīversus*, *vīcīnus*, etc.

[2] The Genitive is used especially of *likeness* and *unlikeness* IN CHARACTER.

[3] As *similis*, *dissimilis*, *assimilis*, *cōnsimilis*, *pār*, *dispar*; *adfīnis*, *fīnitimus*, *propinquus*; *proprius*, *sacer*, *commūnis*; *aliēnus*, *contrārius*, *īnsuētus*, etc.

[4] From *obtemperō*, which takes the Dative.

Sibī respōnsiō, *a reply* TO HIMSELF. Cic. Opulentō hominī servitūs dūra est, *serving* (servitude to) *a rich man is hard.* Plaut. Facilis dēscēnsus[1] Avernō, *easy is the descent to Avernus.* Verg.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter[2] *nātūrae* vīvere, *to live in accordance* WITH NATURE. Cic. *Sibī* convenienter dīcere, *to speak consistently* WITH HIMSELF. Cic. Prōximē hostium castrīs, *next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

NOTE 1.—In rare instances the Dative occurs with a few nouns and adverbs not included in the rule:

Tribūnicia potestās, mūnīmentum *lībertātī*, *tribunician power, a defence* FOR LIBERTY. Liv. Huic ūnā = ūnā cum hōc, *with this one.* Verg.

NOTE 2.—For the Dative of *Gerundives* with official names, see **544**, note 3.

NOTE 3.—For the Dative with *interjections*, see **381**, note 3; **389**, note 2.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its ordinary use corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.[3]

NOTE.—But the Genitive, especially when *objective* (**396**, III.), is sometimes best rendered *to*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *on account of*, etc.:

Beneficiī grātia, *gratitude* FOR A FAVOR. Cic. *Labōrum* fuga, *escape* FROM LABORS. Cic. Ēreptae virginis īra, *anger on account of the rescue of the maiden.* Verg.

394. The Genitive is used chiefly to qualify or limit nouns and adjectives,[4] though it also occurs with verbs and adverbs.

RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catōnis ōrātiōnēs, CATO'S *orations.* Cic. Castra *hostium*, *the camp* OF THE ENEMY. Liv. Mors *Hamilcaris*, *the death* OF HAMILCAR. Liv. Deūm metus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv. Vir cōnsiliī māgnī, *a man of great prudence.* Caes. Pars populī, *a part of the people.* Cic.

---

[1] From *dēscendō*, which admits the Dative in poetry; see **385**, 4, 1).

[2] From *congruēns*, which takes the Dative.

[3] The Genitive has nearly the force of an adjective, and means simply *of* or *belonging to.* Thus, *rēgis*, equivalent to *rēgius*, means *of* or *belonging to a king.* On the *origin* and *use* of the Genitive, see Hübschmann, p. 106; Merguet, p. 69; Holzweissig, pp. 26 and 78; Draeger, I., pp. 447–498; Roby, II., pp. 116–137.

[4] Doubtless originally it limited only nouns and adjectives.

NOTE 1.—For the *Appositive*, see **363.**

NOTE 2.—An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellica glōria = bellī glōria, *the glory of war.* Cic. Conjunx Hectorea = conjunx Hectoris, *the wife of Hector.* Verg. Pūgna Marathōnia, *the battle of Marathon.* Cic. Dīāna Ephesia, *Diana of Ephesus.* Cic. See **393**, foot-note.

NOTE 3.—For the *Predicate Genitive*, see **401.**

NOTE 4.—For *special uses* of the Dative, see **384**, 4, note 2.

396. The qualifying Genitive may be—

I. A POSSESSIVE GENITIVE,[1] designating the *author* and the *possessor:*

Xenophōntis librī, *the books of Xenophon.* Cic. Fānum Neptūnī, *the temple of Neptune.* Nep.

II. A SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE, designating the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc.:

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent.* Cic. Pavor Numidārum, *the fear of the Numidians.* Liv.

NOTE.—The POSSESSIVE PRONOUN is regularly used for the *Subjective Genitive* of Personal pronouns:

Mea domus, *my house.* Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame.* Cic.

III. An OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, designating the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed:

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory.* Cic. Memoria malōrum, *the recollection of sufferings.* Cic. Deūm metus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—For the OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, the Accusative with **in**, **ērgā**, or **adversus** is sometimes used:

Odium in hominum genus, *hatred of* or *toward the race of men.* Cic. Ērgā vōs amor, *love toward you.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—The POSSESSIVE occurs, though rarely, for the *Objective Genitive* of Personal pronouns:

Tua fīdūcia, *reliance on you.* Cic.

IV. A PARTITIVE GENITIVE, designating the *whole* of which a *part* is taken:

Quis vestrūm, *which of you?* Cic. Vītae pars, *a part of life.* Cic. Omnium sapientissimus, *the wisest of all men.* Cic.

V. A DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE, also called a GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, designating *character* or *quality*, including *value*, *price*, *size*, *weight*, *age*, etc.

Vir māximī cōnsiliī, *a man of very great prudence.* Nep. Mītis ingeniī juvenis, *a youth of mild disposition.* Liv. Vēstis māgnī pretiī, *a garment of great value.* Cic. Exsilium decem annōrum, *an exile of ten years.* Nep. Corōna parvī ponderis, *a crown of small weight.* Liv. See **404.**

---

[1] It will be found convenient thus to characterize the different uses of the Genitive by the relation actually existing between the words united by it, though that special relation is not expressed by the case itself, but merely suggested by the meaning of the words thus united.

NOTE 1.—The *Descriptive Genitive* must be accompanied by an adjective or some other modifier, unless it be a compound containing a modifier; as *hūjusmodī* = *hūjus modī; triduī*, from *trēs diēs; biduī*, from *duo* (*bis*) *diēs*.

NOTE 2.—For *id genus* = *ējus generis*, *omne genus* = *omnis generis*, see **378**, 2.

NOTE 3.—For the *Descriptive Ablative*, see **419**, II., with note.

VI. An APPOSITIONAL GENITIVE, having the general force of an *Appositive* (**363**):

Virtūs continentiae, *the virtue of self-control.* Cic. Oppidum Antiochīae, *the city of Antioch.* Cic. Tellūs Ausoniae, *the land of Ausonia.* Verg.

397. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the whole of which a part is taken. It is used—

1. With *pars*, *nēmō*, *nihil;* with nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc., as *modius*, *legiō*, *talentum;* and with any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, *a part* OF THE HORSES. Liv. Nihil *novī* (**441**, 2), *nothing* NEW (OF NEW). Cic. Nihil rĕliquī (**441**, 2), *nothing left* (lit., OF THE rest). Sall. Medimnum trīticī, *a bushel of wheat.* Cic. Pecūniae talentum, *a talent of money.* Nep. Quōrum Gāius, *of whom Gaius.* Cic.

2. With *Numerals* used substantively:[1]

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom.* Liv. Equitum centum, *a hundred of the cavalry.* Curt. Sapientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men.* Hor. Ūnus pontium, *one of the bridges.* Caes.

NOTE.—In good prose the Genitive is not used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English:

Quī (not *quōrum*) duo supersunt, *of whom two survive.* Cic. Omnēs hominēs, *all men.* Cic. But see p. 209, note 4, with foot-note.

3. With *Pronouns* and *Adjectives* used substantively, especially with comparatives, superlatives, and neuters:[2]

Quis vestrūm, *which of you?* Cic. Num quidnam novī, *is there anything new* (OF NEW)? Cic. Cōnsulum alter, *one of the consuls.* Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these.* Nep. Gallōrum fortissimī, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes. Id temporis, *that* (*of*) *time.* Cic. Multum operae, *much* (*of*) *service.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Pronouns and adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Partitive Genitive, take the gender of the Genitive, unless they agree directly with some other word; see *cōnsulum alter*, above.

NOTE 2.—*Uterque*, 'each,' 'both,' is generally used as an adjective; but when it is combined in the singular number with another pronoun, it usually takes that pronoun in the Genitive:

Uterque exercitus, *each army.* Caes. Quae utraque, *both of which.* Sall. Utrīque nostrūm[3] grātum, *acceptable to each of us.* Cic.

---

[1] Numerals used adjectively agree with their nouns: *mīlle hominēs*, 'a thousand men'; *mīlle hominum*, 'a thousand of men'; *multī hominēs*, 'many men'; *multī hominum*, 'many of the men.'

[2] As *hōc*, *id*, *illud*, *quid; multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*, *minus*, *minimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, etc.

[3] A *Partitive Genitive*, because a *pronoun*.

NOTE 3.—For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with **inter** or **ante**, or the Ablative with **ex**, **dē**, or **in**, is sometimes used:

Inter rēgēs opulentissimus, *the most wealthy of* (among) *kings*. Sen. Ūnus ex virīs, *one of the heroes*. Cic. Ūnus[1] dē lēgātīs, *one of the lieutenants*. Cic.

NOTE 4.—Poets and late prose writers make a very free use of the Partitive Genitive after adjectives:

Sancta deārum, *holy goddess*. Enn. Sancte deōrum, *O holy god*. Verg. Festōs diērum, *festal days*. Hor. Levēs cohōrtium, *the light-armed cohorts*. Tac. Inclutus philosophōrum, *the renowned philosopher*. Just. Rĕliquum diēī, *the rest of the day*. Liv. Multum diēī, *much of the day*. Liv. Rĕliquum noctis, *the rest of the night*. Tac. Strāta viārum = strātae viae, *paved streets*. Verg. Vāna rērum = vānae rēs, *vain things*. Hor. Hominum cūnctī, *all of the men*.[2] Ovid. Cūncta terrārum, *all lands*. Hor. See also **438**, 5.

NOTE 5.—The *Neuter* of pronouns and adjectives with the Partitive Genitive is sometimes used of *persons:*

Quid hŏc est *hominis*, WHAT KIND OF A MAN *is this?* Plaut. *Quidquid* erat *patrum* reōs dīcerēs, *you would have said that* ALL THE SENATORS (lit., WHATEVER there was OF FATHERS) *were accused*. Liv. Quid hūc *tantum hominum* incēdunt, *why are* SO MANY MEN (SO MUCH OF MEN) *coming hither?* Plaut.

4. The Partitive Genitive also occurs with a few adverbs used substantively:[3]

Armōrum adfatim, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lūcis nimis, *too much* (*of*) *light*. Ovid. Sapientiae parum, *little* (*of*) *wisdom*. Sall. Partim cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quod ējus facere potest, *as far as* (what of it) *he is able to do*. Cic. Nūsquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic. Hūc arrogantiae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac. Māximē omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

398. GENITIVE IN SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.—Note the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus—

Aedēs, *templum*, *discipulus*, *homŏ*, *juvenis*, *puer*, etc.; *causa*, *grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jovis (*sc.* aedem), *near the temple of Jupiter*. Liv. Hannibal annōrum novem (*sc.* puer), *Hannibal, a boy nine years of age*. Liv. Aberant biduī (*sc.* viam *or* spatium), *they were two days' journey distant*. Cic. Cōnferre vītam Trebōnī cum Dolābellae (*sc.* vītā), *to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Genitive, as in the last example; and then the second Genitive is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word:

---

[1] *Ūnus* is generally followed by the Ablative with *ex* or *dē*, but sometimes by the Genitive.

[2] Observe that in this case the *partitive* idea has entirely disappeared, and that the construction is *partitive* in *form*, but not in *sense*.

[3] As with adverbs of QUANTITY—*abunde*, *adfatim*, *nimis*, *parum*, *partim*, *quoad*, *satis*, etc.; of PLACE—*hīc*, *hūc*, *nūsquam*, *ubĭ*, etc.; of EXTENT, DEGREE, etc.—*eō*, *hūc*, *quō;* and with *superlatives*. As adverbs are substantives or adjectives in origin, it is not strange that they are thus used with the Genitive.

Nātūra hominis bēluīs (for *bēluārum nātūrae*) antecēdit, *the nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—In many cases where we supply *son*, *daughter*, *husband*, *wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Genitive depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrubal Giscōnis, *Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco.* Liv. Hectoris Andromachē, *Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector.* Verg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun. One is generally *subjective*, the other either *objective* or *descriptive:*

Memmī odium potentiae, *Memmius's hatred of power.* Sall. Helvētiōrum injūriae populī Rōmānī, *the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.* Caes. Superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, *the delay of Sabinus during* (lit., *of*) *the preceding days.* Caes.

3. A GENITIVE sometimes accompanies a POSSESSIVE, especially the Genitive of *ipse*, *sōlus*, *ūnus*, or *omnis:*

Tua ipsīus amīcitia,[1] *your own friendship.* Cic. Meum sōlīus peccātum, *my fault alone.* Cic. Nōmen meum absentis, *my name in my absence.* Cic.

4. The Genitive is used with *īnstar*, 'likeness,' 'image,' in the sense of *as large as*, *of the size of*, *equal to:*

Īnstar montis equus, *a horse of the size of a mountain.* Verg.

5. The Genitive is used with *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē*, *ergō*, and *tenus:*[2]

Prīdiē ējus diēī, *on the day before that day.* Caes. Postrīdiē ējus diēī, *on the day after that day.* Caes. Virtūtis ergō, *on account of virtue.* Cic. Lumbōrum tenus, *as far as the loins.* Cic. For *tenus* with the Ablative, see **434**.

RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives.

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus *laudis*, *desirous* OF PRAISE. Cic. *Ōtiī* cupidus, *desirous* OF LEISURE. Liv. Cōnscius conjūrātiōnis, *cognizant of the conspiracy.* Sall. Amāns suī virtūs, *virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Efficiēns voluptātis, *productive of pleasure.* Cic. Glōriae memor, *mindful of glory.* Liv.

NOTE.—This Genitive corresponds to the *Objective Genitive* with nouns:

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory.* Cic. Appetēns glōriae, *desirous of* (eager for) *glory.* Cic.

I. The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting—

1. DESIRE OR AVERSION:[3]

---

[1] *Ipsīus* may be explained as agreeing with *tuī* (of you), involved in *tua*, and *sōlīus* and *absentis* as agreeing with *meī* (of me), involved in *meum*.

[2] These words are strictly *nouns*, and, as such, govern the Genitive. *Prīdiē* and *postrīdiē* are Locatives; *ergō* is an Ablative, and *tenus*, an Accusative; see **304**; **307**, note 1.

[3] Such are—(1) *avidus*, *cupidus*, *studiōsus*; *fastīdiōsus*, etc.; (2) *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *cōnsultus*, *cōnscius*, *īnscius*, *nescius*, *certus*, *incertus*; *prōvidus*, *prūdēns*, *imprū-*

Contentiōnis cupidus, *desirous of contention.* Cic. Sapientiae studiōsus, *studious of* (student of) *wisdom.* Cic. Terrae fastīdiōsus, *weary of the land.* Hor.

2. Knowledge, Skill, Recollection, with their contraries:[1]

Rēī gnārus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic. Prūdēns rēī mīlitāris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. Perītus bellī, *skilled in war.* Nep. Īnsuētus labōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Glōriae memor, *mindful of glory.* Liv. Immemor beneficiī, *forgetful of kindness.* Cic.

3. Participation, Guilt, Fulness, Mastery, with their contraries:[1]

Adfīnis culpae, *sharing the fault.* Cic. Ratiōnis particeps, *endowed with* (sharing) *reason.* Cic. Ratiōnis expers, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Manifestus rērum capitālium, *convicted of capital crimes.* Sall. Vīta metūs plēna, *a life full of fear.* Cic. Meī potēns sum, *I am master of myself.* Liv. Virtūtis compos, *capable of virtue.* Cic.

Note 1.—The *Genitive* and *Dative* sometimes occur with the same adjective:

Mēns sibī cōnscia rēctī, *a mind conscious to itself of rectitude.* Verg. Sibī cōnsciī culpae, *conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

Note 2.—For the Genitive with adjectives used *substantively*, and with adjectives meaning *like*, *unlike*, *near*, *belonging to*, etc., see **391**, II., 4.

Note 3.—For the Genitive with *dignus* and *indignus*, see **421**, note 3.

II. The Genitive is used with Verbals in **āx**, and with Present Participles used adjectively:

Virtūtum ferāx, *productive of virtues.* Liv. Tenāx prōpositī, *tenacious* (steadfast) *of purpose.* Hor. Amāns patriae, *fond of his country.*[2] Cic. Fugiēns labōris, *shunning labor.* Caes.

III. In the *poets* and in *late prose writers*, especially in Tacitus, the Genitive is used—

1. With adjectives of almost every variety of signification, simply *to define their application:*[3]

Aevī matūrus, *mature in age.* Verg. Ingēns vīrium, *mighty in strength.* Sall. Sērī studiōrum, *late in studies.* Hor. Integer aevī, *unimpaired in age* (i. e., in the bloom of youth). Verg. Aeger animī,[4] *afflicted in spirit.* Liv. Anxius animī,[4] *anxious in mind.* Sall. Fīdēns animī, *confident in spirit.* Verg.

2. With a few adjectives, *to denote cause:*

Laetus labōrum, *pleased with the labors.* Verg. Nōtus animī paternī, *distinguished for paternal affection.* Hor.

---

dēns; perītus, imperītus, rudis, īnsuētus; memor, immemor, etc.; (3) *adfīnis, cōnsors, exsors, expers, particeps, manifestus, noxius; plēnus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, vacuus; potēns, impotēns, compos*, etc.

[1] See foot-note 3, page 210.

[2] *Amāns patriae*, 'fond of his country,' represents the affection as *permanent* and *constant;* whereas the participial construction, *amāns patriam*, 'loving his country,' designates a *particular instance* or *act.*

[3] Like the Ablative of Specification; see **424.** For *vōtī reus*, 'bound to fulfil a vow,' see **410**, III., note **2**.

[4] Probably a *Locative* in origin, as *animīs* is used in similar instances in the plural.

400. Adjectives which usually take the Genitive, sometimes admit other constructions:

1. The DATIVE:

Manūs subitīs avidae, *hands ready for sudden events.* Tac. Īnsuētus mōribus Rōmānīs, *unaccustomed to Roman manners.* Liv. Facinorī mēns cōnscia, *a mind conscious of crime.* Cic. See **391**.

2. The ACCUSATIVE WITH A PREPOSITION:

Īnsuētus ad pūgnam, *unaccustomed to battle.* Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, *productive for all things.* Plin. Avidus in novās rēs, *eager for new things.* Liv.

3. The ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION:

Prūdēns in jūre cīvīlī, *learned in civil law.* Cic. Hīs dē rēbus cōnscius, *aware of these things.* Cic. Vacuus de dēfēnsōribus, *destitute of defenders.* Caes. Cūrīs vacuus, *free from cares.* Cic. Refertus bonīs, *replete with blessings.* Cic. See **414**, III.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive:

Omnia *hostium* erant, *all things belonged* TO THE ENEMY.[1] Liv. Senātus *Hannibalis* erat, *the senate was* HANNIBAL'S (i. e., in his interest). Liv. *Jūdicis* est vērum sequī, *to follow the truth is the duty* OF A JUDGE.[2] Cic. Parvī pretiī est, *it is of small value.* Cic. Tyrus mare suae diciōnis[3] fēcit, *Tyre brought the sea under* (lit., made the sea OF) *her sway.* Curt.

NOTE 1.—For a noun predicated of another noun denoting the *same* person or thing, see **362**; **373**, 1.

NOTE 2.—A PREDICATE GENITIVE is often nearly or quite equivalent to a *Predicate adjective* (**360**, note 1): *hominis est* = *hūmānum est*, 'it is the mark of a man,' 'is human'; *stultī est* = *stultum est*, 'it is foolish.' The Genitive is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sapientis est* (for *sapiēns est*), 'it is the part of a wise man,' 'is wise.'

NOTE 3.—Possessive pronouns in agreement with the subject supply the place of the Predicate Genitive[4] of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tuī*) vidēre, *it is your duty to see.* Cic.

NOTE 4.—*Aequī*, *bonī*, and *rĕliquī* occur as Predicate Genitives in such expressions as *aequī facere*, *aequī bonīque facere*, *bonī cōnsulere*, 'to take in good part,' and *rĕliquī facere*, 'to leave':

Aequī bonīque faciō, *I take it in good part.* Ter. Mīlitēs nihil rĕliquī victīs fēcēre, *the soldiers left nothing to the vanquished.* Sall.

---

[1] Literally, *were* OF THE ENEMY, or *were* THE ENEMY'S.

[2] Literally, *is* OF A JUDGE.

[3] Here *diciōnis*, denoting a different thing from *mare*, of which it is predicated, is put in the Genitive.

[4] This is another illustration of the close relationship between a Predicate Genitive and a Predicate Adjective; see also note 2.

402. The PREDICATE GENITIVE is generally *Possessive* or *Descriptive*, rarely *Partitive:*

Haec *hostium* erant, *these things were* OF (belonged to) THE ENEMY. Liv. Est *imperātōris* superāre, *it is the duty* OF A COMMANDER *to conquer.* Caes. Summae facultātis est, *he is* (a man) *of the highest ability.* Cic. Opera māgnī fuit, *the assistance was of great value.* Nep. Fīēs nōbilium fontium,[1] *you will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

403. The PREDICATE GENITIVE occurs most frequently with *sum* and *faciō*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming, regarding*, etc.:

Ōram Rōmānae diciōnis fēcit, *he brought the coast under* (made the coast of) *Roman rule.* Liv. Hominis vidētur, *it seems to be the mark of a man.* Cic. See also examples under **401.**

NOTE.—Transitive verbs of this class admit in the active an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the first example.

404. The PREDICATE GENITIVE of PRICE or VALUE is used with *sum* and with verbs of *valuing:*

Māgnī sunt tuae litterae, *your letters are* OF GREAT VALUE. Cic. *Plūris* esse, *to be* OF GREATER VALUE. Cic. Parvī pendere, *to think lightly of.* Sall. Auctōritātem tuam māgnī aestimō, *I prize your authority highly.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—With these verbs the *Genitive of price* or *value* is generally an *adjective*,[2] as in the examples, but *pretiī* is sometimes used:

Parvī pretiī est, *it is of little value.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Nihilī* and, in familiar discourse, a few other Genitives[3] occur:

Nihilī facere, *to take no account of.* Cic. Nōn floccī pendere, *not to care a straw* (lock of wool) *for.* Plaut.

405. *Tantī, quantī, plūris*, and *minōris* are also used as GENITIVES OF PRICE with verbs of *buying* and *selling:*[4]

Ēmit hortōs *tantī, he purchased the gardens* AT SO GREAT A PRICE. Cic. Vēndō frūmentum *plūris, I sell grain* AT A HIGHER PRICE. Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Ablative of price*, see **422.**

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used—

I. With **misereor** and **miserēscō**:

Miserēre labōrum, *pity the labors.* Verg. Miserēscite rēgis, *pity the king.* Verg.

---

[1] *Facultātis* and *māgnī* are *Descriptive*, but *fontium* is *Partitive.*

[2] The following adjectives are so used: *māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī; plūris, minōris; plūrimī, māximī*, and *minimī.*

[3] As *āssis, floccī, naucī*, and *pilī.*

[4] Observe that verbs of *buying* and *selling* admit the *Genitive of price* only when one of these adjectives is used. In other cases they take the *Ablative of price.*

II. With **recordor**, **meminī**, **reminīscor**, and **oblīvīscor**:[1]

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past.* Cic. Oblītus sum meī, *I have forgotten myself.* Ter. Flāgitiōrum recordārī, *to recollect base deeds.* Cic. Reminiscī virtūtis, *to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With **rēfert** and **interest**:

Illōrum rēfert, *it concerns them.* Sall. Interest omnium, *it is the interest of all.* Cic.

NOTE.—The expression, *Venit in mentem*, 'it occurs to mind,' is sometimes construed with the Genitive and sometimes with the Nominative:

Venit mihĭ Platōnis in mentem,[2] *the recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato.* Cic. Nōn venit in mentem pūgna, *does not the battle occur to your mind?* Liv.

407. Verbs of REMEMBERING and FORGETTING often take the *Accusative* instead of the *Genitive:*

Memineram Paullum, *I remembered Paullus.* Cic. Triumphōs recordārī, *to recall triumphs.* Cic. Ea reminiscere, *remember those things.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The *Accusative* is the common construction (1) with *recordor* and (2) with the other verbs, if it is a neuter pronoun or adjective, or designates an object remembered by a contemporary or an eye-witness.

NOTE 2.—The Ablative with *dē* is rare:

Recordāre dē cēteris, *bethink yourself of the others.* Cic.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *rēfert* and *interest* is as follows:

I. The PERSON interested is denoted—

1. By the *Genitive*, as under the rule.

2. By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive.*[3] This takes the place of the *Genitive of personal pronouns:*

Meā rēfert, *it concerns me.* Ter. Interest meā, *it interests me.* Cic.

3. By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with* or *without Ad;* but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person:

Quid rēfert vīventī, *what does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad mē rēfert, *it concerns me.* Plaut.

II. The SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun:

---

[1] The Genitive with verbs of *pitying*, *remembering*, and *forgetting* probably depends upon the substantive idea contained in the verbs themselves; see *Internal Object*, 371, I., 2. Thus, *meminī* with the Accusative means *I remember distinctly* and *fully*, generally used of an *eye-witness* or of a *contemporary;* but with a Genitive, it means *to have some recollection of.* With *rēfert* the Genitive depends upon *rē*, the Ablative of *rēs*, contained in the verb, and with *interest* it may be a Predicate Genitive, or may simply follow the analogy of *rēfert.*

[2] With *venit in mentem*, the Genitive *Platōnis* supplies the place of subject. It probably limits the pronominal subject already contained in *venit*, as in every Latin verb, *it* or *that of Plato*, the *recollection* of Plato.

[3] See foot-note 1, above.

Interest omnium rēctē facere, *to do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hōc interest, *this interests you.* Cic.

III. The Degree of Interest is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Genitive of Value (**404**):

Vestrā māximē interest, *it especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *what does it concern us?* Cic. Māgnī interest meā, *it greatly interests me.* Cic.

IV. The Object or End for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative:

Ad honōrem nostrum interest, *it is important for our honor.* Cic.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

409. The Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing:*[1]

Tē *amīcitiae* commonefacit, *he reminds you* OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. Mīlitēs necessitātis monet, *he reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting:*[1]

Virōs *sceleris* arguis, *you accuse men* OF CRIME. Cic. Levitātis eum convincere, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvere injūriae eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. With *miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet,* and *piget:*[2]

Eōrum nōs miseret, *we pity* THEM (it moves our pity OF THEM). Cic. Cōnsiliī mē paenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Mē stultitiae meae pudet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

Note 1.—The *Genitive of the Thing* designates, with verbs of *reminding,* etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing,* etc., the crime, charge; and with *miseret, paenitet,* etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

Note 2.—The personal verbs included under this rule retain the *Genitive* in the *Passive:*

Accūsātus est *prōditiōnis, he was accused* OF TREASON. Nep.

---

[1] The Genitive with verbs of *reminding* and *admonishing* may be explained like that with verbs of *pitying, remembering,* and *forgetting;* see foot-note 1, page 214. With verbs of *accusing,* etc., the Genitive may also be explained in the same way, or may depend upon *nōmine, crīmine,* or *jūdiciō,* understood. Sometimes one of these nouns is expressed; see **410**, II., 1.

[2] The Genitive with *paenitet, pudet,* etc., like that with *venit in mentem* (see **406**, note, with foot-note), depends upon the impersonal subject contained in the verb. Thus, *tē haec pudent* means *these things shame you,* and *mē stultitiae meae pudet,* literally rendered, means *of my folly* (i. e., the thought of it, or something about it), *shames me.* The Genitive with *miseret* may be explained either in the same way, or like that with *misereor;* see foot-note 1, page 214.

Note 3.—In *judicial* language a few verbs not otherwise so used are treated as verbs of *accusing*. Thus *condīcō* occurs with the Genitive in Livy, I., 32.

410. Special Constructions.—The following deserve notice:

I. Verbs of Reminding and Admonishing sometimes take, instead of the Genitive—

1. The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud mē admonēs, *you admonish me* of that. Cic.

2. The *Ablative* with *dē*—*moneō* and its compounds generally so:

Dē proeliō vōs admonuī, *I have reminded you* of the battle. Cic.

II. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.—

1. The *Genitive* with *nōmine*, *crīmine*, *jūdiciō*, or some similar word:

Nōmine conjūrātiōnis damnātī sunt, *they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy*. Cic. Innocentem jūdiciō capitis arcessere, *to arraign an innocent man on a capital charge*. Cic.

2. The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id mē accūsās, *you accuse me of that*. Plaut.

3. The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *dē*:

Dē pecūniīs repetundīs damnātus est, *he was convicted of extortion*. Cic.

III. With verbs of Condemning, the *Penalty* is generally expressed by the *Ablative*,[1] or by the *Accusative with a preposition*, usually *ad*:

Tertiā parte damnārī, *to be condemned to forfeit a third of one's land*. Liv. Capite damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic. Morte multāre, *to punish with death*. Cic. Ad bestiās condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

Note 1.—In the poets the penalty is sometimes expressed by the Dative:

Mortī damnātus, *condemned to death*. Lucr.

Note 2.—The Genitive occurs in such special expressions as *capitis condemnāre*, 'to condemn to death'; *vōtī damnārī*, 'to be condemned to fulfil a vow' = 'to obtain a wish'; *damnārī longī labōris*, 'to be condemned to long labor'; *vōtī reus*[2] = *vōtī damnātus*, 'condemned to fulfil a vow':

Aliquem capitis condemnāre, *to condemn one to death*. Cic. Damnātus longī labōris, *condemned to long labor*. Hor.

IV. With Miseret, Paenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget, an *Infinitive* or *Clause* is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil*:

Mē paenitet vīxisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic. Tē haec pudent, *these things shame you*. Ter.

Note 1.—Like *miseret* are sometimes used *miserēscit*, *commiserēscit*, *miserētur*, *commiserētur*. Like *taedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

Note 2.—*Pudet* sometimes takes the Genitive of the person before whom one is ashamed:

Mē tuī pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. Pudet hominum, *it is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

---

[1] Regularly so when the penalty is a definite sum of money.

[2] Best explained as a substantive.

NOTE 3.—*Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object:
Pertaesus īgnāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction.* Suet.

V. Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive.[1] Thus—

1. Some verbs of *plenty* and *want*, as *compleō*, *impleō*,[1] *egeō*, *indigeō*, like adjectives of the same meaning (**399**, I., 3):

Virtūs exercitātiōnis indiget, *virtue requires exercise.* Cic. Auxiliī egēre, *to need aid.* Caes. Multitūdinem rēligiōnis implēvit,[2] *he inspired* (filled) *the multitude with religion.* Liv. Rērum satagere, *to be occupied with* (to do enough of) *business.* Ter.

2. Some verbs of *desire*, *emotion*, or *feeling*, like adjectives of the same meaning (**399**, I., 1):

Cupiunt tuī, *they desire you.* Plaut. Tuī testimōniī veritus, *fearing your testimony.* Cic. Animī[3] pendeō, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Discrucior animī, *I am troubled in spirit.* Plaut. Tē angis animī, *you make yourself anxious in mind.* Plaut. Dēsipere mentis, *to be foolish in mind*, or *mistaken in opinion.* Plaut.

3. A few verbs denoting *mastery* or *participation*, like adjectives of the same meaning (**399**, I., 3), *potior*,[4] *adipiscor*, *rēgnō*:

Siciliae potītus est, *he became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum adeptus est, *he obtained the power.* Tac. Rēgnāvit populōrum, *he was king of the peoples.* Hor.

4. In the *poets*, a few verbs[5] take the Genitive, instead of the Ablative of Separation or Cause (**413**):

Abstinēre īrārum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Labōrum dēcipitur, *he is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsine querēlārum, *cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistere pūgnae, *to desist from the battle.* Verg. Eum culpae līberāre, *to free him from blame* (i. e., to acquit him). Liv. Mīrārī labōrum, *to admire because of toils.* Verg. Damnī īnfectī prōmittere, *to give surety in view of expected damage.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Genitive of Gerunds* and *Gerundives*, see **542**, I.; **544**.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

411. The LATIN ABLATIVE performs the duties of three cases originally distinct:[6]

I. The ABLATIVE PROPER, denoting the relation FROM:

Expulsus est *patriā*, *he was banished* FROM HIS COUNTRY. Cic.

---

[1] Transitives of this class of course admit the Accusative with the Genitive.

[2] See **421**, II.

[3] *Animī* in such instances is probably a *Locative* in origin, as *animīs* is used in the same way in the plural. See foot-note on *animī*, **399**, III., 1.

[4] *Potior* takes the Genitive regularly when it means *to reduce to subjection.*

[5] As *abstineō*, *dēcipiō*, *dēsinō*, *dēsistō*, *levō*, *līberō*, etc.; *mīror*, etc.

[6] These three cases, still recognized in the Sanskrit, originally had distinct forms; but in the Latin, under the influence of phonetic change and decay, these forms have

II. The **Instrumental**, denoting the relation WITH, BY:

Sōl omnia *lūce* collustrat, *the sun illumines all things* WITH ITS LIGHT. Cic.

III. The **Locative**, denoting the relation IN, AT:

Sē *oppidō* tenet, *he keeps himself* IN THE TOWN. Cic.

I. Ablative Proper.

RULE XXI.—Place from which.

412. The Place from which is denoted by the Ablative:

I. Generally *with a preposition*—**ā, ab, dē,** or **ex**:

***Ab urbe* proficiscitur, *he sets out* FROM THE CITY. Caes. Dē forō, *from the forum.* Cic. Ex Africā, *from* (out of) *Africa.* Liv.**

II. In Names of Towns *without a preposition*:[1]

Platōnem *Athēnīs* arcessīvit, *he summoned Plato* FROM ATHENS. Nep. Fūgit Corinthō, *he fled from Corinth.* Cic.

1. Many names of *islands*, and the Ablatives *domō* and *rūre*, are used like names of towns:

***Domō* profūgit, *he fled* FROM HOME. Cic. *Dēlō* proficiscitur, *he proceeds* FROM DELOS. Cic.**

2. The Ablative of places not towns is sometimes used *without a preposition*, especially in poetry:

Cadere *nūbibus*, *to fall* FROM THE CLOUDS. Verg. Lābī *equō*, *to fall* FROM A HORSE. Hor.

3. The *preposition* is sometimes used with names of towns, especially for *emphasis* or *contrast*:

***Ab Ardeā* Rōmam vēnērunt, *they came* FROM ARDEA *to Rome.* Liv.**

Note.—The preposition is generally used when the *vicinity*, rather than the town itself, is meant:

Discēssit ā Brundisiō, *he departed from Brundisium* (i. e., from the port). Caes.

RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the *Ablative with* or *without a preposition*:

Separation.—Caedem *ā vōbīs* dēpellō, *I ward off slaughter* FROM YOU. Cic. Hunc *ā tuīs ārīs* arcēbis, *you will keep this one* FROM YOUR ALTARS.

---

become identical, and their uses have been blended in a single case called the Ablative. On the general subject of the *Ablative* and its *use*, see Merguet, pp. 109–117; Delbrück; Hübschmann, pp. 82–106; Holzweissig, pp. 28 and 75; Draeger, I., pp. 494–571; Roby, II., pp. 68–115.

[1] This was the original construction for all places alike.

Cic. Expulsus est patriā, *he was banished from his country.* Cic. Urbem commeātū prīvāvit, *he deprived the city of supplies.* Nep. Cōnātū dēstitērunt, *they desisted from the attempt.* Caes. Vāgīnā ēripe ferrum, *draw your sword from its scabbard.* Verg.

Source.—Hōc audīvī *dē parente meō*, *I heard this* FROM MY FATHER. Cic. Oriundī *ab Sabīnīs*, *descended* FROM THE SABINES. Liv. Statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze.* Cic. Abiete puppis, *the stern made of fir.* Verg. Jove nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

Cause.—Ars *ūtilitāte* laudātur, *an art is praised* BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS. Cic. Lacrimō *gaudiō*, *I weep* FOR (on account of) JOY. Ter. Vestrā hōc causā volēbam, *I desired this on your account.* Cic. Rogātū vēneram, *I had come by request.* Cic. Ex vulnere aeger, *ill in consequence of his wound.* Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, *he was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep.

Note 1.—*Transitive Verbs* admit an Accusative with the Ablative; see examples.

Note 2.—The *prepositions* most frequently used with the Ablative of Separation and Source are *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ē*, *ex*, and with the Ablative of Cause, *dē*, *ē*, *ex*.

Note 3.—With the *Ablative of Separation* the preposition is more freely used when the separation is *local* and *literal* than when it is *figurative*: *dē forō*, 'from the forum'; *ex Asiā*, 'out of Asia'; but *levāre metū*, 'to relieve from fear'; *cōnātū dēsistere*, 'to desist from the undertaking.'

Note 4.—For the *Genitive* instead of the *Ablative of Separation*, see **410**, V., 4; and for the *Dative* similarly used, see **385**, 2.

414. The Ablative of Separation designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is generally used *without a preposition* in the following situations:

I. With *verbs* meaning *to relieve*, *deprive*, *need*, *be without*:[1]

Levā mē *hōc onere*, *relieve me* OF THIS BURDEN. Cic. *Vinclīs* exsolvere, *to release* FROM CHAINS. Plaut. Molestiā expedīre, *to relieve of trouble.* Cic. Mīlitem praedā fraudāre, *to defraud the soldiery of booty.* Liv. Nōn egeō medicīnā, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. Vacāre culpā, *to be free from fault.* Cic. See also examples under **413**.

II. With *moveō* in special expressions:[2]

Signum movēre *locō*, *to move the standard* FROM THE PLACE. Cic.

III. With *adjectives* meaning *free from*, *destitute of*:[3]

Animus līber *cūrā*, *a mind free* FROM CARE. Cic. Expers *metū*, *free* FROM FEAR. Cic. Urbs nūda praesidiō, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic.

Note.—For a similar use of the Genitive,[4] see **399**, I., 3.

IV. With **opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need:*

---

[1] As *expediō*, *exonerō*, *levō*, *relevō*, *līberō*, *relaxō*, *solvō*, *absolvō*, *exsolvō*; *exuō*, *fraudō*, *nūdō*, *orbō*, *spoliō*, *prīvō*, etc.

[2] As in *movēre locō*, *movēre senātū*, *movēre tribū*, *movēre vestīgiō*.

[3] *Ā* or *ab* is generally used with names of persons and sometimes with other words.

[4] *Egēnus*, *indigus*, *sterilis*, and some others are freely used with the Genitive; see **399**, I., 3.

Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est, *we need* (there is to us a need of) YOUR AUTHORITY. Cic. Ūsus est tuā mihī *operā*, *I need your* AID. Plaut.

NOTE 1.—In most other instances a preposition accompanies the Ablative of Separation, though often omitted in poetry and in late prose.

NOTE 2.—*Opus est* and *ūsus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing; see examples.

NOTE 3.—With *opus* and *ūsus*, the Ablative is sometimes a perfect participle, or, with *opus*, a noun and a participle:

Cōnsultō opus est, *there is need of deliberation.* Sall. Opus fuit Hirtiō conventō, *there was need of meeting Hirtius.* Cic.

NOTE 4.—With *opus est*, rarely with *ūsus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nōbīs opus est, *we need a leader*, or *a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us.* Cic. Temporis opus est, *there is need of time.* Liv. Opus est cibum, *there is need of food.* Plaut.

2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est tē valēre, *it is necessary that you be well.* Cic. Opus est ut lavem, *it is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. Dictū est opus, *it is necessary to be told.* Ter.

415. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE more commonly takes a preposition; see examples under **413**. It includes *agency*, *parentage*, *material*, etc.

I. The *agent* or *author* of an action is designated by the *Ablative* with **ā** or **ab**:

Occīsus est ā Thēbānīs, *he was slain by the Thebans.* Nep. Occidit ā fortī Achille, *he was slain* (lit., *fell*) *by brave Achilles.* Ov.

1. The Ablative without a preposition may be used of a *person*, regarded not as the *author* of the action, but as the *means* by which it is effected:

Cornua *Numidīs*[1] firmat, *he strengthens the wings* WITH NUMIDIANS. Liv.

NOTE 1.—The Accusative with *per* may be used of the *person through whose agency* the action is effected:

Ab Oppianicō *per Fabriciōs*[1] factum est, *it was accomplished by Oppianicus* THROUGH THE AGENCY OF THE FABRICII. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For the *Dative of Agent*, see **388**.

2. When anything is personified as agent, the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vincī ā voluptāte, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. Ā fortūnā datam occāsiōnem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

II. PERFECT PARTICIPLES denoting parentage or birth—*genitus*, *nātus*, *ortus*, etc.—generally take the Ablative without a preposition:

Jove nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic. Tantalō prōgnātus, *descended from Tantalus.* Cic. Parentibus nātī humilibus, *born of humble parents.* Cic.

---

[1] Here note the distinction between the Ablative with *ab* (*ab Oppianicō*), denoting the *author* of the action, the Accusative with *per* (*per Fabriciōs*), the person through whose agency the action was performed, and the Ablative alone (*Numidīs*), the means of the action.

Note.—In designating Remote Ancestry, *ā* or *ab* is generally used; but after *nātus* and *ortus*, the Ablatives *familiā*, *genere*, *locō*, and *stirpe*, when modified by an adjective, omit the preposition:

Oriundī ab Sabīnīs, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Ortī ab Germānīs, *sprung from the Germans*. Caes. Nōbilī genere nātus, *born of a noble family*. Sall.

III. With the Ablative of Material, **ē** or **ex** is generally used, though often omitted, especially in poetry:

Statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Pōcula ex aurō, *cups of gold*. Cic. Aere cavō clipeus, *a shield of concave bronze*. Verg. Abiete puppis, *the stern made of fir*. Verg.

Note 1.—A special use of the Ablative, kindred to the above, is seen with *faciō*, *fīō*, and *sum* in such expressions as the following:

Quid hōc homine faciās, *what are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid illō fīet, *what will become of him?* Cic. Quid tē futūrum est, *what will become of you?* Cic.

Note 2.—The Dative or the Ablative with *dē* occurs in nearly the same sense:

Quid huic hominī faciās, *what are you to do with* (or *to*) *this man?* Cic. Quid dē tē futūrum est, *what will become of you?* Cic.

416. The Ablative of Cause is generally used without a preposition.[1] It designates that *by reason of which*, *because of which*, *in accordance with which* anything is or is done, and is used both with *verbs* and with *adjectives*;[2] see examples under **413**.

I. Cause is sometimes denoted—

1) By the Ablative with **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, **prae**:

Ab eādem superbiā[3] nōn venīre, *not to come because of the same haughtiness*. Liv. Ex vulnere[3] aeger, *ill in consequence of his wound*. Cic. Ex invidiā labōrāre, *to suffer from unpopularity*. Cic. Nōn prae lacrimīs scrībere, *not to write in consequence of tears*. Cic.

2) By the Accusative with **ob**, **per**, **propter**:

Per aetātem inūtilēs, *useless because of* (lit., *through*) *their age*. Caes. In oppidum propter timōrem sēsē recipiunt, *they betake themselves into the city on account of their fear*. Caes.

Note 1.—With transitive verbs the *motive* which prompts the action is often expressed by the *Ablative with a perfect passive participle:*

Rēgnī cupiditāte[4] inductus conjūrātiōnem fēcit, *influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy*. Caes.

Note 2.—That *in accordance with which* anything is done is often denoted by the *Ablative with ē* or *ex:*

---

[1] The *Ablative of Cause* is very far removed from the original meaning of the Ablative, and indeed in some of its uses was probably derived from the *Instrumental Ablative;* see **418**.

[2] This includes such Ablatives as *meō jūdiciō*, in accordance with my opinion; *meā sententiā*, *jūssū*, *impulsū*, *monitū*, etc.; *causā*, *grātiā;* also the Ablative with *dēsipiō*, *doleō*, *exsiliō*, *exsultō*, *gaudeō*, *labōrō*, *lacrimō*, *laetor*, *triumphō*, etc.

[3] See note 2, foot-note.

[4] Here *cupiditāte* must be construed with *inductus*, yet it really expresses the *cause* of the action, *fēcit*.

Rēs *ex foedere* repetuntur, *restitution is demanded* IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TREATY. Liv. Diēs *ex praeceptīs tuīs* āctus, *a day passed* IN ACCORDANCE WITH YOUR PRECEPTS. Cic. Ex vēritāte aestimāre, *to estimate in accordance with the truth.* Cic. Ex auctōritāte [1] senātūs cōnfirmāre, *to ratify on the authority of the senate.* Liv.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative: [2]

Nihil est amābilius *virtūte*,[3] *nothing is more lovely* THAN VIRTUE. Cic. Quid est melius *bonitāte*,[3] *what is better* THAN GOODNESS? Cic. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem esse terrā,[3] *we know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amīcitia, quā nihil melius habēmus, *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. Lacrimā nihil citius ārēscit, *nothing dries sooner than a tear.* Cic. Potiōrem īrā salūtem habet, *he regards safety as better than anger.* Liv.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam *Britannia* exīstimātur, *Ireland is considered smaller than* BRITAIN. Caes. Agrīs quam *urbī* terribilior, *more terrible to the country than* TO THE CITY. Liv.

NOTE 1.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. The Ablative is freely used for *quam* with a *Subject Nominative* or *Subject Accusative*—regularly so for *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative of a *relative pronoun*, as in the fourth example under the rule. In other cases *quam* is retained in the best prose, though sometimes omitted in poetry.

NOTE 2.—After *plūs, minus, amplius*, or *longius*, in expressions of number and quantity, *quam* is often omitted without influence upon the construction; [4] sometimes also after *mājor, minor*, etc.:

Tēcum plūs annum vīxit, *he lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo mīlia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

NOTE 3.—Instead of the Ablative after a comparative, a preposition with its case, as *ante, prae, praeter*, or *suprā*, is sometimes used:

Ante aliōs immānior, *more monstrous than* (before) *the others.* Verg.

NOTE 4.—ALIUS, involving a comparison, *other than*, is sometimes used with the Ablative:

---

[1] These and similar Ablatives with prepositions show the transition from *source* to *cause*, and illustrate the manner in which the latter was developed from the former. The Ablative with the preposition seems in general to retain something of the idea of *source.*

[2] This Ablative furnishes the *standard* of comparison—*that from which one starts.* Thus, if *virtue* is taken as the standard of what is lovely, nothing is more so. This Ablative is sometimes explained as instrumental (**418**), but that view is controverted by a similar use of the Greek Genitive, which does not contain the instrumental Ablative, and of the Sanskrit Ablative, which is often distinct from the instrumental.

[3] *Virtūte = quam virtūs; bonitāte = quam bonitās; terrā = quam terram* (sc. *esse*).

[4] So in expressions of age: *nātus plūs trīgintā annōs*, 'having been born more than thirty years.' The same meaning is also expressed by *mājor trīgintā annōs nātus, ājor trīgintā annīs, mājor quam trīgintā annōrum*, or *mājor trīgintā annōrum.*

Quaerit alia hīs, *he seeks other things than these.* Plaut. Alius sapiente, *other than a wise man.* Hor.

Note 5.—*Quam prō* denotes disproportion, and many Ablatives—*opīniōne, spē, aequō, jūstō, solitō*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedēs quam prō victōriā, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spē vēnit, *he came later than was hoped* (than hope). Liv. Plūs aequō, *more than is fair.* Cic.

2. With *Comparatives*, the Measure of Difference,[1] the amount by which one thing surpasses another, is denoted by the Ablative:

Hibernia *dīmidiō* minor quam Britannia, *Ireland smaller* by one half *than Britain.* Caes.

II. Instrumental Ablative.

418. The Instrumental Ablative denotes both *Accompaniment* and *Means.*[2]

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used—

I. To denote Accompaniment. It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vīvit *cum Balbō, he lives* with Balbus. Cic. Cum gladiīs stant, *they stand with swords* (i. e., armed with swords). Cic.

II. To denote Characteristic or Quality. It is then modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulēscēns, *a youth* of the highest virtue. Caes. Quīdam māgnō capite, ōre rubicundō, māgnīs pedibus, *a certain one with a large head, with a red face, and with large feet.* Plaut. Catilīna ingeniō malō fuit, *Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall. Ūrī sunt speciē taurī, *the urus is* (lit., *the uri are*) *of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.

Note.—The Ablative, when used to denote *characteristic* or *quality*, may be called either the *Descriptive Ablative* or the *Ablative of Characteristic.*

III. To denote Manner.[3] It then takes the preposition **cum**, or is modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

---

[1] See **423.**

[2] The idea of *means* was probably developed from that of *accompaniment*, as seen in such expressions as *cum omnibus copiīs sequitur*, 'he pursues with all his forces'—*accompaniment*, which readily suggests *means*, as he employs his *forces* as *means; equīs iērunt*, 'they went with horses'—*accompaniment* and *means.* Some scholars have conjectured that originally *accompaniment* and *means* were expressed by separate case-forms, but of this there seems to be little proof.

[3] Note the close connection between these three uses of the Ablative—the first designating an *attendant* person or thing—*with Balbus, with swords;* the second, an *attendant* quality—a youth *with* (attended by) *the highest virtue;* the third, an *attend-*

Cum virtūte vīxit, *he lived* VIRTUOUSLY. Cic. *Summā vī* proelium commīsērunt, *they joined battle* WITH THE GREATEST VIOLENCE. Nep. Duōbus modīs fit, *it is done in two ways.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Ablative of *manner* sometimes takes *cum* even when modified by an adjective:

Māgnā cum cūrā scripsit, *he wrote* WITH GREAT CARE. Cic.

NOTE 2.—But the Ablative of a few words is sometimes used without *cum*, even when unattended by an adjective, as *jūre*, 'rightly'; *injūriā*, 'unjustly'; *ordine*, 'in an orderly manner'; *ratiōne*, 'systematically'; *silentiō*, 'in silence,' etc.[1]

NOTE 3.—*Per*, with the Accusative, sometimes denotes MANNER: *per vim*, 'violently'; *per lūdum*, 'sportively.'

1. On the Ablative of Accompaniment, observe—

1) That *cum* is often omitted—(1) especially when the Ablative is qualified by an adjective, and (2) after *jungō*, *misceō*, and their compounds:

Ingentī exercitū profectus est, *he set out with a large army.* Liv. Improbitās scelere juncta, *depravity joined with crime.* Cic.

2) That the *Ablative with cum* is often used of *hostile encounters:*

Cum Gallīs certāre, *to fight with the Gauls.* Sall. Nōbīscum hostēs contendērunt, *the enemy contended with us.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Dative* with verbs denoting *union* or *contention*, see **385**, 4, 3).

2. On the Descriptive Ablative, as compared with the Descriptive Genitive, observe—

1) That in descriptions involving *size* and *number*, the Genitive is used; see examples under **396**, V.

2) That in most descriptions involving *external characteristics*, *parts of the body, and the like*, the Ablative is used, as in the second and fourth examples under **419**, II.

3) That in other instances either case may be used.

4) That the Ablative, like the Genitive, may be used either with nouns, as in the first and second examples under **419**, II., or with verbs in the predicate, as in the other examples.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means.

420. Instrument and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus taurī sē tūtantur, *bulls defend themselves* WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. *Glōriā* dūcitur, *he is led* BY GLORY. Cic. Sōl omnia lūce collustrat, *the sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Lacte vīvunt, *they live upon milk.* Caes. Tellūs saucia vomeribus, *the earth turned* (wounded) *with the ploughshare.* Ovid.

---

ant circumstance—to live *with virtue, virtuously.* Compare *cum Balbō vīvere* and *cum virtūte vīvere.*

[1] But perhaps most Ablatives which never take *cum* are best explained as the Ablative of *cause*—as *lēge*, 'according to law'; *cōnsuētūdine*, 'according to custom'; *cōnsiliō*, 'on purpose,' etc.

NOTE.—This Ablative is of frequent occurrence, and is used both with *verbs* and with *adjectives.*

1. The following expressions deserve notice:

1) Quadrāgintā hostiīs sacrificāre, *to sacrifice with forty victims.* Liv. Facere vitulā, *to make a sacrifice of* (lit., WITH) *a female calf.* Verg.

2) Fidibus cantāre, *to play upon a stringed instrument.* Cic. Pilā lūdere, *to play at ball* (lit., WITH THE BALL). Hor.

3) Aurēliā viā proficīscī, *to set out by the Aurelian way.* Cic. Eōdem itinere īre, *to go by the same road.* Liv. Esquilīnā portā ingredī, *to enter by the Esquiline gate.* Liv.

4) Virtūte praeditus, *possessed of virtue.* Cic. Legiōnēs pulchrīs armīs praeditās, *legions furnished with beautiful arms.* Plaut.

2. *Adficiō with the Ablative* forms a very common circumlocution: *honōre adficere* = honōrāre, *to honor; admīrātiōne adficere* = admīrārī, *to admire; poenā adficere* = pūnīre, *to punish,* etc.:

Omnēs laetitiā adficit, *he gladdens all.* Cic.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.[1]

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds:

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use* VERY MANY THINGS. Cic. *Magnā* est *praedā* potītus, *he obtained* GREAT BOOTY. Nep. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, *they lived upon milk and flesh.* Sall.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Vīlla abundat *lacte, cāseō, melle; the villa abounds* IN MILK, CHEESE, *and* HONEY. Cic. Urbs referta *cōpiīs, a city filled* WITH SUPPLIES. Cic. Virtūte praeditus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic. Deus bonīs explēvit mundum, *God has filled the world with blessings.* Cic.

III. With **dīgnus, indīgnus,**[2] and **contentus**:

Dīgnī sunt *amīcitiā, they are worthy* OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. Vir *patre* dīgnus, *a man worthy* OF HIS FATHER. Cic. Honōre indīgnissimus, *most unworthy of honor.* Cic. Nātūra parvō contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Transitive verbs of Plenty[3] take the Accusative and Ablative:

Armīs nāvēs onerat, *he loads the ships with arms.* Sall. See also the last example under **421,** II.

NOTE 2.—*Dīgnor,* as a *Passive* verb meaning 'to be deemed worthy,' takes the Ablative; but as a *Deponent* verb meaning 'to deem worthy,' used only in poetry and late prose, it takes the Accusative and Ablative:

---

[1] This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means:* thus, *ūtor,* 'I use,' 'I serve myself *by means of*'; *fruor,* 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself *with*'; *vescor,* 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself *with,*' etc.

[2] The nature of the Ablative with *dīgnus* and *indīgnus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental;* see Delbrück, p. 72; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

[3] Transitive verbs of *plenty* mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as *cumulō, compleō, impleō, imbuō, īnstruō, onerō, ōrnō,* etc.

Honōre dīgnātī sunt, *they have been deemed worthy of honor.* Cic. Mē dīgnor honōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Verg.

Note 3.—*Dignus* and *indignus* occur with the Genitive:

Dīgnus salūtis, *worthy of safety.* Plaut. Indīgnus avōrum, *unworthy of their ancestors.* Verg.

Note 4.—*Ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Ūtor* admits two Ablatives of the same person or thing:

Mē ūtētur patre, *he will find* (use) *me a father.* Ter.

Note 5.—For the *Genitive* with *potior*, see **410**, V., 3. For the *Genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *plenty*, and for the *Accusative and Genitive* with *transitive* verbs of *plenty*, see **410**, V., 1, with foot-note, and **399**, I., 3.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.

422. Price is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vēndidit *aurō* patriam, *he sold his country* FOR GOLD. Verg. Condūxit *māgnō* domum, *he hired a house* AT A HIGH PRICE. Cic. Multō sanguine Poenīs vīctōria stetit, *the victory cost the Carthaginians* (stood to the Carthaginians at) *much blood.* Liv. Quīnquāgintā talentīs aestimārī, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vīle est vīgintī minīs, *it is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

Note 1.—The Ablative of Price is used (1) with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *hiring*, *letting*; (2) *of costing*, *of being cheap* or *dear*;[1] (3) of valuing; (4) with adjectives of value.[1]

Note 2.—With verbs of Exchanging—*mūtō*, *commūtō*, etc.—(1) the thing *received* is generally treated as the *price*, as with verbs of *selling*, but (2) sometimes the thing *given* is treated as the *price*, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Ablative with *cum*:

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *he exchanged war* FOR PEACE. Sall. Exsilium *patriā* mūtāvit, *he exchanged* HIS COUNTRY *for exile.* Curt. Cum patriae cāritāte glōriam commūtāvit, *he exchanged love of country for glory.* Cic.

Note 3.—For the Genitive of Price, see **405**.

RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference.

423. The Measure of Difference is denoted by the Ablative:

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, *they make the month* ONE DAY *longer* (longer BY ONE DAY). Cic. *Biduō* mē antecēssit, *he preceded me* BY TWO DAYS. Cic. Sōl multīs partibus mājor est quam terra, *the sun is very much* (lit., BY MANY PARTS) *larger than the earth.* Cic.

Note 1.—The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *multum rōbustior*, 'much more robust.'

Note 2.—The Ablative of *difference* includes the Ablative of *distance* (**379**, 2), and the Ablative with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (**430**).

---

[1] As *stō*, *cōnstō*, *liceō*, *sum*, etc.; *cārus*, *vēnālis*, etc.

RULE XXIX.—Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application:

Agēsilāus *nōmine*, nōn *potestāte* fuit rēx, *Agesilaus was king* IN NAME, *not* IN POWER. Nep. Claudus *alterō pede*, *lame* IN ONE FOOT. Nep. Mōribus similēs, *similar in character*. Cic. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *they surpass the other Gauls in courage*. Caes.

NOTE 1.—This ABLATIVE shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true: thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name*.

NOTE 2.—For the ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION, see **378**.

III. LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

RULE XXX.—Place in which.

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative*[1] *with the preposition* **in**:

Hannibal *in Ītaliā* fuit, *Hannibal was* IN ITALY. Nep. In nostrīs castrīs, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *on the Appian way*. Cic.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*,[2] if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative*:

Rōmae fuit, *he was* AT ROME. Cic. *Corinthī* puerōs docēbat, *he taught boys* AT CORINTH. Cic. *Athēnīs* fuit, *he was* AT ATHENS. Cic. Hŏc facis Argīs, *you do this at Argos*. Hor. Karthāgine rēgēs creābantur, *kings were elected* (created) *at Carthage*. Nep. Gādibus vīxit, *he lived at Gades*. Cic.

NOTE.—For the construction with verbs meaning *to collect*, *to come together*, and with those meaning *to place*, see **380**, note.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is often used without a preposition:

1) When the idea of *means*, *manner*, or *cause* is combined with that of *place*:[3]

Castrīs sē tenuit, *he kept himself* IN CAMP. Caes. Aliquem *tectō* recipere, *to receive any one* IN ONE'S OWN HOUSE. Cic. *Proeliō* cadere, *to fall* IN BATTLE. Caes. Adulēscentibus dēlectārī, *to take pleasure in the young*. Cic. Suā victōriā glōriantur, *they glory in their victory*. Caes. Nūllō officiō assuēfactī, *trained in no duty*. Caes.

---

[1] The learner will remember that the *Locative Ablative* does not differ in *form* from any other Ablative; see **411**.

[2] See **48**, 4; **51**, 8; **66**, 4. The Locative was the original construction in all names of places.

[3] In some cases *place* and *means* are so combined that it is difficult to determine which is the original conception.

Note.—The Ablative is generally used with *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*, *nītor*, *innītor*, and *frētus:*
Nēmō fortūnae stabilitāte cōnfīdit, *no one trusts* (confides in) *the stability of fortune*. Cic. Salūs vēritāte nītitur, *safety rests upon truth*. Cic. Frētus amīcīs, *relying upon his friends*. Liv.

2) When the idea of *place* is *figurative* rather than *literal:*

Nova *pectore* versat cōnsilia, *she devises* (turns over) *new plans* IN HER BREAST. Verg. Stāre *jūdiciīs*, *to abide* BY (stand IN) THE DECISIONS. Cic. Prōmissīs manēre, *to remain true to promises* (lit., *remain* IN). Verg. Pendēre animīs,[1] *to be perplexed in mind*. Cic. Intimīs sēnsibus angī, *to be troubled in one's inmost feelings*. Cic. Ferōx bellō, *valiant in war*. Hor. Jūre perītus, *skilled in law*. Cic.

2. The Ablatives *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus*, *dextrā*, *laevā*, *sinistrā*, *terrā*, and *marī*, especially when qualified by an adjective, and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus*, are generally used without the preposition:

Aliquid *locō* pōnere, *to put anything* IN ITS PLACE. Cic. Terrā marīque, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōtā Graeciā, *in all Greece*. Nep.

Note 1.—The Ablative *librō*, 'book,' generally takes the preposition when used of a portion of a work, but omits it when used of an entire treatise:
In eō librō, *in this book* (referring to a portion of the work). Cic. Aliō librō, *in another work*. Cic.

Note 2.—Other Ablatives sometimes occur without the preposition, especially when qualified by *omnis*, *medius*, or *ūniversus:*
Omnibus oppidīs, *in all the towns*. Caes.

Note 3.—In *poetry* the Locative Ablative is often used without the preposition:
Lūcīs opācīs, *in shady groves*. Verg. Silvīs agrīsque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov. Theātrīs, *in the theatres*. Hor. Ferre umerō, *to bear upon the shoulder*. Verg.

3. ABLATIVE FOR THE LOCATIVE.—Instead of the Locative in names of towns the Ablative is used, with or without a preposition—

1) When the proper name is qualified by an adjective or adjective pronoun:
In ipsā Alexandrīā,[2] *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longā Albā, *at Alba Longa*. Verg.

2) Sometimes when not thus modified:
In monte Albānō Lāvīniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv. In Alexandrīā,[2] *at Alexandria*. Liv.

Note.—The following *special constructions* deserve notice:
In oppidō Citiō,[3] *in the town Citium*. Nep. Albae,[4] in urbe opportūnā, *at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

---

[1] In the singular *animī* is generally used, a Locative probably both in form and in signification; see p. 211, foot-note 4.

[2] *At Alexandria* would regularly be expressed by the Locative, *Alexandrīae*.

[3] Here *Citiō* is in apposition with *oppidō*, the usual construction in such cases, though a Genitive limiting *oppidō* occurs: In oppidō Antiochīae, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic.

[4] A Locative may thus be followed by *in urbe*, or *in oppidō*, modified by an adjective; but see 363, 4, 2). The preposition *in* is sometimes omitted.

426. Like Names of Towns are used—

1. **Many Names of Islands:**

Lesbī vīxit, *he lived in Lesbos.* Nep. Conōn Cyprī vīxit, *Conon lived in Cyprus.* Nep.

2. **The Locatives domī, rūrī, humī, mīlitiae, and bellī:**

Domī mīlitiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Rūrī agere vītam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv.

Note.—A few other *Locatives* also occur:

Rōmae Numidiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia.* Sall. Domum Chersonēsī habuit, *he had a house in the Chersonesus.* Nep. Truncum relīquit arēnae,[1] *he left the body in the sand.* Verg.

427. Summary.—The Names of Places not towns are generally put—

I. In the *Accusative* with **ad** or **in**, to denote the place to which:

In Asiam redit, *he returns to* (into) *Asia.* Nep.

II. In the *Ablative* with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, to denote the place from which:

Ab urbe proficīscitur, *he sets out from the city.* Caes.

III. In the *Locative Ablative* with **in**, to denote the place at or in which:

Hannibal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

Note.—For *qualifications* and *exceptions*, see **380**, 3 and 4; **412**, 2; **425**, 1 and 2.

428. Summary.—The Names of Towns are put[2]—

I. In the *Accusative*, to denote the place to which:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, *the messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

II. In the *Ablative*, to denote the place from which:

Fūgit Corinthō, *he fled from Corinth.* Cic.

III. In the *Locative*, or in the *Locative Ablative*,[3] to denote the place at or in which:

Corinthī puerōs docēbat, *he taught boys at Corinth.* Cic. Gādibus vīxit, *he lived at Gades.* Cic.

Note.—For *qualifications* and *exceptions*, see **380**, 1; **412**, 3; **425**, 3.

RULE XXXI.—Time.

429. The Time of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsimō annō est mortuus, *he died* in his eightieth year. Cic. *Vēre* convēnēre, *they assembled* in the spring. Liv. Nātālī diē suō, *on his birth-*

---

[1] So also *terrae* and *vīciniae*.

[2] This, the original construction for all names of places, has been retained unchanged only in the names of towns and in a few other words. Most names of places have assumed a *preposition* with the *Accusative* and *Ablative*, and have substituted the *Locative Ablative* with a *preposition* in place of the *Locative*; see **411**, III.

[3] That is, the *Locative* is used if any such form exists; if not, the *Locative Ablative* supplies its place.

day. Nep. Hieme et aestāte, *in winter and summer.* Cic. Sōlis occāsū, *at sunset.* Caes. Adventū Caesaris, *on the arrival of Caesar.* Caes. Lūdīs, *at the time of the games.* Cic. Vix decem annīs, *scarcely in ten years.* Nep. Hīs vīgintī annīs, *within these twenty years.* Cic.

1. Certain relations of TIME are denoted by the Ablative with **in** or **dē**:

In tālī tempore,[1] *at such a time* (i. e., under such circumstances). Liv. In diēbus prōximīs decem,[1] *in the next ten days.* Sall. Dē mediā nocte, *in* (lit., *from*, *out of*) *the middle of the night.* Caes.

2. Certain relations of TIME are denoted by the Accusative with **ad**, **in**, **inter**, **intrā**, **sub**, etc.:

Ad cōnstitūtam diem, *at the appointed day.* Cic. Ad cēnam invītāre in posterum diem, *to invite to dinner for the next day.* Cic. Intrā vīgintī diēs, *within twenty days.* Plaut. Inter tot annōs, *within so many years.* Cic. Sub noctem, *toward night.* Caes.

430. The INTERVAL between two events may be denoted by the Accusative or Ablative with **ante** or **post**:[2]

Aliquot post mēnsēs[3] occīsus est, *he was put to death some months after.* Cic. Post diēs paucōs vēnit, *he came after a few days.* Liv. Paucīs ante diēbus,[3] *a few days before.* Cic. Homērus annīs multīs fuit ante Rōmulum, *Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. Paucīs diēbus post ējus mortem, *a few days after his death.* Cic. Annīs quīngentīs post, *five hundred years after.* Cic. Quartum post annum quam redierat, *four years after he had returned.* Nep. Nōnō annō postquam, *nine years after.* Nep. Sextō annō quam erat expulsus, *six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

NOTE 1.—In these examples observe—

1) That the numeral may be either cardinal, as in the sixth example, or ordinal, as in the last three.[4]

2) That with the Accusative *ante* and *post* either precede the numeral and the noun, or stand between them; but that with the Ablative they either follow both, or stand between them.[5]

3) That *quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, as in the seventh example; may be united with them, as in the eighth, or may be used for *postquam*, as in the ninth.

NOTE 2.—The ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE may be used for *postquam:*

Quatriduō, quō occīsus est, *four days after he was killed.* Cic.

---

[1] The Ablative with *in* is used to denote (1) the *circumstances* of the time, and (2) the time *in* or *within which.* In the second sense it is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in diē*, 'twice in the day'; *in pueritiā*, 'in boyhood,' etc.

[2] In two instances the Ablative with *abhinc* is used like the Ablative with *ante:* Abhinc trīgintā diēbus, *thirty days before.* Cic.

[3] The Accusative after *ante* and *post* depends upon the preposition, but the Ablative is explained as the *measure of difference* (423).

[4] Thus, 'five years after' = *quīnque annīs post*, or *quīntō annō post;* or *post quīnque annōs*, or *post quīntum annum;* or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quīnque post annīs*, etc.

[5] Any other arrangement is rare.

NOTE 3.—The *time since* an event may be denoted by the Accusative with *abhinc* or *ante*, or by the Ablative with *ante*:[1]

Abhinc annōs trecentōs fuit, *he lived three hundred years ago.* Cic. Paucīs ante diēbus ērūpit ex urbe, *he broke out of the city a few days ago.* Cic.

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute.[2]

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance:

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning).[3] Cic. Rēgibus exāctīs, cōnsulēs creātī sunt, *after the banishment of the kings,*[4] *consuls were appointed.* Liv. Equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes. Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā religiōne, *a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perditīs rēbus omnibus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, *though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself.* Cic. Obsidibus imperātīs, hōs Aeduīs trādit,[5] *having demanded hostages, he delivers them to the Aedui.* Caes.

1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time*, *cause*, or some *attendant circumstance* of an action.

2. This Ablative is generally best rendered—(1) by a *noun* with a *preposition*—*in*, *during*, *after*, *by*, *with*, *through*, etc.; (2) by an *active participle* with its *object*; or (3) by a *clause* with *when*, *while*, *because*, *if*, *though*, etc.;[6] see examples above.

3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nisi mūnītīs castrīs, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. A *noun* and an *adjective*, or even *two nouns*, may be in the *Ablative Absolute*:[7]

---

[1] The Accusative is explained as *duration of time* (379), the Ablative as *measure of difference* (423).

[2] This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence. Originally *Locative*, it was first used to denote *situation* or *time*, a meaning from which its later uses may be readily derived. Thus, while the force of a Locative Ablative is apparent in *Serviō rēgnante* and in *rēgibus exāctīs*, it is recognized without difficulty in *neglēctā religiōne* as indicating the *situation* or *state of things* in which the reign was not prosperous. In some instances, however, the Ablative Absolute may be *instrumental* or *causal*.

[3] Or, *while Servius was reigning* or *was king.*

[4] Or, *after the kings were banished.*

[5] In this example *obsidibus* and *hōs* refer to the same persons. This is unusual, as in this construction the Ablative generally refers to some person or thing not otherwise mentioned in the clause to which it belongs.

[6] The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

[7] This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb '*to be*' is used.

Serēnō caelō, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Canīniō cōnsule, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

Note 1.—An *infinitive* or *clause* may be in the Ablative Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audītō Dārium mōvisse, pergit, *having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced.* Curt. Multī, incertō quid vītārent, interiērunt, *many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished.* Liv.

Note 2.—A *participle* or *adjective* may stand alone in the Ablative Absolute:

Multum certātō, pervīcit, *he conquered after a hard struggle.*[1] Tac.

Note 3.—*Quisque* or *ipse* in the *Nominative* may accompany the Ablative Absolute:

Multīs sibī quisque petentibus, *while many sought, each for himself.* Sall. Causā ipse prō sē dictā damnātur, *having himself advocated his own cause, he is condemned.* Liv.

Note 4.—For the use of *absente* and *praesente* in the Ablative Absolute with a plural noun or pronoun, see **438**, 6, note.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions:[2]

Ad amīcum scrīpsī, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Ītaliā, *in Italy.* Nep. Prō castrīs, *before the camp.*

433. The Accusative is used with—

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ērgā, extrā, īnfrā, inter, intrā, juxtā, ob, penes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city.* Cic. Adversus deōs, *toward the gods.* Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light.* Cic. Apud concilium, *in the presence of the council.* Cic. Circā forum, *around the forum.* Cic. Citrā flūmen, *on this side of the river.* Cic. Contrā nātūram, *contrary to nature.* Cic. Intrā mūrōs, *within the walls.* Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp.* Caes. Secundum nātūram, *according to nature.* Cic. Trāns Alpēs, *across the Alps.* Cic.

Note 1.—*Exadversus* (*um*) also occurs with the Accusative:

Exadversus eum locum, *over against that place.* Cic. See also **437**.

Note 2.—*Versus* (*um*) and *usque*, as adverbs, often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in:*

Ad ōceanum versus, *toward the ocean.* Caes. Ad merīdiem versus, *toward the south.* Liv. Usque ad castra hostium, *even to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

---

[1] Literally, *it having been much contested.* The participle is used impersonally.

[2] On the general subject of Prepositions and their Use, see Roby, II., pp. 351–456; Draeger, I., pp. 574–665; Kühner, II., pp. 355–432.

NOTE 3.—For *propius*, *prōximē*, *propior*, and *prōximus*, with the Accusative, see *prope*, note 2, under I., below.

NOTE 4.—For *compounds of prepositions*, see **372** and **376**.

I. The following uses of prepositions with the Accusative deserve notice:[1]

Ad, TO, the opposite of *ab*, FROM—(1) TO, TOWARD, TILL; (2) NEAR, AT, ON: *ad mē*, 'to me,' 'near me,' 'at my house'; *ad urbem*, 'to the city,' 'near the city'; *ad dextram*, 'on the right'; *ad multam noctem*, 'till late in the night'; *ad lūcem*, 'till daybreak'; *ad hōc*, 'besides this,' 'moreover'; *ad verbum*, 'word for word'; *ad hunc modum*, 'after this manner'; *ad ūltimum*, 'at last'; *ad ūnum omnēs*, 'all to a man,' 'all without exception.'

Apud, NEAR, AT, BEFORE, IN THE PRESENCE OF: *apud oppidum*, 'near *or* before the town'; *apud mē*, 'at my house'; *sum apud mē*, 'I am at home' or 'I am in my right mind'; *apud Platōnem*, 'in the works of Plato.'

Ante, BEFORE, IN FRONT OF, ABOVE, IN PREFERENCE TO: *ante suōs annōs*, 'before his time,' 'too early'; *ante tempus*, 'before the proper time'; *ante annum*, 'a year before'; *ante urbem conditam*, 'before the founding of the city'; *ante aliōs pulcherrimus omnēs*, 'the most beautiful above all others.'

Circum, circā, circiter,[2] ROUND, AROUND, ABOUT: *circum forum*, 'around the forum'; *circā sē*, 'around *or* with himself'; *circā eandem hōram*, 'about the same hour'; *circiter merīdiem*, 'about midday.'

NOTE.—*Circum*, the oldest of these forms, is used only of *place*; *circā*, both of *place* and of *time*; *circiter*, rare as a preposition, chiefly of *time*. They are all freely used as adverbs: *circum convenīre*, 'to gather around'; *circā esse*, 'to be around'; *circiter pārs quārta*, 'about the fourth part.'

Cis, citrā,[3] ON THIS SIDE—*cis* opposed to *trāns*, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE; *citrā* opposed to *ūltrā*, BEYOND: *cis flūmen*, 'on this side of the stream'; *cis paucōs diēs*, 'within a few days'; *citrā vēritātem*, 'short of the truth'; *citrā auctōritātem*, 'without authority.'

Contrā,[3] OPPOSITE TO, OVER AGAINST, AGAINST, CONTRARY TO: *contrā eās regiōnēs*, 'opposite to those regions'; *contrā populum*, 'against the people'; *contrā nātūram*, 'contrary to nature.'

Ērgā,[4] TOWARD, TO, AGAINST: *ērgā parentēs*, 'toward parents'; *odium ērgā Rōmānōs*, 'hatred to the Romans'; *ērgā rēgem*, 'against the king.'

Extrā, OUTSIDE, WITHOUT, FREE FROM, EXCEPT: *extrā portam*, 'outside the gate'; *extrā culpam*, 'without fault,' 'free from fault'; *extrā ducem*, 'except the leader,' 'besides the leader.'

Īnfrā,[5] BELOW, UNDER, BENEATH, LESS THAN, AFTER, LATER THAN, opposed to *suprā*, ABOVE: *īnfrā lūnam*, 'beneath the moon'; *īnfrā mē*, 'below me'; *īnfrā trēs pedēs*, 'less than three feet'; *īnfrā Lycūrgum*, 'after Lycurgus.'

---

[1] For the *form* and *meaning* of prepositions in composition, see **344**, 5.

[2] These three forms are all derived from *circus*, 'a circle' (i. e., from its stem); see **304**; **307**, note 1.

[3] These are often adverbs.

[4] According to Vanicek, from *ē* and the root *reg* in *regō*; 'in the direction of' (lit., *from the direction of*). In Tacitus, sometimes IN RELATION TO: *ērgā domum suam*, 'in relation to his own household.'

[5] *Īnfrā* = *īnferā parte*, 'in the lower part.'

Inter,[1] BETWEEN, AMONG, IN THE MIDST OF: *inter urbem et Tiberim*, 'between the city and the Tiber'; *inter bonōs*, 'among the good'; *inter manūs*, 'in the hands,' 'within reach,' 'tangible'; *inter nōs*, 'between us,' 'in confidence'; *inter sē amāre*, 'to love one another'; *inter sē differre*, 'to differ from one another'; *inter paucōs*, *inter pauca*, 'especially,' 'preëminently'; *inter paucōs disertus*, 'preëminently eloquent'; *inter purpuram atque aurum*, 'in the midst of purple and gold.'

Intrā, WITHIN, LESS THAN, BELOW, opposed to *extrā*, ON THE OUTSIDE, WITHOUT: *intrā castra*, 'within the camp'; *intrā mē*, 'within me';[2] *intrā sē*, 'in his mind' or 'in their minds';[3] *intrā centum*, 'less than one hundred'; *intrā modum*, 'within the limit'; *intrā fāmam*, 'below his reputation.'

Ob, BEFORE, IN VIEW OF, IN REGARD TO, ON ACCOUNT OF: *ob oculōs*, 'before one's eyes'; *ob stultitiam tuam*, 'in view of your folly,' or 'in regard to your folly'; *ob hanc rem*, 'in view of this thing,' 'for this reason,' 'on this account'; *quam ob rem*, 'in view of which thing,' 'wherefore.'

Per,[4] THROUGH, BY THE AID OF: *per forum*, 'through the forum'; *per aliōs*, 'through others,' 'by the aid of others'; *per sē*, 'by his own efforts,' also 'in himself,' 'in itself'; *per metum*, 'through fear'; *per aetātem*, 'in consequence of age'; *per lūdum*, 'sportively'; *per vim*, 'violently'; *per mē licet*, 'it is allowable as far as I am concerned' (i. e., I make no opposition).

Post, BEHIND, AFTER, SINCE: *post montem*, 'behind the mountain'; *post dēdicātiōnem templī*, 'after the dedication of the temple'; *post hominum memoriam*, 'since the memory of man.'

Praeter,[5] BEFORE, ALONG, PAST, BY, BEYOND, BESIDES, EXCEPT, CONTRARY TO: *praeter oculōs*, 'before their eyes'; *praeter oram*, 'along the coast'; *praeter cēterōs*, 'beyond others,' 'more than others'; *praeter haec* = *praeter-eā*, 'besides these things,' 'moreover'; *praeter mē*, 'except me'; *praeter spem*, 'contrary to expectation.'

Prope, **propter**, NEAR, NEAR BY. **Prope**, NEAR; **propter** = *prope-ter*, a strengthened form of *prope*,[6] VERY NEAR, ALONGSIDE OF, also IN VIEW OF, ON ACCOUNT OF: *prope hostēs*, 'near the enemy'; *prope metum*, 'near to fear,' 'almost fearful'; *propter mare*, 'near the sea'; *propter timōrem*, 'on account of fear'; *propter sē*, 'on his own account,' 'on their own account.'

NOTE 1.—*Prope*, as an adverb, is sometimes combined with *ā*, *ab*, or *ad*: *prope ā Siciliā*, 'near Sicily,' 'not far from Sicily'; *prope ad portās*, 'near to the gates.'

NOTE 2.—Like *prope*, the derivatives *propius* and *prōximē*, and sometimes even *propior* and *prōximus*, admit the Accusative:[7]

Propius perīculum, *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prōximē deōs, *very near to the gods*.

---

[1] Formed from *in* by the ending *ter*, like *prae-ter* from *prae* (**434**, I.), *prop-ter* from *prope* (**433**, I.), and *sub-ter* from *sub* (**435**, I.).

[2] Often equivalent to *in meō animō*, 'in my mind.'

[3] Sometimes, *in his country*, or *in their country*.

[4] In origin kindred to the Greek *παρά*.

[5] Formed from *prae* (**434**, I.), like *in-ter* from *in*; see *inter*, with foot-note.

[6] See *inter*, with foot-note.

[7] Perhaps by a construction according to sense, following the analogy of *prope*, though most cases a preposition may readily be supplied.

Cic. Propior montem, *nearer to the mountain.* Sall. Prōximus mare, *nearest to the sea.* Caes.

Secundum,[1] FOLLOWING, NEXT AFTER, NEXT BEHIND, ALONGSIDE OF, CONFORMING TO, ACCORDING TO, IN FAVOR OF: *secundum āram*, 'behind the altar'; *secundum deōs*, 'next after the gods'; *secundum lūdōs*, 'after the games'; *secundum flūmen*, 'along the river'; *secundum nātūram*, 'according to nature,' 'following nature'; *secundum causam nostram*, 'in favor of our cause.'[2]

Suprā,[3] ON THE TOP, ABOVE, BEFORE, TOO HIGH FOR; opposed to *infrā*, BELOW: *suprā lūnam*, 'above the moon'; *suprā hanc memoriam*, 'before our time';[4] *suprā hominem*, 'too high for a man.'

Trāns, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE, opposed to *cis*, ON THIS SIDE: *trāns Rhēnum*, 'across the Rhine'; *trāns Alpēs*, 'on the other side of the Alps.'

Ūltrā, BEYOND, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE, MORE THAN, LONGER THAN, AFTER, opposed to *citrā*, ON THIS SIDE: *ūltrā eum locum*, 'beyond that place'; *ūltrā eum*, 'beyond him'; *ūltrā pignus*, 'more than a pledge'; *ūltrā fidem*, 'beyond belief,' 'incredible'; *ūltrā puerilēs annōs*, 'after (*beyond*) the years of boyhood.'

434. The ABLATIVE is used with—

Ā *or* ab (abs), absque, cōram, cum, dē,
ē *or* ex, prae, prō, sine, tenus.

Ab urbe, *from the city.* Caes. Cōram conventū, *in the presence of the assembly.* Nep. Cum Antiochō, *with Antiochus.* Cic. Dē forō, *from the forum.* Cic. Ex Asiā, *out of Asia.* Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, or *super* admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition, but the preposition is often repeated,[5] or some other preposition of kindred meaning is used:

Abīre magistrātū, *to retire from office.* Tac. Pūgnā excēdunt, *they retire from the battle.* Caes. Dē vītā dēcēdere, *to depart from life.* Cic. Dēcēdere ex Asiā, *to depart out of Asia.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Ā* and *ē* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before either vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *tē*.

NOTE 3.—For *cum* appended to the Ablative of a personal pronoun or of a relative, see **184**, 6, and **187**, 2.

NOTE 4.—*Tenus* follows its case. In its *origin* it is the Accusative of a noun,[6] and as such it often takes the Genitive:

Collō tenus, *up to the neck.* Ov. Lumbōrum tenus, *as far as the loins.* Cic.

---

[1] Properly the neuter of *secundus*, 'following,' 'second'; but *secundus* is a gerundive from *sequor*, formed like *dīcundus* from *dīco* (**239**). For the change of *qu* to *c* before *u* in *sec-undus* for *sequ-undus*, see **26**, foot-note.

[2] Like the adjective *secundus* in *ventus secundus*, 'a favoring wind'—one that follows us on our course; *flūmine secundō*, 'with a favoring current' (i. e., down the stream).

[3] *Suprā* = *superā parte*, 'on the top.'

[4] Literally, *before this memory.* For *hīc* meaning *my* or *our*, see **450**, 4, note 1.

[5] Though in such cases the first element of the compound is not strictly a preposition, but an adverb (**344**, with foot-note). Thus, in *dē vītā dēcēdere*, *dē* in the verb retains its adverbial force, so that, strictly speaking, the preposition is used only once.

[6] From the root *tan*, *ten*, seen in *ten-dō*, *ten-eō*, and in the Greek τειν-ω.

NOTE 5.—For the Ablative with or without *dē*, as used with *faciō*, *fīō*, and *sum*, see **415**, III., note.

I. The following uses of prepositions with the Ablative deserve notice:

Ā, ab,[1] **abs**, FROM, BY, IN, ON, ON THE SIDE OF. 1. Of *Place;* FROM, ON, ON THE SIDE OF: *ā Galliā*, 'from Gaul'; *ab ortū*, 'from the east'; *ā fronte*, 'in front' (lit., *from the front*); *ā tergō*, 'in the rear'; *ab Sēquanīs*, 'on the side toward the Sequani.' 2. Of *Time;* FROM, AFTER: *ab hōrā tertiā*, 'from the third hour'; *ā puerō*, 'from boyhood'; *ab cohortātiōne*, 'after exhorting.' 3. In *other relations;* FROM, BY, IN, AGAINST: *ā poenā līber*, 'free from punishment'; *missus ab Syrācūsīs*, 'sent by the Syracusans'; *ab equitātū firmus*, 'strong in (lit., *from*) cavalry'; *ab animō aeger*, 'diseased in mind'; *ab eīs dēfendere*, 'to defend against (*from*) them'; *esse ab aliquō*, 'to be on one's side'; *ā nōbīs*, 'in our interest'; *servus ā pedibus*, 'a footman.'

NOTE.—*Absque*, rare in classical prose, is found chiefly in Plautus and Terence.

Cum,[2] WITH, in most of its English meanings: *cum patre habitāre*, 'to live with one's father'; *Caesar cum quinque legiōnibus*, 'Caesar with five legions'; *cōnsul cum summō imperiō*, 'the consul with supreme command'; *servus cum tēlō*, 'a slave with a weapon,' 'an armed slave'; *cum prīmā lūce*, 'with the early dawn,' 'at the early dawn'; *cōnsentīre cum aliquō*, 'to agree with any one'; *cum Caesare agere*, 'to treat with Caesar'; *cum aliquō dīmicāre*, 'to contend with any one'; *multīs cum lacrimīs*, 'with many tears'; *cum virtūte*, 'virtuously'; *cum eō ut*, or *cum eō quod*, 'with this condition that,' 'on condition that.' See also **419**, III.

Dē, DOWN FROM, FROM, OF. 1. Of *Place;* DOWN FROM, FROM: *dē caelō*, 'down from heaven'; *dē forō*, 'from the forum'; *dē mājōribus audīre*, 'to hear from one's elders.' 2. Of *Time;* FROM, OUT OF, DURING, IN, AT, AFTER: *dē prandiō*, 'from breakfast'; *dē diē*, 'by day,' 'in the course of the day'; *dē tertiā vigiliā*, 'during the third watch'; *dē mediā nocte*, 'at about midnight.' 3. In *other relations;* FROM, OF, FOR, ON, CONCERNING, ACCORDING TO: *dē summō genere*, 'of the highest rank'; *factum dē marmore signum*, 'a bust made of marble'; *homō dē plēbe*, 'a man of plebeian rank,' 'a plebeian'; *triumphus dē Galliā*, 'a triumph over (*concerning*) Gaul'; *gravī dē causā*, 'for a grave reason'; *dē mōre vetustō*, 'according to ancient custom'; *dē industriā*, 'on purpose'; *dē integrō*, 'anew.' See also **415**, III., note 2.

Ē, ex,[3] OUT OF, FROM. 1. Of *Place;* OUT OF, FROM, IN, ON: *ex urbe*, 'from the city,' 'out of the city'; *ex equō pūgnāre*, 'to fight on horseback'; *ex vinculīs*, 'in chains' (lit., *out of* or *from chains*); *ex itinere*, 'on the march.' 2. Of *Time;* FROM, DIRECTLY AFTER, SINCE: *ex eō tempore*, 'from that time'; *ex tempore dīcere*, 'to speak extemporaneously'; *diem ex diē*, 'from day to day.' 3. In *other relations;* FROM, OUT OF, OF, ACCORDING TO, ON ACCOUNT OF, THROUGH: *ex vulneribus perīre*, 'to perish of (*because of*) wounds'; *ūnus ē fīliīs*, 'one of the sons'; *ex commūtātiōne*, 'on account of the change'; *ex cōnsuētūdine*, 'according to custom'; *ē vestīgiō*, 'on the spot'; *ex parte māgnā*, 'in great part'; *ex imprōvīsō*, 'unexpectedly.'

---

[1] Greek ἀπό. [2] Compare Greek ξύν, σύν, *with*. [3] Compare Greek ἐξ, *out of*.

Prae, BEFORE, IN COMPARISON WITH, IN CONSEQUENCE OF, BECAUSE OF:[1] *prae manū esse*, 'to be at hand'; *prae manū habēre*, 'to have at hand'; *prae sē ferre*, 'to show, display, exhibit'; *prae nōbīs beātus*, 'happy in comparison with us'; *nōn prae lacrimīs*[1] *pōsse*, 'not to be able because of tears.'

Prō, BEFORE; IN BEHALF OF, IN DEFENCE OF, FOR; INSTEAD OF, AS; IN RETURN FOR, FOR; ACCORDING TO, IN PROPORTION TO: *prō castrīs*, 'before the camp'; *prō lībertāte*, 'in defence of liberty'; *prō patriā*, 'for the country'; *prō cōnsule = prōcōnsul*, 'a proconsul' (one acting *for a consul*); *prō certō habēre*, 'to regard as certain'; *prō eō, quod*, 'for the reason that,' 'because'; *prō tuā prūdentiā*, 'in accordance with your prudence'; *prō imperiō*, 'imperiously'; *prō sē quisque*, 'each according to his ability.'

435. The Accusative or Ablative is used with—

In, sub, subter, super:

In Asiam profūgit, *he fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibal in Ītaliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain.* Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain.* Liv. Subter togam, *under the toga.* Liv. Subter testūdine, *under a tortoise* or *shed.* Verg. Super Numidiam, *beyond Numidia.* Sall. Hāc super rē scrībam, *I shall write on this subject.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*In* and *sub* take the Accusative after verbs implying *motion*, the Ablative after those implying *rest;* see examples.

NOTE 2.—*Subter* and *super* generally take the Accusative; but *super*, when it means *concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

I. The following uses of *in*, *sub*, *subter*, and *super* deserve notice:

In, *with the Accusative*, INTO, TO, TOWARD, TILL. 1. Of *Place;* INTO, TO, TOWARD, AGAINST, IN: *īre in urbem*, 'to go into the city'; *in Persās*, 'into the country of the Persians'; *in āram*, 'to the altar'; *ūnum in locum convenīre*, 'to meet in one place' (380, with note). 2. Of *Time;* INTO, TO, FOR, TILL: *in noctem*, 'into the night'; *in multam noctem*, 'until late at night'; *in diem*, 'into the day,' also 'for the day'; *in diēs*, 'from day to day,' 'daily'; *invītāre in posterum diem*, 'to invite for the following day.' 3. In *other relations;* INTO, AGAINST, TOWARD, ON, FOR, AS, IN: *dīvisa in partēs trēs*, 'divided into three parts'; *in hostem*, 'against the enemy'; *in id certāmen*, 'for this contest'; *in memoriam patris*, 'in memory of his father'; *in spem pācis*, 'in the hope of peace'; *in rem esse*, 'to be useful,' 'to be to the purpose.'

In, *with the Ablative*, IN, ON, AT. 1. Of *Place;* IN, AT, WITHIN, AMONG, UPON: *in urbe*, 'in the city'; *in Persīs*, 'among the Persians'; *sapientissimus in septem*, 'the wisest among *or* of the seven.' 2. Of *Time;* IN, AT, DURING, IN THE COURSE OF: *in tālī tempore*, 'at such a time'; *in tempore*, 'in time.' 3. In *other relations;* IN, ON, UPON, IN THE CASE OF: *esse in armīs*, 'to be in arms'; *in summō timōre*, 'in the greatest fear'; *in hōc homine*, 'in the case of this man.'

Sub, *with the Accusative*, UNDER, BENEATH, TOWARD, UP TO, ABOUT, DIRECT-

---

[1] This *causal* meaning is developed from the *local*. The noun in the Ablative is thought of as an *obstacle* or *hindrance: nōn prae lacrimīs pōsse*, 'not to be able *before*, *in the presence of*, *because of* such a hindrance as tears.'

LY AFTER: *sub jugum mittere*, 'to send under the yoke'; *sub nostram aciem*, 'toward our line'; *sub astra*, 'up to the stars'; *sub vesperum*, 'toward evening'; *sub eās litterās*, 'directly after that letter'; *sub imperium redāctus*, 'brought under one's sway.'

Sub, *with the Ablative*, UNDER, AT, AT THE FOOT OF, IN, ABOUT: *sub terrā*, 'under the earth'; *sub pellibus*, 'in tents';[1] *sub brūmā*, 'at the time of the winter solstice'; *sub lūce*, 'at dawn'; *sub hōc verbō*, 'under this word'; *sub iūdice*, 'in the hands of the judge' (i. e., not yet decided).

NOTE.—*Subter*, a strengthened form[2] of *sub*, meaning UNDER, generally takes the *Accusative*, though it admits the Ablative in poetry: *subter mare*, 'under the sea'; *subter togam*, 'under the toga'; *subter dēnsā testūdine*, 'under a compact testudo.'

Super, *with the Accusative*, OVER, UPON, ABOVE: *sedēns super arma*, 'sitting upon the arms'; *super Numidiam*, 'beyond Numidia'; *super sexāgintā mīlia*, 'upward of sixty thousand'; *super nātūram*, 'supernatural'; *super omnia*, 'above all.'

Super, *with the Ablative*, UPON, AT, DURING, CONCERNING, OF, ON: *strātō super ostrō*, 'upon purple couches' (lit., *upon the spread purple*); *nocte super mediā*, 'at midnight'; *hāc super rē scrībere*, 'to write upon this subject'; *multa super Priamō rogitāns*, 'asking many questions about Priam.'

NOTE.—The Ablative is rare with *super*, except when it means *concerning*, *about*, *on* (of the subject of discourse). It is then the regular construction.

436. Prepositions were originally adverbs (**307**, note 1), and many of the words generally classed as prepositions are often used as adverbs[3] in classical authors:

Ad mīlibus quattuor, *about four thousand*. Caes. Omnia contrā circāque, *all things opposite and around*. Liv. Prope ā Siciliā, *not far from Sicily*. Cic. Juxtā positus, *placed near by*. Nep. Suprā, īnfrā esse, *to be above, below*. Cic. Nec citrā nec ūltrā, *neither on this side nor on that side*. Ov.

437. Conversely, several words generally classed as adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions. Such are—

1. With the ACCUSATIVE, *propius*, *prōximē*, *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē*, *usque*, *dēsuper*:

Propius perīculum, *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdiē Īdūs, *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pedēs, *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With the ABLATIVE, *intus*, *palam*, *procul*, *simul* (poetic):

Tālī intus templō, *within such a temple*. Verg. Palam populō, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Procul castrīs, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Simul hīs, *with these*. Hor.

3. With the ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE, *clam*, *īnsuper*:

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. Clam vōbīs, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

---

[1] That is, *in camp* (lit., *under skins*).

[2] Formed from *sub*, like *in-ter* from *in*; see **433**, I., *inter*, foot-note.

[3] They are, in fact, sometimes adverbs and sometimes prepositions.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *fortune is blind.* Cic. Vērae amīcitiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Magister optimus, *the best teacher.* Cic. Quā in rē prīvātās injūriās ultus est, *in which thing he avenged private wrongs.* Caes. Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun rising makes the day.* Cic.

1. *Adjective Pronouns* and *Participles* are ADJECTIVES in construction, and accordingly conform to this rule, as in *quā in rē*, *sōl oriēns.*

2. When an adjective unites with the verb (generally *sum*) to form the *predicate*, as in *caeca est*, 'is blind,' it is called a PREDICATE ADJECTIVE (**360**, note 1); but when it simply qualifies a noun, as in *vērae amīcitiae*, 'true friendships,' it is called an ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun*, *clause*, *infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, *who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est līberōs amārī, *it is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See **42**, note.

NOTE.—An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek:
Ut Aenēās jactētur nōta tibĭ, *how Aeneas is tossed about is known to you.* Verg.

4. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE used as a *substantive* sometimes supplies the place of a Predicate Adjective:[1]

Mors est extrēmum, *death is the last thing.* Cic. Trīste lupus stabulīs, *a wolf is a sad thing for the flocks.* Verg.

5. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE WITH A GENITIVE is often used instead of an adjective with its noun, especially in the Nominative and Accusative:

Multum operae, *much service.*[2] Cic. Id temporis, *that time.*[2] Cic. Vāna rērum, *vain things.*[2] Hor. Opāca viārum, *dark streets.* Verg. Strāta viārum, *paved streets.* Verg. See also **397**, 3, note 4.

6. SYNESIS.[3]—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre parātī,[4] *a part* (some), *prepared to contend.* Verg. Īnspērantī[4] nōbīs, *to us* (me) *not expecting it.* Catul. Dēmosthenēs cum cēterīs erant expulsī,[4] *Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

---

[1] As in Greek: *οὐκ ἀγαθὸν πολυκοιρανίη, the rule of the many is not a good thing.*

[2] *Multum operae = multa opera* or *multam operam; id temporis = id tempus; vāna rērum = vānae rēs* or *vānās rēs.*

[3] A construction according to sense; see **636**, IV., 4.

[4] *Parātī* is plural, to conform to the meaning of *pars*, 'part,' 'some,' plural in sense;

Note.—In the Ablative Absolute (431) *absente* and *praesente* occur in early Latin with a *plural* noun or pronoun:[1]

Praesente[1] ībus (*eīs*),[2] *in their presence* (lit., *they being present*). Plaut. Praesente testibus, *in the presence of witnesses.* Plaut.

7. Agreement with one Noun for another.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Mājōra (for *mājōrum*) rērum initia, *the beginnings of greater things.* Liv. Cursus jūstī (*jūstus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river.* Liv.

Note 1.—In the passive forms of verbs the *participle* sometimes agrees with a *predicate noun* or with an *appositive;* see 462.

Note 2.—An adjective or participle predicated of an Accusative is sometimes attracted into the Nominative to agree with the subject:

Ostendit sē dextra (for *dextram*), *she shows herself favorable.* Verg.

439. An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all *conjointly*, or may agree with *one* and be understood with the others:

Castor et Pollūx vīsī sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Dubitāre vīsus est Sulpicius et Cotta, *Sulpicius and Cotta seemed to doubt.* Cic. Temeritās ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est, *rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. The Attributive Adjective generally agrees with the nearest noun:

Agrī omnēs et maria, *all lands and seas.* Cic. Cūncta maria terraeque, *all seas and lands.* Sall.

2. A plural adjective or participle, agreeing with two or more nouns of different genders, is generally *masculine* when the nouns denote persons or sentient beings, and in other cases generally *neuter:*

Pater et māter mortuī sunt, *father and mother are dead.* Ter. Honōrēs, vīctōriae fortuīta sunt, *honors and victories are accidental things.* Cic. Labor voluptāsque inter sē sunt juncta, *labor and pleasure are joined together.* Liv.

Note.—When nouns denoting *sentient beings* are combined with those denoting *things*, the plural adjective or participle in agreement with them sometimes takes the gender of the *former* and sometimes of the *latter*, and sometimes is *neuter* irrespective of the gender of the nouns:

Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profectī sunt, *the king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv. Rēgem rēgnumque sua futūra sciunt, *they know that the king and the kingdom will be theirs.* Liv. Inimīca[3] inter sē sunt lībera cīvitās et rēx, *a free state and a king are hostile to each other.* Liv.

3. With nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective or participle is often neuter, irrespective of the gender of the nouns:

Labor et dolor sunt fīnitima, *labor and pain are kindred* (things). Cic.

---

inspērantī is singular, because *nōbīs* is here applied to one person, *the speaker* (446, note 2); *expulsī* is plural, because *Dēmosthenēs cum cēterīs* means *Demosthenes* and *the others.*

[1] In this construction *absente* and *praesente* appear to be treated as adverbs.

[2] See p. 78, foot-note 2.

[3] Perhaps best explained *substantively—things hostile;* see 438, 4.

Nox atque praeda hostīs remorāta sunt, *night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun:

Prīma et vīcēsima legiōnēs, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

Note.—In the same way two or more *praenōmina*[1] in the singular may be combined with a family name in the plural:

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scīpiōnēs, *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic. Pūblius et Servius Sullae, *Publius and Servius Sulla.* Sall.

Use of Adjectives.

440. The adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the adjective in English.

1. In Latin, as in English, an adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and another adjective:

Duae potentissimae gentēs, *two very powerful races.* Liv. Māgnum aes aliēnum, *a large debt.* Cic. Nāvēs longās trīgintā veterēs, *thirty old vessels of war.* Liv.[2]

Note.—In general no connective is used when adjectives are combined, as in *duae potentissimae gentēs*, etc.; but if the first adjective is *multī* or *plūrimī*, the connective is usually inserted:

Multae et māgnae cōgitātiōnēs, *many great thoughts.* Cic. Multa et praeclāra facinora, *many illustrious deeds.* Sall.

2. Prolepsis or Anticipation.—An adjective is sometimes applied to a noun to denote the *result* of the action expressed by the verb:

Submersās[3] obrue puppēs, *overwhelm and sink the ships* (lit., *overwhelm the sunken ships*). Verg. Scūta latentia[3] condunt, *they conceal their hidden shields.* Verg.

Note 1.—Certain adjectives often designate a particular part of an object: *prīma nox*, the first part of the night; *mediā aestāte*, in the middle of summer; *summus mōns*, the top (highest part) of the mountain.

Note 2.—The adjectives thus used are *prīmus*, *medius*, *ūltimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *īnfimus*, *īmus*, *suprēmus*, *rĕliquus*, *cētera*, etc.

Note 3.—In the poets, in Livy, and in late prose writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a Genitive sometimes occurs:

Libyae extrēma, *the frontiers of Libya.* Verg. Ad ūltimum inopiae (*for* ad ūltimam inopiam), *to extreme destitution.* Liv.

Note 4.—Adjectives are often combined with rēs: *rēs adversae*, adversity; *rēs secundae*, prosperity; *rēs novae*, revolution; *rēs pūblica*, republic.

---

[1] For Roman names, see **649**.

[2] Here *duae* qualifies not simply *gentēs*, but *potentissimae gentēs; māgnum* qualifies *aes aliēnum*, 'debt' (lit., *money belonging to another*); *veterēs* qualifies *nāvēs longās*, 'vessels of war' (lit., 'long vessels'), while *trīgintā* qualifies the still more complex expression, *nāvēs longās veterēs.*

[3] Observe that *submersās* gives the *result* of the action denoted by *obrue*, and is not applicable to *puppēs* until that action is performed; *latentia* likewise gives the *result* of *condunt.*

441. Adjectives and participles are often used SUBSTANTIVELY:[1]

Bonī, the good; *mortālēs*, mortals; *doctī*, the learned; *sapientēs*, the wise; *multī*, many persons; *multa*, many things; *praefectus*, a prefect;[2] *nātus*, a son.[2]

1. In the plural, masculine adjectives and participles often designate PERSONS, and neuter adjectives THINGS: *fortēs*, the brave; *dīvitēs*, the rich; *pauperēs*, the poor; *multī*, many; *paucī*, few; *omnēs*, all; *meī*, my friends; *discentēs*, learners; *spectantēs*, spectators; *futūra*, future events; *ūtilia*, useful things; *mea*, *nostra*, my things, our things; *omnia*, all things; *haec*, *illa*, these things, those things.

2. In the singular, adjectives and participles are occasionally used SUBSTANTIVELY, especially in the Genitive, or in the Accusative or Ablative with a preposition: *doctus*, a learned man; *adulēscēns*, a young man; *vērum*, a true thing, the truth; *falsum*, a falsehood; *nihil sincērī*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere; *nihil humānī*, nothing human; *nihil rĕliquī*, nothing left;[3] *aliquid novī*, something new; *ā prīmō*, from the beginning; *ad extrēmum*, to the end; *ad summum*, to the highest point; *dē integrō*, afresh; *dē imprōvīsō*, unexpectedly; *ex aequō*, in like manner; *in praesentī*, at present; *in futūrum*, for the future; *prō certō*, as certain.[4]

NOTE 1.—For the *neuter participle* with *opus* and *ūsus*, see **414**, IV., note 3.

NOTE 2.—For the use of adjectives instead of nouns in the Genitive, see **395**, note 2.

3. A few substantives are sometimes used as adjectives, especially verbal nouns in *tor* and *trīx*:[5] *victor exercitus*, a victorious army; *homō gladiātor*, a gladiator, a gladiatorial man; *victrīcēs Athēnae*, victorious (*conquering*) Athens; *populus lātē rēx*, a people of extensive sway.[6]

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nēmō saltat sōbrius, *no one dances when he is sober*, or *when sober*. Cic. Hortēnsium vīvum amāvī, *I loved Hortensius, while he was alive*. Cic. Homō nūnquam sōbrius, *a man who is never sober*. Cic.

NOTE.—*Prior*, *prīmus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause: Prīmus mōrem solvit, *he was the first who broke the custom*.[7] Liv.

443. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Sōcratēs venēnum *laetus* hausit, *Socrates* CHEERFULLY *drank the poison*. Sen. Senātus *frequēns* convēnit, *the senate assembled* IN GREAT NUMBERS. Cic. Rōscius erat Rōmae frequēns, *Roscius was frequently at Rome*. Cic.

---

[1] That is, words which were originally adjectives or participles sometimes become *substantives*; indeed, many substantives were originally adjectives; see **323**, foot-note; **324**, foot-note.

[2] *Praefectus*, from *praeficiō* (lit., *one appointed over*); *nātus*, from *nāscor* (lit., *one born*).

[3] See **397**, 1. For *nihil rĕliquī facere*, see **401**, note 4.

[4] Numerous adverbial expressions are thus formed by combining the neuter of adjectives with prepositions.

[5] That is, these words are generally substantives, but sometimes adjectives.

[6] See Verg., Aen., I., 21.

[7] With the adverb *prīmum* the thought would be, *he first broke the custom* (i. e., before doing anything else). Compare the corresponding distinction between the Greek adjective πρῶτος and the adverb πρῶτον.

Note 1.—The adjectives chiefly thus used are—(1) Those expressive of *joy*, *knowledge*, and their opposites: *laetus*, *libēns*, *invītus*, *tristis*, *sciēns*, *insciēns*, *prūdēns*, *imprūdēns*, etc. (2) *Nūllus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*; *prior*, *prīmus*, *propior*, *prōximus*, etc.

Note 2.—In the *poets* a few adjectives of *time* and *place* are used in the same manner:

Domesticus ōtior, *I idle about home.* Hor. Vespertīnus pete tēctum, *at evening seek your abode.* Hor.

Note 3.—In rare instances adverbs seem to supply the place of adjectives:

Omnia *rēctē* sunt, *all things are* RIGHT. Cic. Nōn ignārī sumus *ante* malōrum,[1] *we are not ignorant of* PAST *misfortunes.* Verg. *Nunc* hominum[1] mōrēs, *the character of men* OF THE PRESENT DAY. Plaut.

Note 4.—Numeral adverbs often occur with titles of office:[2]

Flāminius, cōnsul iterum, *Flaminius, when consul for the second time.* Cic.

444. A COMPARISON between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, *the former of these* (two). Nep. Gallōrum fortissimī, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes.

1. The comparative sometimes has the force of TOO, UNUSUALLY, SOMEWHAT, and the superlative, the force of VERY: *dōctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *dōctissimus*, very learned.

Note.—Certain superlatives are common as titles of honor: *clārissimus*, *nōbilissimus*, and *summus*—especially applicable to men of consular or senatorial rank; *fortissimus*, *honestissimus*, *illustrissimus*, and *splendidissimus*—especially applicable to those of the equestrian order.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, the two adjectives thus used either may be connected by *magis quam*[3] or may both be put in the comparative:[4]

Disertus magis quam sapiēns, *more fluent than wise.*[3] Cic. Praeclārum magis quam difficile, *more noble than difficult*, or *noble rather than difficult.* Cic. Dītiōrēs quam fortiōrēs, *more wealthy than brave.*[4] Liv. Clārior quam grātior, *more illustrious than pleasing.* Liv.

Note 1.—In a similar manner two adverbs may be connected by *magis quam*, or may both be put in the comparative:

Magis audācter quam parātē, *with more audacity than preparation.* Cic. Bellum fortius quam fēlīcius gerere, *to wage war with more valor than success.* Liv.

Note 2.—The form with *magis*, both in adjectives and in adverbs, may sometimes be best rendered *rather than:*

Ars magis māgna quam difficilis, *an art extensive rather than difficult.* Cic. See also the second example under 2, above.

Note 3.—In the later Latin the *positive* sometimes follows *quam*, even when the regular *comparative* precedes, and sometimes *two positives* are used:

Vehementius quam cautē appetere, *to seek more eagerly than cautiously.* Tac. Clārīs quam vetustīs, *illustrious rather than ancient.* Tac.

Note 4.—For the use of *comparatives* before *quam prō*, see **417**, 1, note 5.

---

[1] Like the Greek *τῶν πρὶν κακῶν* and *τῶν νῦν ἀνθρώπων*.

[2] The want of a present participle in the verb *sum* brings these adverbs into close connection with nouns.

[3] As in English, *more fluent than wise.* This is the usual method in Cicero.

[4] As in Greek, *πλείονες ἢ βελτίονες*, *more numerous than good.* This method, common in Livy, is rare in the earlier writers.

3. **Strengthening Words.**—Comparatives and superlatives are often strengthened by a preposition with its case, as by *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *suprā* (**417**, 1, note 3). Comparatives are also often strengthened by *etiam*, even, still; *multō*, much; and superlatives by *longē*, *multō*, by far, much; *vel*, even; *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, without exception, far, by far; *quam*, *quam* or *quantus* with the verb *possum*, as possible; *tam quam quī*, *ut quī*, as possible (lit., *as he who*):

Mājōrēs etiam varietātēs, *even greater varieties*. Cic. Multō etiam gravius queritur, *he complains even much more bitterly*. Caes. Multō māxima pars, *by far the largest part*. Cic. Quam saepissimē, *as often as possible*. Cic. Ūnus omnium dōctissimus, *without exception the most learned of men*. Cic. Rēs ūna omnium difficillima, *a thing by far the most difficult of all*. Cic. Quam māximae cōpiae, *forces as large as possible*. Sall. Quantam māximam potest vastitātem ostendit, *he exhibits the greatest possible desolation* (lit., *as great as the greatest he can*). Liv.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animal *quod* sanguinem habet, *an animal* WHICH *has blood*. Cic. Ego, *quī* tē cōnfirmō, *I* WHO *encourage you*. Cic. Vīs est in virtūtibus, *eās* excitā, *there is strength in virtues, arouse* THEM. Cic.

NOTE.—The *antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animal* is the antecedent of *quod*; *ego*, of *quī*; and *virtūtibus*, of *eās*.

1. This rule applies to all pronouns when used as *nouns*. Pronouns used as *adjectives* conform to the rule for adjectives; see **438**.

2. When the antecedent is a demonstrative in agreement with a personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter:

Tū es is *quī* mē ōrnāstī, *you are the one* WHO *commended me*. Cic.

3. When a relative, or other pronoun, refers to TWO OR MORE ANTECEDENTS, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest:

Pietās, virtūs, fidēs, *quārum*[1] Rōmae templa sunt, *piety, virtue, and faith,* WHOSE *temples are at Rome*. Cic. Peccātum āc culpa, *quae*,[1] *error and fault*, WHICH. Cic.

---

[1] *Quārum* agrees with *pietās*, *virtūs*, and *fidēs* conjointly, and is accordingly in the plural; but *quae* agrees simply with *culpa*.

NOTE 1.—With antecedents of *different genders*, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (**439**, 2 and 3):

Puerī mulierēsque *quī*,[1] *boys and women* WHO. Caes. Incōnstantia et temeritās, *quae*[1] digna nōn sunt deō, *inconstancy and rashness* WHICH *are not worthy of a god.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—With antecedents of *different persons*, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs (**463**, 1):

Ego āc tū inter *nōs*[2] loquimur, *you and I converse together.* Tac. Et tū et collēgae tuī, *quī*[2] spērāstis, *both you and your colleagues*, WHO *hoped.* Cic.

4. By ATTRACTION, a pronoun sometimes agrees with a PREDICATE NOUN or an APPOSITIVE instead of the antecedent:

Animal *quem* (for *quod*) vocāmus hominem, *the animal* WHICH *we call man.*[3] Cic. Thēbae, *quod* (*quae*) caput est, *Thebes*, WHICH *is the capital.* Liv. *Ea* (*id*) erat cōnfessiō, THAT (i. e., the action referred to) *was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, *quī*, *the river Rhine*, WHICH. Caes.

5. By SYNESIS, the pronoun is sometimes construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs:

Quia fessum mīlitem habēbat, *hīs* quiētem dedit, *as he had an exhausted soldiery, he gave* THEM (THESE) *a rest.* Liv. Equitātus, *quī* vīdērunt, *the cavalry* WHO *saw.* Caes. Dē aliā rē, *quod* ad mē attinet, *in regard to another thing* WHICH *pertains to me.* Plaut. Eārum rērum *utrumque*, EACH *of these things.* Cic. Dēmocritum omittāmus; apud *istōs; let us omit Democritus; with* SUCH (i. e., as he). Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is a demonstrative pronoun, or is implied in a possessive pronoun, or in an adjective:

Sunt quī cēnseant, *there are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *the earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestrā, quī cum integritāte vīxistis, hōc interest, *this interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Servīlis tumultus quōs, *the revolt of the slaves whom.* Caes.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (**445**, 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent:

Nōs, id quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, *our country delights us, as it ought* (lit., *that which it owes*). Cic. Rēgem, quod nūnquam anteā acciderat, necāvērunt, *they put their king to death, which had never before happened.* Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated:

Jūdice quō (for *quem*) nōstī, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Diēs īnstat, quō diē, *the day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tenēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

---

[1] *Quī* agrees with *puerī* and *mulierēs* conjointly, and is in the *masculine*, according to **439**, 2; but *quae* is in the *neuter*, according to **439**, 3.

[2] *Nōs*, referring to *ego āc tū*, is in the *first* person; while *quī*, referring to *tū et collēgae*, is in the *second* person, as is shown by the verb *spērāstis*.

[3] In these examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea* are *attracted*, to agree with their predicate nouns, *hominem*, *caput*, and *cōnfessiō;* but *quī* agrees with the appositive, *Rhēnus*.

9. Antecedent Attracted.—In poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause with the relative in agreement with it:

Urbem, quam statuō, vestra est, *the city which I am building is yours.* Verg.[1] Malārum, quās amor cūrās habet, oblīvīscī (for *malārum cūrārum quās*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.[1] Quōs vōs implōrāre dēbētis, ut, quam urbem pulcherrimam esse voluērunt, hanc[2] dēfendant, *these* (lit., *whom*) *you ought to implore to defend this city, which they wished to be most beautiful.* Cic.

Use of Pronouns.

446. Personal Pronouns.—The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:[3]

Sīgnificāmus quid sentiāmus, *we show what we think.* Cic. *Ego* rēgēs ējēcī, *vōs* tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, I *have banished kings,* YOU *introduce tyrants.* Cic.

Note 1.—With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, but not with *equidem:*

Facis amīcē tū quidem, *you act indeed in a friendly manner.* Cic. Nōn dubitābam equidem, *I did not doubt indeed.* Cic.

Note 2.—A writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nōs* for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular:

Vidēs *nōs* (for *mē*) multa cōnārī, *you see that* WE (for I) *are attempting many things.* Cic. Sermō explicābit *nostram* (for *meam*) sententiam, *the conversation will unfold* OUR (MY) *opinion.* Cic. Dīximus (for *dīxī*) multa, *I have said many things.* Cic.[4]

Note 3.—*Nostrī* and *vestrī* are generally used in an *objective* sense; *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* in a partitive sense:

Habētis ducem memorem *vestrī*, *you have a leader mindful* OF YOUR INTERESTS (OF YOU). Cic. Minus habeō vīrium quam *vestrūm* utervīs, *I have less strength than either* OF YOU. Cic. Quis *nostrūm*, *who* OF US? Cic.

Note 4.—With *ab*, *ad*, or *apud*, a personal pronoun may designate the *residence* or *abode* of a person:

Ā nōbīs ēgreditur, *he is coming* FROM OUR HOUSE. Ter. Vēnī *ad mē*, *I came* TO MY HOUSE. Cic. Eāmus ad mē, *let us go to my house.* Ter. Apud tē est, *he is at your house.* Cic. Rūrī apud sē est, *he is at his residence in the country.* Cic. See also **433**, I., *ad*, *apud*, etc.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Manūs lavā, *wash your hands.* Cic. Mihĭ mea vīta cāra est, *my life is dear to me.*[5] Plaut.

---

[1] For other examples, see Verg., Aen., V., 28–30; Hor., Sat., I., 10, 16.

[2] *Quam urbem, hanc* = *hanc urbem, quam.*

[3] The learner will remember that a pronominal subject is actually contained in the ending of the verb; see **368**, 2, foot-note.

[4] For other examples, see Hor., Sat., I., 9, 7, and Car., I., 32.

[5] In this example *mea* is expressed for *emphasis.*

Note 1.—Possessive Pronouns sometimes mean *favorable*, *propitious*, as *aliēnus* often means *unfavorable:*

Vādimus haud nūmine nostrō, *we advance under a divinity not propitious.* Verg. Tempore tuō pūgnāsti, *you fought at a favorable time.* Liv. Ferunt sua flāmina clāssem, *favorable winds bear the fleet.* Verg. Aliēnō locō proelium committunt, *they engage in battle in an unfavorable place.* Caes.

Note 2.—For the Possessive Pronoun in combination with a Genitive, see **398**, 3.

448. Reflexive Use of Pronouns.—*Suī* and *suus* have a reflexive sense;[1] sometimes also the other personal and possessive pronouns:

Mīles sē ipsum interfēcit, *the soldier killed himself.* Tac. Tēlō sē dēfendit, *he defends himself with a weapon.* Cic. Suā vī movētur, *he is moved by his own power.* Cic. Mē cōnsōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Vōs vestra tēcta dēfendite, *defend your houses.* Cic.

Note.—*Inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*, have a reciprocal force, *each other*, *one another*, *together;* but instead of *inter sē*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Colloquimur inter nōs, *we converse together.* Cic. Amant inter sē, *they love one another.* Cic. Hominēs hominibus ūtilēs sunt, *men are useful to men* (i. e., to each other). Cic.

449. *Suī* and *suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand:

Sē dīligit, *he loves himself.* Cic. Jūstitia propter sēsē colenda est, *justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. Annulum suum dedit, *he gave his ring.* Nep. Per sē sibī quisque cārus est, *every one is in his very nature* (through *or* in himself) *dear to himself.* Cic.

1. In Subordinate Clauses expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *suī* and *suus* generally refer to that subject:

Sentit animus sē vī suā movērī, *the mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.* Cic. Ā mē petīvit ut sēcum essem, *he asked* (from) *me to be with him* (that I would be). Cic. Pervestīgat quid suī cīvēs cōgitent, *he tries to ascertain what his fellow-citizens think.* Cic.

1) As *suī* and *suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *is*, *ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects which do not admit *suī* and *suus:*

Deum āgnōscis ex ējus operibus, *you recognize a god by* (from) *his works.* Cic. Obligat cīvitātem nihil eōs mūtātūrōs, *he binds the state not to change anything* (that they will). Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the reflexive or the demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own:

Persuādent Tulingīs utī cum iīs[2] proficīscantur, *they persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

3) Sometimes reflexives and demonstratives are used without any apparent distinction:

---

[1] *Suī*, of himself; *sibī*, for himself; *sē*, himself.

[2] Here *cum iīs* is the proper language for the *writer* without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *sēcum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that *subject*.

Caesar Fabium cum legiōne suā[1] remittit, *Caesar sends back Fabius and* (with) *his legion.* Caes. Omittō Īsocratem discipulōsque ējus,[1] *I omit Isocrates and his disciples.* Cic.

2. Suus, in the sense of His own, Fitting, etc., may refer to subject or object:

Jūstitia suum cuique tribuit, *justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic.

3. Synesis.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *suī* and *suus* refer to the agent:

Ā Caesare invītor sibī ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar* (real agent) *to be his lieutenant.* Cic.

4. The Plural of Suus, meaning His Friends, Their Friends, Their Possessions, etc., is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases:

Fuit hōc lūctuōsum suīs, *this was afflicting to his friends.*[2] Cic.

5. Suī and Suus sometimes refer to an omitted subject:

Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre, *to boast of one's self is disgusting.* Cic.

6. Two Reflexives.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject:

Respondit nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, *he replied that no one had contended with him without* (his) *destruction.*[3] Caes.

450. Demonstrative Pronouns.—*Hīc*, *iste*, *ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hīc* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed; and *ille*, that which is remote from both:

Custōs hūjus urbis, *the guardian of this city* (i. e., of our city). Cic. Mūtā istam mentem, *change that purpose of yours.* Cic. Ista quae sunt ā tē dicta, *those things which were spoken by you.* Cic. Sī illōs, quōs vidēre nōn possumus, neglegis, *if you disregard those* (far away, yonder) *whom we can not see.* Cic.

1. *Hīc* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in *space*, *time*, or *thought:*

Nōn antīquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō fuit ērudītus, *he was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way.* Cic. Hōc illud fuit, *was it* (that) *this?* Verg.

Note.—The idea of *contempt* often implied in clauses with *iste* is not strictly contained in the pronoun itself, but derived from the context:[4]

Animī est *ista* mollitiēs, nōn virtūs, THAT *is an effeminate spirit, not valor.* Caes.

---

[1] Observe that the *reflexive* is used in the first example, and the *demonstrative* in the second, though the cases are entirely alike.

[2] Here *suīs* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

[3] Here *sē* refers to the subject of *respondit*, and *suā* to *nēminem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

[4] The idea of *contempt* is readily explained by the fact that *iste* is often applied to the views of an opponent, to a defendant before a court of justice, and the like.

2. Former and Latter.—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *hīc* generally follows *ille* and refers to the *latter* object, while *ille* refers to the *former*; but (2) *hīc* may precede and may refer to the *former*, and *ille* refer to the *latter*:

Inimīcī, amīcī; illī, hī, *enemies, friends; the former, the latter.* Cic. Certa pāx, spērāta victōria; haec (*pāx*) in tuā, illa in deōrum potestāte est, *sure peace, hoped-for victory; the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods.* Liv.

Note.—*Hīc* refers to the *former* object, when that object is conceived of as *nearer in thought*, either because of its importance, or because of its *close* connection with the subject under discussion.[1]

3. *Hīc* and *ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse:

Hīs verbīs epistulam mīsit, *he sent a letter in these words* (i. e., in the following words). Nep. Illud intellegō, omnium ōra in mē conversa esse, *this I understand, that the eyes of all are turned upon me.* Sall.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic. Ego, ille ferōx, tacuī, *I, that haughty one, was silent.* Ovid.

Note 1.—*Hīc* is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*, rarely to *ego*, and *hīc homō* to *ego*:

Suprā hanc memoriam, *before our time* (lit., *before this memory*). Cic. Hīs meīs litterīs, *with this letter of mine* (from me). Cic. Hic homōst omnium hominum, etc., *of all men I am*, etc. (lit., *this man is*). Plaut.

Note 2.—*Hīc*, *ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quidem*:

Scīpiō nōn multum ille dīcēbat, *Scipio did not indeed say much.* Cic. Graecī volunt illī quidem, *the Greeks indeed desire it.* Cic. Ista tranquillitās ea ipsa est beāta vīta, *that tranquillity is itself a happy life.*[2] Cic.

Note 3.—A demonstrative or relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive, or to a preposition with its case: *hīc amor* = *amor hūjus reī*, 'the love of this'; *haec cūra* = *cūra dē hōc*, 'care concerning this.'

Note 4.—Adverbs derived from demonstrative pronouns share the distinctive meanings of the pronouns themselves:

Hīc plūs malī est, quam illīc bonī, *there is more of evil here, than of good there.* Ter. See also **304**; **305**.

451. *Is* and *īdem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

Dionȳsius aufūgit, is est in prōvinciā, *Dionysius has fled, he is in the province.* Cic. Is quī satis habet, *he who has enough.* Cic. Eadem audīre mālunt, *they prefer to hear the same things.* Liv.

1. The pronoun *is*, the weakest of the demonstratives, is often understood, especially before a relative or a Genitive:

Flēbat pater dē fīliī morte, dē patris fīlius, *the father wept over the death of the son, the son over* (that) *of the father.* Cic. See also **445**, 6.

---

[1] Thus, in the last example, *haec* refers to *certa pāx* as the more prominent object in the mind of the speaker, as he is setting forth the *advantages* of a *sure peace* over a hoped-for victory.

[2] For other examples, see Verg., Aen., I., 3; III., 490; and XI., 809. For the use of personal pronouns with *quidem*, see **446**, note 1.

2. *Is, with a conjunction*, is often used for emphasis, like the English, *and that too, and that indeed:*

Ūnam rem explicābō, eamque māximam, *one thing I will explain, and that too a most important one.* Cic. Audīre Cratippum, idque Athēnīs, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.*[1] Cic.

3. *Īdem* is sometimes best rendered *also, at the same time, at once, both, yet:*

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, *nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Cum dīcat, negat īdem, *though he asserts, he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic. Rēx Anius, rēx īdem hominum Phoebīque sacerdōs, *King Anius, both king of men and priest of Apollo.* Verg.

4. *Is—quī* means *he—who, such—as, such—that:*

Iī sumus, quī esse dēbēmus, *we are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gēns quae nesciat, *the race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Īdem—quī* means *the same—who, the same—as; īdem—āc* (*atque, et, que*), *īdem—ut, īdem—cum* with the Ablative, *the same—as:*

Eīdem mōrēs, quī, *the same manners which* or *as.* Cic. Est īdem āc fuit, *he is the same as he was.* Ter. Eōdem mēcum patre genitus, *the son of the same father as I* (with me). Tac.

6. For the DISTINCTION BETWEEN IS and SUĪ in subordinate clauses, see **449**, 1, 2).

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self:*

Ipse Pater fulmina mōlītur, *the Father himself* (Jupiter) *hurls the thunderbolts.* Verg. Ipse[2] dīxit, *he himself said it.* Cic. Ipse Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut tē ipsum custōdiās, *see that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Mē ipse cōnsōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic. Ipse sē quisque dīligit, *every one* (himself) *loves himself.* Cic. Sē ipsum interfēcit, *he killed himself.* Tac.

NOTE.—*Ipse* is sometimes accompanied by *sēcum*, 'with himself,' 'alone,' or by *per sē*, 'by himself,' 'unaided,' 'in and of himself,' etc.:

Aliud genitor sēcum ipse volūtat, *the father* (Jupiter) *himself alone ponders another plan.* Verg. Quod est rēctum ipsumque per sē laudābile, *which is right, and in and of itself praiseworthy.* Cic.

2. *Ipse* is often best rendered by *very:*

Ipse ille Gorgiās, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With numerals, *ipse* means *just so many, just;* so also in *nunc ipsum*, 'just at this time'; *tum ipsum*, 'just at that time':

Trīgintā diēs ipsī, *just thirty days.* Cic. Nunc ipsum sine tē esse nōn possum, *just at this time I cannot be without you.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own:*

Nostra ipsōrum amīcitia, *our own friendship.* Cic. See **398**, 3.

5. *Ipse* in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the principal subject, like an emphatic *suī* or *suus:*

Lēgātōs mīsit quī ipsī vītam peterent, *he sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

6. *Et ipse* and *ipse quoque* may often be rendered *also, likewise, even he:*[3]

Alius Achillēs nātus et ipse deā, *another Achilles likewise* (lit., *himself also*) *born of a goddess.* Verg.

---

[1] *Id*, thus used, often refers to a clause, or to the general thought, as in this example.

[2] Applied to Pythagoras by his disciples. *Ipse* is often thus used of a *superior*, as of a *master*, *teacher*, etc.

[3] Compare the Greek καὶ αὐτός.

7. For the use of the Nominative *ipse* in connection with the Ablative Absolute, see **431**, note 8.

453. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun ; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence :

Rēs loquitur ipsa, quae semper valet, *the fact itself speaks, and this* (which) *ever has weight.* Cic. Quī proelium committunt, *they engage in battle.* Caes. Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVES and DEMONSTRATIVES are often correlatives to each other: *hīc—quī*, *iste—quī*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—quī*, *īdem—quī*, **451**, 4 and 5.

NOTE.—The neuter *quidquid*,[1] accompanied by an adjective, a participle, or a Genitive, may be used of persons :

Mātrēs et quidquid tēcum invalidum est dēlige, *select the mothers and whatever feeble persons there are with you* (lit., *whatever there is with you feeble*). Verg. Quidquid erat patrum, *whatever fathers there were.* Liv. See also **397**, 3, note 5.

2. In TWO SUCCESSIVE CLAUSES, the *relative* may be—(1) expressed in both, (2) expressed in the first and omitted in the second, (3) expressed in the first and followed by a demonstrative in the second:

Nōs quī sermōnī nōn interfuissēmus et quibus Cotta sententiās trādidisset, *we who had not been present at the conversation, and to whom Cotta had reported the opinions.* Cic. Dumnorix quī prīncipātum obtinēbat āc plēbī acceptus erat, *Dumnorix, who held the chief authority, and who was acceptable to the common people.* Caes. Quae nec habērēmus nec hīs ūterēmur, *which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Several relatives may appear in successive clauses :

Omnēs quī vēstītum, quī tēcta, quī cultum vītae, quī praesidia contrā ferās invēnērunt, *all who introduced* (invented) *clothing, houses, the refinements of life, protection against wild beasts.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—A relative clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive : *iī quī audiunt* = *audītōrēs*, 'hearers.'

3. TWO RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Artēs quās quī tenent, *arts, whose possessors* (which who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to the Ablative with *prō :*

Spērō, quae tua prūdentia est, tē valēre, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.). Cic.

NOTE.—Quae tua prūdentia est = quā es prūdentiā = prō tuā prūdentiā, means *such is your prudence*, or *you are of such prudence*, or *in accordance with your prudence*, etc.

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative :

Vāsa, quae pulcherrima viderat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. Dē servīs suīs, quem habuit fidēlissimum, mīsit, *he sent the most faithful of the slaves that he had.* Nep.

6. The *neuter*, *quod*, used as an adverbial Accusative, often stands at the beginning

---

[1] Of the general or indefinite relative *quisquis*.

of a sentence or clause, especially before *si*, *ni*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and sometimes before *quia*, *quoniam*, *utinam*, etc., to indicate a close connection with what precedes. In translating it is sometimes best omitted, and sometimes best rendered by *now*, *in fact*, *but*, *and:*

Quod sī ceciderint, *but if they should fall.*[1] Cic. Quod si ego rescīvissem id prius, *now if I had learned this sooner.*[1] Ter.

7. *Quī dīcitur*, *quī vocātur*, or the corresponding active, *quem dīcunt*, *quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so-called*, *the so-called*, *what they* or *you call*, etc.:

Vestra quae dīcitur vīta, mors est, *your so-called life* (lit., *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lēx ista quam vocās nōn est lēx, *that law, as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

454. Interrogative Pronouns.—The Interrogative *quis* is used substantively; *quī*, adjectively:

Quis ego sum, *who am I?* Cic. Quid faciet, *what will he do?* Cic Quī vir fuit, *what kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *quī* substantively:

Quis rēx unquam fuit, *what king was there ever?* Cic. Quī sīs, cōnsīderā, *consider who you are.* Cic.

Note.—The *neuter*, *quid*, is sometimes used of persons; see **397**, 8, note 5.

2. Quid, *why*, *how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (**378**, 2), or stands apparently unconnected:[2] *quid*, 'why?' 'what?' *quid enim*, 'why then?' 'what then?' 'what indeed?' *quid ita*, 'why so?' *quid quod*, 'what of the fact that?' *quid si*, 'what if?':

Quid vēnistī, *why have you come?* Plaut. Quid enim? metusne conturbet, *what then? would fear disturb us?* Cic. Quid quod dēlectantur, *what of the fact that they are delighted?* Cic.

3. Two Interrogatives sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem fraudāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit., *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. *Tantus* sometimes accompanies the interrogative pronoun:

Quae fuit unquam in ūllō homine tanta cōnstantia, *was there ever so great constancy in any man?* Cic.

455. Indefinite Pronouns.[3]—*Aliquis*, *quis*, *quī*, and *quispiam*, are all indefinite—*some one*, *any one:*

Est aliquis, *there is some one.* Liv. Sēnsus aliquis esse potest, *there may be some sensation.* Cic. Dixit quis, *some one said.* Cic. Sī quis rēx, *if any king.* Cic. Alia rēs quaepiam, *any other thing.* Cic.

1. *Quis* and *quī* are used chiefly after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num.* *Aliquis* and *quis* are generally used substantively, *aliquī* and *quī* adjectively. *Aliquis* and *aliquī* after *sī*, *nisi*, etc., are emphatic:

Sī est aliquī sēnsus in morte, *if there is any sensation whatever in death.* Cic.

2. *Nesciŏ quis* and *nesciŏ quī* often supply the place of indefinite pronouns:

---

[1] Here *quod* refers to something that precedes, and means *in reference to which*, *in reference to this*, *in this connection*, etc. For other examples, see Caesar, B. G., I., 14, and VII., 88.

[2] In some instances *quid* is readily explained by the *ellipsis* of some form of *dīcŏ* or of *sum.*

[3] For a full illustration of the use of indefinite pronouns, see Draeger, I., pp. 87–103.

Nesciŏ quis loquitur, *some one speaks* (lit., *I know not who speaks*, or *one speaks, I know not who*). Plaut. Nesciŏ quid mihi animus praesāgit malī, *my mind forebodes some evil* (**191**, note). Ter.

456. *Quīdam*, 'a certain one,' is less indefinite than *aliquis:*

Quīdam rhētor antīquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician.* Cic. Accurrit quīdam, *a certain one runs up.* Hor.

1. *Quīdam* with an adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Jūstitia mīrifica quaedam vidētur, *justice seems somewhat wonderful.* Cic.

2. *Quīdam* with *quasi*, and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were:*

Quasi alumna quaedam, *a certain foster-child, as it were.* Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ūllus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative :

Neque mē quisquam āgnōvit, *nor did any one recognize me.* Cic. Sī quisquam, *if any one.* Cic. Num cēnsēs ūllum animal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nēmŏ* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively :

Nēminem laesit, *he harmed no one.* Cic. Nēmŏ poēta, *no poet.* Cic.

2. *Nūllus* is the negative of *ūllus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Genitive and Ablative of *nēmŏ*, which generally wants those cases :

Nūllum animal, *no animal.* Cic. Nūllīus aurēs, *the ears of no one.* Cic.

3. *Nūllus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *nōn:*

Nūllus vēnit, *he did not come.* Cic. Mortuī nūlli sunt, *the dead are not.* Cic.

458. *Quīvīs, quīlibet*, 'any one whatever,' and *quisque*, 'every one,' 'each one,' are general indefinites (**190**):

Quaelibet rēs, *anything.* Cic. Tuōrum quisque necessāriōrum, *each one of your friends.* Cic.

1. *Quisque* with superlatives and ordinals is generally best rendered by *all*, or by *ever, always;* with *prīmus* by *very, possible:*

Epicūrēōs dōctissimus quisque contemnit, *all the most learned despise the Epicureans*, or *the most learned ever despise*, etc. Cic. Prīmō quōque diē, *the earliest day possible, the very first.* Cic.

2. *Ut quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more:*

Ut quisque sibī plūrimum cōnfīdit, ita māximē excellit, *the more one confides in one's self, the more one excels.* Cic.

459. *Alius* means 'another, other'; *alter*, 'the one,' 'the other' (of two), 'the second,' 'a second.' They are often repeated : *alius—alius*, one—another ; *aliī—aliī*, some—others ; *alter—alter*, the one—the other ; *alterī—alterī*, the one party—the other :

Lēgātōs alium ab aliō aggreditur, *he tampers with the ambassadors one after another.* Sall. Aliī glōriae serviunt, aliī pecūniae, *some are slaves to glory, others to money.* Cic. Quidquid negat alter, et alter, *whatever one denies, the* *other denies.* Hor. Alter erit Tīphȳs, *there will be a second Tiphys.* Verg. Tū nunc eris alter ab illō, *you will now be next after him.* Verg. Alterī dīmicant, alterī timent, *one party contends, the other fears.* Cic.

1. *Alius* or *alter* repeated in different cases, or combined with *aliās* or *aliter*, often involves an ellipsis:

Alius aliā viā cīvitātem auxērunt, *they advanced the state, one in one way, another in another.* Liv. Aliter aliī vīvunt, *some live in one way, others in another.* Cic.

2. After *alius*, *aliter*, and the like, *atque*, *āc*, and *et* often mean *than:*

Nōn alius essem atque sum, *I would not be other than I am.* Cic.

3. When *alter—alter* refer to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either:

Inimīcus, competītor, cum alterō—cum alterō, *an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former.* Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two.* In the plural it generally means *both, each of two parties*, but sometimes *both, each of two persons* or *things;* regularly so with nouns which are plural in form but singular in sense:

Utrīque victōriam crūdēliter exercēbant, *both parties made a cruel use of victory.* Sall. Palmās utrāsque tetendit, *he extended both his hands.* Verg.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.—USE OF VOICES.

RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.* Cic. Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to **438.** See also **301**, 1 and 2:

Thēbānī accūsātī sunt, *the Thebans were accused.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In the compound forms of the Infinitive, the participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject:

Diffidentiā futūrum quae imperāvisset, *from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place.* Sall.

NOTE 2.—A *General* or *Indefinite* subject is often denoted—

1) By the First or Third Person Plural, and in the Subjunctive by the Second Person

Singular: *dīcimus*, 'we (*people*) say'; *dīcunt*, 'they say'; *dīcās*, 'you (*any one*) may say':

Sī beātī esse volumus, *if we wish to be happy*. Cic. Agere quod agās cōnsīderātē decet, *you* (*one*) *should do considerately whatever you do* (*one does*). Cic.

2) By an Impersonal Passive:

Ad fānum concurritur, *they rush to the temple*. Cic. Nisi cum virtūte vīvātur, *unless they live* (unless one lives) *virtuously*. Cic.

Note 3.—For the *Pronominal Subject* contained in the verb, see **368**, 2.

Note 4.—For the Omission of the Verb, see **368**, 3.

461. Synesis.—Sometimes the predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus—

1. With collective nouns, *pars*, *multitūdŏ*, and the like:

Multitūdŏ abeunt, *the multitude depart*. Liv. Pars per agrōs dīlāpsī, *a part* (some) *dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

Note 1.—Here *multitūdŏ* and *pars*, though singular and feminine in form, are plural and masculine in sense; see also **438**, 6. Conversely, the Imperative singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually:

Adde dēfectiōnem Siciliae, *add* (to this, soldiers) *the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

Note 2.—Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *singular*, and the latter *plural*:

Juventūs ruit certantque, *the youth rush forth and contend*. Verg.

2. With *mīlia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesī sunt tria mīlia, *three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *quisque*, *uterque*, *alius—alium*, *alter—alterum*, and the like:

Uterque ēdūcunt, *they each lead out*. Caes. Alter alterum vidēmus, *we see each other*. Cic.

4. With singular subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum*:

Dux cum prīncipibus capiuntur, *the leader with his chiefs is taken*. Liv. Quid hūc tantum hominum (= *tot hominēs*) incēdunt, *why are so many men coming hither?* Plaut. See also **438**, 6.

5. With *partim—partim* in the sense of *pars—pars*:

Bonōrum partim necessāria, partim nōn necessāria sunt, *of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or with a Predicate Noun:

Volsiniī, oppidum Tuscōrum, concremātum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. Nōn omnis error stultitia est dīcenda, *not every error should be called folly*. Cic. Puerī Trōjānum dīcitur agmen, *the boys are called the Trojan band*. Verg.

Note 1.—The verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *cīvitās*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

Note 2.—The verb agrees with the predicate noun when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

NOTE 3.—The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc.:

Nihil aliud nisi pāx quaesita est, *nothing but peace was sought.* Cic.

463. With TWO OR MORE SUBJECTS the verb agrees—

I. With one subject, and is understood with the others:

Aut mōrēs spectārī aut fortūna solet, *either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Homērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived* (were) *before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the plural number:

Lentulus, Scīpiō periērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicerō valēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tū et Tullia valētis, *you and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. With SUBJECTS DIFFERING IN PERSON, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; see examples.

2. For PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES, see **439**.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb:

Senātus populusque intellegit, *the senate and people* (i. e., the state as a unit) *understand.* Cic. Tempus necessitāsque postulat, *time and necessity* (i. e., the crisis) *demand.* Cic.

4. WITH AUT OR NEC.—When the subjects connected by *aut*, *vel*, *nec*, *neque* or *seu*, *differ in person*, the verb is usually in the plural; but when they are of the *same person*, the verb usually agrees with the nearest subject:

Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus, *neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter. Aut Brūtus aut Cassius jūdicāvit, *either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic.

464. VOICES.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But—

I. That which in the active construction would be the *object* must be the *subject* in the passive; and—

II. That which in the active would be the *subject* must be put in the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab* for *persons*, and in the *Ablative alone* for *things* (**415**, I.; **420**):

Deus omnia cōnstituit, *God ordained all things.* Ā Deō omnia cōnstitūta sunt, *all things were ordained by God.* Cic. Deī prōvidentia mundum administrat, *the providence of God rules the world.* Deī prōvidentiā mundus administrātur, *the world is ruled by the providence of God.* Cic.

465. The PASSIVE VOICE, like the Greek Middle,[1] is sometimes equivalent to the Active with a reflexive pronoun:

Lavantur in flūminibus, *they bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers.* Caes.

---

[1] Most Passive forms once had both a *Middle* and a *Passive* meaning, as in Greek: but in Latin the *Middle* or *Reflexive* meaning has nearly disappeared, though retained to a certain extent in special verbs.

Nōn hīc victōria vertitur, *not upon this point* (here) *does victory turn* (turn itself). Verg.

1. Intransitive Verbs (**193**) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetōrium, *they run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic. Mihī cum iīs vīvendum est, *I must live with them.* Cic.

Note.—Verbs which are usually *intransitive* are occasionally used *transitively*, especially in poetry:

Ego cūr invideor, *why am I envied?* Hor.

2. Deponent Verbs, though passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mīrābar, *I admired that.* Cic. Ab urbe proficīscī, *to set out from the city.* Caes.

Note 1.—Originally many deponent verbs seem to have had the force of the Greek Middle voice: *glōrior*, 'I boast myself,' 'I boast'; *vescor*, 'I feed myself.'

Note 2.—Semi-Deponents have some of the active forms and some of the passive, without change of meaning; see **268**, 3.

SECTION II.

THE INDICATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

I. Present Indicative.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicerō valēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Hŏc tē rogō, *I ask you for this.* Cic.

Note.—The Present of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation denotes an *intended* or *future* action; that of the Passive, a *present necessity* or *duty:*

Bellum scrīptūrus sum, *I intend to write the history of the war.*[1] Sall. Legendus est hīc ōrātor, *this orator ought to be read.*[1] Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used—

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs:*

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Fortēs fortūna adjuvat, *fortune helps the brave.* Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

---

[1] *Scrīptūrus sum* may be variously rendered, *I intend to write, am about to write, am to write, am destined to write*, etc.; *legendus est* means *he ought to be read, deserves to be read, must be read*, etc.

Jugurtha vallō moenia circumdat, ***Jugurtha surrounded the city with a rampart.*** **Sall.**

1. The Historical Present is used much more freely in Latin than in English. It is therefore generally best rendered by a past tense.

2. The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, especially after *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum*, etc.:

Jamdiū īgnōrō quid agās, ***I have not known for a long time what you have been doing.*** **Cic.**

3. The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant:

Xenophōn facit Sōcratem disputantem, *Xenophon represents Socrates discussing*. Cic.

4. With *dum*, 'while,' the Present is generally used, whether the action is present, past, or future:

Dum ea parant,[1] Saguntum oppūgnābātur, *while they were* (are) *making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked.* Liv. Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, *while these things were taking place, it was announced to Caesar.* Caes.

Note.—But with *dum*, meaning *as long as*, the Present can be used only of *present time*.

5. The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in animated discourse and in conditions:

Quam prendimus arcem, *what stronghold do we seize*, or *are we to seize?* Verg. Sī vincimus, omnia tūta erunt, *if we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

6. The Present is sometimes used of an *attempted* or *intended* action:

Virtūtem accendit, *he tries to kindle their valor.* Verg. Quid mē terrēs, *why do you try to terrify me?* Verg.

II. Imperfect Indicative.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time:

Stābant nōbilissimī juvenēs, *there stood* (were standing) *most noble youths.* Liv. Collēs oppidum cingēbant, *hills encompassed the town.* Caes. Mōtūrus exercitum erat, *he was intending to move his army.* Liv.

Note.—For the Imperfect of the Periphrastic Conjugations in conditional sentences, see **511, 2**

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially—

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events:

Ante oppidum plānitiēs patēbat, *before the town extended a plain.* Caes. Fulgentēs gladiōs vidēbant, *they saw* (were seeing) *the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered *was wont*, etc.:

---

[1] Here the time denoted by *parant* is present relatively to *oppūgnābātur*, and therefore really past.

Pausaniās epulābātur mōre Persārum, *Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style.* Nep.

1. The Imperfect is sometimes used of an *attempted* or *intended* action:[1]

Sēdābant tumultūs, *they attempted to quell the seditions.* Liv.

2. The Imperfect is often used of a past action which had been going on for some time, especially with *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum*, etc.:[1]

Domicilium Rōmae multōs jam annōs habēbat, *he had already for many years had his residence at Rome.* Cic.

3. The Latin sometimes uses the Imperfect where the English requires the Present:[2]

Pāstum animantibus nātūra eum quī cuique aptus erat, comparāvit, *nature has prepared for animals that food which is adapted to each.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—For the *Imperfect* in LETTERS, see **472**, 1.

NOTE 2.—For the *Descriptive Imperfect* in NARRATION, see **471**, 6.

NOTE 3.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY, etc., see **476**, 4.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time:

Scrībam ad tē, *I shall write to you.* Cic. Nūnquam aberrābimus, *we shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. In Latin, as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative:

Cūrābis et scrībēs, *you will take care and write.* Cic.

2. Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future tense, though sometimes put in the Present in English:

Nātūram sī sequēmur, nūnquam aberrābimus, *if we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses:

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as *at present completed*, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have:*

Dē genere bellī dīxī, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action simply as an *historical fact:*

---

[1] Observe that the peculiarities of the Present reappear in the Imperfect. This arises from the fact that these two tenses are precisely alike in representing the action in its *progress*, and that they differ only in *time*. The one views the action in the present, the other transfers it to the past.

[2] This occurs occasionally in the statement of general truths and in the description of natural scenes, but in such cases the truth or the scene is viewed not from the *present* but from the *past*.

Miltiadēs est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Quid factūrī fuistis, *what did you intend to do*, or *what would you have done?* Cic.

Note.—For the Perfect of the Periphrastic Conjugations in conditional sentences, see **476**, 1.

1. The Perfect is sometimes used—

1) Instead of the Present to denote the *suddenness* of the action:

Terra tremit, mortālia corda strāvit pavor, *the earth trembles, fear overwhelms* (has overwhelmed) *the hearts of mortals.* Verg.

2) To contrast the *past* with the *present*, implying that what *was* true then *is not* true now:

Habuit, non habet, *he had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Īlium, *Ilium was.* Verg.

2. The Perfect Indicative with *paene, prope*, may often be rendered by *might, would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

Brūtum nōn minus amō, *paene dīxī*, quam tē, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say*, or *I had almost said, than I love you.* Cic.

3. The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (**297**):

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers*[1] *the past.* Cic. Cum ad vīllam vēnī, hōc mē dēlectat, *when I come* (have come) *to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Memineram Paullum, *I remembered Paullus.* Cic.

4. Conjunctions meaning *as soon as*[2] are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is sometimes used, especially to denote the *result* of a completed action:

Postquam cecidit Īlium, *after* (as soon as) *Ilium fell*, or *had fallen.* Verg. Hīs ubī nātum prōsequitur[3] dictīs, *when he had addressed his son with these words.* Verg. Posteāquam cōnsul fuerat, *after he had been consul.*[4] Cic. Annō tertiō postquam profūgerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

5. In Subordinate Clauses after *cum* (quum), *sī*, etc., the Perfect is sometimes used of Repeated Actions, General Truths, and Customs:[5]

Cum ad vīllam vēnī, hōc mē dēlectat, *whenever I come* (have come) *to a villa, this delights me.* Cic.

Note.—In such cases the principal clause generally retains the Present, as in the example just given, but in *poetry* and in *late prose* it sometimes admits the Perfect:

Tulit punctum quī miscuit ūtile dulcī, *he wins* (has won) *favor who combines* (has combined) *the useful with the agreeable.* Hor.

6. In Animated Narrative, the Perfect usually narrates the leading events, and the Imperfect describes the attendant circumstances:

Cultum mūtāvit, vēste Mēdicā ūtēbātur, epulābātur mōre Persārum, *he changed his mode of life, used the Median dress, feasted in the Persian style.*

---

[1] Literally, *has recalled*, and so remembers, as the *result* of the act. The Latin presents the *completed act*, the English the *result.*

[2] As *postquam, ubī, ubī prīmum, ut, ut prīmum, simul atque* (*āc*), etc.

[3] Historical present; lit., *when he attends.*

[4] And so *was then* a man of consular rank.

[5] This use of the Latin Perfect corresponds to the *Gnomic Aorist* in Greek.

Nep. Sē in oppida recēpērunt mūrīsque sē tenēbant, *they betook themselves into their towns and kept themselves within their walls.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—The *Compound Tenses* in the *Passive* often denote the *result* of the action. Thus, *dōctus est* may mean either *he has been instructed*, or *he is a learned man* (lit., *an instructed man*):

Fuit dōctus ex disciplīnā Stōicōrum, *he was instructed in* (lit., *out of*) *the learning of the Stoics.* Cic. Nāvis parāta fuit, *the vessel was ready* (lit., *was prepared*). Liv.

NOTE 2.—For the *Perfect* in LETTERS, see **472**, 1.

NOTE 3.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY, etc., see **476**, 4.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some past time:

Pyrrhī temporibus jam Apollō versūs facere dēsierat, *in the times of Pyrrhus Apollo had already ceased to make verses.*[1] Cic. Cōpiās quās prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit, *he led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes. Cum esset Dēmosthenēs, multī ōrātōrēs clārī fuērunt et anteā fuerant, *when Demosthenes lived there were many illustrious orators, and there had been before.* Cic.

1. In LETTERS, the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect of present actions and events, and the Pluperfect of those which are past:[2]

Nihil habēbam quod scrīberem; ad tuās omnēs epistulās rescrīpseram prīdiē,[3] *I have* (had) *nothing to write; I replied to all your letters yesterday.* Cic. Prīdiē Īdūs haec scrīpsī; eō diē[3] apud Pompōnium eram cēnātūrus,[4] *I write this on the day before the Ides; I am going to dine to-day with Pomponius.* Cic.

2. The PLUPERFECT after *cum*, *sī*, etc., is often used of REPEATED ACTIONS, GENERAL TRUTHS, and CUSTOMS:[5]

Sī hostēs dēterrēre nēquīverant circumveniēbant, *if they were* (had been) *unable*[6] *to deter the enemy, they surrounded them.* Sall.

NOTE 1.—For the *Pluperfect* in the sense of the English Imperfect, see **471**, 3.

NOTE 2.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY, etc., see **476**, 4.

---

[1] Observe that *dēsierat* represents the action as already *completed* at the time designated.

[2] This change is by no means uniformly made, but is subject to the pleasure of the writer. It is most common near the beginning and the end of letters.

[3] Observe that the adverbs and the adverbial expressions are also adapted to the time of the reader. *Herī*, 'yesterday,' becomes to the reader *prīdiē*, 'the day before'—i. e., the day before the writing of the letter. In the same way *hodiē*, 'to-day,' 'THIS day,' becomes to the reader *eō diē*, 'THAT day.'

[4] The Imperfect of the Periphrastic Conjugation is sometimes thus used of *future* events which are expected to happen *before* the receipt of the letter. Events which will be future to the reader as well as to the writer must be expressed by the Future.

[5] See the similar use of the Perfect, **471**, 5.

[6] That is, *whenever they were unable.*

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam cum vēnerō, scrībam ad tē, *when I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tū haec legēs, ego illum fortasse convēnerō, *when you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. The FUTURE PERFECT is sometimes used to denote the *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestiterō, *I shall discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT is sometimes found in conditional clauses where we use the Present:

Sī interpretārī potuerō, hīs verbīs ūtitur, *if I can* (shall have been able to) *understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

VII. USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVII.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.* Cic. Nōnne expulsus est patriā, *was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hŏc fēcī dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. The Indicative is thus used in treating of facts—

I. In *Principal Clauses,*[1] whether Declarative as in the first example or Interrogative as in the second.

II. In *Subordinate Clauses.* Thus—

1. In *Relative Clauses:*

Dixit id quod dīgnissimum rē pūblicā fuit, *he stated that which was most worthy of the republic.* Cic. Quicquam bonum est, quod nōn eum quī id possidet meliōrem facit, *is anything good which does not make him better who possesses it?* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Relative Clauses, see **497**; **500**; **503**; **507, 2,** etc.

2. In *Conditional Clauses:*

Sī haec cīvitās est, cīvis sum ego, *if this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—For the special uses of the *Indicative* in Conditional Sentences, see **508.**
NOTE 2.—For the *Subjunctive* in Conditional Sentences, see **509**; **510.**

3. In *Concessive Clauses:*

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūnquam dīcunt, *although they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Concessive Clauses, see **515.**

---

[1] Including, of course, all simple sentences.

4. In *Causal Clauses:*

Quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.* Cic. Quia honōre dignī habentur, *because they are deemed worthy of honor.* Curt.

Note.—For the *Subjunctive* in Causal Clauses, see **516**; **517**.

5. In *Temporal Clauses:*

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent they approve.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic.

Note.—For the *Subjunctive* in Temporal Clauses, see **519**; **520**; **521**.

476. Special Uses.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (**511**, 2):

Haec condiciō nōn accipienda fuit, *this condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so:

Vīcerāmus, nisi recēpisset Antōnium, *we should have* (lit., *had*) *conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See **511**, 1.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being *doubled* or by assuming the suffix *cumque* (**187**, 3), take the Indicative:

Quisquis est, is est sapiēns, *whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hōc ūltimum, utcunque initum est, proelium fuit, *this, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv. Quidquid oritur, quālecumque est, causam habet, *whatever comes into being, of whatever character it may be* (lit., *is*), *it has a cause.* Cic.

4. In expressions of *Duty*, *Propriety*, *Necessity*, *Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative, chiefly in the historical tenses, in a manner somewhat at variance with the English idiom:

Nōn suscipī bellum oportuit, *the war should not have been undertaken.*[1] Liv. Eum contumēliīs onerāstī, quem colere dēbēbās, *you have loaded with insults one whom you should have* (ought to have) *revered.* Cic. Multōs possum bonōs virōs nōmināre, *I might name* (lit., *I am able to name*) *many good men.* Cic. Hanc mēcum poterās requiescere noctem, *you might rest* (might have rested) *with me this night.* Verg.

5. The Indicative of the verb *sum* is often used with *longum*, *aequum*, *aequius*, *difficile*, *jūstum*, *melius*, *pār*, *ūtilius*, etc., in such expressions as *longum est*, 'it would be tedious,' *melius erat*, 'it would have been better':

Longum est persequī ūtilitātēs, *it would be tedious* (is a long task) *to recount the uses.* Cic. Melius fuerat, prōmissum nōn esse servātum, *it would have been better that the promise should not have been kept.* Cic.

---

[1] Literally, *it was fitting* or *proper that the war should not be undertaken.*

SECTION III.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND ITS TENSES.

477. The Latin Subjunctive[1] has two principal uses—

I. It may represent an action as WILLED or DESIRED:

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE *our country*. Cic.

II. It may represent an action as PROBABLE or POSSIBLE:

Quaerat quispiam, *some one* MAY INQUIRE. Cic.

478. TENSES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE do not designate the time of the action so definitely as in the Indicative.

479. The PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses[2] embraces in a vague and general manner both *present* and *future* time:[3]

Amēmus patriam, *let us love our country* (now and ever). Cic. Quaerat quispiam, *some one may* (or *will*) *inquire* (at any time). Cic.

480. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates sometimes to the *past* and sometimes to the *present:*

Crēderēs victōs, *vanquished you would have thought them.* Liv. Utinam pōssem, *would that I were able* (now). Cic.

481. The PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates sometimes to the *past*, but more frequently to the *present* or *future:*

---

[1] The Latin Subjunctive, it will be remembered (p. 117, foot-note 4), contains the forms and the meaning of two kindred moods, the *Subjunctive* proper, and the *Optative*. In Latin, the forms characteristic of these two moods, used without any difference of meaning, are made to supplement each other. Thus, in the Present, the *Subjunctive* forms are found in the First Conjugation, and the *Optative* forms in the Second, Third, and Fourth. In their origin they are only special developments of certain forms of the Present Indicative, denoting continued and attempted action. From this idea of *attempted* action was readily developed on the one hand *desire*, *will*, as we attempt only what we desire, and on the other hand *probability*, *possibility*, as we shall very likely accomplish what we are already attempting. These two meanings, united in one word, lie at the basis of all Subjunctive constructions in Latin. On the *origin*, *history*, and *use* of the Subjunctive, see Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ'; Curtius, 'Verbum,' II., pp. 55–95; Draeger, II., pp. 439–748; Roby, II., pp. 202–348; also a paper by the author on 'The Development of the Latin Subjunctive in Principal Clauses,' Transactions Am. Phil. Assoc., 1879.

[2] For the tenses of the Subjunctive in *Subordinate* clauses, see **490**.

[3] The Present Subjunctive in its origin is closely related both in form and in meaning to the Future Indicative. Thus, in the Third and Fourth Conjugations, no future forms for the Indicative have been developed, but Subjunctive and Optative forms supply their place, as *regam*, *audiam* (Subjunctive), and *regēs*, *reget*, etc., and *audiēs*, *audiet*, etc. (Optative).

Fuerit malus cīvis, *he may have been* (admit that he was) *a bad citizen*. Cic. Nē trānsierīs[1] Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro* (now or at any time). Liv.

482. The PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates to the *past:*

Utinam potuissem, *would that I had been able*. Cic.

SECTION IV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED:

Valeant cīvēs, MAY *the citizens* BE WELL. Cic. *Amēmus* patriam, LET US LOVE *our country*. Cic. Ā nōbīs *dīligātur*, LET HIM BE LOVED *by us*. Cic. Scrībere nē *pigrēre*, DO *not* NEGLECT *to write*. Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes, especially in the poets, by *ut*, *sī*, *ō sī:*

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, *may I be able to accomplish my endeavors*. Cic. Ut illum dī perdant, *would that the gods would destroy him*. Ter.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it can not be fulfilled:

Sint beātī, *may they be happy*. Cic. Nē trānsierīs Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro*. Liv. Utinam pŏssem, utinam potuissem, *would that I were able*, *would that I had been able*. Cic.

NOTE.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered *should*, *should have*, *ought to have:*

Hŏc dīceret, *he should have said this*. Cic. Mortem oppetīssēs, *you should have met death*. Cic.

3. NEGATIVES.—With the *Subjunctive of Desire*, the negative is *nē*, rarely *nōn;* with a connective, *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *neque:*

Nē audeant, *let them not dare*. Cic. Nōn recēdāmus, *let us not recede*. Cic. Amēs dīcī pater, neu sinās, etc., *may you love to be called father*, *and may you not permit*, etc. Hor. Nēve minor neu sit prōdūctior, *let it be neither shorter nor longer*. Hor.

NOTE.—*Nēdum*, 'not to say,' 'much less,' is used with the Subjunctive:

Vix in tēctīs frīgus vītātur, nēdum in marī sit facile abesse ab injūriā, *the cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses*, *much less is it easy to escape* (to be absent from) *injury on the sea*. Cic.

4. The first person of the Subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn AFFIRMATIONS:

---

[1] Observe that the *Perfect* thus used does not at all differ *in time* from the *Present*, but that it calls attention to the *completion* of the action.

Moriar, sī putō, *may I die, if I think.* Cic. Nē sim salvus, sī scrībō, *may I not be safe, if I write.* Cic. Sollicitat, ita vīvam, *as I live, it troubles me.*[1] Cic.

5. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is sometimes used in Relative Clauses:

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Senectūs, ad quam utinam perveniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

Note.—For the *Subjunctive of Desire* in Subordinate Clauses, see **486**, III., note, with foot-note.

6. *Modo, modo nē,* may accompany the Subjunctive of *Desire:*

Modo Jūppiter adsit, *only let Jupiter be present.* Verg. Modo nē laudent, *only let them not praise.* Cic.

484. The *Subjunctive of Desire* may be in meaning—

I. Optative, as in *prayers* and *wishes:*

Sint beātī, *may they be happy.* Cic. Dī bene vertant, *may the gods cause it to turn out well.* Plaut.

II. Hortative, as in *exhortations* and *entreaties:*

Cōnsulāmus bonīs, *let us consult for the good.* Cic.

III. Concessive, as in *admissions* and *concessions:*

Fuerint pertinācēs, *grant* (or *admit*) *that they were obstinate.* Cic.

IV. Imperative, as in mild *commands, admonitions, warnings,* etc., used chiefly in *prohibitions:*

Illum jocum nē sīs āspernātus, *do not despise that jest.* Cic. Scrībere nē pigrēre, *do not neglect to write.* Cic.

Note 1.—In *prohibitions,* the Perfect tense is generally used:

Nē trānsierīs Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro.* Liv.

Note 2.—Except in *prohibitions,* the Second Person Singular in the best prose is used almost exclusively of an *indefinite you,* meaning *one, any one:*

Istō bonō ūtāre, *you should use* (i. e., one should use) *that advantage.* Cic.

V. Deliberative, as in *deliberative questions,* to ask what *should be:*

Huic cēdāmus, hūjus condiciōnēs audiāmus, *shall we yield*[2] *to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quid facerem, *what was I to do?*[3] Verg.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action not as real, but as possible:

Hīc *quaerat* quispiam, *here some one* MAY INQUIRE. Cic. Ita laudem *inveniās, thus you* WILL (or MAY) OBTAIN *praise.* Ter. Ita amīcōs *parēs, thus* YOU WILL MAKE *friends.* Ter. Vix dīcere *ausim,* I SHOULD *scarcely* DARE *to*

---

[1] Here *ita vīvam* means, *may I so live* (i. e., may I live only in case this is true).

[2] Or, *ought we to yield, is it your wish that we should yield?*

[3] Or, *what should I have done?*

say. Liv. Crēderēs vīctōs, *vanquished you would have thought them.* Liv. Forsitan quaerātis,[1] *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic. Hŏc nēmŏ dixerit, *no one would say this.* Cic. Quis dubitet (= nēmŏ dubitat), *who would doubt* (or *who doubts* = no one doubts)? Cic. Hŏc quis ferre possit, *who would be able to endure this?* Cic.

Note 1.—In the Potential Subjunctive, the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present, and the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dīcerēs*, 'you would have said'; *crēderēs, putārēs*, 'you would have thought'; *vidērēs, cernerēs*, 'you would have seen':

Tū Platōnem *laudāverĭs, you* WOULD PRAISE *Plato.* Cic. Maestī, *crēderēs* vīctōs, redeunt in castra, *sad, vanquished* YOU WOULD HAVE THOUGHT *them, they returned to the camp.* Liv.

Note 2.—On *Tenses*, see also **478–482.**

Note 3.—The Second Person Singular, especially of the Imperfect, is often used of an indefinite *you*, meaning *one, any one: crēderēs*, 'you would have thought,' 'any one would have thought.'

486. In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used—

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *modestly, doubtfully,* or *conditionally;* see examples.

Note 1.—Thus, in the language of politeness and modesty, the Potential Subjunctive is often used in verbs of *wishing* and *thinking: velim*, 'I should wish,' for *volŏ*, 'I wish'; *nōlim*, 'I should be unwilling'; *mālim*, 'I should prefer':

Ego cēnseam, *I should think*, or *I am inclined to think.* Liv. Mihĭ darī velim, *I should like to have it given to me.* Cic.

Note 2.—The Potential Subjunctive is used in the conclusion of conditional sentences; see **507**, 1, with foot-note.

II. In *Interrogative Sentences*, to ask not what *is*, but what is *likely to be*, what *may be* or *would be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last two examples under the rule.

Note.—The Subjunctive with *ut*, with or without the interrogative *ne*, occurs in questions expressive of *impatience* or *surprise:*[2]

Tē ut ūlla rēs frangat, *how should anything subdue you?* Cic. Egone ut mentiar, *that I should speak falsely?* Plaut.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real:*

Quamquam epulīs careat senectūs, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic. Quoniam nōn pōssent, *since they would not be able.* Caes. Ubĭ rēs posceret, *whenever the case might demand.* Liv.

Note.—From the Subjunctive of Desire and the Potential Subjunctive in principal clauses have been developed the various uses of the Subjunctive in subordinate clauses.[3]

---

[1] After *forsitan* = *fors sit an*, 'the chance may be whether,' 'perhaps,' the Subjunctive was originally in an indirect question (**529**), but it may be best treated as Potential. So also with *forsan* and *fortasse.*

[2] Some grammarians assume an ellipsis of a predicate, as *crēdibile est, fierī potest*, etc.

[3] Thus, the *Subjunctive of Desire* is used in *final, conditional*, and *concessive* clauses; the *Potential Subjunctive* in clauses of *result*, and in various others denoting

SECTION V.

THE IMPERATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

RULE XL.—Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES:

Jūstitiam cole, *practice justice.* Cic. Tū nē cēde malīs, *do not yield to misfortunes.* Verg. Sī quid in tē peccāvī, ignōsce, *if I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. The PRESENT IMPERATIVE corresponds to the Imperative in English:

Jūstitiam cole, *practice justice.* Cic. Perge, Catilīna, *go, Catiline.* Cic.

2. The FUTURE IMPERATIVE corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let*, and is used—

1) In COMMANDS involving *future* rather than present action:

Rem penditōte, *you shall consider the subject.* Cic. Crās petitō, dabitur, *ask to-morrow, it shall be granted.* Plaut.

2) In LAWS, ORDERS, PRECEPTS, etc., especially in PROHIBITIONS:

Cōnsulēs nēminī pārentō, *the consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō, *the safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

NOTE.—The general distinction between the *Present* Imperative and the *Future* is often disregarded, especially in poetry:[1]

Ubī aciem vīderis, tum ordinēs dissipā, *when you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks.* Liv. Quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

3. An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause:

Lacesse, jam vidēbis furentem, *provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

4. The place of the Imperative may be supplied by the Subjunctive of Desire (483), or by the Future Indicative:

Nē audeant, *let them not dare.* Cic. Quod optimum vidēbitur, faciēs, *you will do what shall seem best.* Cic.

488. In prohibitions or negative commands, the negative *nē*, rarely *nōn*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve* or *neu* is generally used, rarely *neque:*

Tū nē cēde malīs, *do not yield to misfortunes.* Verg. Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, nēve ūritō, *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

---

what is *likely to be.* Moreover, from these two leading uses was developed the idea of a *conceived* or *assumed* action, which probably lies at the foundation of all the other uses of this mood, as in *causal* and *temporal clauses*, in *indirect questions*, and in the *subordinate clauses of the indirect discourse.*

[1] Thus the Future is especially common in certain verbs; and, indeed, in some verbs, as *sciō*, *meminī*, etc., it is the only form in common use.

489. Instead of *nē* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use—

1) *Nōlī* and *nōlīte* with the Infinitive:

Nōlīte putāre, *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

2) *Fac nē* or *cavĕ*, with the Subjunctive:

Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs hōc tempore, *do not attend to anything else at this time.* Cic. Cavĕ faciās, *beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it.* Cic.

3) *Nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive, rarely with the Present; see **484**, IV., note 1.

SECTION VI.

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

I. Tenses of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.

490. In subordinate clauses the tenses of the Subjunctive conform to the following rule:

RULE XLI.—Sequence of Tenses.

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical:

Nītitur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.*[1] Cic. Nēmŏ erit quī cēnseat, *there will be no one who will think.*[1] Cic. Quaesierās nōnne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Ut honōre dīgnus essem labōrāvī, *I strove to be worthy of honor.* Cic.

492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense,[2] *present, future, future perfect*, is put—

1. In the Present, to denote *incomplete action:*

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, *the question is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Nēmŏ erit quī cēnseat, *there will be no one who will think.* Cic.

Note.—Observe that in these examples the action denoted by the Subjunctive belongs either to the *present* time or to the *future.*

2. In the Perfect, to denote *completed action:*

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, *let us inquire what faults there were.* Cic. Rogitābit mē ubĭ fuerim, *he will ask me where I have been.* Ter.

Note 1.—In the sequence of tenses, the Perfect is *occasionally* treated as a *principal* tense:[2]

Oblītus es quid dixerim, *you have forgotten what I said.* Cic.

Note 2.—For further illustrations of the *sequence of tenses*, see **493**, 2, note 2.

---

[1] The Present Subjunctive generally denotes *present time* in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, *vincat* depending upon the *present*, *nītitur*, denotes *present* time, while *cēnseat* depending upon the *future*, *erit*, denotes *future* time.

[2] For the treatment of the Perfect in the sequence of tenses, see **495**.

493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, *imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect,* is put—

1. In the IMPERFECT, to denote *incomplete action:*

Timēbam nē ēvenīrent ea, *I was fearing that those things would take place* (i. e., at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nōnne putārem, *you had inquired whether I did not think* (i. e., at that time). Cic.

NOTE.—Observe that in these examples the time of the action denoted by the Subjunctive is either the same as that of the principal verb or subsequent to it.

2. In the PLUPERFECT, to denote *completed action:*

Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam līberāsset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Pluperfect after an historical tense, like the Perfect after a principal tense, may represent the action as *completed in future time;* see 496, II.

NOTE 2.—The *sequence of tenses* may be further illustrated as follows:[1]

Nescit quid faciās,	*He knows not what you are doing.*
Nesciet quid faciās,	*He will not know what you will do.*[2]
Nescīverit quid faciās,	*He will not have known what you will do.*
Nescit quid fēceris,	*He knows not what you have done, or what you did.*[3]
Nesciet quid fēceris,	*He will not know what you will have done.*[4]
Nescīverit quid fēceris,	*He will not have known what you will have done.*
Nesciēbat quid facerēs,	*He did not know what you were doing.*[5]
Nescīvit quid facerēs,	*He did not know what you were doing.*[5]
Nescīverat quid facerēs,	*He had not known what you were doing.*
Nesciēbat quid fēcissēs,	*He did not know what you had done.*
Nescīvit quid fēcissēs,	*He did not know what you had done.*
Nescīverat quid fēcissēs,	*He had not known what you had done.*

494. The periphrastic forms in **rus** and **dus** conform to the general rule for the sequence of tenses:

Incertum est quam longa vīta futūra sit, *it is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quō missūrī clāssem forent, *it was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

495. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

I. In the sequence of tenses the *Latin Perfect* is generally treated as an historical tense, even when rendered with *have,* and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect:*

Quoniam quae subsidia habērēs exposuī,[6] nunc dīcam, *since I have shown*

---

[1] It is not intended to give all the possible meanings of the Subjunctive clauses here used, but simply to illustrate the sequence of tenses.

[2] Or, *he will not know what you are doing.* Thus, *quid faciās* may represent the direct question, *quid faciēs,* 'what shall you do?' or *quid facis,* 'what are you doing?'

[3] Or, *what you were doing.*

[4] Or, *what you have done, or what you did.*

[5] Or, *what you would do. Nescīvit* may sometimes be rendered, *he has not known.*

[6] *Exposuī,* though best rendered by our Perfect Definite with *have,* is in the Latin

what aids you have, I will now speak. Cic. Haec nōn ut vōs excitārem locūtus sum, *I have not spoken this to arouse* (that I might arouse) *you.* Cic.

Note.—For the *Perfect* as a *principal* tense, see **492, 2**, note 1.

II. The *Historical Present* (**467**, III.) is generally treated as an *historical* tense, but sometimes as a *principal* tense:

Persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret, *he persuaded Casticus to seize the government.* Caes. Ubiī ōrant ut sibī parcat, *the Ubii implore him to spare them.* Caes.

Note.—The *Historical Present* includes the Present used of authors (**467, 3**), the Present with *dum* (**467, 4**), the Historical Infinitive (**536, 1**), etc.:

Chrȳsippus disputat Aethera esse eum quem hominēs Jovem appellārent, *Chrysippus contends that he whom men call Jupiter is Aether.* Cic.

III. The *Imperfect Subjunctive*, even when it refers to present time, as in conditional sentences, is generally treated as an *historical* tense, though sometimes as a *principal* tense:

Nisi ineptum putārem, jūrārem mē ea sentīre quae dīcerem, *if I did not think it improper, I would take an oath that I believe those things which I say.* Cic. Memorāre possem quibus in locīs hostēs populus Rōmānus fūderit, *I might state in what places the Roman people routed the enemy.* Sall.

IV. The *Perfect Infinitive* is generally treated as an *historical* tense, but the *Present* and the *Future Infinitive*, the *Present* and the *Future Participle*, as also *Gerunds* and *Supines*, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (**537, 550**):

Satis videor docuisse, hominis nātūra quantō anteīret animantēs, *I think I have sufficiently shown how much the nature of man surpasses that of the other animals* (lit., *surpassed animals*). Cic. Spērō fore[1] ut contingat, *I hope it will happen.* Cic. Nōn spērāverat fore ut ad sē dēficerent, *he had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv. Mīsērunt Delphōs cōnsultum quidnam facerent, *they sent to Delphi to ask what they should do.* Nep.

V. Clauses containing a *general* truth usually conform to the law for the sequence of tenses, at variance with the English idiom:

Quanta cōnscientiae vīs *esset*, ostendit, *he showed how great* is *the power of conscience.* Cic.

VI. Clauses denoting *consequence* or *result* generally express *absolute time*, and are thus independent of the law of sequence.[2] They thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect* after historical tenses:

Epamīnōndās fidē sīc ūsus est, ut possit jūdicārī,[3] *Epaminondas used such*

---

treated as the Historical Perfect. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you have, I will now speak*, etc.

[1] Literally, *I hope it will be that it may happen.* Here *fore* shares the tense of *spērō*, and is accordingly followed by the Present, *contingat;* but below it shares the tense of *spērāverat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect, *dēficerent.*

[2] This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *result* of a *past* action may itself be

fidelity that it may be judged. Nep. Adeō excellēbat Aristīdēs abstinentiā, ut Jūstus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

VII. For the *sequence of tenses* in the indirect discourse, see **525**.

496. FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—When the Future is used in the principal clause, the Future and Future Perfect tenses, wanting in the Latin Subjunctive, are supplied in the subordinate clauses as follows:

I. The *Future* is supplied—(1) after a *principal* tense by the PRESENT, and (2) after an *historical* tense by the IMPERFECT:

Omnia sīc agentur ut bellum sēdētur,[1] *all things shall be so managed that the war will be brought to a close.* Cic. Loquēbantur, etiam cum vellet[1] Caesar, sēsē nōn esse pūgnātūrōs, *they were saying that they would not fight even when Caesar should wish it.* Caes.

II. The *Future Perfect* is supplied—(1) after a *principal* tense by the PERFECT, and (2) after an *historical* tense by the PLUPERFECT:

Respondet sī id sit factum, sē nocitūrum nēminī, *he replies that if this should be done* (shall have been done) *he will harm no one.* Caes. Appārēbat rēgnātūrum, quī vīcisset, *it was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—The *Future* and the *Future Perfect* tenses are often supplied in the same way, even when the Future does not occur in the principal clause, provided the idea of future time can be easily inferred from the context:

Vereor nē labōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quid hostēs cōnsiliī caperent, exspectābant, *they waited to see what plan the enemy would adopt.* Caes. Dēlituī, dum vēla dedissent, *I hid myself until they should have set sail.* Verg.

NOTE 2.—When the idea of future time must be especially emphasized in the subordinate clause, the periphrastic forms in *rus* are used:[2]

Incertum est quam longa vīta futūra sit, *it is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quō missūrī clāssem forent, *it was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

NOTE 3.—The *Future Perfect* is sometimes supplied in the Passive by *futūrus sim* and *futūrus essem* with the Perfect Participle:[2]

Nōn dubitō quīn cōnfecta jam rēs futūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

---

present, and may thus be expressed by a principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit jūdicārī*, 'may be judged now'; when it is represented as completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, 'has been called' (i. e., even to the present day); but when it is represented as *simultaneous* with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule (**491**).

[1] *Sēdētur*, referring to the same time as *agentur*, and *vellet*, referring to the same time as *esse pūgnātūrōs*, both denote *future* time.

[2] Other traditional periphrastic forms, rarely used in either voice, are—for the FUTURE, *futūrum sit ut* with the Present Subjunctive, and *futūrum esset ut* with the Imperfect; and for the FUTURE PERFECT, *futūrum sit ut* with the Perfect, and *futūrum esset ut* with the Pluperfect.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

RULE XLII.—Purpose.

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE:[1]

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubĭ**, **unde**, etc.:

Missī sunt quī (=*ut iī*) *cōnsulerent* Apollinem, *they were sent* TO CONSULT *Apollo* (who should, *or* that they should). Nep. Missī sunt dēlectī quī Thermopylās *occupārent*, *picked men were sent* TO TAKE POSSESSION OF *Thermopylae.* Nep. Domum, ubĭ habitāret, lēgit, *he selected a house where he might dwell* (that he might dwell in it). Cic. Locum petit, unde (= *ut inde*) hostem invādat, *he seeks a position from which he may* (that from it he may) *attack the enemy.* Liv.

II. With **ut**, **nē**, **quō**, **quōminus**:

Ēnītitur ut *vincat*, *he strives that* HE MAY CONQUER. Cic. Pūnit nē *peccētur*, *he punishes that crime* MAY *not* BE COMMITTED. Sen. Lēgum idcircō servī sumus, ut līberī esse possīmus, *we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep.

1. *Ut* or *utī* and *nē* are the usual conjunctions in clauses denoting purpose. A correlative, *ideō*, *idcircō*, *eō*, etc., sometimes precedes, as in the third example under II.

NOTE.—With a connective *nē* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *neque;* see 483, 3:

Lēgem tulit nē quis accūsārētur nēve multārētur, *he proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

2. *Quō*, 'by which,' 'that,' is sometimes used in clauses denoting purpose, especially with comparatives, as in the fourth example under II. *Quōminus*, 'by which the less,' 'that thus the less,' 'that not,' is simply *quō* with the comparative *minus*. It is sometimes used after verbs of *hindering*, *opposing*, and the like, as in the last example under II.

NOTE.—*Quō sētius* also occurs in the sense of *quōminus;* see Cic. Inv., II., 45.

498. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE readily pass into *Object Clauses*,[2] but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used—

---

[1] The Subjunctive of *Purpose* is doubtless in origin a Subjunctive of *Desire*, expressing the *desire* or *command* implied in the action of the principal verb: Tē rogō ut eum juvēs, *I ask you to aid him* (I ask you, so aid him). Here the second clause, originally independent, contains the *desire*, *wish*, involved in *rogō*. Vereor nē labōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor* (I fear, let me not increase the labor). Praestō erit pontifex, quī comitia habeat, *the pontiff will be present to hold the comitia* (the pontiff will be present, let him hold the comitia). Liv. See Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ,' pp. 59–62.

[2] An Object Clause is one which has become virtually the *object* of a verb. Thus, in '*optō ut id audiātis*,' the clause *ut id audiātis* has become the object of *optō*, 'I desire.'

I. With verbs signifying Desire and its Expression; hence *decision*, *decree*, etc.:[1]

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire* (pray) *that you may hear this.* Cic. Ut mihĭ aedēs aliquās condūcās volŏ, *I wish that you would hire a house for me.* Plaut. Senātus cēnsuerat, utī Aeduōs dēfenderet, *the senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes. Servīs imperat ut fīliam dēfendant, *he commands his servants to defend his daughter.* Cic. Tē hortor ut legās, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Tē rogō ut eum juvēs, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. Ā rēge petīvērunt nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret, *they asked from the king that he would not keep his worst enemy with him.* Nep.

Note.—Verbs of DETERMINING, DECIDING—*statuō*, *cōnstituō*, *dēcernō*, etc.—generally take the *Subjunctive* when a new subject is introduced, otherwise the *Infinitive* (533, I., 1):

Cōnstituerat, ut tribūnus quererētur, *he had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Senātus dēcrēvit, darent operam cōnsulēs, *the senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. Manēre dēcrēvit, *he decided to remain.* Nep.

II. With verbs and expressions denoting Effort (*striving for a purpose*, *attaining a purpose*) or Impulse (*urging to effort*):[2]

Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvī ut bene vīverem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effēcit ut imperātor mitterētur, *he caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. Movēmur ut bonī sīmus, *we are influenced to be good.* Cic.

Note 1.—Some verbs of ENDEAVORING, STRIVING, as *cōnor*, *contendō*, *nītor*, *studeō*, and *tentō*, generally take the Infinitive when no new subject is introduced; see 533:

Locum oppūgnāre contendit, *he proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābō dē hōc dīcere, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint.

Note 2.—*Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *faciō* or *agō*, rarely with *est*, a circumlocution for the Indicative: *faciō ut dīcam* = dīcō; *faciō ut scrībam* = scrībō:

Invītus faciō ut recorder, *I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

III. With verbs and expressions denoting Fear, Anxiety, Danger:[3]

Timeō, ut labōrēs sustineās, *I fear that you will not endure the labors.*[4] Cic. Timēbam nē ēvenīrent ea, *I feared that those things would happen.* Cic. Vereor nē labōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.*[4] Cic. Perīculum est nē ille tē verbīs obruat, *there is danger that he will overwhelm you with words.* Cic.

Note 1.—By a difference of idiom, *ut* must here be rendered by *that not*, and *nē* by *that* or *lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a *wish* or *purpose*.[4]

---

[1] As *optō*, *postulō*; *cēnseō*, *dēcernō*, *statuō*, *cōnstituō*, etc.; *volŏ*, *mālō*; *admoneō*, *moneō*, *hortor*; *ōrō*, *rogō*; *imperō*, *praecipiō*, etc.

[2] As *ēnītor*, *contendō*, *studeō*; *cūrō*, *id agō*, *operam dō*, etc.; *faciō*, *efficiō*, *impetrō*, *cōnsequor*, etc.; *cōgō*, *impellō*, *moveō*, etc.

[3] As *metuō*, *timeō*, *vereor*; *perīculum est*, *cūra est*, etc.

[4] The *Subjunctive of Desire* is manifest if we make the subordinate clause inde-

NOTE 2.—After verbs of FEARING, *nē nōn* is sometimes used for *ut*—regularly so after negative clauses:

Vereor nē nōn possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—Verbs of FEARING admit the *Infinitive* in the same sense as in English:

Vereor laudāre, *I fear* (hesitate) *to praise.*[1] Cic.

499. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities:

1. **Ut nē**, rarely **ut nōn**, is sometimes used for **nē**:

Praedixit, ut nē lēgātōs dīmitterent, *he charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates.* Nep. Ut plūra nōn dīcam, *not to say more* (i. e., that I may not). Cic.

2. **Ut** is sometimes omitted, especially after *volŏ*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *faciō*, and after verbs of DIRECTING, URGING, etc. **Nē** is often omitted after *cavĕ*:

Tū velim sīs, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fāc habeās, *see* (make) *that you have.* Cic. Senātus dēcrēvit darent operam cōnsulēs, *the senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall. Cavĕ faciās, *beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it.* Cic.

NOTE.—Clauses with *ut* or *nē* are sometimes inserted parenthetically in sentences:

Amīcōs, optimam vītae, ut ita dīcam,[2] suppellectilem, *friends, the best treasure* (furniture), *so to speak, of life.* Cic.

3. *Clauses of Purpose* sometimes pass into *Substantive Clauses*, which, like indeclinable nouns, are used in a variety of constructions:

Per eum stetit quōminus dīmicārētur,[3] *it was owing to him* (stood through him) *that the battle was not fought.* Caes. Volŏ ut mihĭ respondeās,[3] *I wish that you would answer me.* Cic. Fēcit pācem hīs condiciōnibus, nē quī adficerentur exsiliō,[3] *he made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep.

NOTE 1.—For the *Different Forms of Substantive Clauses*, see **540.**

NOTE 2.—Clauses with *quōminus* sometimes lose the original idea of *Purpose* and denote *Result*:[4]

Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rĕī pūblicae cōnsulat, *death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic.

---

pendent, as it was originally: *I fear, so may you endure the labors*, an affirmative wish; *I fear*, *may I not increase the labor*, a negative wish; hence *nē*.

[1] Compare *vereor laudāre*, 'I fear TO PRAISE,' with *vereor nē laudem*, 'I fear THAT I SHALL PRAISE.'

[2] The Subjunctive in this and similar clauses may be explained either as a Subjunctive of *Purpose* dependent upon a verb understood, or as a Subjunctive of *Desire;* see **483.**

[3] In the first example, the clause *quōminus dīmicārētur* has become apparently the subject of *stetit;* in the second, *ut mihĭ respondeās*, the object of *volŏ;* and in the third, *nē quī adficerentur exsiliō*, an appositive to *condiciōnibus.*

[4] Such a transition from *Purpose*, denoting an *Intended Result*, to a *Simple Result* is easy and natural.

III. Subjunctive in Clauses of Result.

RULE XLIII.—Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote Result[1]—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, **cūr**, etc.:

Nōn is sum quī (= *ut ego*) hīs *ūtar*, *I am not such a one as* TO USE *these things*. Cic. Innocentia est adfectiō tālis animī, quae (= *ut ea*) *noceat* nēminī, *innocence is such a state of mind as* INJURES *no one*, or *as* TO INJURE *no one*. Cic. Neque quisquam fuit ubī nostrum jūs obtinērēmus, *nor was there any one with whom* (where) *we could obtain our right*. Cic. Est vērō cūr quis Jūnōnem laedere nōlit, *there is indeed a reason why* (so that) *one would be unwilling to offend Juno*. Ovid.

II. With **ut**, **ut nōn**, **quīn**:

Ita vīxit ut Athēniēnsibus *esset* cārissimus, *he so lived that* HE WAS *very dear to the Athenians*. Nep. Ita laudō, ut nōn *pertimēscam*, *I so praise as not* TO FEAR. Cic. Ego in pūblicīs causīs ita sum versātus ut dēfenderim multōs, *I have been so occupied in public suits that I have defended many*. Cic. Nihil est tam difficile quīn (*ut nōn*) investīgārī possit, *nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated*. Ter.

Note 1.—*Quī* is often preceded by *is*, *tālis*, *tantus*, or some similar word; and *ut*, by *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *adeō*, *tantopere*, or some similar particle; see examples.

Note 2.—In Plautus and Terence *ut* sometimes accompanies *quī*:

Ita ut quī neget, *so that he refuses*. Ter.

Note 3.—For the *Subjunctive* denoting a *result* after *quōminus*, see **499**, 3, note 2.

501. Clauses of Result readily pass into *Substantive Clauses*, but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used—

I. In Subject Clauses. Thus—

1. With *impersonal verbs* signifying *it happens*, *remains*, *follows*, *is lawful*, *is allowed*, *is distant*, *is*, etc.:[2]

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *it happens that every one is delighted*. Cic. Sequitur ut falsum sit, *it follows that it is false*. Cic. Restat ut doceam, *it remains that I should show*. Cic. Ex quō efficitur ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the highest good*. Cic.

2. With *predicate nouns* and *adjectives*:

Mōs est ut nōlint, *it is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. Prōximum est, ut doceam, *the next point is*, *that I show*. Cic. Nōn est dubium quīn beneficium sit, *that it is a benefit*, *is not doubtful*. Sen.

---

[1] The Subjunctive of *Result* is doubtless in origin a *Potential* Subjunctive: *Nōn is sum quī hīs ūtar*, 'I am not one who *would use* (or *is likely to use*) these things.' Hence this Subjunctive takes the negative *nōn* (*ut nōn*) like the *Potential* Subjunctive, while the Subjunctive of *Purpose* takes the negative *nē* like the Subjunctive of *Desire*.

[2] As *accidit*, *contingit*, *ēvenit*, *fit*, *restat*, *sequitur*, *licet*, *abest*, *est*, etc.

NOTE.—For the Subjunctive with *ut*, with or without *ne*, in questions expressive of *impatience* or *surprise*, see **486**, II., note.

II. In OBJECT CLAUSES. Thus—

1. In *clauses introduced by* **ut** after *faciō*, *efficiō*, of the action of irrational forces:

Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun causes all things to bloom* (i. e., produces that result). Cic. Splendor vester facit ut peccāre sine perīculō nōn possītis, *your conspicuous position causes this result, that you can not err without peril.* Cic. See **498**, II.

2. In *clauses introduced by* **quīn** after verbs of *Doubting:*

Nōn dubitābis quīn sint beātī, *you will not doubt that they are happy.* Cic.

III. In CLAUSES IN APPOSITION with nouns or pronouns:

Habet hōc virtūs ut dēlectet, *virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. Est hōc vitium, ut invidia glōriae comes sit, *there is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

NOTE.—For the different forms of substantive clauses, see **540**.

502. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities:

1. **Ut** is sometimes omitted—regularly with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *necesse est:*

Tē oportet virtūs trahat, *it is necessary that virtue should attract you.* Cic. Causam habeat necesse est, *it is necessary that it should have a cause.* Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with **quam**—with or without **ut**:

Līberālius quam ut pōsset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Impōnēbat amplius quam ferre pōssent, *he imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. After *tantum abest ut*, denoting result, a second **ut** of result sometimes occurs:

Philosophia, tantum abest ut laudētur, ut etiam vituperētur, *so far is it from the truth* (so much is wanting) *that philosophy is praised, that it is even censured.* Cic.

503. In RELATIVE CLAUSES, the Subjunctive of RESULT shows the following SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS:

I. The Subjunctive is used in relative clauses to *characterize* an *Indefinite* or *General Antecedent:*[1]

Quid est quod tē dēlectāre possit, *what is there which can delight you?* Cic. Nunc dīcis aliquid quod ad rem pertineat, *now you state something which belongs to the subject.* Cic. Sunt quī putent, *there are some who think.* Cic. Nēmō est quī nōn cupiat, *there is no one who does not desire.* Cic.

---

[1] Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, is often understood.

Note 1.—Restrictive clauses with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, 'as far as I know,' *quod meminerim*, 'as far as I remember,' etc., take the Subjunctive:

Nōn ego tē, *quod sciam*, unquam ante hunc diem vidī, AS FAR AS I KNOW, *I have never seen you before this day*. Plaut.

Note 2.—*Quod*, or a relative particle, *ubĭ*, *unde*, *quō*, *cūr*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, 'there is reason'; *nōn est*, *nihil est*, 'there is no reason'; *quid est*, 'what reason is there?' *nōn habeō*, *nihil habeō*, 'I have no reason':

Est quod gaudeās, *there is reason why you should rejoice*, or *so that you may*. Plaut. Nōn est quod crēdās, *there is no reason why you should believe*. Sen. Nihil habeō, quod incūsem senectūtem, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age*. Cic. Quid est cūr virtūs ipsa nōn efficiat beātōs, *what reason is there why virtue itself should not make men happy?* Cic.

Note 3.—The Indicative is freely used in relative clauses after indefinite antecedents:

1) In poetry [1] and late prose:

Sunt quōs juvat, *there are some whom it delights*. Hor.

2) Even in the best prose, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt quī nōn audent dīcere, *there are some who do not dare to speak*. Cic. Multa sunt, quae dīcī possunt, *there are many things which may be said*. Cic.

II. The Subjunctive is used in relative clauses—

1. After *ūnus*, *sōlus*, and the like:

Sapientia est ūna, quae maestitiam pellat, *wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness* (which would dispel). Cic. Sōlī centum erant quī creārī pōssent, *there were only one hundred who could be appointed* (such that they could be). Liv.

2. After *dīgnus*, *indīgnus*, *idōneus*, and *aptus*:

Fābulae dīgnae sunt, quae legantur, *the fables are worthy to be read* (that they should be read). Cic. Rūfum Caesar idōneum jūdicāverat quem mitteret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send* (whom he might send). Caes.

3. After comparatives with *quam*:

Damna mājōra sunt quam quae (= *ut ea*) aestimārī possint, *the losses are too great to be estimated* (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

504. *Quīn*,[2] 'who not,' 'that not,' etc., is often used to introduce a *result* after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative.[3] Thus—

---

[1] Especially in early poetry, as in Plautus and Terence.

[2] *Quīn* is a compound of the relative *quī* and *nē*, and appears to be used both as an indeclinable relative pronoun, *who not*, and as a relative particle, *by which not*, *how not*, etc. Some clauses with *quīn* may perhaps be best explained as *indirect questions* (529, I.). *Quīn*, meaning *why not?* often used in independent clauses, is a compound of the interrogative *quis* or *quī*, and *nē*: *Quīn tū hŏc facis*, 'why do you not do it?' Liv.

[3] As *nēmō*, *nūllus*, *nihil*, *quis?* *nōn dubitō*, *nōn dubium est*; *nōn multum abest*, *paulum abest*, *nihil abest*, *quid abest?* *nōn*, *vix*, *aegrē abstineō*; *mihĭ nōn temperō*; *nōn retineor*; *nōn*, *nihil praetermittō*; *facere nōn possum*, *fierī nōn potest*; *nūnquam* with a large class of verbs.

1. *Quīn* is often used in the sense of *quī nōn*, *quae nōn*, etc., as after *nēmō*, *nūllus*, *nihil*, *quis?*

Adest nēmō, quīn videat, *there is no one present who does not see.* Cic. Nēmō est quīn audierit, *there is no one who has not heard.* Cic. Quis est quīn cernat, *who is there who does not perceive?* Cic. Nūlla fuit cīvitās quīn mitteret, *there was no state which did not send.* Caes. Nūlla pictūra fuit quīn (=*quam nōn*) īnspexerit, *there was no painting which he did not inspect.* Cic. Nūllum intermīsī diem, quīn (=*quō nōn* or *ut eō nōn*) aliquid darem, *I allowed no day to pass without giving something* (on which I would not give something). Cic.

NOTE.—*Quīn* can often be best rendered by *but* or by *without* or *from* with a participial noun in -ING: see the last example under 1; also the last under 2.

2. *Quīn* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ut nōn:*

Nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur, *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed.* Caes. Nihil est tam difficile quīn investīgārī possit, *nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter. Retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla cōicerent,[1] *they could not be restrained from hurling their weapons.* Caes.

NOTE.—*Is* or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quīn:*
Nihil est quīn id intereat, *there is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quīn* is used in the sense of *ut nōn* or of *ut* in subject and object clauses (501):

1) With *facere nōn possum*, *fierī nōn potest*, etc., in the sense of *ut nōn:*

Facere nōn possum quīn litterās mittam, *I can not but send a letter.* Cic. Effīcī nōn potest quīn eōs ōderim, *it can not be* (be effected) *that I should not hate them.* Cic.

2) With negative expressions implying doubt and uncertainty, in the sense of *ut:*

Agamemnōn nōn dubitat quīn Trōja sit peritūra, *Agamemnon does not doubt that Troy will fall* (perish). Cic. Nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint poētae, *it ought not to be doubted that there were poets.* Cic. Quis īgnōrat quīn tria genera sint, *who is ignorant that there are three races?* Cic.

4. *Quīn* is sometimes used in the sense of *quōminus:*[2]

Quīn loquar haec, nūnquam mē potes dēterrēre, *you can never deter me from saying this.* Plaut. Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rĕī pūblicae cōnsulat, *death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Nōn recūsāvit, quōminus poenam subīret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Neque recūsāre quīn armīs contendant, *and that they do not refuse to contend in arms.* Caes.

NOTE.—For *nōn quīn* in Causal Clauses, see 516, 2.

---

[1] Pronounced as if written *cōjicerent;* see 36, 4, with foot-note 1.

[2] As after verbs of *hindering*, *refusing*, and the like. Observe that in the examples *dēterreō* and *recūsō* are used both with *quīn* and with *quōminus*. They also admit the Subjunctive with *nē* or the Infinitive; see 505, II.

505. Construction of Special Verbs.—Some verbs admit two or more different constructions. Thus—

I. *Dubitō* admits—

1. **Quīn**, with the Subjunctive, if it stands in a negative sentence; see **504**, 3, 2).

2. An Indirect Question (**529**, I.):

Nōn dubitō quid putēs, *I do not doubt what you think.* Cic. Dubitō an pōnam, *I doubt whether I should not place.*[1] Nep.

3. The Accusative with the Infinitive:

Quis dubitat patēre Eurōpam, *who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

4. The simple Infinitive, when it means *to hesitate:*

Nōn dubitem dīcere, *I should not hesitate to say.* Cic. Dubitāmus virtūtem extendere factīs, *do we hesitate to extend our glory* (valor) *by our deeds?* Verg.

II. Verbs of *hindering, opposing, refusing,* and the like, admit—

1. The Subjunctive with **nē**, **quīn**, or **quōminus**:[2]

Impedior nē plūra dīcam, *I am prevented from saying* (that I may not say) *more.* Cic. Sententiam nē dīceret recūsāvit, *he refused to give an opinion.* Cic. Neque recūsāre quīn armīs contendant, *and that they do not refuse to contend in arms.* Caes. Interclūdor dolōre quōminus plūra scrībam, *I am prevented by sorrow from writing more.* Cic.

2. The Accusative with the Infinitive, or the simple Infinitive:

Num īgnōbilitās sapientem beātum esse prohibēbit, *will obscurity prevent a wise man from being happy?* Cic. Quae facere recūsem, *which I should refuse to do.* Hor.

IV. Moods in Conditional Sentences.

506. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion:*

Sī negem, mentiar, *if I should deny it, I should speak falsely.*[3] Cic.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with sī, nisi, nī, sīn.

507. Conditional sentences with **sī**, **nisi**, **nī**, **sīn**, take—

I. The Indicative in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case:

---

[1] That is, *I am inclined to think that I should place.* Observe that *dubitō an* means 'I doubt whether not'='I am inclined to think,' and *dubitō num*, 'I doubt whether': *Dubitō num dēbeam*, 'I doubt whether I ought.' Plin.

[2] For the use of *quīn*, see **504**. *Nē* and *quōminus* may follow either *affirmatives* or *negatives*.

[3] Here *sī negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit, *if he breathes, he is alive.* Cic. Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit, *if so many examples of valor do not move* (*you*), *nothing will ever move* (*you*). Liv.

II. The Present or Perfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *possible:*

Diēs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, *~~the~~ day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Improbē fēceris~~, nisi~~ monueris, *you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic.

III. The Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact:*

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scrīberem, sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, *I should write to you more fully* (with more words), *if the case required words.* Cic. Sī voluisset, dīmicāsset, *if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

Negat quis, negō, *does any one deny, I deny.* Ter. Rogēs mē, nihil respondeam, *ask me, I shall make no reply.* Cic. Tū māgnam partem, sineret dolor, habērēs, *you would have had a large share, had grief permitted.*[1] Verg. Lacesse; jam vidēbis furentem, *provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.[2]

2. A condition is sometimes introduced by the relative **quī, quae**, etc. = *sī is, sī quis, sī quī*, etc.:

Quī sēcum loquī poterit, sermōnem alterīus nōn requīret, *if any one* (lit., he who) *shall be able to converse with himself, he will not need the conversation*

---

[1] See **510**, note **2**.

[2] From these examples it is manifest that a conditional particle is not an essential part of a conditional sentence. Originally the two clauses, the *condition* and the *conclusion*, were independent, and the mood in each was determined by the ordinary principles which regulate the use of moods in principal clauses; see **483**; **485**. Hence the Indicative was used in treating of facts, and the Subjunctive or Imperative in all other cases. *Sī*, probably the Locative case of a pronoun, meaning (1) *at that time* or *in that manner*, and (2) *at any time* or *in any manner*, has nothing whatever to do with the mood, but merely denotes that the conclusion is connected with the condition. Thus: *negat, negō*, 'he denies (i. e., assume that he denies), I deny'; *sī negat, negō*, 'he denies at some time, then I deny'; *diēs dēficiat, sī velim*, etc., 'let me wish (Subjunctive of Desire) at any time, etc., then the day would fail me.' The Subjunctive in conditions is a *Subjunctive of Desire* with nearly the force of the Imperative, which may indeed be used for it when *sī* is omitted, as *lacesse*, 'provoke him (i. e., if you provoke him).' In conclusions the Subjunctive is generally *potential*, as *diēs dēficiat*, 'the day would fail,' but sometimes it is the *Subjunctive of Desire*, for which the Imperative may be substituted; as, *peream, sī poterunt*, 'may I perish if they shall be able'; *sī peccāvī, īgnōsce*, 'if I have erred, pardon me.' See Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ,' pp. 70–74; 171–182.

of another. Cic. Errat longē, quī crēdat, etc., *he greatly errs who supposes,* etc. (i. e., if any one supposes, he greatly errs). Ter. Haec quī videat, nōnne cōgātur cōnfitērī, etc., *if any one should see these things, would he not be compelled to admit,* etc.? Cic.

3. **A condition is sometimes introduced by cum:**

Ea cum dixissent, quid respondērēs, *if* (when) *they had said that, what should you reply?* Cic.

Note 1.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi vērō, nisi forte,* with the Indicative, and with *quasi, quasi vērō,* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nisi forte īnsānit, *unless perhaps he is insane.* Cic. Quasi vērō necesse sit, *as if indeed it were necessary.* Caes.

Note 2.—*Ita—sī,* 'so—if,' means *only—if.* *Sī quidem,* 'if indeed,' sometimes has nearly the force of *since:*

Hōc ita jūstum est, sī est voluntārium, *this is just only if* (on condition that) *it is voluntary.* Cic. Antīquissimum est genus poētārum, sī quidem Homērus fuit ante Rōmam conditam, *the class of poets is very ancient, since Homer lived before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

Note 3.—*Nisi* or *nī,* 'if not,' is sometimes best rendered *but* or *except:*

Nesciŏ, nisi hōc videō, *I know not, but* (except that) *I observe this.* Cic.

Note 4.—*Nisi sī* means *except if, unless perhaps, unless:*

Nisi sī quī scrīpsit, *unless some one has written.* Cic.

Note 5.—For *sī* to be rendered *to see if, to see whether,* etc., see **529**, 1, note 1.

Note 6.—For *quod sī, quod nī, quod nisi,* see **453**, 6.

Note 7.—The condition may be variously supplied, as by a participle, by the ablative absolute, or by the oblique case of a noun:

Nōn potestis, voluptāte omnia dīrigentēs (= *sī dīrigitis*), retinēre virtūtem, *you can not retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic. Rēctē factō (= *sī rēctē factum erit*), laus prōpōnitur, *if it is* (shall be) *well done, praise is offered.* Cic. Nēmŏ sine spē (= *nisi spem habēret*) sē offerret ad mortem, *no one without a hope* (if he had not a hope) *would expose himself to death.* Cic.

Note 8.—For *Conditional Sentences* in the INDIRECT DISCOURSE, see **527**.

508. FIRST FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Indicative in both clauses,* assuming the supposed case as *real,* may base upon it any statement which would be admissible if the supposed case were a known fact:

Sī haec cīvitās est, cīvis sum ego, *if this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. Sī nōn licēbat, nōn necesse erat, *if it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. Sī vīs, dabō tibĭ testēs, *if you wish, I will furnish you witnesses.* Cic. Plūra scrībam, sī plūs ōtiī habuerō, *I will write more if I shall have* (shall have had) *more leisure.* Cic. Dolōrem sī nōn poterō frangere, occultābō, *if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I shall conceal it.* Cic. Parvī sunt forīs arma, nisi est cōnsilium domī, *arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. Sī domī sum, etc.; sīn[1] forīs sum, etc., *if I am at home,* etc.; *but if I am abroad,* etc. Plaut. Nī putŏ, *if I do not think.* Cic.

---

[1] *Sīn* from *sī nē,* 'if not,' 'if on the contrary,' 'but if,' properly introduces a condition in contrast with another condition expressed or implied. Thus, *sīn forīs* is in contrast with *sī domī,* and means *but if abroad.*

1. The CONDITION is generally introduced, when affirmative, by *sī*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *modo*, etc., and when negative, by *sī nōn*, *nisi*, *nī*.

2. The TIME may be *present*, *past*, or *future*, but it need not be the same in both clauses. Thus the Present or the Future Perfect in the condition is often followed by the Future, as in the third and fourth examples.[1]

3. *Sī nōn* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *sī nōn* introduces the negative *condition* on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a *qualification* or an *exception*. Thus, in the second example above, the meaning is, *if it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary;* while in the fourth the meaning is, *arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

4. The CONCLUSION irrespective of the condition may assume a considerable variety of form. Thus:

Redargue mē sī mentior, *refute me if I speak falsely*. Cic. Moriar, nī putō, *may I die, if I do not think.* Cic. Quid timeam, sī beātus futūrus sum, *why should I fear if I am going to be happy?* Cic. Sī quid habēs certius, velim[2] scire, *if you have any information* (anything more certain), *I should like to know it.* Cic.

5. GENERAL TRUTHS may be expressed conditionally—

1) By the *Indicative* in both clauses, as in the sixth example under **508**.

2) By the *Second Person* of the *Subjunctive* used of an indefinite *you* (= any one) in the condition, with the *Indicative* in the conclusion:

Memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceās, *the memory is impaired, if you do not* (one does not) *exercise it.* Cic. Nūlla est excūsātiō peccātī, sī amīcī causā peccāveris, *it is no excuse for a fault, that you have committed it for the sake of a friend.* Cic.

509. SECOND FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Present or Perfect Subjunctive in both clauses* represent the condition as *possible:*

Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat, *if your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. Improbē fēcerīs, nisi monuerīs, *you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also **507**, II.

NOTE 1.—The TIME denoted by these tenses, the *Present* and the *Perfect*, is generally either present or future, and the difference between the two is that the former regards the action in its *progress*, the latter in its *completion.* Thus, *loquātur*, 'should speak' (now or at any future time); so of *dēbeat;* but *fēcerīs*, though referring to the same time as *loquātur*, regards the action as *completed.*[3]

NOTE 2.—The *Present Subjunctive* is occasionally used in conditional sentences, even when the condition is in itself *contrary to fact:*

---

[1] A conditional sentence with the Future Perfect in the condition and the Future in the conclusion, as *plūra scrībam, sī plūs ōtiī habuerō*, corresponds to the Greek with ἐάν or ἄν with the Aorist Subjunctive in the condition, and the Future Indicative in the conclusion; as, νέος ἂν πονήσῃς, γῆρας ἕξεις εὐθαλές, *if you will labor while young, you will have a prosperous old age.*

[2] Observe that in each of these examples the mood in the conclusion is entirely independent of the condition. Thus, *redargue* is a command; *moriar*, a prayer, Subjunctive of Desire; *quid timeam*, a deliberative question (**484**, V.); and *velim*, a Potential Subjunctive (**486**, note 1).

[3] As the Present Subjunctive in point of time is very closely related to the Future Indicative in conditional sentences, so the Perfect Subjunctive is very closely related to the Future Perfect Indicative, though it may refer to past time.

Tū sī hīc sīs, aliter sentiās, *if you were I* (if you were in my place), *you would think differently*. Ter.

NOTE 3.—When dependent upon an historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of Tenses (**490**):

Metuit nē, sī īret, retraherētur, *he feared lest, if he should go, he would be brought back.* Liv.

510. THIRD FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses* represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact*, and simply state what would have been the result if the condition had been fulfilled:

Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret, *wisdom would not be sought* (as it is), *if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Sī optima tenēre possēmus, haud sāne cōnsiliō egērēmus, *if we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Sī voluisset, dīmicāsset, *if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nūnquam abīsset, nisi sibī viam mūnīvisset, *he would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also **507**, III.

NOTE 1.—Here the *Imperfect* generally relates to *present*[1] time, as in the first and second examples; the *Pluperfect* to *past* time, as in the third and fourth examples.

NOTE 2.—The *Imperfect* sometimes relates to *past* time, especially when it expresses a *continued* action, or is accompanied by any word denoting past time:

Nec, sī cuperēs, tibī id facere licuisset, *nor would you have been permitted to do it, if you had desired.* Cic. Num Opīmium, sī tum essēs, temerārium cīvem putārēs, *would you have thought Opimius an audacious citizen if you had lived at that time?* Cic.

511. A CONCLUSION of the FIRST FORM is sometimes combined with a CONDITION of the SECOND or THIRD FORM. Thus—

1. The *Indicative* is often thus used in the conclusion (1) to denote a *general truth*, and (2) to emphasize a *fact*, especially with a condition introduced by *nisi* or *nī*:[2]

Turpis excūsātiō est, sī quis fateātur, etc., *it is a base excuse, if one admits*, etc. Cic. Intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō, *I wish to enter the camp of the enemy, if I am able.* Liv. Certāmen aderat, nī Fabius rem expedīsset, *a contest was at hand, but Fabius* (lit., *if Fabius had not*) *adjusted the affair.*[2] Liv. Nec vēnī, nisi fāta locum dedissent, *nor should I have come, had not the fates assigned the place.*[3] Verg.

---

[1] This use of the Imperfect to denote present time was developed from the ordinary force of the Subjunctive tenses. Thus the Present denotes that which *is likely to be*, the Imperfect that which WAS *likely to be*, and so by implication that which *is not.* Compare *fuit* in the sense of *was*, but *is not*, **471**, 1, 2).

[2] Here the condition merely introduces a *qualification* or an *exception;* see **508**, 3.

[3] The force of the Indicative can not be easily shown in a translation, but the Latin conception is, *I have not come without the divine guidance* (expressed in the condition).

Note 1.—The *Future Indicative* is sometimes used in the conclusion because of its near relationship in force to the Present Subjunctive:[1]

Sī mittat, quid respondēbis, *if he should send, what answer shall you give?* Lucr. Nec sī cupiās, licēbit, *nor, if you should desire it, will it be allowed.* Cic.

Note 2.—In a negative conclusion with a negative condition, the verb *possum* is generally in the Indicative:[2]

Neque amīcitiam tuērī possumus, nisi amīcōs dīligāmus, *nor should we be able to preserve friendship, if we should not love our friends.* Cic.

Note 3.—The *Historical Tenses* of verbs denoting *Duty*, *Propriety*, *Necessity*, *Ability*, and the like, in the conclusion of conditional sentences, are generally in the Indicative:

Quem, sī ūlla in tē pietās esset, colere dēbēbās, *whom you ought to have honored* (and would have honored), *if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. Vix castra, sī oppūgnārētur, tūtārī poterat, *he was hardly able to defend the camp, if he should be attacked.* Liv. Dēlēri exercitus potuit, sī persecūtī victōrēs essent, *the army might have been destroyed* (and would have been), *if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

Note 4.—The *Historical Tenses* of the Indicative of still other verbs are sometimes similarly used when accompanied by *paene* or *prope:*

Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, *the bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy* (and would have furnished it), *had there not been one man.* Liv.

2. The *Periphrastic Forms* in **rus** and **dus** in the conclusion of conditional sentences are generally in the Indicative:[3]

Quid sī hostēs veniant, factūrī estis, *what shall you do if the enemy should come?* Liv. Sī quaerātur, indicandum est, *if inquiry should be made, information must be given.* Cic. Relictūrī agrōs erant, nisi litterās mīsisset, *they would have left*[4] *their lands, had he not sent a letter.* Cic. Quid futūrum fuit, sī plēbs agitārī coepta esset, *what would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. Sī vērum respondēre vellēs, haec erat dīcenda, *if you wished to answer truly, this should have been said.* Cic. Sī morātī essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit, *if you had delayed, you must all have perished.* Liv.

Note.—When the Perfect Indicative in the conclusion with the Subjunctive in the condition is brought into a construction which requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged, irrespective of the tense of the principal verb:

Adeō est inopiā coāctus ut, nisi timuisset, Galliam repetītūrus fuerit,[5] *he was so*

---

[1] See **479**, with foot-note 3. A conditional sentence with the Present Subjunctive in the condition, and the Future Indicative in the conclusion, corresponds to the Greek ἐαν with the Present Subjunctive in the condition, and the Future Indicative in the conclusion: τοῦτο ἐὰν σκοπῆτε, εὑρήσετε, *if you examine this, you will find.*

[2] Here, too, the use of the Indicative grows out of the relationship between the meaning of *possum*, denoting *ability*, and that of the *Potential Subjunctive* denoting *possibility.*

[3] The Indicative is here explained by the close relationship between the ordinary meaning of the Subjunctive, and that of the forms in *rus* and *dus* denoting that something *is about to be done* or *ought to be done.*

[4] Lit., *were about to leave*, and so *would have left*, *had he not*, etc.

[5] Here *repetītūrus fuerit* is in the Subjunctive, not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subjunctive of Result with *ut;* but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

pressed by want that, if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul. Liv. Haud dubium fuit, quin nisi firmāta extrēma agminis fuissent, ingēns accipienda clādēs fuerit, *there was no doubt that, had not the rear of the line been made strong, a great disaster must have been sustained.* Liv. Quaeris quid potuerit amplius assequī, sī Scīpiōnis fuisset fīlius, *you ask what more he could have attained, if he had been the son of Scipio.* Cic.

512. A Conclusion of the Third Form (510) is sometimes combined with a Condition of the Second Form (509):

Sī tēcum loquantur, quid respondērēs, *if they should speak with you, what answer would you give?* Cic.

RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with dum, modo, āc sī, ut sī, etc.

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With **dum, modo, dummodo**,[1] 'if only,' 'provided that'; **dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē**, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':[2]

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic. Dum rēs maneant, verba fingant, *let them make words, if only the facts remain.* Cic. Dummodo repellat periculum, *provided he may avert danger.* Cic. Dum nē tibī videar, nōn labōrō, *provided I do not seem so to you, I do not care.* Cic.

II. With **āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tanquam, tanquam sī, velut, velut sī**, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scrīpsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if* (i. e., as I should if) *you had written.* Cic. Jacent, tanquam omnīnō sine animō sint, *they lie as if* (i. e., as they would lie if) *they were entirely without mind.* Cic. Quam sī vīxerit tēcum, *as if he had lived with you.* Cic. Miserior es, quam sī oculōs nōn habērēs, *you are more unhappy than* (yŏu would be) *if you had not eyes.* Cic. Crūdēlitātem, velut sī adesset, horrēbant, *they shuddered at his cruelty as* (they would) *if he were present.* Caes. Ut sī in suam rem aliēna convertant, *as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. Tanquam audiant, *as if they may hear.* Sen.

Note 1.—In this form of conditional sentences, the *Present*[3] or *Imperfect* is used of *present* time, and the *Perfect*[3] or *Pluperfect* of *past* time; see examples above.

---

[1] When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the Indicative: Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *while the laws were in force.* Cic.

[2] This Subjunctive is best explained as the *Subjunctive of Desire*, as indicated by the negative *nē* (483, 8). Thus, *modo permaneat industria*, 'only let industry remain'; *dum nē tibī videar*, 'let me not meanwhile seem so to you.' After *dum* and *dummodo* the Subjunctive may perhaps be explained as *Potential*, but the negative *nē* renders such an explanation very doubtful.

[3] The English idiom would lead us to expect only the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as under 510; but the Latin often regards the condition as *possible*, and thus uses the *Present* and *Perfect*, as under 509.

Note 2.—*Ceu* and *sīcutī* are sometimes used like *āc sī*, *ut sī*, etc.:

Ceu bella forent, *as if there were wars.* Verg. Sīcutī audīrī pōssent, *as if they could be heard.* Sall.

V. Moods in Concessive Clauses.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*:[1]

Quamquam itinere fessī erant, tamen prōcēdunt, *although they were weary with the journey, they still* (yet) *advanced.* Sall.

Note.—The concessive particle is sometimes omitted:

Sed habeat, tamen, etc., *but grant that he has it, yet,* etc. Cic.

RULE XLVI.—Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take—

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam*:

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūnquam dīcunt, *though they understand, they never speak.* Cic. Quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa, *though you are in haste, the delay is not long.* Hor.

II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *etsī*, *etiamsī*, *tametsī*, or *sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*. Thus—

1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a *fact*:

Gaudeō, etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, *I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice.* Plaut.

2. The *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *possible*:

Etsī nihil habeat in sē glōria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, *though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic.

3. The *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact*:

Etiamsī mors oppetenda esset, domī māllem, *even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home.* Cic.

III. The *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *licet*,[2] *quamvīs*, *ut*, *nē*, *cum*, or the relative *quī*:

---

[1] *Concessive* clauses bear a close resemblance to *conditional* clauses both in form and in use. *Sī optimum est*, 'if it is best,' is a condition; *etsī optimum est*, 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one *assumes* a supposed case, the other *admits* it. The Subjunctive in concessive clauses is in general best explained in the same way as in conditional clauses; see **507**, 1, foot-note 2.

[2] In origin *licet* is simply the impersonal verb of the same form, and the Subjunctive

Licet irrīdeat, plūs tamen ratiŏ valēbit, *though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. Nōn tū possīs, quamvīs excellās, *you would not be able, although you excel.* Cic. Ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, *though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid. Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, *though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. Cum domī dīvitiae adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs, etc., *though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens*, etc. Sall. Absolvite Verrem, quī (*cum is*) sē fateātur pecūniās cēpisse, *acquit Verres, though he confesses* (who may confess) *that he has accepted money.* Cic.

Note 1.—*Quamquam* takes the Subjunctive—

1) When the thought, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood:

Quamquam epulīs careat senectūs, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic.

2) Sometimes, even in the best prose, apparently without any special reason:

Quamquam nē id quidem suspīciōnem habuerit, *though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3) In poetry and in late prose, the Subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction:

Quamquam invictī essent, *although they were invincible.* Verg. Quamquam plērīque ad senectam pervenirent, *although very many reached old age.* Tac.

Note 2.—*Quamquam* and *etsī* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet:*

Quamquam quid loquor, *and yet why do I speak?* Cic. Etsī tibī assentior, *and yet I assent to you.* Cic.

Note 3.—*Quamvīs* in the best prose takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in poetry and in late prose it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitāte rēgiā, quamvīs carēbat nōmine, *he was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

Note 4.—*Quī* and *cum*, used concessively, generally take the Indicative in Plautus and Terence, and sometimes even in classical prose:

Audēs praedicāre id, domī tē esse nunc quī hīc ades, *do you dare to assert this, that you are now at home, although you are here present?* Plaut. Cum tabulās emunt, tamen nequeunt, *though they purchase paintings, they are yet unable.* Sall. Cum Sicilia vexāta est, tamen, *though Sicily was disturbed, yet.* Cic.

Note 5.—*Ut—sic*, or *ut—ita*, 'though—yet' (lit., 'as—so'), involving *comparison* rather than *concession*, does not require the Subjunctive:

Ut ā proeliīs quiētem habuerant, ita nōn cēssāverant ab opere, *though* (lit., *as*) *they had had rest from battles, yet* (lit., *so*) *they had not ceased from work.* Liv.

Note 6.—*Quamvīs* and *quantumvīs*, meaning 'as much as you please,' 'however much,' may accompany *licet* with the Subjunctive:

Nōn possīs tū, quantumvīs licet excellās, *you would not be able, however much you may excel.* Cic.

---

clause which follows, developed from *Result* (**501**, I.), is its subject. Thus, in *licet irrīdeat* (lit., 'that he may deride is allowed'), *irrīdeat* is according to the Latin conception the subject of *licet*. *Quam-vīs*, compounded of *quam*, 'as,' and *vīs*, 'you wish,' means *as you wish;* thus, *quamvīs excellās* means literally *excel as you wish* (i. e., as much as you please). The Subjunctive with *quamvīs, ut, nē*, and *quī*, is the *Subjunctive of Desire;* that with *cum* was developed from the temporal clause; see **521**.

VI. MOODS IN CAUSAL CLAUSES.

RULE XLVII.—Moods with quod, quia, quoniam, quandō.[1]

516. Causal clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō,** generally take—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively, on one's own authority:*

Quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic. Gaudē quod spectant tē, *rejoice that* (because) *they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully,* or *on another's authority:*[2]

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumperet juventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because* (on the alleged ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint. Aristīdēs nōnne expulsus est patriā, quod jūstus esset, *was not Aristides banished because* (on the alleged ground that) *he was just?* Cic.

1. By a special construction, the verb introducing a reason on another's authority is sometimes put in the Infinitive, depending upon a verb of *saying* or *thinking* in the Subjunctive:

Quod sē bellum gestūrōs dīcerent (= quod bellum gestūrī essent, ut dīcēbant), *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

NOTE.—In the same way the Subjunctive of a verb of *saying* or *thinking* may be used in a relative clause to introduce the sentiment of another person:

Ēmentiendō quae sē audīsse dīcerent, *by reporting falsely what they had heard* (what they said they had heard). Sall.

2. NŌN QUŌ ETC.—*Nōn quō, nōn quod, nōn quīn,* rarely *nōn quia,* also *quam quod,* etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote an *alleged* reason in distinction from the *true* reason:

Nōn quō habērem quod scrīberem, *not because* (that) *I had anything to write.* Cic. Nōn quod doleant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nequīverat quam quod īgnōrāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

---

[1] *Quod* and *quia* are in origin relative pronouns in the neuter. Thus: *gaudē quod spectant tē,* 'rejoice that (as to that) they behold you.' *Quoniam* = *quom-jam,* 'when now,' and *quandō* = *quam-dō* (*dō* = *diē*), 'on which day,' 'when.' *Dō* is probably from the same root as *dum;* see p. 145, foot-note 1.

[2] Observe that causal clauses with the Indicative *state a fact,* and at the same time present that fact as a *reason* or *cause,* as in the first example, but that causal clauses with the Subjunctive *simply assign a reason without asserting any fact.* Thus, in the examples under II., *quod corrumperet juventūtem* does not state that *Socrates corrupted the youth,* but simply indicates the *charge* made against him; nor does *quod jūstus esset* state that *Aristides was just,* but simply indicates the *alleged ground* of his banishment. For the development of the Subjunctive in causal clauses, see p. 267, foot-note 3.

NOTE.—Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās, fallēris, *in thinking* (as to the fact that you think) *that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with cum and quī.

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive, in writers of the best period:

Necesse est, cum sint diī, animantēs esse, *since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings.* Cic. Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae cum ita sint, perge, *since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. Ō vīs vēritātis, quae (*cum ea*) sē dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic. Ō fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī (*cum tū*) tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit., *who*) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. In early Latin, especially in Plautus and Terence, the Indicative is the prevailing mood in causal clauses with *cum* and *quī*, though the Subjunctive is not uncommon with *quī*:[1]

Quom[2] facere officium scīs tuum, *since you know how to do your duty.* Plaut. Quom hŏc nōn possum, *since I have not this power.* Ter. Quī advēnīstī, *since you have come.* Plaut. Tuās quī virtūtēs sciam, *since I know your virtues.* Plaut. Quī nēminem videam, *since I see no one.* Ter.

2. Clauses with either *cum* or *quī* admit the Indicative in all writers, when the statement is viewed as a *fact*:

Habeō senectūtī grātiam, quae mihī sermōnis aviditātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic. Grātulor tibī, cum tantum valēs, *I congratulate you that* (in view of the fact that) *you have so great influence.* Cic.

---

[1] Clauses with *cum*, whether causal or temporal, illustrate the gradual extension of the use of the Subjunctive in subordinate clauses. Originally they took the Indicative, unless the thought irrespective of the causal or temporal character of the clause required the Subjunctive. Thus the Ciceronian sentence, *Necesse est, cum sint diī, animantēs esse*, 'since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings,' would in early Latin have been, *Necesse est, cum sunt diī, animantēs esse*, and would have contained two distinct statements, viz., *there are gods*, and *it is necessary that there should be living beings.* But in time the causal clause lost so much of its original force as a separate statement, and became so entirely dependent upon the principal clause, as to be little more than an adverbial modifier of the latter, like the Ablative of Cause (**413**) in a simple sentence. The causal clause then took the Subjunctive, and the sentence as a whole made but one distinct statement, which may be approximately rendered, *in view of* (because of) *the existence of the gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings.* In the same way, temporal clauses with *cum* sometimes became little more than adverbial modifiers of the principal verb; see **521**, II., 1, with foot-note, and **521**, II., 2, with foot-note. For a special treatment of these clauses, see Hoffmann, 'Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln,' and Lübbert, 'Die Syntax von Quom.'

[2] See **311**, 1, with foot-note 4.

3. When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus—

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *cum*, *quīppe*, *ut*, *utpote:*

Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quīppe quī blandiātur, *since he flatters* (as one who flatters). Cic. Ut quī colōnī essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

Note.—But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact.* In Sallust the Indicative is the regular construction after *quīppe:*

Quīppe quī rēgnum invāserat, *as he had laid hold of the kingdom.* Sall.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quoniam:*

Quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, *since these things can not be sure.* Cic. Quī quoniam intellegī nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

VII. Moods in Temporal Clauses.[1]

RULE XLIX.—Temporal Clauses with postquam, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteāquam*,[2] *ubĭ*, *ut*, *simul atque*, etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used:

Postquam vīdit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw,* etc. Caes. Ubĭ certiōrēs factī sunt, *when they were informed.* Caes. Id ut audīvit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Postquam vident, *after they saw.*[3] Sall. Postquam nox aderat, *when night was at hand.* Sall.

Note 1.—The *tense* in these clauses is generally the *Perfect* or the *Historical Present*, but sometimes the *Descriptive Imperfect;*[4] see examples above; also **471**, 4.

Note 2.—The Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used—

1) Especially to denote the *result* of a completed action:

Posteāquam cōnsul fuerat, *after he had been consul.*[5] Cic. Annō tertiō postquam profūgerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

2) To denote *repeated action:*[6]

Ut quisque vēnerat, solēbat, etc., *as each one came* (lit., *had come*), *he was wont*, etc. Cic.

Note 3.—*Postrīdiē quam* is used like *postquam:*

Postrīdiē quam tū es profectus, *on the day after you started.* Cic.

1. In Livy and the late historians, the Pluperfect or Imperfect Subjunctive is often used to denote repeated action:[6]

---

[1] On *Temporal Clauses*, see Hoffmann, 'Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln,' and Lübbert, 'Die Syntax von Quom.'

[2] Or *post quam* and *posteā quam.*

[3] See **467**, III., with 1.

[4] See **469**, I.

[5] And *was* accordingly at the time *a man of consular rank.*

[6] In this case the Imperfect Indicative is generally used in the principal clause, as in the example here given.

Id ubī dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *whenever he had said that, he hurled* (was wont to hurl) *a spear.* Liv.

NOTE.—As a *rare exception*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* or *posteāquam:*[1]

Posteāquam aedificāsset clāssēs, *after he had built fleets.* Cic.

2. When the verb is in the second person singular to denote an indefinite subject, *you = any one, one*, the Subjunctive is generally used in temporal clauses:

Nōlunt ubī velīs, ubī nōlīs cupiunt, *they are unwilling when you wish it* (when one wishes it), *when you are unwilling they desire it.* Ter. Priusquam incipiās, cōnsultō opus est, *before you begin, there is need of deliberation.* Sall.

RULE L.—Temporal Clauses with dum, etc.[2]

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the *Indicative:*

Haec fēcī, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed.* Cic. Quoad vīxit, *as long as he lived.* Nep. Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Dōnec eris fēlīx, *as long as you shall be prosperous.* Ov. Quamdiū in prōvinciā fuērunt, *as long as they were in the province.* Cic.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Dēlīberā hŏc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return.* Ter. Dōnec rediit, *until he returned.* Liv. Quoad renūntiātum est, *until it was* (actually) *announced.* Nep.

2. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED:

Differant, dum dēfervēscat īra, *let them defer it till their anger cools* (i. e., that it may cool). Cic. Exspectās dum dīcat, *you are waiting till he speaks* (i. e., that he may speak). Cic. Ea continēbis quoad tē videam, *you will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In Livy and the late historians, *dum* is sometimes used with the Imperfect Subjunctive, and *dōnec* with the Imperfect and Pluperfect, like *cum* in narration:[3]

Dum ea gererentur, bellum concitur, *while these things were in progress* (were done), *a war was commenced.* Liv. Nihil trepidābant dōnec ponte agerentur, *they did not fear at all while they were driven on the bridge.* Liv. Dōnec missī essent, *until they had been sent.* Liv.

NOTE 2.—*Dōnec*, in Tacitus, generally takes the Subjunctive:

---

[1] But the text in these cases is somewhat uncertain.

[2] See p. 291, foot-note 1.

[3] See p. 295, foot-note 1.

Rhēnus servat violentiam cursūs, dōnec Ōceanō misceātur, *the Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

RULE LI.—Temporal Clauses with antequam and priusquam.

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam* [1]—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put—

1. In the *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic. Antequam in Siciliam vēnī, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic. Antequam cōgnōverō,[2] *before I shall have ascertained.* Cic. Nec prius respēxī quam vēnimus, *nor did I look back until we arrived.* Verg.

2. In the *Subjunctive*,[3] when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Antequam dē rē pūblicā dīcam, expōnam cōnsilium, *I will set forth my plan before I* (can) *speak of the republic* (i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic).[4] Cic. Nōn prius ducēs dīmittunt, quam [1] sit concēssum, *they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.* Caes. Priusquam incipiās, cōnsultō opus est, *before you begin there is need of deliberation* (i. e., as preparatory to beginning).[5] Sall. Tempestās minātur, antequam surgat, *the tempest threatens, before it rises.* Sen. Collem, priusquam sentiātur, commūnit, *he fortified the hill before it was* (could be) *perceived.*[6] Caes.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put in the *Subjunctive:* [7]

---

[1] Often written *ante quam* and *prius quam*, sometimes with intervening words between *ante* or *prius* and *quam*. See also p. 291, foot-note 1.

[2] The Future is used only in early Latin, as in Plautus and Cato.

[3] Remember that the Future is supplied in the Subjunctive by the Present; see **496**.

[4] Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*. *Antequam dīcam* is nearly equivalent to *ut posteā dīcam:* 'I will set forth my views, *that I may afterward speak* of the republic.'

[5] Remember also that in temporal clauses the second person singular with an indefinite subject, *you = any one*, *one*, is generally in the Subjunctive; see **518, 2**.

[6] Potential Subjunctive; see **486**, III.

[7] The Subjunctive in the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses is not always to be referred to the same principle. Sometimes, like the Subjunctive after *dum*, it is best explained as the *Subjunctive of Purpose*, as in the first example, and sometimes like the Subjunctive of the historical tenses after *cum;* see p. 295, foot-note 1.

Nōn prius ēgressus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet, *he did not withdraw until the king took him under his protection.* Nep. Priusquam peteret cōnsulātum, īnsānit, *he was insane before he sought the consulship.* Liv. Prius vīsus est Caesar, quam fāma perferrētur, *Caesar appeared before any tidings were brought.* Caes. Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam dē meō adventū audīre potuissent, in Macedoniam perrēxī, *before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic. Paucīs ante diēbus, quam Syrācūsae caperentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—When the principal clause is negative and contains an historical tense, the temporal clause generally takes the Perfect Indicative, as in the last example under I., 1; but it sometimes takes the Subjunctive, as in the first example under II.

NOTE 2.—*Prīdiē quam* takes the same moods as *priusquam*:

Prīdiē quam scrīpsī, *the day before I wrote.* Cic. Prīdiē quam perīret, somniāvit, *he had a dream on the day before he died.* Suet.

NOTE 3.—For the Subjunctive of the second person with an indefinite subject, see **518**, 2.

RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with cum.

521. In temporal clauses with *cum* [1]—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the *Indicative:*

Cum verba faciunt, mājōrēs suōs extollunt, *when they speak, they extol their ancestors.* Sall. Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent they approve.* Cic. Librōs, cum est ōtium, legere soleō, *when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.* Cic. Ad tē scrībam, cum plūs ōtiī nactus erō, *I shall write to you when I shall have obtained more leisure.* Cic. Omnia sunt incerta cum ā jūre discēssum est, *all things are uncertain when one has departed from the right.*[2] Cic.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put—

1. In the *Indicative*, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, *he obeyed when it was necessary.*[3] Cic. Nōndum profectus erat, cum haec gerēbantur, *he had not yet started when these things took place.* Liv. Tum cum rēs māgnās permultī āmīserant, Rōmae fidēs concidit, *then, when many had lost great fortunes, credit fell at Rome.* Cic. Cum quaepiam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant, *whenever any cohort made* (had made) *an attack, the enemy retreated.* Caes.

---

[1] See p. 290, foot-note 1, with the works of Hoffmann and Lübbert there mentioned.

[2] *Discēssum est* is an Impersonal Passive, *a departure has been made;* see **301**, 1.

[3] Here the temporal clause not only defines the *time* of *pāruit*, but also makes a distinct and separate statement, viz., *it was necessary;* see p. 295, foot-note 1; also, p. 290, foot-note 1.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action:[1]

Cum epistulam complicārem, tabellāriī vēnērunt, *while I was folding the letter* (i. e., during the act), *the postmen came.*[1] Cic. Cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur, dēcēssit, *he died while he was returning* (during his return) *from Egypt.* Nep. Cum dīmicāret, occīsus est, *when he engaged in battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, cum Athēnīs essem, audiēbam frequenter, *I often heard Zeno when I was at Athens.* Cic. Cum trīduī viam perfēcisset, nūntiātum est, etc., *when he had accomplished a journey of three days, it was announced*, etc. Caes. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, matūrat ab urbe proficiscī, *when this was* (had been) *announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* Caes.

1) *Cum* with the force of a relative after *tempus*, *aetās*, and the like, takes—

(1) Sometimes the *Indicative*, to state a fact:

Fuit tempus, cum hominēs vagābantur, *there was a time when men led a wandering life.* Cic.

NOTE.—*Cum* is sometimes thus used without *tempus*, etc.:

Fuit cum hōc dīcī poterat, *there was a time when this could be said.* Liv.

(2) Generally the *Subjunctive*, to characterize the period:[2]

Id saeculum cum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, cum dēsīderēs, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Cum* is sometimes thus used without *tempus*, etc.:

Fuit cum arbitrārer, *there was a time when I thought.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Meminī cum*, 'I remember when,' generally takes the *Indicative*, but *audiō cum*, *videō cum*, and *animadvertō cum*, generally the *Subjunctive:*

Meminī cum mihī dēsipere vidēbāre, *I remember when you seemed to me to be unwise.* Cic. Audīvī cum dīceret, *I heard him say* (lit., *when he said*). Cic.

2) *Cum*, meaning *from the time when, since*, takes the *Indicative:*

Centum annī sunt, cum dictātor fuit, *it is one hundred years since he was dictator.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Cum . . . tum*, in the sense of 'not only . . . but also,' 'both . . . and,' generally takes the *Indicative* in both clauses, but in the sense of '*though . . . yet*,' the *Indicative* in the first clause and the *Subjunctive* in the second:

Cum anteā distinēbar, tum hōc tempore distineor, *not only was I occupied before,*

---

[1] In the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses the choice of mood often depends not so much upon the nature of the thought, as upon the intention and feeling of the writer at the moment. If he wishes to *assert* that the action of the temporal clause is an historical fact, he uses the *Indicative;* but if he introduces it for the sole purpose of defining the *time of the principal action*, he uses the *Subjunctive.* Thus, *cum epistulam complicārem* does not *assert* that I folded the letter, but, *assuming* that as admitted, it makes use of it in defining the time of *vēnērunt.* See also foot-note under 1 above; also p. 290, foot-note 1.

[2] Like the Subjunctive in relative clauses after indefinite antecedents; see 503, I.

but I am also occupied now. Cic. Quae cum sint gravia, tum illud acerbissimum est, *though these things are severe, that is the most grievous.* Cic.

Note 2.—For *cum* in Causal clauses, see 517.

Note 3.—For *cum* in Concessive clauses, see 515, III.

VIII. Indirect Discourse—*Ōrātiō Oblīqua.*

Moods and Tenses in Indirect Discourse.

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Ōrātiō Oblīqua:*[1]

Platōnem ferunt in Ĭtaliam vēnisse, *they say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderātē, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Ūtilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Ōrātiō Rēcta.*

2. Words quoted without change belong to the Direct Discourse:

Rēx 'duumvirōs' inquit 'secundum lēgem faciō,' *the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.'* Liv.

RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses.

523. The principal clauses of the Direct Discourse on becoming Indirect take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:

I. When Declarative, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative.*

Dīcēbat animōs esse dīvīnōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Catō mīrārī sē āiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic. Hippiās glōriātus est, annulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[2] *Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

Note.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose:

---

[1] Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Ĭtaliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Platō in Ĭtaliam vēnit.*

[2] In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *animī sunt dīvīnī*, (2) *Platō Tarentum vēnit*, (3) *mīror*, and (4) *annulum meā manū cōnfēcī.* Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in *mīror* and *cōnfēcī* are expressed with the Infinitive, as *mīrārī sē, sē cōnfēcisse.* But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

Pythia praecēpit ut Miltiadem imperātōrem sūmerent; incepta prōspera futūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander*, (telling them) *that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive:*

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibĭ vellet, cūr venīret,[1] *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?* Caes.

NOTE.—Deliberative questions retain the Subjunctive from the direct discourse: In spem vēnerat sē pōsse, etc.; cūr fortūnam perīclitārētur,[1] *he hoped* (had come into hope) *that he was able*, etc.; *why should he try fortune?* Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:[2]

Docēbant rem esse testimōniō, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., *they showed that the fact was a proof* (for a proof), etc.; *what was more inconsiderate*, etc.? Caes. Respondit, num memoriam dēpōnere pōsse,[3] *he replied, could he lay aside the recollection?* Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE,[4] they take the *Subjunctive:*

Scrībit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.* Caes. Redditur respōnsum, castrīs sē tenērent, *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, sē reficerent, *he directed the soldiers to refresh themselves.* Caes. Ōrābant ut sibĭ auxilium ferret, *they prayed that he would bring them help.* Caes. Nūntius vēnit, nē dubitāret, *a message came that he should not hesitate.* Nep. Cohortātus est, nē pertūrbārentur,[5] *he exhorted them not to be alarmed.* Caes.

NOTE.—An affirmative command takes the Subjunctive without *ut*, except after verbs of *wishing* and *asking*, but a negative command takes the Subjunctive with *nē;* see examples.

---

[1] In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *quid tibĭ vīs? cūr venīs?* and (2) *cūr perīcliter?*

[2] A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a *Rhetorical Question*, as *num potest*, 'can he?' = *nōn potest*, 'he can not'; *quid est turpius*, 'what is baser?' = *nihil est turpius*, 'nothing is baser.' Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with its subject.

[3] Direct discourse—(1) *quid est levius* = *nihil est levius*, and (2) *num memoriam dēpōnere possum* = *memoriam dēpōnere nōn possum.*

[4] Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the *Subjunctive of Desire;* see **484**.

[5] In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *cum legiōne venī*, (2) *castrīs vōs tenēte*, (3) *vōs reficite*, (4) *nōbīs auxilium fer*, (5) *nōlī dubitāre*, and (6) *nē pertūrbātī sītis.*

RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the Direct Discourse on becoming Indirect take the *Subjunctive:*

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum,[1] *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.* Caes. Hippiās glōriātus est, annulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[2] *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

1. The *Infinitive with Subject Accusative* is sometimes used. Thus—

1) In clauses introduced by the relative pronoun, or by relative adverbs, *ubī*, *unde*, *quārē*, etc., when they have the force of principal clauses (**453**):

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum quī quererētur, quem (= *et eum*) asservātum esse, *it was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. Tē suspicor eīsdem, quibus mē ipsum, commovērī, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I.* Cic.

2) In clauses introduced by *cum*, *quam*, *quamquam*, *quia*, and some other conjunctions, especially in Livy and Tacitus:

Num putātis, dīxisse Antōnium minācius quam factūrum fuisse, *do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic. Dīcit, sē moenibus inclūsōs tenēre eōs, quia per agrōs vagārī, *he says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because* (otherwise) *they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also **535**, I., **5** and **6**.

2. The *Indicative* is used—

1) In parenthetical and explanatory clauses introduced into the *Indirect Discourse* without strictly forming a part of it:

Referunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Bacēnis,[3] *they report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes. Audiō Gellium philosophōs quī tunc erant[3] convocāsse, *I hear that Gellius called together the philosophers of that day* (lit., *who then were*). Cic.

2) Sometimes in clauses not parenthetical, to give prominence to the *fact* stated, especially in relative and temporal clauses:

Certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concēsserat, omnēs discēssisse, *he was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes. Dīcunt illum diem clārissimum fuisse cum domum redūctus est ā patribus, *they say that the day when he was conducted home by the fathers was the most illustrious.* Cic.

525. Tenses in the Indirect Discourse generally conform to the ordinary rules for the use of tenses in the Subjunctive and Infinitive;[4] but notice the following special points:

---

[1] Direct, *faciam id quod in Nerviīs fēcī.*

[2] Direct, *annulum quem habeō meā manū cōnfēcī.*

[3] These clauses, *quae appellātur Bacēnis* and *quī tunc erant*, are not strictly parts of the general report, but *explanations* added by the narrator.

[4] See **490–496** and **537**.

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after an historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative:

Caesar respondit, sī obsidēs sibĭ dentur, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes. Exitus fuit ōrātiōnis, neque ūllōs vacāre agrōs, quī darī possint, *the close of the oration was, that there were* (are) *not any lands unoccupied which could* (can) *be given.* Caes.

2. The Future Perfect in a subordinate clause of the direct discourse is changed in the indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense:

Agunt ut dīmicent; ibi imperium fore, unde victōria fuerit, *they arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārēbat rēgnātūrum quī vīcisset,[1] *it was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

Note.—For *Tenses in Conditional Sentences* in Indirect Discourse, see 527.

Pronouns and Persons in Indirect Discourse.

526. In passing from the Direct Discourse to the Indirect, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person,[2] and the first and second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person:

Glōriātus est, annulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[3] *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic. Redditur respōnsum, castrīs sē tenērent,[4] *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Respondit, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibĭ dentur, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum,[5] *he replied that if hostages should be given to him by them, he would make peace with them.* Caes.

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse.

527. Conditional sentences, in passing from the Direct Discourse to the Indirect, undergo the following changes:

---

[1] In the direct discourse—(1) *ibĭ imperium erit, unde victōria fuerit,* and (2) *rēgnābit quī vīcerit.*

[2] Thus—(1) *ego* is changed to *suī*, *sibĭ*, etc., or to *ipse; meus* and *noster* to *suus;* (2) *tū* to *is* or *ille*, sometimes to *suī*, etc.; *tuus* and *vester* to *suus* or to the Genitive of *is;* and (3) *hīc* and *iste* to *ille*. But the pronoun of the first person may of course be used in the indirect discourse in reference to the *reporter* or *author*, and the pronoun of the second person in reference to the *person addressed:* Adfirmāvī quidvīs *mē* perpessūrum, *I asserted that* I *would endure anything.* Cic. Respondeō *tē* dolōrem ferre moderātē, *I reply that* YOU *bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic.

[3] Direct, *annulum ego meā manū cōnfēcī.* *Ego* becomes *sē*, and *meā*, *suā*.

[4] Direct, *castrīs vōs tenēte.* *Vōs* becomes *sē*, and *tenēte*, *tenērent*.

[5] Direct, *sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihĭ dabuntur, vōbīscum pācem faciam.* *Ā vōbīs* becomes *ab iīs; mihĭ* becomes *sibĭ; vōbīscum*, *cum iīs;* and the implied subject of *faciam* becomes *sēsē*, the subject of *esse factūrum*.

I. In the FIRST FORM, the *Indicative* is changed to the *Subjunctive* in the condition and to the *Infinitive* in the conclusion:

Respondit, sī quid Caesar sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre,[1] *he replied, if Caesar wished anything of him, he ought to come to him.* Caes.

NOTE.—In all forms of conditional sentences the conclusion, when *imperative*, and generally when *interrogative*, takes the *Subjunctive* according to 523:

Respondērunt, sī nōn aequum existimāret, etc., cūr postulāret,[2] etc., *they replied, if he did not think it fair, etc., why did he demand, etc.* Caes. Eum certiōrem fēcērunt, sī suās rēs manēre vellet, Alcibiadem persequerētur,[3] *they informed him that if he wished his institutions to be permanent, he should take measures against Alcibiades.* Nep. Dīc quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī cēnsor fuissēs,[4] *say what you would have done, if you had been censor.* Liv.

II. In the SECOND FORM, the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive* in the condition remains unchanged after a principal tense, but may be changed[5] to the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* after an historical tense, and in the conclusion it is changed to the *Future Infinitive:*

Respondit, sī stīpendium remittātur, libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam,[6] *he replied that if the tribute should be remitted, he would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.* Caes.

NOTE.—See note under I.

III. In the THIRD FORM, the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* remains unchanged in the condition, regardless of the tense of the principal verb, but in the conclusion it is changed to the *Periphrastic Infinitive* in *-rus fuisse*, rarely to that in *-rus esse:*

Respondit, sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse,[7] *he replied that if he wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him.* Caes. Clāmitābat, sī ille adesset, ventūrōs esse,[7] *he cried out that they would come if he were present.* Caes.

NOTE 1.—In the conclusion, the periphrastic form *futūrum fuisse ut* with the *Subjunctive* is used in the Passive voice, and sometimes in the Active:

Nisi nūntiī essent allātī, existimābant futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur,[7] *they thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought.* Caes.

NOTE 2.—In conditional sentences with the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* in the condition, and with an *historical tense* of the *Indicative* in the conclusion—

---

[1] Direct, *sī quid Caesar mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet.* For *change of pronouns* see 526, and for the *tense of velit* see 525, 1.

[2] Direct, *sī nōn aequum existimās, cūr postulās?*

[3] Direct, *sī tuās rēs manēre vīs, Alcibiadem persequere.* Notice change in the pronoun and in the person of the verb; see 526.

[4] Direct, *quidnam fēcissēs* (or *factūrus fuistī*), *sī cēnsor fuissēs.*

[5] But is often retained unchanged according to 525, 1.

[6] Direct, *sī stīpendium remittātur, libenter recūsem populī Rōmānī amīcitiam*, or *sī stīpendium remittētur, libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam.* Observe that these two forms become identical in the indirect discourse.

[7] Direct—(1) *sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem;* (2) *sī ille adesset, venīrent;* and (3) *nisi nūntiī essent allātī, oppidum āmissum esset.*

1) The *Indicative* is generally changed to the *Perfect Infinitive:*

Mementō istam dignitātem tē nōn potuisse cōnsequī, nisi meīs cōnsiliīs pāruissēs,[1] *remember that you would not have been able to attain that dignity, if you had not followed my counsels.* Cic.

2) The *Indicative* is changed to the *Perfect Subjunctive* if the context requires that mood:

Quis dubitat quin sī Saguntīnīs tulissēmus operam, āversūrī bellum fuerīmus,[1] *who doubts that we should have averted the war, if we had carried aid to the Saguntines?* Liv. Scīmus quid, sī vīxisset, factūrus fuerit,[1] *we know what he would have done, if he had lived.* Liv.

Indirect Clauses.

528. The indirect discourse in its widest application includes—

1. Subordinate clauses containing statements made on the authority of any other person than the writer; see **516**:

Omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihī dōnāvit, *he gave to me all the books which his brother had left.*[2] Cic.

2. Indirect questions; see **529**, I.

NOTE.—A clause which involves a question without directly asking it is called an *Indirect* or *Dependent Question:*

Quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus, *he asked whether his shield was safe.*[3] Cic.

3. Many subordinate clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon a Subjunctive; see **529**, II.

RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used—

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr dōctissimī hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesierās, nōnne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaeritur quid futūrum sit, *what will be, is the question.* Cic. Quaerit quīnam ēventus, sī foret bellātum, futūrus fuerit, *he asks what would have been the result if war had been waged.* Liv. Dubitō num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. Incerta feror sī Jūppiter velit, *I am rendered uncertain whether Jupiter wishes.* Verg. Ut tē oblectēs scīre cupiō, *I wish to know how you amuse yourself.* Cic. Difficile dictū est utrum timuerint an dīlēxerint, *it is difficult to say whether they feared or loved.* Cic.

---

[1] Direct—(1) *istam dīgnitātem cōnsequī nōn potuistī, nisi meīs cōnsiliīs pāruissēs;* (2) *sī Saguntīnīs tulissēmus operam, bellum āversūrī fuimus;* (3) *quid, sī vīxisset, factūrus fuit?*

[2] That is, *which he said his brother had left.*

[3] Here no question is directly asked. We have simply the statement, 'he asked whether his shield was safe,' but this statement involves the question, *salvusne est clipeus*, 'is my shield safe?'

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā *careat* suppliciō nōn carēre, *nothing is more shameful than that he who* IS FREE *from fault should not be exempt from punishment.* Cic. Utrum difficilius esset negāre tibĭ an efficere id quod *rogārēs* diū dubitāvī, *whether it would be more difficult to refuse your request or to do that which* YOU ASK, *I have long doubted.* Cic. Recordātiōne nostrae amīcitiae sīc fruor ut beātē vīxisse videar quia cum Scīpiōne *vīxerim, I so enjoy the recollection of our friendship that I seem to have lived happily because* I HAVE LIVED *with Scipio.* Cic. Naevium rogat ut cūret quod *dixisset, he asked Naevius to attend to that which* HE HAD MENTIONED. Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuere *velim* labōrem, augeam, *I fear that, while* I WISH *to diminish the labor, I shall increase it.* Cic. .

Note 1.—In clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon a Subjunctive, observe—

1) That the *Subjunctive* is used when the clauses are *essential to the general thought* of the sentence, as in the examples just given.

2) That the *Indicative* is used when the clauses are in a measure *parenthetical*, and when they give special prominence to the *fact stated:*

Mīlitēs mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur, *he sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled* (i. e., the fugitives). Caes. Tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam, vel in iīs quōs nūnquam vīdimus, dīligāmus, *such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

Note 2.—In clauses introduced by *dum*, the Indicative is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

Fuēre quī, dum dubitat Scaevīnus, hortārentur Pīsōnem, *there were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated.* Tac. See also **467**, 4.

1. *Indirect* or *dependent questions*, like those not dependent (**351**, 1), are introduced by interrogative pronouns or other interrogative words, as *quis*, *quī*, *quālis*, etc.; *quid*, *cūr*, *nē*, *nōnne*, *num;* rarely by *sī*, 'whether,' and *ut*, 'how'; see examples above.

Note 1.—*Sī* is sometimes best rendered *to see whether*, *to see if*, *to try if*, etc..

Tē adeunt, sī quid velīs, *they come to you to see whether you wish anything.* Cic.

Note 2.—In the poets *sī* is sometimes similarly used with the *Indicative:*

Īnspice sī possum dōnāta repōnere, *examine me to see whether I am able to restore your gifts.* Hor.

Note 3.—In indirect questions *num* does not necessarily imply negation

Note 4.—An *indirect question* may readily be changed to a *direct* or *independent question.*[1]

2. An Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes, especially in poetry, inserted after the principal verb:

---

[1] Thus the direct question involved in the first example is, *cūr dōctissimī hominēs dissentiunt*, 'why do the most learned men disagree?' In the second, *nōnne putās*, 'do you not think?'

Ego illum nesciō quī fuerit, *I do not know* (him) *who he was.* Ter. Dīc hominem quī sit, *tell who the man is.* Plaut.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as those which are direct (**353**). Thus—

1) They generally take *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member and *an* in the second:

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dīgnitātem an propter frūctūs aliquōs expetātur, *it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2) But they sometimes omit the particle in the first member, and take in the second *an* or *-ne* in the sense of *or*, and *necne* or *an nōn* in the sense of *or not:*

Quaeritur nātūrā an dōctrīnā possit efficī virtūs, *it is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature, or by education.* Cic. Sapientia beātōs efficiat necne quaestiō est, *whether or not wisdom makes men happy is a question.* Cic.

Note 1.—Other forms, as *-ne* . . . *-ne*, *an* . . . *an*, are rare or poetic:

Quī teneant, hominēsne feraene, quaerere, *to ascertain who inhabit them, whether men or beasts.* Verg.

Note 2.—*An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dubitō an*, *nesciō an*, *haud sciō an*, 'I doubt whether not,' 'I know not whether not' = 'I am inclined to think'; *dubium est an*, *incertum est an*, 'it is uncertain whether not' = 'it is probable':

Dubitō an Thrasybūlum prīmum omnium pōnam, *I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all* (i. e., I am inclined to think I should). Nep.

Note 3.—*An* sometimes seems to have the force of *aut:*

Cum Simōnidēs, an quis alius,[1] pollicērētur, *when Simonides or some other one promised.* Cic.

4. The Subjunctive is put in the *periphrastic form* in the indirect question (1) when it represents a *periphrastic form* in the direct question, and (2) generally, not always, when it represents a *Future Indicative;* see the fifth and sixth examples under **529**, I.

5. Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished—

1) From clauses introduced by relative pronouns or relative adverbs. These always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while indirect questions are generally so used:

Dīcam quod sentiō (*relative clause*), *I will tell that which* (id quod) *I think.*[2] Cic. Dīcam quid intellegam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.* Cic. Quaerāmus ubī maleficium est, *let us seek there* (ibī) *where the crime is.* Cic.

2) From direct questions and exclamations:

---

[1] Some critics treat *an quis alius* as a direct question inserted parenthetically: *or was it some other one?*

[2] In the first and third examples, *quod sentiō* and *ubī* . . . *est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibī* as the antecedent or correlative of *ubī;* but in the second example, *quid intellegam* is an indirect question and the object of *dīcam: I will tell* (what?) *what I know* (i. e., will answer that question).

Quid agendum est? nesciō, *what is to be done? I know not.*[1] Cic. Vidē! quam conversa rēs est, *see! how changed is the case.* Cic.

3) From clauses introduced by *nesciō quis* = *quidam*,[2] 'some one,' *nesciō quōmodo* = *quōdammodo*, 'in some way,' *mīrum quantum*, 'wonderfully much,' 'wonderfully,' etc. These take the *Indicative:*

Nesciō quid animus praesāgit,[3] *the mind forebodes, I know not what.* Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *this profited, it is wonderful how much* (i. e., it wonderfully profited). Liv.

6. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of an impersonal verb with an indirect question as subject, the personal construction is sometimes used, as follows:

Perspiciuntur quam sint levēs,[4] *it is seen how inconstant they are!* Cic.

7. The INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS is sometimes used in early Latin and in the poets, especially in Plautus and Terence:

Sī memorāre velim, quam fidēlī animō fuī, possum, *if I should wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

530. The directions already given for converting the DIRECT DISCOURSE, *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, into the INDIRECT, *Ōrātiō Oblīqua*, are further illustrated in the following passage from Caesar:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
Caesarem obsecrāre coepit: 'Nē quid gravius in frātrem *statueris; sciō* illa esse vēra, nec *quisquam* ex eō plūs quam *ego* dolōris *capit*, propterea quod cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in rĕliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam *poterat*, per *mē crēvit;* quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem *meam ūtitur; ego* tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī *commoveor*. Quod sī quid ĕī ā *tē* gravius *acciderit*, cum ipse *hunc* locum amīcitiae apud *tē teneam*, *nēmō existimābit*, nōn *meā* voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtĭus Galliae animī ā *mē āvertentur*.'	Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem *statueret; scīre sē* illa esse vēra, nec *quemquam* ex eō plūs quam *sē* dolōris *capere*, propterea quod cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in rĕliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam *pōsset*, per *sē crēvisset;* quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem *suam ūterētur; sēsē* tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī *commovērī*. Quod sī quid ĕī ā *Caesare* gravius *accidisset*, cum ipse *eum* locum amīcitiae apud *eum tenēret*, *nēminem existimātūrum*, nōn *suā* voluntāte factum; quā ex rē *futūrum* utī tōtĭus Galliae animī ā *sē āverterentur*. Caes., B. G., I., 20.

---

[1] *Quid agendum sit nesciō*, 'I know not what is to be done,' would be an indirect question.

[2] See **191**, note.

[3] *Praesāgit* does not depend upon *nesciō*, but is entirely independent. *Nesciō quid animus praesāgiat* would be an indirect question, and would mean, *I know not what the mind forebodes.*

[4] Lit., *they are seen.* Observe that this personal construction corresponds to the Active, *perspiciunt eōs quam sint levēs*, 'they perceive (them) how inconstant they are.' See also *ego illum nesciō quī fuerit*, **529**, 2.

Note.—In this illustration observe the following points:

1) That the *Indicative* in the principal clauses of the direct discourse is changed to the corresponding tense of the *Infinitive* in the indirect,[1] and that the *Subjunctive*, *statuerīs*, denoting incomplete action, is changed to the *Imperfect Subjunctive* after the historical tense, *coepit*.

2) That in the subordinate clauses the verbs denoting *incomplete* action are changed to the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, while those denoting *completed* action are changed to the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive.[2]

3) That *sciō* becomes *scīre sē* (i. e., that the subject of the Infinitive is generally expressed).

4) That the pronouns of the *first* person are changed to *reflexives;* and that those of the *second* person are changed to *is*.[3]

531. The process by which the Indirect Discourse, *Ōrātiō Oblīqua*, is changed to the Direct, *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, is illustrated in the following passages from Caesar:

Indirect Discourse.	Direct Discourse.
Respondit, *trānsīsse* Rhēnum *sēsē* nōn *suā* sponte, sed *rogātum* et *arcessītum* ā Gallīs. *Sē* prius in Galliam *vēnisse* quam *populum Rōmānum*. Quid *sibi vellet?* Cūr in *suās* possessiōnēs *venīret?* Caes., B. G., I., 44.	Respondit: '*Trānsiī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallīs. *Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus*. Quid *tibi vīs?* Cūr in *meās* possessiōnēs *venīs?*'
Ita respondit, eō *sibi* minus dubitātiōnis *darī* quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī *commemorāssent* memoriā *tenēret*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī *vellet*, num etiam recentium injūriārum memoriam dēpōnere *posse?* Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab *iīs sibi dentur*, *sēsē* cum *iīs* pācem *esse factūrum*. Caes., B. G., I., 14.	Ita respondit: 'Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur* quod eās rēs quās *vōs*, lēgātī Helvētiī, *commemorāvistis*, memoriā *teneō*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī *volō*, num etiam recentium injūriārum memoriam dēpōnere *possum?* Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, *vōbīscum* pācem *faciam*.'

Note.—In these illustrations observe the following points:

1) That in the principal clauses (1) the *Infinitives* with *sē* or *sēsē*, expressed or understood, are changed to the *first person of the Indicative;*[4] (2) other *Infinitives* are also changed to the *Indicative*, but the person is determined by the context;[5] and (3)

---

[1] Thus *sciō* becomes *scīre; capit, capere; commoveor, commovērī; existimābit, existimātūrum (esse);* and *āvertentur, futūrum utī āverterentur*. This last form, *futūrum utī āverterentur*, is the Periphrastic Future Infinitive Passive; see 537, 3.

[2] Thus *poterat* becomes *posset; ūtitur, ūterētur; teneam, tenēret;* but *crēvit* becomes *crēvisset; acciderit, accidisset*.

[3] Thus (1) *ego* is changed to *sē; mē* to *sē; meam* to *suam; meā* to *suā;* and (2) *tē* to *eum; hunc* to *eum*.

[4] Thus *trānsīsse sēsē* is changed to *trānsiī; sē vēnisse* to *ego vēnī; sēsē esse factūrum* to *faciam; posse*, with *sē* understood, to *possum*.

[5] Thus *minus darī* becomes *minus datur;* but if the subject of the Infinitive is of the second person, the Indicative will also be of that person. *Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderātē* thus becomes *respondeō*, '*dolōrem moderātē fers;*' see p. 299, footnote 2.

Subjunctives are changed to the *Indicative* after interrogative words,[1] and to the *Imperative* in other situations.[2]

2) That in the subordinate clauses the *Subjunctive*, unless required by the thought irrespective of the indirect discourse, is changed to the *Indicative*.[3]

3) That the reflexive pronouns *suī*, *sibī*, etc., and *suus* are changed (1) generally to pronouns of the first person, but (2) sometimes to those of the second person.[4]

4) That *is* and *ille* are (1) generally changed to *tū* or *hīc*, but (2) sometimes retained.[5]

5) That a noun referring to the person or persons addressed may be put in the Vocative preceded by *tū* or *vōs*.[6]

SECTION VII.

INFINITIVE.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

I. INFINITIVE.

532. The Infinitive is a verbal noun with special characteristics. Like verbs, it has voice and tense, takes adverbial modifiers, and governs oblique cases.[7]

RULE LVI.—Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Audeō dīcere, *I dare say* (I venture to say). Cic. Haec vītāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Cōnstituit nōn prōgredī, *he decided*

---

[1] Thus *quid vellet* is changed to *quid vīs? cūr venīret* to *cūr venīs? Vellet* and *venīret* are in the Imperfect simply because dependent upon an historical tense, and are therefore changed to the Present in the direct discourse. In deliberative questions (**484**, V.) the Subjunctive is retained in the direct discourse.

[2] Thus *cum legiōne veniat*, under **523**, III., becomes *cum legiōne venī*. The Subjunctive may of course be retained in the direct discourse whenever the thought requires that mood.

[3] Thus *commemorāssent*, pluperfect after an historical tense, is changed to *commemorāvistis; tenēret* to *teneō; vellet* to *volō; dentur* to *dabuntur*. *Sint* is retained unchanged because required in a causal clause with *cum;* see **517**.

[4] Thus (1) *trānsīsse sēsē* is changed to *trānsiī*, with subject implied in the ending; *suā* to *meā; sē vēnisse* to *ego vēnī*, with emphatic subject; *suās* to *meās; sibi* to *mihi; sēsē esse factūrum* to *faciam;* (2) *sibi* to *tibi*, in *quid sibi vellet*. As the subject of an Infinitive (**536**), *sē* or *sēsē* often corresponds to the pronominal subject implied in the ending of a finite verb; see p. 187, foot-note 5.

[5] Thus (1) *ab iīs* is changed to *ā vōbīs; cum iīs* to *vōbīscum; ea ita sint* to *haec ita sint;* (2) *eās rēs* is retained.

[6] Thus *lēgātī Helvētiī*, the subject of *commemorāssent*, is changed to *vōs, lēgātī Helvētiī*

[7] Originally the Latin Infinitive appears to have been the Dative case of an abstract verbal noun, and to have been used to denote the *purpose* or *end* (**384**, 1, 3) for which anything is or is done. Being thus only loosely connected with the verb of the sentence, it readily lost its special force as a case and soon began to be employed with considerable freedom in a variety of constructions. In this respect the history of the *Infinitive* resem-

not to advance. Caes. Crēdulī esse coepērunt, *they began to be credulous.* Cic. Vincere scīs, *you know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Vīctōriā ūtī nescīs, *you do not know how to use victory.* Liv. Latīnē loquī didicerat, *he had learned to speak Latin.* Sall. Dēbēs hŏc rescrībere, *you ought to write this in reply.* Hor. Nēmŏ mortem effugere potest, *no one is able to escape death.* Cic. Solent cōgitāre, *they are accustomed to think.* Cic.

I. The Infinitive is thus used—

1. With Transitive Verbs meaning *to dare, desire, determine; to begin, continue, end; to know, learn; to owe,* etc.; see examples above.

Note 1.—For the *Subjunctive* with some of these verbs, see **498**, I., note.

Note 2.—See also **498**, II., note 1.

2. With Intransitive Verbs meaning *to be able; to be wont, be accustomed,* etc.; see examples above.

II. In special constructions the Infinitive has nearly the force of a Dative of Purpose or End—[1]

1. With Intransitive Verbs:

Nōn populāre penātēs vēnimus, *we have not come to lay waste your homes.* Verg. Conjūrāvēre patriam incendere, *they conspired to destroy their country with fire.* Sall.

2. With Transitive Verbs in connection with the *Accusative:*

Pecus ēgit altōs vīsere montēs, *he drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Quid habēs dīcere, *what have you to say?* Cic. Dederat comam diffundere ventīs, *she had given her hair to the winds to scatter.* Verg.[2]

3. With Adjectives:

Est parātus audīre, *he is prepared to hear* (for hearing). Cic. Avidī committere pūgnam, *eager to engage* (for engaging) *in battle.* Ovid. Fōns rīvō dare nōmen idōneus, *a fountain fit to give a name to the river.* Hor.

Note 1.—This use of the Infinitive is mostly poetical.

Note 2.—With *adjectives* and with *participles* used as adjectives the Infinitive is rare in prose, but is freely used in poetry in a variety of constructions:

Cantāre perītus, *skilled in singing.* Verg. Pēlīdēs cēdere nescius, *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Certa morī, *determined to die.* Verg. Dīgnus dēscrībī, *worthy to be described.* Hor. Vitulus niveus vidērī,[3] *a calf snow-white to view.* Hor.

---

bles that of *adverbs* from the oblique cases of nouns. As such adverbs are often used with greater freedom than the cases which they represent, so the Latin Infinitive often appears in connections where, as a Dative, it would not have been at all admissible. Upon the *Origin and History of the Indo-European Infinitive,* see Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs.'

[1] In these constructions the Infinitive retains its original force and use; see **532**, foot-note.

[2] In these examples with transitive verbs observe that the *Accusative* and *Infinitive* correspond to the *Accusative* and *Dative* under **384**, II., and that the *Accusative, Dative,* and *Infinitive* correspond to the *Accusative* and *two Datives* under **390**, II.

[3] *Niveus vidērī,* like the Greek λευκὸς ἰδέσθαι.

Piger scrībendī ferre labōrem, *reluctant to bear the labor of writing*. Hor. Suum officium facere immemor est, *he forgets* (is forgetful) *to do his duty*. Plaut.

Note 3.—The Infinitive also occurs, especially in poetry, with verbal nouns and with such expressions as *tempus est*, *cōpia est*, etc.:

Cupīdō Stygiōs innāre lacūs, *a desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes*. Verg. Quibus molliter vīvere cōpia erat, *who had the means for living at ease*. Sall. Tempus est dīcere, *it is time to speak*. Cic.

Note 4.—The Infinitive is sometimes used with prepositions:

Multum interest inter dare et accipere, *there is a great difference between giving and receiving*. Sen.

RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive:

Tē sapere docet, *he teaches you to be wise*. Cic. Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jūssit, *he ordered them to await his approach*. Caes. Pontem jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge to be broken down*. Caes. Tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, *we wish you to enjoy your virtue*. Cic. Sentīmus calēre ignem, *we perceive that fire is hot* (we perceive fire to be hot). Cic. Rēgem trādunt sē abdidisse, *they relate that the king concealed himself*.[1] Liv.

Note.—In the compound forms of the Infinitive, *esse* is often omitted:

Audīvī solitum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont*. Cic. Spērāmus vōbīs prōfutūrōs, *we hope to benefit you*. Cic.

1. The corresponding Passive is sometimes *personal* and sometimes *impersonal*:[2]

Personal.—Aristīdēs jūstissimus fuisse trāditur, *Aristides is said* (is reported by tradition) *to have been most just*. Cic. Sōlem ē mundō tollere videntur, *they seem to remove the sun from the world*. Cic. Platōnem audīvisse dīcitur, *he is said to have heard Plato*. Cic. Diī beātī esse intelleguntur, *the gods are understood to be happy*. Cic.

Impersonal.—Traditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, *it has been reported*

---

[1] Observe that in the first three examples the Accusatives *tē*, *eōs*, and *pontem*, are the *direct objects* of the finite verbs, while in the other examples the Accusatives *tē*, *ignem*, and *rēgem*, may be explained either as the *direct objects* of the finite verbs, or as the subjects of the Infinitives. The former was doubtless the original construction, but in time the object of the principal verb came to be regarded in many cases as the subject of the Infinitive depending upon it. Thus was developed the *Subject Accusative* of the Infinitive.

[2] These two constructions correspond to the two interpretations of the Active mentioned in foot-note 1 above. Thus, in the sentence, *Aristīdem jūstissimum fuisse trādunt*, if *Aristīdem* is regarded as the object of *trādunt*, according to the original conception, the corresponding Passive will be personal: *Aristīdēs jūstissimus fuisse trāditur*; but if *Aristīdem* is regarded as the subject of *fuisse*, and the clause *Aristīdem jūstissimum fuisse* as the object of *trādunt*, then the same clause will become the subject of the Passive, and the construction will be *impersonal: Aristīdem jūstissimum fuisse trāditur*, 'it is reported by tradition that Aristides was most just.'

by tradition that Homer was blind. Cic. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, *it has been stated that the Gauls occupy one part.* Caes. Nūntiātur esse nāvēs in portū, *it is announced that the vessels are in port.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The *Personal Construction* is used—(1) regularly in *jubeor*, *vetor*, and *videor;* (2) generally in the *simple tenses*[1] of most verbs of SAYING, THINKING, and the like, as *dīcor*, *trādor*, *feror*, *nūntior*, *crēdor*, *existimor*, *putor*, *perhibeor*, etc.; (3) sometimes in other verbs; see examples above.

NOTE 2.—The *Impersonal Construction* is especially common in the *compound tenses*,[1] though also used in the *simple tenses;* see examples above.

535. The ACCUSATIVE AND AN INFINITIVE are used with a great variety of verbs. Thus—

I. With verbs of PERCEIVING and DECLARING:

Sentīmus calēre ignem, *we perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Mihĭ nārrāvit tē sollicitum esse, *he told me that you were troubled.* Cic. Scrīpsērunt Themistoclem in Asiam trānsisse, *they wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBS OF PERCEIVING include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audiō*, *videō*, *sentiō*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind—THINKING, BELIEVING, KNOWING: *cōgitō*, *putŏ*, *existimō*, *crēdō*, *spērō—intellegō*, *sciŏ*, etc.

2. VERBS OF DECLARING are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dīcō*, *nārrō*, *nūntiō*, *doceō*, *ostendō*, *prōmittō*, etc.

3. Expressions equivalent to verbs of *perceiving* and of *declaring*, as *fāma fert*, 'report says,' *testis sum*, 'I am a witness' = 'I testify,' *cōnscius mihĭ sum*, 'I am conscious,' 'I know,' also admit an Accusative with an Infinitive:

Nūllam mihĭ relātam esse grātiam, tū es testis, *you are a witness* (can testify) *that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of perceiving take the Accusative with the present participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

Catōnem vīdī in bibliothēcā sedentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared, and the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Infinitive may be understood in the second:

Platōnem ferunt idem sēnsisse quod Pȳthagoram, *they say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared, and the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative may be understood in the second:

Num putātis, dixisse Antōnium minācius quam factūrum fuisse, *do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

NOTE.—But the second clause may take the Subjunctive, with or without *ut:*

---

[1] The learner will remember that the simple tenses are formed simply by inflexional endings, as *dīcitur*, *dīcēbātur*, but that the compound tenses are formed by the union of the perfect participle with the verb *sum*, as *dictum est*, *dictum erat*, etc.

Audeō dīcere ipsōs potius cultōrēs agrōrum fore quam ut colī prohibeant, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. With verbs of Wishing, Desiring, Commanding, and their opposites:[1]

Tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, *we desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. Pontem jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lēx eum necārī vetuit, *the law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

Note.—Several verbs involving a *wish* or *command* admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *nē*; see **498**, 1:

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire that you may hear this.* Cic. Volō ut respondeās, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. Mālō tē hostis metuat, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic. Concēdō ut haec apta sint, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. With verbs of Emotion and Feeling:[2]

Gaudeō tē mihĭ suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mīrāmur tē laetārī, *we wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Note.—Verbs of *emotion* and *feeling* often take clauses with *quod* (**540**, IV.) to give prominence to the *fact* stated, or to emphasize the *ground* or *reason* for the feeling:

Gaudeō quod tē interpellāvī, *I rejoice that* (or because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dolēbam quod socium āmiseram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic.

IV. Sometimes, especially in Poetry and in Late Prose, with verbs which usually take the *Subjunctive:*[3]

Gentem hortor amāre focōs, *I exhort the race to love their homes.* Verg. Cūnctī suāsērunt Ītaliam petere, *all advised to seek Italy.* Verg. Soror monet succēdere Lausō Turnum, *the sister warns Turnus to take the place of Lausus.* Verg.

RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject:[4]

Sentīmus calēre ignem, *we perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

---

[1] As *cupiō, optō, volō, nōlō, mālō,* etc.; *patior, sinō; imperō, jubeō; prohibeō, vetō,* etc.

[2] As *gaudeō, doleō, mīror, queror,* etc.; also *aegrē ferō, graviter ferō,* etc.

[3] Many verbs in Latin thus admit two or more different constructions; see in the dictionary *adigō, cēnseō, concēdō, cōgō, cōnstituō, contendō, cupiō, cūrō, dēcernō, dīcō, doceō, ēlabōrō, ēnītor, faciō, impediō, imperō, jubeō, labōrō, mālō, mandō, mōlior, moneō, nōlō, optō, ōrō, patior, permittō, persuādeō, postulō, praecipiō, praedīcō, prohibeō, sinō, statuō, studeō, suādeō, vetō, videō.* See also Draeger, II., pp. 280–416.

[4] Remember that the Infinitive, as a verbal noun, originally had no subject, but that subsequently in special constructions a subject Accusative was developed out of the object of the principal verb; see **534**, foot-note 1. In classical Latin many Infinitives have no subjects, either expressed or understood.

1. Historical Infinitive.—In lively descriptions the *Present Infinitive* is sometimes used for the *Imperfect* or the *Perfect Indicative*. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Catilīna in prīmā aciē versārī, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pūgnāre, saepe hostem ferīre, *Catiline was busy in the front line; he attended to everything, fought much in person, and often smote down the enemy.*[1] Sall.

Note.—The Historical Infinitive sometimes denotes *customary* or *repeated action:* Omnia in pējus ruere āc retrō referrī, *all things change rapidly for the worse and are borne backward.* Verg.

2. A Predicate Noun or a Predicate Adjective after an Infinitive agrees with the noun or pronoun of which it is predicated, according to the general rule (**362**). It is thus—

1) In the *Nominative*, when predicated of the principal subject:

Nōlō esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be a eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmŏ potest, *no one can be happy without virtue.* Cic. Parēns dīcī potest, *he can be called a parent.* Cic.

Note.—Participles in the compound tenses agree like predicate adjectives:

Pollicitus esse dīcitur, *he is said to have promised.* Cic.

2) In the *Accusative*, when predicated of a noun or pronoun in the Accusative:

Ego mē Phīdiam esse māllem, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trāditum est, Homērum caecum fuisse,[2] *it has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic.

3) In the *Dative*, when predicated of a noun or pronoun in the Dative:

Patriciō tribūnō plēbis fierī nōn licēbat, *it was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihĭ neglegentī esse nōn licuit,[3] *it was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

Note.—A noun or adjective predicated of a noun or pronoun in the Dative is sometimes put in the Accusative:

Ĕī cōnsulem fierī licet, *it is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

537. The Tenses of the Infinitive—*Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*—denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to that of the principal verb:

Present.—Cupiō mē esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild.* Cic. Māluit sē dīligī quam metuī, *he preferred to be loved rather than feared.* Nep.

Perfect.—Platōnem ferunt in Ĭtaliam vēnisse, *they say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Cōnscius mihĭ eram, nihil ā mē commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me.* Cic.

Future.—Brūtum vīsum īrī ā mē putŏ, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.*

---

[1] Historical Infinitives are generally used in groups, seldom singly.

[2] Here *Phīdiam* is predicated of *mē* (lit., *me to be Phidias*), and *caecum* of *Homērum*.

[3] *Tribūnō* is predicated of *patriciō*, and *neglegentī* of *mihĭ*.

Cic. Ōrāculum datum erat victrīcēs Athēnās fore, *an oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic.

NOTE.—In general, the Present Infinitive represents the action as *taking place* at the time denoted by the principal verb, the Perfect as then *completed* or *past*, and the Future as then *about to take place;* but tense is so imperfectly developed in the Infinitive that even *relative time* is not marked with much exactness. Hence—

1) The *Present* is sometimes used of *future* actions, and sometimes with little or no reference to time:

Crās argentum dare dixit, *he said that he would give the silver to-morrow.* Ter.

2) The *Perfect* is sometimes used of *present* actions, though chiefly in the poets:

Tetigisse timent poētam, *they fear to touch* (to have touched) *the poet.* Hor.

1. After the past tenses of *dēbeō*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the PRESENT INFINITIVE is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *meminī*, and the like; regularly in recalling what we have ourselves experienced:

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *he ought to have been more attentive.* Cic. Id potuit facere, *he might have done this.* Cic. Mē Athēnīs audīre meminī, *I remember to have heard* (hearing) *in Athens.* Cic.

2. The *Perfect Passive Infinitive* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action. Thus, *dōctus esse* may mean either *to have been instructed* or *to be a learned man* (lit., *an instructed man*). If the *result* thus denoted belongs to past time, *fuisse* must take the place of *esse:*

Populum alloquitur, sōpītum fuisse rēgem ictū, *she addresses the people, saying that the king was stunned by the blow.* Liv. See also **471**, 6, note 1.

3. Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the PERIPHRASTIC FORM, *futūrum esse ut*, or *fore ut*, with the Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect, is frequently used:

Spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Nōn spērāverat Hannibal, fore ut ad sē dēficerent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—This circumlocution is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the participle in *rus*.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes *fore ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in passive and deponent verbs, *fore* with the perfect participle may be used with the same force:

Dīcō mē satis adeptum fore, *I say that I shall have obtained enough.* Cic.

538. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, is often used as the subject of a verb:[1]

WITH SUBJECT.—Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere, *it was announced to Caesar that the cavalry was approaching.* Caes. Facinus est vincīrī cīvem Rōmānum, *that a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum est līberōs amārī, *it is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Lēgem brevem esse oportet, *it is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

---

[1] This use of the Infinitive as subject was readily developed out of its use as object; see **534**, 1, foot-note. Thus the Infinitive, with or without a subject, finally came to be regarded as an *indeclinable noun*, and was accordingly used not only as *subject* and *object*, but also as *predicate* and *appositive* (**539**, I. and II.), and sometimes even in the *Ablative Absolute* (**539**, IV.), and in dependence upon prepositions (**533**, 3, note 4).

Without Subject.—Dēcrētum est nōn dare sīgnum, *it was decided not to give the signal.* Liv. Ars est difficilis rem pūblicam regere, *to rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Cārum esse jūcundum est, *it is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scīre juvat, *to know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccāre licet nēminī, *to sin is lawful for no one.* Cic.

1. When the subject is an Infinitive, the predicate is either (1) a noun or adjective with *sum*, or (2) a verb used impersonally; see the examples above.

2. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be the subject of another Infinitive:

Intellegī necesse est esse deōs,[1] *it must be understood that there are gods.* Cic.

3. The Infinitive sometimes takes a demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it:

Quibusdam hŏc displicet philosophārī, *this philosophizing* (this to philosophize) *displeases some persons.* Cic. Vīvere ipsum turpe est nōbīs, *to live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

539. Special Constructions.—The Infinitive with a subject[2] is sometimes used—

I. As a Predicate; see **362**:

Exitus fuit ōrātiōnis sibĭ nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse,[2] *the close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes.

Note.—An Infinitive without a subject may be used as a Predicate Nominative: Vīvere est cōgitāre, *to live is to think.* Cic.

II. As an Appositive; see **363**:

Ōrāculum datum erat vīctrīcēs Athēnās fore, *an oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic. Illud soleō mīrārī, nōn mē accipere tuās lītterās,[3] *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

III. In Exclamations; see **381**:

Tē sīc vexārī, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne inceptō dēsistere vīctam, *that I, vanquished, should abandon my undertaking!*[4] Verg.

IV. In the Ablative Absolute; see **431**, note 1:

Audītō Darīum mōvisse pergit, *having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had withdrawn having been heard), *he advanced.* Curt.

---

[1] *Esse deōs* is the subject of *intellegī*, and *intellegī esse deōs* of *est.*

[2] Including the modifiers of each. Thus in the example the whole clause, *sibĭ nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse*, is used as a Predicate Nominative in agreement with the subject *exitus;* see **362**.

[3] In the examples, the clause *vīctrīcēs Athēnās fore* is in apposition with *ōrāculum*, and the clause *nōn mē accipere tuās lītterās*, in apposition with *illud.*

[4] This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of the Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (**381**, with note 8).

II. Substantive Clauses.

540. In Latin, clauses which are used as *substantives* take one of four forms. They may be—

I. Indirect Questions:

Quaeritur, cūr dissentiant, *it is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid agendum sit, nesciō, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic.

Note.—For the use of *Indirect Questions*, see **529**, I.

II. Infinitive Clauses:

Antecellere contigit, *it was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened). Cic. Māgna negōtia voluit agere, *he wished to achieve great undertakings.* Cic.

Note.—For the use of *Infinitive Clauses*, see **534**; **535**.

III. Subjunctive Clauses, generally introduced by **ut, nē**, etc.:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *it was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Volō ut mihī respondeās, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic.

Note.—For the use of such *Subjunctive Clauses*, see **498**; **499**, 3; **501**.

IV. Clauses introduced by *quod:*

Beneficium est quod necesse est morī, *it is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeō quod tē interpellāvī, *I rejoice that* (because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic.

Note.—*Quod-clauses*, used substantively, either give prominence to the *fact stated*, or present it as a *ground* or *reason*. They are used as the *subject* of impersonal verbs, and as the *object* of many transitive verbs, especially of such as denote *emotion* or *feeling:*[1]

Hūc accēdēbat quod exercitum luxuriōsē habuerat, *to this was added the fact that he had kept the army in luxury.* Sall. Adde quod ingenuās didicisse artēs ēmollit mōrēs, *add the fact that to learn liberal arts refines manners.* Ovid. Bene facis quod mē adjuvās, *you do well that you assist me.* Cic. Dolēbam quod socium āmīseram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See also **535**, III., note.

SECTION VIII.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES,[2] SUPINES, AND PARTICIPLES.

I. Gerunds.

541. The Gerund is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

---

[1] *Quod-clauses* occur—(1) as the subject of *accēdit, accidit, appāret, ēvenit, fit, nocet, obest, occurrit, prōdest*, etc.; also of *est* with a noun or adjective, as *causa est, vitium est*, etc., *grātum est, indīgnum est, mīrum est*, etc.; and (2) as dependent upon *accūsō, addō, adiceō* (p. 20, foot-note 1), *admīror, animadvertō, angor, bene faciō, dēlector, doleō, excūsō, faciō, gaudeō, glōrior, laetor, mīror, mittō, omittō, praetereō, queror*, etc.

[2] The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive* were originally identical. The former is the neu-

Jūs vocandī[1] senātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Beātē vīvendī[1] cupiditās, *the desire of living happily.* Cic.

Note.—In a few instances the Gerund has apparently a passive meaning:

Neque habent propriam percipiendī notam, *nor have they any proper mark of distinction* (i. e., to distinguish them). Cic.

542. The Gerund has four cases—the *Genitive, Dative, Accusative,* and *Ablative*—used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus—

I. The **Genitive of the Gerund** is used with nouns and adjectives:[2]

Ars vīvendī, *the art of living.* Cic. Studiōsus erat audiendī, *he was desirous of hearing.* Nep. Cupidus tē audiendī, *desirous of hearing you.* Cic. Artem vēra āc falsa dījūdicandī, *the art of distinguishing true things from false.* Cic.

Note 1.—The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its *substantive nature*, it governs the *Genitive*, especially the Genitive of personal pronouns—*meī, nostrī, tuī, vestrī, suī:*

Cōpia plācandī tuī (*of a woman*), *an opportunity of appeasing you.* Ov. Suī cōnservandī causā, *for the purpose of preserving themselves.* Cic. Vestrī adhortandī causā, *for the purpose of exhorting you.* Liv. Reiciendī[3] jūdicum potestās, *the power of challenging* (of) *the judges.* Cic. Lūcis tuendī cōpia, *the privilege of beholding the light.* Plaut.

Note 2.—The Genitive of the Gerund is sometimes used to denote *purpose* or *tendency:*

Lēgēs pellendī clārōs virōs, *laws for* (lit., *of*) *driving away illustrious men.* Tac.

II. The **Dative of the Gerund** is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, *since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua ūtilis est bibendō, *water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

Note.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare;[4] with an object it occurs only in Plautus.

III. The **Accusative of the Gerund** is used after a few prepositions:[5]

Ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, *we are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in* or *during play.* Quint.

---

ter of a participle used *substantively*, while the latter is that same participle used *adjectively.* Moreover, from this participle the Gerund developed an *active* meaning and the Gerundive a *passive.* On the *Origin and Use of Gerunds and Gerundives*, see Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs,' pp. 198–200; Draeger, II., pp. 789–828.

[1] *Vocandī* as a Genitive is governed by *jūs*, and yet it governs the Accusative *senātum; vīvendī* is governed by *cupiditās*, and yet it takes the adverbial modifier *beātē.*

[2] The adjectives which take the *Genitive of the Gerund* are chiefly those denoting DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION, and their opposites: *avidus, cupidus, studiōsus; cōnscius, gnārus, ignārus; perītus, imperītus, īnsuētus*, etc.

[3] Pronounced as if written *rejiciendī;* see p. 20, foot-note 1.

[4] According to Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs,' p. 200, the Gerund originally had only *one case, the Dative*, and was virtually an Infinitive.

[5] Most frequently after *ad;* sometimes after *inter* and *ob;* very rarely after *ante, circā*, and *in.*

NOTE 1.—The Accusative of the Gerund with a direct object is rare:

Ad plācandum deōs pertinet, *it tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—The Gerund with *ad* often denotes *purpose:*

Ad imitandum mihī prōpositum est exemplar illud, *that model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic.

IV. The ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND is used (1) as *Ablative of Means,* and (2) with *prepositions:*[1]

Mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.* Cic. Salūtem hominibus dandō, *by giving safety to men.* Cic. Virtūtēs cernuntur in agendō, *virtues are seen in action.* Cic. Dēterrēre ā scrībendō, *to deter from writing.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—After prepositions, the Ablative of the Gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In tribuendō suum cuique, *in giving every one his own.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Without a preposition, the Ablative of the Gerund denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time, separation,* etc.:

Incipiendō refūgi, *I drew back in the very beginning.* Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The GERUNDIVE, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, *plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Numa sacerdōtibus creandīs animum adjēcit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* Liv.

NOTE.—A noun (or pronoun) and a Gerundive in agreement with it form the *Gerundive Construction.*

544. The GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION may be used—

1. In place of a *Gerund with a direct object.* It then takes the case of the Gerund whose place it supplies:

Libīdō ējus videndī (= libīdō eum videndī), *the desire of seeing him* (lit., *of him to be seen*). Cic. Platōnis audiendī (= Platōnem audiendī) studiōsus, *fond of hearing Plato.* Cic. Legendīs ōrātōribus (= legendō ōrātōrēs), *by reading the orators.* Cic.

NOTE.—The Gerundive Construction should not be used for the Gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object, as it could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vēra āc falsa dījūdicandī, *the art of distinguishing true things from false.* Cic.

2. In the *Dative* and in the *Ablative with a preposition:*

Locum oppidō condendō cēpērunt, *they selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempora dēmetendīs frūctibus accommodāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic. Brūtus in līberandā patriā est interfectus, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

---

[1] The Ablative of the Gerund is used most frequently after *ā* (ab), *dē*, *ex* (ē), *in;* rarely after *cum*, *prō*, and *super*.

Note 1.—The learner will remember that in the *Dative* (**542**, II., note) and in the *Ablative with a preposition* (**542**, IV., note 1) the Gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare. The *Gerundive Construction* supplies its place.

Note 2.—The Gerundive Construction sometimes denotes *purpose* or *tendency*, especially in the Accusative after verbs of *giving*, *permitting*, *taking*, etc.:

Attribuit Ītaliam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Catilīnae, *he assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage* (to be ravaged). Cic. Firmandae valētūdinī in Campāniam concēssit, *he withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac. Haec trādendae Hannibalī victōriae sunt, *these things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal.* Liv. Proficīscitur cōgnōscendae antīquitātis, *he sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity.* Tac.

Note 3.—The Gerundive Construction in the Dative occurs after certain official names, as *decemvirī*, *triumvirī*, *comitia*:[1]

Decemvirōs lēgibus scrībendīs creāvimus, *we have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv.

Note 4.—The Gerundive Construction in the Ablative occurs after comparatives:

Nūllum officium referendā grātiā magis necessarium est, *no duty is more necessary than that of returning a favor.* Cic.

Note 5.—The Gerundive Construction is in general admissible only in transitive verbs, but it occurs in *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, etc., originally transitive:

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty.* Cic. Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum, *the hope of getting possession of the camp.* Caes.

III. Supines.

545. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verbal noun. It has a form in **um** and a form in **ū**.

Note 1.—The Supine in *um* is an Accusative; that in *ū* is generally an Ablative, though sometimes perhaps a Dative.[2]

Note 2.—The Supine in *um* governs the same case as the verb:

Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send ambassadors to ask aid.* Caes.

RULE LIX.—Supine in Um.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express purpose:

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetītum, *deputies came to demand restitution.* Liv. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum convēnērunt, *they came to Caesar to congratulate him.* Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Fīliam Agrippae nūptum dedit, *he gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eō* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally:

Bonōs omnēs perditum eunt, *they are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

---

[1] But in most instances the Dative may be explained as dependent either upon the verb or upon the predicate as a whole; see **384**, 4.

[2] See Hübschmann, p. 223; Draeger, II., p. 833; Jolly, p. 201.

NOTE.—But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eō* is often used for the simple verb:

Ultum īre (= ulciscī) injūriās festīnat, *he hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *īrī*, the Infinitive Passive of *eō*, forms, it will be remembered (222, III., 1), the Future Passive Infinitive:

Brūtum vīsum īrī ā mē putō, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* is not very common;[1] but *purpose* may be denoted by other constructions:

1) By *ut* or *quī with the Subjunctive;* see **497**.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives;* see **542**, I., note 2, and III., note 2; **544**, 2, note 2.

3) By *Participles;* see **549**, 3.

RULE LX.—Supine in ū.

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (**424**):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to tell.* Cic. Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to speak of the kind of death.* Cic. Cīvitās incrēdibile memorātū est quantum crēverit, *it is incredible to relate how much the state increased.* Sall.

NOTE.—The Supine in *ū* never governs an oblique case, but it may take an Ablative with a preposition, as in the third example above.

1. The Supine in *ū* is used chiefly with *jūcundus, optimus; facilis, prōclīvis, difficilis; incrēdibilis, memorābilis; honestus, turpis; dīgnus, indīgnus; fās, nefās, opus,* and *scelus.*

2. The Supine in *ū* is very rare. The most common examples are *audītū, dictū, factū, nātū, vīsū;* less common, *cōgnitū, intellēctū, inventū, memorātū, relātū, scītū, tractātū, victū.*[2]

IV. PARTICIPLES.

548. The PARTICIPLE is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb:

Animus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the mind, though it does not see itself* (lit., *not seeing itself*), *discerns other things.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—For *Participles used substantively,* see **441**.

NOTE 2.—*Participles used substantively* sometimes retain the *adverbial* modifiers which belonged to them as participles, and sometimes take *adjective* modifiers:

Nōn tam praemia sequī rēctē factōrum quam ipsa rēctē facta, *not to seek the rewards of good deeds* (things rightly done) *so much as good deeds themselves.* Cic. Praeclārum atque dīvīnum factum, *an excellent and divine deed.* Cic.

549. PARTICIPLES are often used—

1. To denote TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS:

---

[1] According to Draeger, II., p. 829, the Supine in *um* is found in only two hundred and thirty-six verbs, mostly of the First and Third Conjugations.

[2] According to Draeger, II., p. 838, the Supine in *ū* is found in one hundred and nine verbs.

Platŏ scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itūrī in proelium canunt, *they sing when about to go into battle.* Tac. Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Mīlitēs renūntiant, sē perfidiam veritōs revertisse, *the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

2. To denote CONDITION or CONCESSION:

Mendācī hominī nē vērum quidem dīcentī crēdere nōn solēmus, *we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Reluctante nātūrā, irritus labor est, *if nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen. Scrīpta tua jam diū exspectāns, nōn audeō tamen flāgitāre, *though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

3. To denote PURPOSE:

Perseus rediit, bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nōs trucīdandōs Cethēgō, *he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

4. To supply the place of RELATIVE CLAUSES:

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, improbī sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES:

Clāssem dēvīctam cēpit, *he conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Rē cōnsentientēs, vocābulīs differēbant, *they agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—A participle with a negative is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without:*

Miserum est, nihil prōficientem angī, *it is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything.* Cic. Nōn ērubēscēns, *without blushing.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—The perfect participle is often best rendered by a participial or verbal noun with *of:*

Homērus fuit ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer lived* (was) *before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

550. The TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE—*Present, Perfect,* and *Future*—denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present, past,* and *future* relatively to that of the principal verb:

Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the eye, though it does not see itself* (not seeing itself), *discerns other things.* Cic. Platŏ scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Ūva mātūrāta dulcescit, *the grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet.* Cic. Sapiēns bona semper placitūra laudat, *the wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

NOTE 1.—The perfect participle, both in deponent and in passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun:

Eisdem ducibus ūsus Numidās mittit, *employing the same persons as guides, he sent the Numidians.* Caes. Incēnsās perfert nāvēs, *he reports the burning of the ships* (the ships set on fire). Verg. See also **544**.

Note 2.—In the *compound tenses* the perfect participle often becomes virtually a predicate adjective expressing the *result* of the action:

Causae sunt cōgnitae, *the causes are known.* Caes. See also **471**, 6, note 1.

Note 3.—For the *Perfect Participle* with *habeō*, see **388**, 1, note.

Note 4.—The want of a perfect active participle is sometimes supplied by a *temporal clause*, and sometimes by a *perfect passive participle* in the Ablative Absolute:

Caesar, postquam vēnit, Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit, *Caesar, having arrived, decided to cross the Rhine.* Caes. Equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes. See also **431**; **519**.

Note 5.—The want of a present passive participle is generally supplied by a *temporal clause:*

Cum ā Catōne laudābar, reprehendī mē ā cēteris patiēbar, *being praised by Cato, I allowed myself to be censured by the others.* Cic.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientēs fēlīciter vīvunt, *the wise live happily.* Cic. Facile dōctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise.* Verg.

Note 1.—For *predicate adverbs* with *sum*, see **360**, note 2; for *adverbs* with nouns used adjectively, see **441**, 3; for *adverbs* in place of adjectives, see **443**, notes 3 and 4; for *adverbs* with participles used substantively, see **548**, note 2.

Note 2.—*Sīc* and *ita* mean 'so,' 'thus.' *Ita* has also a limiting sense, 'in so far,' as in *ita—sī* (**507**, 3, note 2). *Adeō* means 'to such a degree *or* result'; *tam*, *tantopere*, 'so much'—*tam* used mostly with adjectives and adverbs, and *tantopere* with verbs.

552. The common negative particles are *nōn*, *nē*, *haud*.

1. *Nōn* is the usual negative; *nē* is used in prohibitions, wishes, and purposes (**483**, 3; **488**; **497**), and *haud*, in *haud sciŏ an*, and with adjectives and adverbs: *haud mīrābile*, not wonderful; *haud aliter*, not otherwise. *Nī* for *nē* is rare. *Nē nōn* after *vidē* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *nōn modo nōn* and in *nōn sōlum nōn* the second *nōn* is generally omitted before *sed* or *vērum*, followed by *nē—quidem* or *vix* (rarely *etiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first:

Assentātiŏ nōn modo amīcō, sed nē līberō quidem dīgna est, *flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.* Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *nōn; sī minus = sī nōn.* *Sīn aliter* has nearly the same force as *sī minus.* *Minimē* often means 'not at all,' 'by no means.'

553. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

Nihil nōn arroget, *let him claim everything.* Hor. Neque hŏc Zēnŏ nōn vīdit, *nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Nōn* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

Nōnnēmŏ, *some one;*	nōnnihil, *something;*	nōnnūnquam, *sometimes;*
Nēmŏ nōn, *every one;*	nihil nōn, *everything;*	nūnquam nōn, *always.*

2. After a general negative, *nē—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *neque—neque*, *nēve—nēve*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

Nōn praetereundum est nē id quidem, *we must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nēmŏ unquam neque poēta neque ōrātor fuit, *no one was ever either a poet or an orator.* Cic.

Note.—For the Use of Prepositions, see **432–435**.

554. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (**309**, 1). They comprise five classes.

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union:

Castor et Pollūx, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Senātus populusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec erat difficile, *nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. For list, see **310**, 1.

2. *Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* and *āc* generally give prominence to what follows. *Neque* and *nec* have the force of *et nōn*. *Et* and *etiam* sometimes mean *even*.

Note.—*Atque* and *āc* generally mean *as*, *than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness: *tālis āc*, 'such as'; *aeque āc*, 'equally as'; *aliter atque*, 'otherwise than.' See also **451**, 5.

3. *Que* is an enclitic, and *āc* in the best prose is used only before consonants.

4. *Etiam*, *quoque*, *adeō*, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et*, *atque*, *āc*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quoque* follows the word which it connects: *is quoque*, 'he also.' *Etiam*, 'also,' 'further,' 'even,' often adds a new circumstance.

5. Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et—et*, *que—que*,[1] *et—que*, *que—et*, *que—atque*,[1] *tum—tum*, *cum—tum*, 'both—and'; but *cum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; *nōn sōlum* (nōn modo, *or* nōn tantum)—*sed etiam* (vērum etiam), 'not only—but also'; *neque* (nec)—*neque* (nec), 'neither—nor'; *neque* (nec)—*et* (que), 'not—but (*and*)'; *et—neque* (nec), 'and not.'

6. Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pāx et tranquillitās et concordia*, or *pāx, tranquillitās, concordia*, or *pāx, tranquillitās, concordiaque.*

Note 1.—*Et* is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *nōn*.

Note 2.—A series may begin with *prīmum* or *prīmō*, may be continued by *deinde* followed by *tum*, *posteā*, *praetereā*, or some similar word, and may close with *dēnique* or *postrēmō*.[1] *Deinde* may be repeated several times between *prīmum* and *dēnique* or *postrēmō*.[2]

---

[1] *Que—que* is rare, except in poetry; *que—atque*, rare even in poetry; see Verg., Aen., I., 18; Geor., I., 182.

II. **Disjunctive Conjunctions** denote **separation**:

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, *either your fault or his own.* Liv. Duābus tribusve hōrīs, *in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. For list, see **310**, 2.

2. *Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut vērum aut falsum*, 'either true or false.' *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective, and is often followed by *potius*, *etiam*, or *dīcam*: *laudātur, vel etiam amātur*, 'he is praised, or even (rather) loved.' It sometimes means *even*, and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

Note.—In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *nōn honor aut virtūs*, 'neither (not) honor nor virtue.'

3. *Sive* (*sī—ve*) does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, 'Pallas or Minerva' (another name of the same goddess).

Note.—Disjunctive conjunctions are often combined as correlatives: *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*, etc., 'either—or.'

III. **Adversative Conjunctions** denote **opposition or contrast**:

Cupiō mē esse clēmentem, sed mē inertiae condemnō, *I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction.* Cic. Magnēs ferrum ad sē trahit, ratiōnem autem adferre nōn possumus, *the magnet attracts iron, but we can not assign a reason.* Cic.

1. For list, see **310**, 3.

2. *Sed* and *vērum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vērō* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atquī* often introduces an objection; *cēterum* means 'but still,' 'as to the rest'; *tamen*, 'yet.'

Note.—*Sed* and *vērum* are sometimes resumptive; see IV., 3, below:

Sed age, respondē, *but come, reply.* Plaut.

3. *Attamen*, *sedtamen*, *vēruntamen*, 'but yet,' are compounds of *tamen*.

4. *Autem* and *vērō* are *postpositive*, i. e., they are placed after one or more words in their clauses.

IV. **Illative Conjunctions** denote **inference**:

In umbrā igitur pūgnābimus, *we shall therefore fight in the shade.* Cic.

1. For list, see **310**, 4.

2. Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives, as *eō*, *ideō*, *idcircō*, *propterea*, *quamobrem*, *quāpropter*, *quārē*, *quōcircā*.

3. *Igitur* generally follows the word which it connects: *hīc igitur*, 'this one therefore.' After a digression, *igitur*, *sed*, *sed tamen*, *vērum*, *vērum tamen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered 'I say': *Sed sī quis*, 'if any one, I say.'

---

[1] For examples, see Cic., Fam., XV., 14; Div., II., 56.

[2] Cicero, Inv., II., 49, has a series of ten members in which *prīmum* introduces the first member, *postrēmō* the last, and *deinde* each of the other eight.

V. **Causal Conjunctions** denote **cause**:

Difficile est cōnsilium, sum enim sōlus, *counsel is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic. Etenim jūs amant, *for they love the right.* Cic.

1. For list, see **310**, 5.
2. *Etenim* and *namque* denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.
3. *Enim* is *postpositive*; see **554**, III., 4.

555. **Subordinate Conjunctions** connect subordinate with principal constructions (**309**, 2). They comprise eight classes.

I. **Temporal Conjunctions** denote **time**:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, *he obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ego in Siciliā sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also **311**, 1; **518–521.**

1. *Dum* added to a negative means *yet; nōndum*, 'not yet'; *vixdum*, 'scarcely yet.'

II. **Comparative Conjunctions** denote **comparison**:

Ut optāstī, ita est, *it is as you desired.* Cic. Velut sī adesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also **311**, 2; **513**, II.

1. **Correlatives** are often used: *Tam—quam*, 'as,' 'so—as,' 'as much—as'; *tam—quam quod māximē*, 'as much as possible'; *nōn minus—quam*, 'not less than'; *nōn magis—quam*, 'not more than.'

Tam—quam and *ut—ita* with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative: *ut māximē—ita māximē*, 'the more—the more.'

III. **Conditional Conjunctions** denote **condition**:

Sī peccāvī, ignōsce, *if I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est cōnsilium domī, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also **311**, 3; **506–513.**

1. *Nisi*, 'if not,' in negative sentences often means 'except'; and *nisi quod*, 'except that,' may be used even in affirmative sentences. *Nisi* may mean 'than.' *Nihil aliud nisi* = 'nothing further' (more, except); *nihil aliud quam* = 'nothing else' (other than).

IV. **Concessive Conjunctions** denote **concession**:

Quamquam intellegunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsī nihil habeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also **311**, 4; **514**; **515.**

V. **Final Conjunctions** denote **purpose**:

Ēsse oportet, ut vīvās, *it is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also **311**, 5; **497–499.**

VI. **Consecutive Conjunctions** denote **consequence** or **result**:

Atticus ita vīxit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also **311**, 6; **500–504.**

VII. **Causal Conjunctions** denote **cause**:

Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. See also **311**, 7; **516**; **517.**

VIII. **Interrogative Conjunctions** or Particles denote **inquiry** or **question**:

Quaesierās, nōnne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also **311**, 8; **351–353**; **529.**

556. **Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *ēheu*, 'alas!' and sometimes with certain cases of nouns; see 381, with note 3.**

557. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections:

Pāx (*peace*), *be still!* miserum, miserābile, *sad*, *lamentable!* ōrō, *pray!* age, agite, *come*, *well!* meherculēs, *by Hercules!* per deūm fidem, *in the name of the gods!* sōdēs = sī audēs (*for* audiēs), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

558. **For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body.**

Agreement of Nouns.

I. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in case (362):

Brūtus custōs lībertātis fuit, *Brutus was the guardian of liberty.*

II. An Appositive agrees in case with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies (363):

Cluīlius rēx moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.*

Nominative.—Vocative.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (368):

Servius rēgnāvit, *Servius reigned.*

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laelī, *proceed, Laelius.*

Accusative.

V. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.*

VI. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt, *they made Hamilcar commander.*

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing* (**374**):

Mē sententiam rogāvit, ***he asked me my opinion.***

VIII. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application (**378**):

Capita vēlāmur, ***we have our heads veiled.***

IX. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (**379**):

Septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, ***he reigned thirty-seven years.*** Quīnque mīlia passuum ambulāre, ***to walk five miles.***

X. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative (**380**):

I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, ***he is leading the legions to*** or ***toward the city.***

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, ***the messenger returns to Rome.***

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in Exclamations (**381**):

Heu mē miserum, ***ah me unhappy!***

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used (**384**)—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Tibī serviō, ***I am devoted to you.***

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbī dedit, ***he gave lands to the common people.***

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT or END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (**390**):

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, ***avarice is an evil to men.***

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relīquit, ***he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp.***

XIV. With adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (**391**):

Omnibus cārum est, ***it is dear to all.***

XV. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs (**392**):

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiō lēgibus, ***justice is obedience to laws.***

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter nātūrae vīvere, ***to live in accordance with nature.***

Genitive.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (**395**):

Catōnis ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

XVII. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (**399**):

Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise.*

XVIII. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive (**401**):

Omnia hostium erant, *all things belonged to the enemy.*

XIX. The Genitive is used (**406**)—

I. With **misereor** and **miserēscō**:

Miserēre labōrum, *pity the labors.*

II. With **recordor, meminī, reminīscor,** and **oblīvīscor**:

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past.*

III. With **rēfert** and **interest**:

Interest omnium, *it is the interest of all.*

XX. The Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing are used with a few transitive verbs (**409**):

I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing:*

Tē amīcitiae commonefacit, *he reminds you of friendship.*

II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting:*

Virōs sceleris arguis, *you accuse men of crime.*

III. With *miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet,* and *piget:*

Eōrum nōs miseret, *we pity them.*

Ablative Proper.

XXI. The Place from which is denoted by the Ablative (**412**):

I. Generally *with a preposition*—**ā, ab, dē,** or **ex**:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, *he sets out from the city.*

II. In Names of Towns *without a preposition:*

Platōnem Athēnīs arcessīvit, *he summoned Plato from Athens.*

XXII. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with* or *without a preposition* (413):

Caedem ā vōbīs dēpellō, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Hōc audīvī dē parente meō, *I heard this from my father.* Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *an art is praised because of its usefulness.*

XXIII. Comparatives without quam are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

Instrumental Ablative.

XXIV. The Ablative is used (419)—

I. To denote Accompaniment. It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vīvit cum Balbō, *he lives with Balbus.*

II. To denote Characteristic or Quality. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulēscēns, *a youth of the highest virtue.*

III. To denote Manner. It then takes the preposition **cum**, or is modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Cum virtūte vīxit, *he lived virtuously.*

XXV. Instrument and Means are denoted by the Ablative (420):

Cornibus taurī sē tūtantur, *bulls defend themselves with their horns.*

XXVI. The Ablative is used (421)—

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, and their compounds:

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use very many things.*

II. With Verbs and Adjectives of Plenty:

Vīlla abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, *the villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.*

III. With **dīgnus, indīgnus**, and **contentus**:

Dīgnī sunt amīcitiā, *they are worthy of friendship.*

XXVII. Price is generally denoted by the Ablative (422):

Vēndidit aurō patriam, *he sold his country for gold.*

XXVIII. The Measure of Difference is denoted by the Ablative (423):

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, *they make the month one day longer.*

XXIX. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application (424):

Nōmine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, *he was king in name, not in power.*

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

XXX. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted (425)—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative with the preposition* **in**:

Hannibal in Ĭtaliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.*

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*, if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative:*

Rōmae fuit, *he was at Rome.*

XXXI. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative (429):

Octōgēsimō annō est mortuus, *he died in his eightieth year.*

XXXII. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance (431):

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXIII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions (432):

Ad amīcum, *to a friend.* In Ĭtaliā, *in Italy.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

XXXIV. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *fortune is blind.*

XXXV. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, *an animal which has blood.*

XXXVI. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, *I have banished kings.*

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

XXXVII. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.*

MOODS AND TENSES IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

XXXVIII. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED (483):

Valeant cīvēs, *may the citizens be well.*

XXXIX. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE (485):

Hīc quaerat quispiam, ***here some one may inquire.***

XL. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES (487):

Jūstitiam cole, *practice justice.*

Moods and Tenses in Subordinate Clauses.

XLI. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical (491):

Ēnītitur ut vincat, ***he strives to conquer.***

XLII. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE (497)—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, etc.:

Missī sunt quī (= ***ut iī***) cōnsulerent Apollinem, ***they were sent to consult Apollo.***

II. With **ut**, **nē**, **quō**, **quōminus**:

Ēnītitur ut vincat, ***he strives that he may conquer.***

XLIII. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT (500)—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, **cūr**, etc.:

Nōn is sum quī (= ***ut ego***) hīs ūtar, ***I am not such a one as to use these things.***

II. With **ut**, **ut nōn**, **quīn**:

Ita vīxit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, ***he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.***

XLIV. Conditional sentences with **sī**, **nisi**, **nī**, **sīn**, take (507)—

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses ***to assume*** the supposed case:

Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit, ***if he breathes, he is alive.***

II. The PRESENT or PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case ***as possible:***

Diēs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, ***the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.***

III. The IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as ***contrary to fact:***

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scrīberem, sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, ***I should write to you more fully*** (with more words), ***if the case required words.***

XLV. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive (513)—

I. With **dum, modo, dummodo,** 'if only,' 'provided that'; **dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē,** 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains.*

II. With **āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tanquam, tanquam sī, velut, velut sī,** 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scrīpsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if* (i. e., as I should if) *you had written.*

XLVI. Concessive clauses take (515)—

I. Generally the INDICATIVE in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam:*

Quamquam intellegunt, *though they understand.*

II. The INDICATIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *etsī, etiamsī, tametsī,* or *sī,* like conditional clauses with *sī:*

Etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, *though I know no reason why I should rejoice.*

III. The SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, cum,* or the relative *quī:*

Licet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.*

XLVII. Causal clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō,** generally take (516)—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority:*

Quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.*

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully,* or *on another's authority:*

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumperet juventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because he corrupted the youth.*

XLVIII. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period (517):

Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.*

XLIX. In temporal clauses with *postquam, posteāquam, ubĭ, ut, simul atque,* etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used (518):

Postquam vīdit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw,* etc.

L. I. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec,* and *quoad,* in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the INDICATIVE (519):

Haec fēcī, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed.*

II. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec,* and *quoad,* in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Dēlīberā hōc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return.*

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Differant, dum dēfervēscat īra, *let them defer it till their anger cools.*

LI. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam* (520)—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and Pluperfect is put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.*

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Antequam dē rē pūblicā dīcam, *before I* (can) *speak of the republic.*

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put in the SUBJUNCTIVE:

Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city.*

LII. In temporal clauses with *cum* (521)—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the INDICATIVE:

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent, they approve.*

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, *he obeyed when it was necessary.*

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action:

Cum epistulam complicārem, *while I was folding the letter.*

LIII. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the INFINITIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE as follows (523):

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative:*

Dīcēbat animōs esse dīvīnōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine.*

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive:*

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibī vellet, cūr venīret, *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?*

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative,* as in rhetorical questions:

Docēbant rem esse testimōniō, etc.; quid esse levius, *they showed that the fact was a proof,* etc.; *what was more inconsiderate?*

III. When IMPERATIVE, they take the *Subjunctive:*

Scrībit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.*

LIV. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, on becoming INDIRECT, take the *Subjunctive* (**524**):

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

LV. The Subjunctive is used (**529**)—

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimī hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.*

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā careat suppliciō nōn carēre, *nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.*

INFINITIVE.

LVI. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning (**533**):

Haec vītāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things.*

LVII. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive (**534**):

Tē sapere docet, *he teaches you to be wise.*

LVIII. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject (**536**):

Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.*

SUPINE.

LIX. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (**546**):

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetītum, *deputies came to demand restitution.*

LX. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (**547**):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)?

ADVERBS.

LXI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (**551**):

Sapientēs fēlīciter vīvunt, *the wise live happily.*

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

559. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis, and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. Arrangement of Words.

General Rules.

560. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Animus aeger semper errat, *a diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiadēs Athēnās līberāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

561. Emphasis and Euphony affect the arrangement of words.

I. Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Silent lēgēs inter arma, *laws* ARE SILENT *in war.* Cic. *Numitōrī* Remus dēditur, *Remus is delivered* TO NUMITOR. Liv.

II. Any word, except the predicate, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbīs nōn satisfacit ipse *Dēmosthenēs*, *even* DEMOSTHENES *does not satisfy us.* Cic. Cōnsulātum petīvit *nūnquam*, *he* NEVER *sought the consulship.* Cic.

III. Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its Genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by Separation:

Objurgātiōnēs nōnnūnquam incidunt *necessāriae*, *sometimes necessary* REPROOFS *occur.* Cic. Jūstitiae fungātur officiīs, *let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

Note.—A word may be made emphatic by being placed between the parts of a compound tense:

Māgna adhibita cūra est, *great care has been taken.* Cic.

562. Chiasmus.[1]—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

---

[1] So called from the Greek letter X.

Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet, *the imperishable soul moves the perishable body*. Cic.

563. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad senem senex dē senectūte scrīpsī, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age*. Cic. Inter sē aliīs aliī prōsunt, *they benefit each other*. Cic.

564. A word which has a COMMON RELATION to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed—

I. Generally before or after both:

Pācis et artēs et glōria, *both the arts and the glory of peace*. Liv. Bellī pācisque artēs, *the arts of war and of peace*. Liv.

NOTE.—A Genitive or an adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter:

Haec percūnctātiō āc dēnūntiātiō bellī, *this inquiry and this declaration of war*. Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction:

Honōris certāmen et glōriae, *a struggle for honor and glory*. Cic. Agrī omnēs et maria, *all lands and seas*. Cic.

Special Rules.

565. The MODIFIERS OF A NOUN generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns:

Populus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, *the Roman people decreed*. Cic. Hērodotus, pater historiae, *Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. Liber dē officiīs, *the book on duties*. Cic.

1. Modifiers, when *emphatic*, are placed before their nouns:

Tuscus ager Rōmānō adjacet, *the* TUSCAN *territory borders on the Roman*. Liv.

2. When a noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, the usual order is, *Adjective—Genitive—noun:*

Māgna cīvium pēnūria, *a great scarcity of citizens*. Cic.

3. An adjective is often separated from its noun by a monosyllabic preposition:

Māgnō cum perīculō esse, *to be attended with great peril*. Cic.

4. In the poets an adjective is often separated from its noun by the modifier of another noun:

Īnspērāta tuae veniet plūma superbiae, *the unexpected down shall come upon your pride*. Hor.

566. The MODIFIERS OF AN ADJECTIVE generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it:

Facile dōctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Omnī aetātī commūnis, *common to every age*. Cic. Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise*. Cic.

567. The MODIFIERS OF A VERB generally precede it:

Glōria virtūtem sequitur, *glory follows virtue.* Cic. Mundus deō pāret, *the world is subject to God.* Cic. Vehementer dixit, *he spoke vehemently.* Cic.

1. When the verb is placed at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow; see the first example under **561**, I.

2. An *emphatic* modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (**561**):

Facillimē cōgnōscuntur adulēscentēs, *most easily are the young men recognized.* Cic.

3. Of *two* or *more modifiers* belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Mors propter brevitātem vītae nūnquam longē abest, *death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

568. The Modifiers of an Adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valdē vehementer dixit, *he spoke very vehemently.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae vīvit, *he lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

569. Special Words.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus—

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custōs hūjus urbis, *the guardian of this city.* Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (**450**, 4) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic.

2. Pronouns are often brought together, especially *quisque* with *suus* or *sui:*

Jūstitia suum cuique tribuit, *justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic. Quī sēsē student praestāre, etc., *who are eager to excel*, etc. Sall.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tenus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam profūgit, *he fled into Asia.* Cic. Collō tenus, *up to the neck.* Ov.

1. The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Rēs quā dē agitur, *the subject of which we are treating.* Cic. Ĭtaliam contrā, *over against Italy.* Verg. Corpus in Aeacidae, *into the body of Aeacides.* Verg.

2. For *cum* appended to an Ablative, see **184**, 6; **187**, 2.

3. Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Accusative of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *ōrō* is omitted:

Post Alexandrī māgnī mortem, *after the death of Alexander the Great.* Cic. Ad bene vīvendum, *for living well.* Cic. Per ego hās lacrimās tē ōrō, *I implore you by these tears.* Verg. Per ego vōs deōs (= per deōs ego vōs ōrō), *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *vērō*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Sī peccāvī, īgnōsce, *if I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Iī quī superiōrēs sunt, *those who are superior.* Cic. Ipse *autem* omnia vidēbat, *but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. A conjunction may follow a relative or an emphatic word, and a relative may follow an emphatic word:

Id ut audīvit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Trōjae quī prīmus ab ōrīs vēnit, *who came first from the shores of Troy.* Verg.

Note.—Certain conjunctions, as *et*, *nec*, *sed*, and even *aut* and *vel*, are more frequently removed from the beginning of the clause in poetry than in prose:

Compressus et omnis impetus, *and all violence was checked.* Verg.

2. *Nē—quidem* takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Nē in oppidīs quidem, *not even in the towns.* Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows *pronouns*, *superlatives*, and *ordinals:*

Ex mē quidem nihil audiet, *from me indeed he will hear nothing.* Cic.

4. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word; but if that word is a preposition, they are often appended to the next word:

In forōque, *and in the forum.* Cic. Inter nōsque, *and among us.* Cic.

IV. *Nōn*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word; but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it sometimes stands at the beginning of the clause, and sometimes before the finite verb or before the auxiliary of a compound tense:

Hāc vīllā carēre nōn possunt, *they are not able to do without this villa.* Cic. Nōn fuit Jūppiter metuendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic. Fās nōn putant, *they do not think it right.* Cic. Pecūnia solūta nōn est, *the money has not been paid.* Cic.

1. In general, in negative clauses the negative word, whether particle, verb, or noun, is made prominent:

Negat quemquam pŏsse, *he denies that any one is able.* Cic. Nihil est melius, *nothing is better.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *ăiō*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dīcam, *nothing which I shall state, said Brutus.* Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laelī, *proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

II. Arrangement of Clauses.

570. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (554) follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur, *the sun hastens to its setting, and the mountains are shaded.* Verg. Gȳgēs ā nūllō vidēbātur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

571. A clause used as the Subject of a complex sentence (348) generally stands at the *beginning* of the sentence, and a clause used as the Predicate at the *end:*

Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Exitus fuit ōrātiōnis, sibī nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse, *the close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence; see **560**.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as upon the arrangement of words; see **561**.

572. Clauses used as the Subordinate Elements of complex sentences admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostēs, ubī prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspēxērunt, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt, *the enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout.* Caes. Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbātur, vīcit, *the opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

Note.—This arrangement is generally used when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—quī*, *tālis—quālis*, *tantus—quantus*, *tum—cum*, *ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *quī*, *quālis*, *quantus*, *cum*, *ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Ēnītitur ut vincat, *he strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

Note.—This arrangement is generally used when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence, or explanatory of the principal clause. Hence, clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples.

573. Latin Periods.—A complex sentence in which two or more subordinate clauses are inserted within the principal clause is called a Period in the strict sense of the term.

Note 1.—The examples given under 572, I., are short and simple examples of *Latin Periods.*

Note 2.—Many Latin periods consist of several carefully constructed clauses so united as to form one complete harmonious whole. For examples, see Cicero's Third Oration against Catiline, XII., 'Sed quoniam . . . prōvidēre'; also Livy, I., 6, 'Numitor, inter prīmum . . . ostendit.'

Note 3.—In a freer sense the term *Period* is sometimes applied to all complex sentences which end with principal clauses. In this sense the examples given under 572, II., are *Periods.* Many carefully elaborated Latin sentences are constructed in this way; see Cicero's Oration for the Poet Archias, I., 'Quod sī haec . . . dēbēmus'; also the First Oration against Catiline, XIII., 'Ut saepe hominēs . . . ingravescet.'

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

574. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

575. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity.[1] Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.[2]

I. General Rules of Quantity.

576. A syllable is Long in Quantity—

I. If it contains a Diphthong, or is the result of Contraction:

haec, foedus, aura; cōgō (*for* coigō), occīdō (*for* occaedō), nīl (*for* nihil).

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praeacūtus*.

II. If its vowel is followed by J, X, or Z, or any Two Consonants except a mute and a liquid:[3]

mājor, dux, servus, sunt, regunt, rēgnum, agmen.

1. But one or both of the consonants must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ab*[4] *sēde*, *per*[4] *saxa*.

Note 1.—*H* has no tendency in combination with any consonant to lengthen a preceding syllable. Hence in such words as *Achaeus*, *Athēnae*, the first syllable is short.

Note 2.—In the early poets a short final syllable ending in *s* remained short before a word beginning with a consonant; sometimes also short final syllables ending in other consonants: *imāginis formam*, *enim vērō*, *erat dictō*.[5]

---

[1] In many cases the quantity of syllables may be best learned from the Dictionary, but in others the student may be greatly aided by certain general statements or rules.

[2] That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

[3] Here the syllable is *long by nature* if the vowel is long, but *long only by position* if the vowel is short. For the quantity of vowels before two consonants or a double consonant, see **651**.

[4] Here *ab* becomes long before *s* in *sēde*, and *per* before *s* in *saxa*.

[5] Here the syllables *is*, *im*, and *at* remain short.

Note 3.—In the early poets many syllables long by position in the Augustan poets are sometimes short, as the first syllable of *ecce*, *ergō*, *ille*, *inter*, *omnis*, *unde*, *uxor*.

Note 4.—A final syllable ending in a vowel is occasionally, though rarely, lengthened by consonants at the beginning of the following word.

Note 5.—In Greek words a syllable with a vowel before a mute and a nasal is sometimes short: *cycnus*, *Tecmessa*.

2. In the compounds of *jugum*, the syllable before *j* is short: *bijugus*.

577. A syllable is Short in Quantity if its vowel is followed in the same word by another Vowel, by a Diphthong, or by the aspirate H:

diēs, doceō, viae, nihil.

I. The following vowels, with the syllables which contain them, are long by Exception:

1. **A**—(1) in the Genitive ending *āī* of Dec. I.: *aulāī*; (2) in proper names in *āius*: *Gāius* (Gājus); (3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *āiō*.

2. **E**—(1) in the ending *ēī* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *diēī*; and sometimes when preceded by a consonant: *fidēī*, *rēī*; often in the Dative Singular of the pronoun *is*: *ēī*; (2) in proper names in *ēius*: *Pompēius*; (3) in *ēheu*, and in *Rhēa*.[1]

3. **I**—(1) in the verb *fīō*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam*, *fīēbam*, but *fierī*;[2] (2) in *dīus*, *a*, *um* (for *dīvus*, *a*, *um*); (3) generally in the Genitive ending *īus*: *alīus*, *illīus*; (4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**—sometimes in *ōhē*.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āēr*, *Aenēās*, *Brīsēis*, *Menelāus*, *Trōes*.

Note.—This often occurs in proper names in *ēa*, *īa*, *ēus*, *īus*, *āōn*, *īōn*, *āis*, *ōis*, *ōius*: *Mēdēa*, *Alexandrīa*, *Pēnēus*, *Dārīus*, *Orīōn*.

578. A syllable is Common in Quantity if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute and a liquid:

ager, agrī; pater, patris; duplex, triplex.

Note 1.—A syllable ending in a mute in the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part is long: *ab-rumpō*, *ob-rogō*.

Note 2.—In Plautus and Terence a syllable with a short vowel before a mute and a liquid is short.

II. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

579. Monosyllables are long:

ā, dā, tē, sē, dē, sī, quī, dō, prō, tū, dōs, pēs, sīs, bōs, sūs, pār, sōl.

---

[1] The name of the daughter of Numitor, and of a priestess in Vergil. In *Rhĕā*, another name for *Cybelē*, the *e* is short.

[2] Sometimes *fĭerī* in Plautus and Terence.

I. The following are short by Exception:

1. Enclitics: ***que, ve, ne, ce, te, pse, pte.***

2. Monosyllables in b, d, l, m, t: ***ab, ad, fel, sum, et;*** **except** ***săl, sŏl.***

3. ***An, bis, cis, cor, es, fac, fer, in, is, nec, os*** **(ossis),** ***per, ter, qua*** **(indefinite),** ***quis, vir, vas*** **(vadis), and sometimes** ***hĭc*** **and** ***hŏc*** **in the Nominative and Accusative.**

580. In words of more than one syllable—

I. The final vowels **i, o,** and **u** are long; **a, e,** and **y,** short:[1]

marī, audī, servō, omnīnō, frūctū, cornū; via, maria, mare, misy.

II. Final syllables in **c** are long; in **d, l, m, n, r, t,** short:

ālēc, illūc; illud, cōnsul, amem, carmen, amor, caput.

Note 1.—*Dōnec* and *liēn* are exceptions.

Note 2.—Final syllables in *n* and *r* are long in many Greek words which end long in the original: as *Tītān, Anchīsēn, Hymēn, Delphīn, āēr, aethēr, crātēr.*

III. The final syllables **as, es,** and **os** are long; **is, us, ys,** short:

amās, mēnsās, monēs, nūbēs, servōs; avis, urbis, bonus, chlamys.

Note 1.—The learner will remember that short final syllables like *is, us,* etc., may be lengthened by being placed before a word beginning with a consonant; see 576, II.

Note 2.—Plautus retains the original quantity of many final syllables usually short in the Augustan age. Thus the endings *ā, ē, āl, ār, ōr, īs, ūs, āt, ēt, īt,* often stand in place of the later endings *a, e, al, ar, or, is, us, at, et, it* (21). Some of these early forms are retained by Terence, and some of them occasionally occur in the Augustan poets.

Note 3.—Plautus and Terence, in consequence of the colloquial character of comedy, often shorten *unaccented final* syllables after an accented short syllable: *ama, abi, dedi, domi, domo, viro, pedes.*

Note 4.—In Plautus and Terence the doubling of a letter does not usually affect the quantity of the syllable: *ll* in *ille, mm* in *immō, pp* in *opportūnē.*

581. Numerous exceptions to the general rule for the quantity of final syllables occur even in classical Latin:

I. **I** *final*, usually LONG, is sometimes SHORT or COMMON—

1. SHORT in *nisi, quasi, cui* (when a dissyllable), and in the Greek ending *si* of the Dative and Ablative Plural.

2. COMMON in *mihī̆, tibī̆, sibī̆, ibī̆, ubī̆,* and in the Dative and Vocative Singular of some Greek words.

II. **O** *final*, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In *duo, ego, octo, eho,* in the adverbs *cito, īlico, modo,* and its compounds, *dummodo, quōmodo,* etc., in *cedo,* and in the old form *endo.*

---

[1] *U* is short in *indu* and *nĕnu*. Contracted syllables are long, according to 576, I.

2. Sometimes (1) in nouns of Dec. III. and (2) in verbs, though very rarely in the best poets.

III. **A** *final*, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In the Ablative: *mēnsā*, *bonā*, *illā*.
2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in **ās**: *Aenēā*, *Pallā*.[1]
3. In Verbs and Particles: *amā*, *cūrā*; *circā*, *juxtā*, *anteā*, *frustrā*. Except *ita*, *quia*, *ēja*, *hēja*, and *puta* used adverbially.

IV. **E** *final*, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In Dec. I. and V.,[2] and in Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *epitomē*; *rē*, *diē*; *tempē*, *melē*.
2. Generally in the Dative ending *ĕ* of Dec. III.: *aerē* = *aerī*.
3. In the Singular Imperative Active of Conj. II.: *monē*, *docē*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cavĕ*, *vidĕ*, etc.[3]
4. In *ferē*, *fermē*, *ōhē*, and in adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *dōctē*, *rēctē*. Except *bene*, *male*, *īnferne*, *interne*, *superne*.

V. **As** *final*, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In *anas* and in a few Greek nouns in **as**: *Arcas*, *lampas*.
2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcadas*, *hērōas*.

VI. **Es** *final*, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III. with short increment (582) in the Genitive: *mīles* (itis), *obses* (idis), *interpres* (etis). Except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and compounds of *pēs*, as *bipēs*, *tripēs*, etc.
2. In *penes* and the compounds of *es*, as *ades*, *potes*.
3. In Greek words—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Genitive: *Arcades*, *Trōades*; (2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippomenes*; (3) in a few Vocatives Singular: *Dēmosthenes*.

VII. **Os** *final*, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In *compos*, *impos*, *exos*.
2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Dēlos*, *melos*.

VIII. **Is** *final*, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In plural cases: *mēnsīs*, *servīs*, *vōbīs*. Hence *forīs*, *grātīs*, *ingrātīs*.
2. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Genitive: *Quirīs* (ītis), *Salamīs* (īnis).
3. In the Singular Present Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs*.

NOTE.—*Māvīs*, *quīvīs*, *utervīs*, follow the quantity of *vīs*.

4. In the Singular Present Subj. Act.: *possīs*, *velīs*, *nōlīs*, *mālīs*.

---

[1] Sometimes in the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *ēs*.

[2] Hence, in the compounds, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *postrīdiē*, *quārē*.

[3] In the comic poets many dissyllabic Imperatives with a short penult shorten the ultimate: as *habe*, *jube*, *mane*, *move*, *tace*, *tene*, etc.

5. Sometimes in the Singular of the Future Perfect and of the Perfect Subjunctive: *amāverīs*, *docuerīs*.

IX. **Us** *final*, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Genitive: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

NOTE.—But *palus* (u short) occurs in Horace, Ars Poëtica, 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Genitive Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural: *frūctūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs*, *Sapphūs*, *tripūs*.

NOTE.—But we have *Oedipus* and *pŏlypus*.

III. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

582. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the Nominative Singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermō*, *sermōnis*, *sermōnibus*.[1]

583. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the Present Indicative Active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *amās*, *amātis*, *amābātis*.[2]

584. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult; if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second*, *third*, and *fourth* increments.[3]

Increments of Declension.

585. In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e**, **i**, **u**, and **y**, short:[4]

aetās, aetātis, aetātibus; sermō, sermōnis; puer, puerī, puerōrum; fulgur, fulguris; chlamys, chlamydis; bonus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; miser, miserī; supplex, supplicis; satur, saturī.

I. **A**, usually LONG in the increments of declension, is SHORT in the first increment—[5]

---

[1] *Sermōnis*, having one syllable more than *sermō*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

[2] *Amātis* has one increment, *amābātis* two.

[3] In $\textit{ser-}\overset{1}{\textit{mōn}}\textit{-}\overset{2}{\textit{i}}\textit{-bus}$, the first increment is *mōn*, the second *i*; and in $\textit{mon-}\overset{1}{\textit{u}}\textit{-}\overset{2}{\textit{e}}\textit{-}\overset{3}{\textit{rā}}\textit{-mus}$, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *rā*.

[4] *Y* occurs only in Greek words, and is long in the increments of nouns in *yn* and of a few others.

[5] Observe that the exceptions belong to the first increment.

1. Of masculines in *al* and *ar: Hannĭbal, Hannibalis; Caesar, Caesaris.*

2. Of nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant: *daps, dapis; Arabs, Arabis; hiems, hiemis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in *a* and *as: poēma, poēmatis; Pallas, Palladis.*

4. Of (1) *baccar, hēpar, jubar, lār, nectar, pār,* and its compounds; (2) *anas, mās, vas* (vadis); (3) *sāl, fax,* and a few rare Greek words in *ax.*

II. **O**, usually LONG in the increments of declension, is SHORT in the first increment—[1]

1. Of Neuters in Declension III.: *aequor, aequoris; tempus, temporis.* Except *ōs* (ōris), *ador* (adŏris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in *s* preceded by a consonant: *inops, inopis.* Except *Cyclōps* and *hydrōps.*

3. Of *arbor, bōs, lepus; compos, impos, memor, immemor; Allobrox, Cappadox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Macedŏ, Macedonis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns—(1) those in *ŏr: rhētŏr, Hectŏr;* (2) many in *ŏ* and *ōn* increasing short in Greek: *aēdōn, aēdonis;* (3) in Greek compounds in *pūs* or *pus: tripūs* (odis), *Oedipus.*

III. **E**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of Declension V.: *diēī, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.* But in the Genitive and Dative Singular sometimes short after a consonant: *fidĕī, spĕī.*

2. Of nouns in *ēn*, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.* So *Aniŏ, Aniēnis.*

3. Of *Celtiber, Iber, vēr, hērēs, locuplēs, mercēs, quiēs, inquiēs, requiēs, plēbs, lēx, rēx, ālēc, ālēx, vervēx.*

4. Of a few Greek words in *ēs* and *ēr: lebēs, lebētis; crātēr, crātēris.* Except *āēr* and *aethēr.*

IV. **I**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of most words in *īx: rādīx, rādīcis; fēlīx, fēlīcis.*[2]

2. Of *dīs, glīs, līs, vīs, Quirīs, Samnīs.*

3. Of *delphīn,* and a few rare Greek words.

NOTE.—For quantity of *ĭ* in the ending *ĭus,* see 577, 3.

V. **U**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of nouns in *ūs* with the Genitive in *ūris, ūtis, ūdis: jūs, jūris; salūs, salūtis; palūs, palūdis.*[3]

2. Of *fūr, frūx, lūx, plūs, Pollūx.*

---

[1] See p. 342, foot-note 5.

[2] But short in *appendix, calix, Cilix, filix, fornix, nix, pix, salix, strix,* and a few others, chiefly proper names.

[3] But short in *intercus, Ligus, pecus.*

Increments of Conjugation.

586. In the Increments of Conjugation (583), **a**, **e**, and **o** are long; **i** and **u** short:

amāmus, amēmus, amātōte; regimus, sumus.

NOTE 1.—In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *ferō*, *volō*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris*, *volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *ferēbam* and *volēbam*, the increments are *rē* and *lē*.

NOTE 2.—In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (255, I.), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dedimus* has but one increment, *di*.

I. **A**, usually LONG in the increments of conjugation, is SHORT in the first increment of *dō: dare*, *dabam*, *circumdabam*.

II. **E**, usually LONG in the increments of conjugation, is SHORT before *r*—

1. In the tenses in *ram*, *rim*, *rō: amāveram*, *amāverim*, *amāverō; rēxerat*, *rēxerit*.

2. In the first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conjugation III.: *regere*, *regeris*, *regerem*, *regerer*.

3. In the Future ending *beris*, *bere: amāberis* or *-ere*, *monēberis*.

4. Rarely in the Perfect ending *erunt: steterunt* for *stetērunt;* see **236**, note; also *Systole*, **608**, VI.

III. **I**, usually SHORT in the increments of conjugation, is LONG, except before a vowel—

1. In the first increment of Conjugation IV., except *imus* of the Perfect: *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītum; sentīre*, *sentīmus; sēnsimus* (Perfect).

2. In Conjugation III., in the first increment of Perfects and Supines in *īvī* and *ītum* (278), and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of the Perfect: *trīvimus*): *cupīvī*, *cupīverat*, *cupītus; petīvī*, *petītus; capessīvī*, *capessītūrus*. *Gāvīsus* from *gaudeō* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *īmus* and *ītis* of the Present Subjunctive: *sīmus*, *sītis; velīmus*, *velītis* (**240**, 3).

4. In *nōlīte*, *nōlītō*, *nōlītōte*, and in the different persons of *ībam*, *ībō*, from *eō* (**295**).

5. Sometimes in the endings *rīmus* and *rītis* of the Future Perfect and Perfect Subjunctive: *amāverīmus*, *amāverītis*.

IV. **U**, usually SHORT in the increments of conjugation, is LONG in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *volūtum*, *volūtūrus*, *amātūrus*.

IV. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

587. The most important derivative endings may be classified according to quantity as follows:

I. Derivative endings with a LONG PENULT:

1. **ābrum, ācrum, ātrum:**

flābrum, simulācrum, arātrum.

2. **ēdŏ, īdŏ, ūdŏ; āgŏ, īgŏ, ūgŏ:**
dulcēdŏ, cupīdŏ, sōlitūdŏ; vorāgŏ, orīgŏ, aerūgŏ.

3. **āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, īnē, ōnē**—*in patronymics:*[1]
Ptolemāis, Chrȳsēis, Mīnōis, Īcariōtis, Nērīnē, Acrisiōnē.

4. **ēla, īle; ālis, ēlis, ūlis:**
querēla, ovīle; mortālis, fidēlis, curūlis.

5. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus; āna, ēna, ōna, ūna:**
urbānus, egēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus; membrāna, habēna, annōna, lacūna.

6. **āris, ārus; ōrus, ōsus; āvus, īvus:**
salūtāris, avārus; canōrus, animōsus; octāvus, aestīvus.

7. **ātus, ētus, ītus, ōtus, ūtus; ātim, ītim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:**[2]
ālātus, facētus, turrītus, aegrōtus, cornūtus; singulātim, virītim, tribūtim; quercētum, monēta.

8. **ēnī, īnī, ōnī**—*in distributives:*
septēnī, quīnī, octōnī.

II. Derivative endings with a SHORT PENULT—

1. **adēs, iadēs, idēs**—*in patronymics:*[3]
Aenēadēs, Lāertiadēs, Tantalidēs.

2. **iacus, icus, idus:**[4]
Corinthiacus, modicus, cupidus.

3. **olus, ola, olum; ulus, ula, ulum; culus, cula, culum**—*in diminutives:*
fīliolus, fīliola, atriolum; hortulus, virgula, oppidulum; flōsculus, particula, mūnusculum.

4. **etās, itās**—*in nouns;* **iter, itus**—*in adverbs:*
pietās, vēritās; fortiter, dīvīnitus.

5. **ātilis, ilis, bilis**—*in verbals;* **inus**—*in adjectives denoting material* or *time:*[5]
versātilis, docilis, amābilis; adamantinus, cedrinus, crāstinus, diūtinus.

NOTE 1.—**Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *cīvīlis, hostīlis, puerīlis, virīlis.*

NOTE 2.—**Inus** denoting *characteristic* (330) usually has the penult long: *canīnus, equīnus, marīnus.*

---

[1] Except *Danais, Phŏcais, Thēbais, Nērĕis.*

[2] Except (1) *anhēlitus, fortuĭtus, grātuītus, hālitus, hospitus, spīritus;* (2) *adfatim, statim,* and adverbs in *itus,* as *dīvīnitus;* and (3) participles provided for by **586.**

[3] Except (1) those in *īdēs* from nouns in *eus* and *ĕs:* as, *Pēlīdēs* (Pēleus), *Neoclīdēs* (Neoclēs); and (2) *Amphiarāīdēs, Amȳclīdēs, Bēlīdēs, Corōnīdēs, Lycūrgīdēs.*

[4] Except *amīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pudīcus.*

[5] Except *mātūtīnus, repentīnus, vespertīnus.*

III. Derivative endings with a LONG ANTEPENULT:

1. **āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius**:
rosāceus, pannūceus, subitāneus, cibārius, columbārium, cēnsōrius.

2. **ābundus, ācundus; ābilis, ātilis, āticus**:
mīrābundus, īrācundus; amābilis, versātilis, aquāticus.

3. **āgintā, īgintī, ēsimus**—*in numerals:*
nōnāgintā, vīgintī, centēsimus.

4. **imōnia, imōnium; tōrius, sōrius; tōria, tōrium**:
querimōnia, alimōnium; amātōrius, cēnsōrius; victōria, audītōrium.

IV. Derivative endings with a SHORT ANTEPENULT:

1. **ibilis, itūdō, olentus, ulentus**:
crēdibilis, sōlitūdō, vīnolentus, opulentus.

2. **uriō**—*in desideratives:*
ēsuriō, ēmpturiō, parturiō.

V. QUANTITY OF STEM-SYLLABLES.

588. All simple verbs in *iō* of the Third Conjugation (217) have the stem-syllable[1] short:

capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō.

589. Most verbs which form the Perfect in *uī* have the stem-syllable short:

domō, secō, habeō, moneō, alō, colō.

NOTE.—*Pōnō, dēbeō, flōreō, pāreō*, and several inceptive verbs, are exceptions.

590. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

juvō, jūvī, jūtum; foveō, fōvī, fōtum.

1. Eight Perfects and ten Supines have the first syllable short:

bibī, dedī, fidī, liquī,[2] *scidī, stetī, stitī, tulī; citum, datum, itum, litum, quitum, ratum, rutum, satum, situm, statum.*[2]

591. Trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects have the first two syllables short:

cadō, cecidī; canō, cecinī; discō, didicī.

NOTE 1.—*Caedō* has *cecīdī* in distinction from *cecidī* from *cadō*.

NOTE 2.—The second syllable may be made long by position: *cucurrī, momordī*.

592. In general, inflected forms retain the quantity of stem-syllables unchanged:[3]

---

[1] That is, the syllable preceding the characteristic.

[2] *Liquī* from *liqueō; linquō* has *līquī*. *Statum* from *sistō; stō* has *stātum*.

[3] But see *Dissyllabic Perfects* and *Supines*, 590.

avis, avem; nūbēs, nūbium; levis, levior, levissimus; moneō, monēbam, monuī.

Note 1.—Position may, however, affect the quantity: *ager*, *agrī; possum*, *potuī; solvō*, *solūtum; volvō*, *volūtum.*[1]

Note 2.—*Gignō* gives *genuī*, *genitum*, and *pōnō*, *posuī*, *positum*.

593. Derivatives generally retain the quantity of the stem-syllables of their primitives:

bonus, bonitās; timeō, timor; animus, animōsus; cīvis, cīvicus; cūra, cūrō.

1. Words formed from the same root sometimes show a variation in the quantity of stem-syllables:

dicō,	dīcō,	personō,	persōna,
dux, ducis,	dūcō,	regō,	rēx, rēgis, rēgula,
fidēs,	fīdō,	secus,	sēcius,
homō̆,	hūmānus,	sedeō,	sēdēs, sēdulus,
lateō,	lāterna,	serō,	sēmen,
legō,	lēx, lēgis,	sopor,	sōpiō,
macer,	mācerō,	suspicor,	suspīciō̆,
moveō,	mōbilis,	tegō,	tēgula,
nota,	nōtum,	vadum,	vādō,
odium,	ōdī,	vocō,	vōx, vōcis.

Note 1.—This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction, as *movibilis*, *moibilis*, *mōbilis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography, as the verbs *legis*, *legēs*, *regis*, *regēs*, *sedēs*, from the nouns *lēgis*, *lēgēs*, *rēgis*, *rēgēs*, *sēdēs*, or the verbs *dūcis*, *dūcēs*, *fīdēs*, from the nouns *ducis*, *ducēs*, *fidēs*.

Note 2.—A few derivatives shorten the long vowel of the primitive: *ācer*, *acerbus; lūceō*, *lucerna; mōlēs*, *molestus*.

594. Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

ante-ferō, dē-ferō, dē-dūcō, in-aequālis, prō-dūcō.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

dē-ligō (*legō*), oc-cidō (*cadō*), oc-cīdō (*caedō*).

2. The Inseparable Prepositions *dī*, *sē*, and *vē* are long, *re* short; *ne* sometimes long and sometimes short:

dīdūcō, sēdūcō, vēcors, redūcō; nēdum, nefās:

Note 1.—*Di* is short in *dirimō* and *disertus*.

Note 2.—*Nē* is long in *nēdum*, *nēmō̆*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquīquam*, *nēquitia*, and *nēve*. In other words it is short.

Note 3.—*Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rē̆ligiō̆*, *rē̆liquiae*, *rē̆perit*, *rē̆pulit*, *rē̆tulit*, etc.

3. In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus—

Jūrō gives *-jerō; nōtus*, *-nitus; nūbō*, *-nuba:* dē-jerō, cōg-nitus, prō-nuba.

4. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praeacūtus*, *praeūstus*.

5. *Prō* is short in the following words:

---

[1] Here the first syllable is short in *ager*, but common in *agrī* (**578**); long in *possum*, *solvō*, *volvō* (**576**, II.), but short in *potuī*, *solūtum*, and *volūtum*.

procella, *procul*, *profānus*, *profārī*, *profectō*, *profestus*, *proficīscor*, *profiteor*, *profugiō*, *profugus*, *profundus*, *pronepōs*, *proneptis*, *protervus*, and in most Greek words, as *prophēta;* generally also in *prŏfundō*, *prŏpāgō*, *prŏpāgŏ*, *prŏpīnō*, rarely in *prŏcūrō*, *prŏpellō*.

6. At the end of a verbal stem compounded with *faciō* or *fīō*, *e* is generally short:

calefaciō, calefīō, lābefaciō, patefaciō.

7. *I* is usually long in the first part of the compounds of *diēs:*

merīdiēs, prīdiē, postrīdiē, cotīdiē, trīduum.

8. *O* is long in *contrō-*, *intrō-*, *retrō-*, and *quandō-* in composition:

contrōversia, *intrōdūcō*, *retrōvertō*, *quandōque;* but *quandŏquidem*.

9. The quantity of the final *i* in *ibĭ*, *ubĭ*, and *utĭ* is often changed in composition:

ibīdem, *ibīque;* *ubīque*, *ubĭnam*, *ubĭvīs*, *ubĭcunque*, *nēcubi*, *sīcubi;* *utĭnam*, *utīque*, *sīcutī*.

10. *Hodiē*, *quasi*, *quoque*, and *siquidem* have the first syllable short.

595. The Quantity of Stem-Syllables in cases not provided for by any rules now given will be best learned from the Dictionary. By far the larger number of such syllables will be found to be short. For convenience of reference, a list of the most important primitives with long stem-syllables is added:[1]

ācer
adūlor
āēr
āla
ālea
altāre
amārus
ancīle
anhēlus
antīquus
āra
ārea
āreō
āter
avēna
bīlis
brūma
būbŏ
cacūmen
cālīgŏ
camīnus
cānus
cāper
carīna
cārus
cēdō (ere)
cēlō
cēra
cicāda
cīvis
clāmō
clārus
clāvus
clēmēns
clīvus
cōdex
cōmis
cōmō
cōnor
cōnus
cōpia
cōram
corōna
crātēr
crātēs
crēber
crēdō
crīnis
crūdus
cūra
cūria
dēbeō
dēleō
dīcō (ere)
dīrus
dīves
dīvus
dōnec
dōnum
dūcō
dūdum
dūrus
extrēmus
fāgus
fāma
fānum
fārī
fēcundus
fēlīx
fēmina
fētus
fīdō
fīgō
fīlius
fīlum
fīnis
flāvus
flūmen
fortūna
frētus
fūmus
fūnis
fūnus
fūror (ārī)
glēba
glōria
grāmen
grātus
hāmus
hērēs
hērōs
hōra
īcō
imāgŏ
inānis
īra
jānua
jūcundus
jūrō
lābor (ī)
lāmentum
lāna
lātus (a, um)
lēgō (āre)
lēnis
lētum
līber (era, erum)
lībō
līlium
līmen
līmes
līnum
līveō
lōrum
lūdō
lūgeō
lūmen
lūna
mālō
māne
mānēs
mānō
māter
mātūrus
mēta
mētior
mīles
mīror
mītis
mōlēs

---

[1] Including a few derivatives and compounds.

mūgeō
mūniō
mūnus
mūrus
mūsa
mūtō
mūtus
nāris
nāvis
nīdus
nītor (1)
nōdus
nōnus
nūbēs
nūbō
nūdus
nūtō
ōlim
ōmen
opācus
opīmus
ōra
ōrō
ōtium
pāgus
pālor
pānis
pāreō
penātēs
perītus
pīlum
pīnus
plānus
plēnus
plūma
poēta
pōmum
pōne
pōnō
pōtō
prātum
prāvus
prīmus
prīvus
prōmō
prōra
pūber
pūniō
pūrus
quālis
rādīx
rādō
rāmus
rārus
rēmus
rīdeō
rīpa
rītus
rīvus
rōbur
rōdō
rūga
rūmor
rūpēs
sānus
scālae
scrībō
scūtum
sēdēs
sēdō
serēnus
sērus
sīdō
sincērus
sōlor
sōlus
sōpiō
spīca
spīna
spīrō
spūma
squāleō
stīpō
strāgēs
strēnuus
strīdeō
sūdō
tābēs
tālis
tēlum
tēmō
tībia
tōtus
trūdō
ūber
ūdus
ūmeō
ūnus
ūrō
ūtor
ūva
ūvidus
vādō
vānus
vātēs
vēlōx
vēlum
vēna
venēnum
vēnor
vērus
vīlis
vīnum
vīvō

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT.

596. Latin Versification is based upon QUANTITY. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.[1]

1. In quantity or time the unit of measure is the short syllable, indicated either by a curve ◡ or by an eighth note in music, ♪. A long syllable

---

[1] Modern versification is based upon ACCENT. An English verse is a regular combination of *accented* and *unaccented* syllables, but a Latin verse is a similar combination of *long* and *short* syllables. The rhythmic accent or ictus (599) in Latin depends entirely upon quantity. Compare the following lines:

Tell′ me | not′, in | mourn′-ful | num′-bers,
Life′ is | but′ an | emp′-ty | dream′.

Trū′-di- | tur′ di- | ēs′ di- | ē′.
At′ fi- | dēs′ et | in′-ge- | nī′.

Observe that in the English lines the accent or ictus falls upon the same syllables as in prose, while in the Latin it falls uniformly upon long syllables. On *Latin Versification*, see Ramsay's 'Latin Prosody'; Schmidt's 'Rhythmik und Metrik,' translated by Professor White; Christ's 'Metrik.'

has in general twice the value of a short syllable,[1] and is indicated either by the sign –, or by a quarter note in music, ♩. This unit of measure is also called a *time* or *mora*.

NOTE 1.—A long syllable is sometimes prolonged so as to have the value (1) of three short syllables, indicated by the sign ⌞–, or ♩. ; or (2) of four short syllables, indicated by ⌴, or 𝅗𝅥.

NOTE 2.—A long syllable is sometimes shortened so as to have the value of a short syllable, indicated by the sign >, or ♪. A syllable thus used is said to have *irrational* time.

597. The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are—

I. FEET OF FOUR TIMES OR FOUR MORAE.

Dactyl,	*one long and two short,*	– ⏑ ⏑	♩ ♪ ♪	carmina.
Spondee,	*two long syllables,*	– –	♩ ♩	lēgēs.

II. FEET OF THREE TIMES OR THREE MORAE.

Trochee,[2]	*one long and one short,*	– ⏑	♩ ♪	lēgis.
Iambus,	*one short and one long,*	⏑ –	♪ ♩	parēns.
Tribrach,	*three short syllables,*	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	♪ ♪ ♪	dominus.

NOTE 1.—To these may be added the following:

Pyrrhic,	⏑ ⏑	pater.	Ditrochee,	– ⏑ – ⏑	cīvitātis.
Anapaest,	⏑ ⏑ –	bonitās.	Dispondee,	– – – –	praeceptōrēs.
Bacchius,	⏑ – –	dolōrēs.	Greater Ionic,	– – ⏑ ⏑	sententia.
Cretic,	– ⏑ –	mīlitēs.	Lesser Ionic,	⏑ ⏑ – –	adolēscēns.
Diiambus,	⏑ – ⏑ –	amoenitās.	Choriambus,	– ⏑ ⏑ –	impatiēns.[3]

NOTE 2.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Trihemimeris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; a *Penthemimeris*, of two and a half; a *Hephthemimeris*, of three and a half, etc.

598. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may be resolved into two short syllables, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short syllables may be contracted into a long syllable. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original feet.

NOTE.—Thus the Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly, the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribrach are metrical equivalents.

---

[1] See foot-note 1, p. 349.

[2] Sometimes called *Choree*.

[3] The feet here mentioned as having four syllables are only compounds of dissyllabic feet. Thus the *Diiambus* is a double Iambus; the *Ditrochee*, a double Trochee; the *Dispondee*, a double Spondee; the *Greater Ionic*, a Spondee and a Pyrrhic; the *Lesser* *ic*, a Pyrrhic and a Spondee; the *Choriambus*, a Trochee (Choree) and an Iambus.

1. In certain kinds of verse admitting *irrational* time (596, 1, note 2), Spondees, Dactyls, and Anapaests are shortened to the time of a Trochee or of an Iambus, and thus become metrical equivalents of each of these feet.

1) A Spondee used for a Trochee is called an IRRATIONAL TROCHEE, and is marked — >.

2) A Spondee used for an Iambus is called an IRRATIONAL IAMBUS, and is marked > —.

3) A Dactyl used for a Trochee is called a CYCLIC DACTYL, and is marked —◡ ◡.

4) An Anapaest used for an Iambus is called a CYCLIC ANAPAEST, and is marked ◡ ◡—.

599. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used as equivalents for other feet.

NOTE.—Thus the Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. EQUIVALENTS take the ictus of the feet for which they are used.

NOTE 1.—Thus the Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl—i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest—i. e., on the last syllable.

NOTE 2.—Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally used as equivalents, and are accented accordingly.

NOTE 3.—When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus properly belongs to both of these syllables, but is marked upon the first. Thus a Tribrach used for an Iambus is marked ◡ ◡́ ◡.

600. ARSIS AND THESIS.—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*), and the unaccented part, the Thesis (*lowering*).[1]

601. VERSES.—A verse is a line of poetry (596). It has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse.

NOTE 1.—Thus every dactylic verse has the ictus on the first syllable of each foot, because the Dactyl has the ictus on that syllable.

---

[1] Greek writers on versification originally used the terms *ἄρσις* and *θέσις* of *raising* and *putting down* the foot in marching or in beating time. Thus the Thesis was the accented part of the foot, and the Arsis the unaccented part. The Romans, however, applied the terms to *raising* and *lowering* the voice in reading. Thus Arsis came to mean the accented part of the foot, and Thesis the unaccented part. The terms have now been so long and so generally used in this sense that it is not deemed advisable to attempt to restore them to their original signification.

NOTE 2.—Two verses sometimes unite and form a compound verse; see **628**, X.

NOTE 3.—Metre means *measure*, and is variously used, sometimes designating the *measure* or *quantity* of syllables, and sometimes the *foot* or *measure*[1] of a verse.

602. CAESURA OR CAESURAL PAUSE.—Most Latin verses are divided metrically into two nearly equal parts, each of which forms a rhythmic series. The pause, however slight, which naturally separates these parts is called—

1. A *Caesura*,[2] or a *Caesural Pause*, when it occurs within a foot; see **611**.

2. A *Diaeresis*, when it occurs at the end of a foot; see **611**, 2 and 3.

NOTE.—Some verses consist of three parts thus separated by caesura or diaeresis, while some consist of a single rhythmic series.[3]

603. The full metrical name of a verse consists of three parts. The first designates the characteristic foot, the second gives the number of feet or measures, and the third shows whether the verse is complete or incomplete. Thus—

1. A *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic* is a dactylic verse of six feet (*Hexameter*), all of which are complete (*Acatalectic*).

2. A *Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic* is a trochaic verse of two measures (*Dimeter*), the last of which is incomplete (*Catalectic*).

NOTE 1.—A verse with a Dactyl as its characteristic foot is called *Dactylic*; with a Trochee, *Trochaic*; with an Iambŭs, *Iambic*, etc.

NOTE 2.—A verse consisting of one measure is called *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

NOTE 3.—A verse which closes with a *complete* measure is called *Acatalectic*;[4] with an *incomplete* measure, *Catalectic*;[4] with an excess of syllables, *Hypermetrical*.[4]

NOTE 4.—The term *Acatalectic* is often omitted, as a verse may be assumed to be complete unless the opposite is stated.

NOTE 5.—A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

NOTE 6.—Verses are sometimes briefly designated by the number of feet or measures which they contain. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

604. Verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets.

NOTE 1.—Thus *Alcaic* is derived from *Alcaeus*; *Archilochian*, from *Archilochus*; *Sapphic*, from *Sapphō*; *Glyconic*, from *Glycōn*, etc.

---

[1] In dactylic verses a *measure* is a single foot, but in trochaic and iambic verses it is a dipody or a pair of feet.

[2] Caesūra (from *caedō*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the foot and the verse into parts.

[3] A verse consisting of a single series is called *Monocolon*; of two, *Dicolon*; of three, *Tricolon*.

[4] From the Greek ἀκατάληκτος, καταληκτικός, and ὑπέρμετρος.

NOTE 2.—Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

605. The FINAL SYLLABLE of a verse may generally be either long or short at the pleasure of the poet.

606. A STANZA is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole; see **631.**

NOTE.—A stanza of two lines or verses is called a *Distich;* of three, a *Tristich;* of four, a *Tetrastich.*

607. RHYTHMICAL READING.—In reading Latin verse care must be taken to preserve the words unbroken, to show the quantity of the syllables, and to mark the poetical ictus.

NOTE.—Scanning consists in separating a poem or verse into the feet of which it is composed.[1]

608. FIGURES OF PROSODY.—The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody.

I. ELISION.—A final vowel, a final diphthong, or a final *m* with the preceding vowel, is generally elided[2] before a word beginning with a vowel or with *h:*

Mōnstr^{um} horrend^{um} īnform^{e} ingēns, *for* Mōnstrum horrendum īnforme ingēns. *Verg.*

NOTE 1.—For *Exceptions*, see *Hiatus*, II., below.

NOTE 2.—Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes dropped before a consonant:

Pyrrhīn' connūbia servās? *for* Pyrrhīne connūbia servās? *Verg.*

NOTE 3.—In the early poets final *s* is often dropped before consonants:

Ex omnibu' rēbus, *for* ex omnibus rēbus. *Lucr.*

NOTE 4.—The elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel is sometimes called *Ecthlipsis.*[3]

NOTE 5.—The elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, is sometimes called *Synaloepha,*[3] or, if at the end of a line, *Synapheia.*[3]

II. HIATUS.—A final vowel or diphthong is sometimes retained before a word beginning with a vowel. Thus—

1. The interjections *ō*, *heu*, and *prō* are not elided; see Verg., Aen., X., 18; Geor., II., 486.

2. Long vowels and diphthongs are sometimes retained, especially in the arsis of a foot; see Verg., Ec., III., 6; VII., 52.

---

[1] In school this is sometimes done in a purely mechanical way, sacrificing words to feet; but even this mechanical process is often useful to the beginner, as it makes him familiar with the poetical ictus.

[2] That is, *partially suppressed.* In reading, it should be lightly and indistinctly sounded, and blended with the following syllable, as in English poetry:

"Th^{e} eternal years of God are hers."

[3] From the Greek ἔκθλιψις, συναλοιφή, and συνάφεια.

Note 1.—This is most common in proper names.

Note 2.—Vergil employs this form of hiatus more freely than the other Latin poets, and yet the entire Aeneid furnishes only a short list of examples.

Note 3.—In the thesis a final long vowel or diphthong is sometimes shortened before a short vowel instead of being elided; see Verg., Aen., III., 211; VI., 507.

Note 4.—Hiatus with a short final vowel is rare, but occurs even in Vergil; see Aen., I., 405; Ec., II., 53.

III. **Synaeresis.**—Two syllables are sometimes contracted into one:

aure͞a, de͞inde, de͞inceps, i͞idem, i͞isdem, e͞aedem, prohibeat (pronounced *proibeat*).

Note 1.—In the different parts of *dēsum, ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *de͞esse, de͞est, de͞erat, de͞erit*, etc.; so *ei* in the verb *anteeō: ante͞ire, ante͞irem, ante͞is, ante͞it*.

Note 2.—*I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*. Thus *abiete* and *ariete* become *abyete* and *aryete; genua* and *tenuēs* become *genwa* and *tenwēs*.

Note 3.—In Plautus and Terence, *Synaeresis* is used with great freedom.

Note 4.—The contraction of two syllables into one is sometimes called *Synizesis*.

IV. **Diaeresis.**—In poetry, two syllables usually contracted into one are sometimes retained distinct:

aurāī *for* aurae, Orpheüs *for* Orphe͞us, soluendus *for* solvendus, silua *for* silva.

Note.—*Diaeresis* properly means the *resolution* of one syllable into two, but the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually make two syllables out of one. The examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, used for effect or convenience.

V. **Diastole.**—A syllable usually short is sometimes long, especially in the arsis of a foot:

Prīamidēs *for* Priamidēs.

Note 1.—This poetic license occurs chiefly in proper names and in final syllables.

Note 2.—Vergil uses this license quite freely. He lengthens *que* in sixteen instances.

VI. **Systole.**—A syllable usually long is sometimes short:

tulerunt *for* tulērunt, steterunt *for* stetērunt (**236**, note), vide'n *for* vidēsne.

Note.—This poetic license occurs most frequently in final vowels and diphthongs.

VII. **Syncope.**—An entire foot is sometimes occupied by a single long syllable; see **614**.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

609. All Dactylic Verses consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

610. The Dactylic Hexameter[1] consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (**605**).[2] The scale is,[3]

–́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏕ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏓.[4]

Quadrupe- | dante pu- | trem soni- | tū quatit | ungula | campum. *Verg.*
Arma vi- | rumque ca- | nō Trō- | jae quī | prīmus ab | ōrīs. *Verg.*
Īnfan- | dum rē- | gīna ju- | bēs reno- | vāre do- | lōrem. *Verg.*
Illī[5] in- | ter sē- | sē măg- | nă vī | bracchia | tollunt. *Verg.*[6]

1. The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of Dactyls and Spondees. Thus a verse may contain—

1) Five Dactyls and one Spondee, as in the first example above.
2) Four Dactyls and two Spondees, admitting four different arrangements.
3) Three Dactyls and three Spondees, admitting six different arrangements.
4) Two Dactyls and four Spondees, admitting four different arrangements.
5) One Dactyl and five Spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. Effect of Dactyls.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement, and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement, and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of Dactyls and Spondees.

3. Spondaic Line.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a Spondee in the

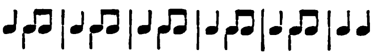
---

[1] This is at once the most important and the most ancient of all the Greek and Roman metres. In Greece it attained its perfection in the poems of Homer. It was introduced into Italy in a somewhat imperfect form by the poet Ennius about the middle of the second century before Christ; but it was improved by Lucretius, Catullus, and others, until it attained great excellence in the works of the Augustan poets. The most beautiful and finished Latin Hexameters are found in the works of Ovid and Vergil.

[2] The Dactylic Hexameter in Latin is here treated as *Acatalectic*, as the Latin poets seem to have regarded the last foot as a genuine Spondee, thus making the measure complete. See Christ, 'Metrik der Griechen und Römer,' pp. 110, 164.

[3] In this scale the sign ′ marks the ictus (**599**), and – ⏕ denotes that the original Dactyl, marked – ⏑ ⏑, may become by contraction a Spondee, marked – –, i. e., that a Spondee may be used for a Dactyl (**598**).

[4] Expressed in musical characters, this scale is as follows:



The notation ♩ ♫ means that, instead of the original measure ♩ ♫, the equivalent ♩ ♩ may be used.

[5] The final *i* of *illi* is elided; see **608**, I.

[6] With these lines of Vergil compare the following Hexameters from the Evangeline of Longfellow:

"This is the forest primeval; but where are the hearts that beneath it
Leaped like the roe, when he hears in the woodland the voice of the huntsman?"

fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a Dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cāra de- | ūm sobo- | lēs māg- | num Jovis | incrē- | mentum. *Verg.*

NOTE.—In Vergil, spondaic lines are used much more sparingly than in the earlier poets,[1] and generally end in words of three or four syllables, as in *incrēmentum* above.[2]

611. CAESURA, OR CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:[3]

Armā- | tī ten- | dunt; ‖ it | clāmor et | agmine | factō. *Verg.*
Īnfan- | dum, rē- | gīna, ‖ ju- | bēs reno- | vāre do- | lōrem. *Verg.*

NOTE.—In the first line, the caesural pause, marked ‖, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *rēgīna*, in the thesis (*na ju*) of the third foot. The former is called the *Masculine* Caesura, the latter the *Feminine* Caesura.[4]

1. The CAESURAL PAUSE is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second:

Crēdide- | rim; ‖ vēr | illud e- | rat, ‖ vēr | māgnus a- | gēbat. *Verg.*

2. BUCOLIC DIAERESIS.—A pause called the *Bucolic Diaeresis*,[5] because originally used in the pastoral poetry of the Greeks, sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot:

Ingen- | tem cae- | lō soni- | tum dedit; ‖ inde se- | cūtus. *Verg.*

NOTE.—The *Bucolic Diaeresis* was avoided by the best Latin poets, even in treating pastoral subjects. Vergil, even in his Bucolics, uses it very sparingly.

3. A DIAERESIS at the end of the third foot without any proper *caesural pause* is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pulveru- | lentus e- | quīs furit; ‖ omnēs | arma re- | quīrunt. *Verg.*

---

[1] A single poem of Catullus, about half as long as a book of the Aeneid, contains more spondaic lines than all the works of Vergil.

[2] But Vergil has two spondaic lines ending *et māgnīs dīs*; see Aen., III., 12, and VIII., 679.

[3] That is, the first rhythmic series ends at this point. This pause is always at the end of a word, and may be so very slight as in most cases not to interfere with the sense, even if no mark of punctuation is required; but the best verses are so constructed that the caesural pause coincides with a pause in the sense; see Christ, 'Metrik,' p. 184. According to some writers, the Dactylic Hexameter had its origin in the union of two earlier dactylic verses, and the caesural pause now marks the point of union; see Christ, p. 173.

[4] The Masculine Caesura is also called the *Strong*, or the *Syllabic*, Caesura, the Feminine the *Weak*, or the *Trochaic*, Caesura. Caesuras are often named from the place which they occupy in the line. Thus a caesura after the arsis of the second foot is called *Trihemimeral*; after the arsis of the third, *Penthemimeral*; after the arsis of the fourth, *Hephthemimeral*.

[5] Also called the *Bucolic Caesura*, as the term *caesura* is often made to include *Diaeresis*.

4. The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these is marked by any perceptible pause:

Arma vi- | rumque ca- | nō, ‖ Trō- | jae quī | prīmus ab | ōrīs. *Verg.*

Note.—Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *canō*, in the third foot, has the caesural pause.[1]

5. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmae | moenia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armīs. *Enn.*

Note 1.—The *Penthemimeral*[2] caesura has great power to impart melody to the verse, but the best effect is produced when it is aided by other caesuras, as above.

Note 2.—A happy effect is often produced—

1) By combining the *feminine* caesura in the third foot with the *hephthemimeral* and the *trihemimeral:*

Dōnec e- | rīs fē- | līx, ‖ mul- | tōs nume- | rābis a- | mīcōs. *Verg.*

2) By combining the *hephthemimeral* with the *trihemimeral:*

Inde to- | rō pater | Aenē- | ās sīc | orsus ab | altō. *Verg.*

Note 3.—The union of the *feminine* caesura with the *trihemimeral*, common in Greek, is somewhat rare in Latin, but it sometimes produces an harmonious verse:

Praecipi- | tat, sua- | dentque ca- | dentia | sīdera | somnōs. *Verg.*

Note 4.—In the last two feet of the verse there should in general be no caesura whatever, unless it falls in the thesis of the fifth foot; but when that foot contains two entire words, a caesura is admissible after the arsis.

612. The ictus often falls upon unaccented syllables. Thus—

1. In the first, second, and fourth feet of the verse it falls sometimes upon *accented* and sometimes upon *unaccented* syllables; see examples under **610**.

2. In the third foot it generally falls upon an *unaccented* syllable; see examples under **610**.

3. In the fifth and sixth feet it generally falls upon *accented* syllables; see examples under **610**.

613. The Last Word of the Hexameter is generally either a dissyllable or a trisyllable; see examples under **610** and **611**.[3]

---

[1] The caesura with the pause is variously called *the chief caesura*, *the caesura of the verse*, *the caesura of the rhythm*, etc. In distinction from this any other caesura may be called *a caesura*, *a caesura of the foot*, or *a minor caesura*.

[2] See p. 356, foot-note 4.

[3] The learner should be informed that the niceties of structure which belong to finished Latin hexameters must be sought only in the poems of Vergil and Ovid. The happiest disposition of caesuras, the best adjustment of the poetical ictus to the prose accent, and the most approved structure in the closing measures of the verse, can not be expected in the rude numbers of Ennius, in the scientific discussions of Lucretius, or even in the familiar Satires of Horace. Those interested in the peculiarities of Latin hexameters in different writers will find a discussion of the subject in Lucian Müller's work, 'Dē rē metricā poētārum Latīnōrum praeter Plautum et Terentium librī septem.'

Note 1.—Spondaic lines are exceptions; see 610, 3, note.

Note 2.—Two monosyllables at the end of a line are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecipi- | tant cū- | rae, || tur- | bātaque | fūnere | mēns est. *Verg.*

Note 3.—*Est*, even when not preceded by another monosyllable, may stand at the end of a line.

Note 4.—A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Parturi- | unt mon- | tēs, || nās- | cētur | ridicu- | lus mūs. *Hor.*

Note 5.—In Vergil, twenty-one lines, apparently hypermetrical (603, note 3), are supposed to elide a final vowel or a final *em* or *um* before the initial vowel of the next line; see Aen., I., 332; Geor., I., 295. See also 608, I., note 5.

II. Other Dactylic Verses.

614. Dactylic Pentameter.[1]—The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by a diaeresis. Each part consists of two Dactyls and a long syllable. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

–́ ⏔ | –́ ⏔ | –́ ⊼ || –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | ⏑́̄ ⊼, or
–́ ⏔ | –́ ⏔ | ⊔ || –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | ⏑́̄ ⊼[2]

Admoni- | tū coe- | pī || fortior | esse tu- | ō. *Ovid.*

615. Elegiac Distich.—The Elegiac Distich consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmise | pulta vi- | rūm || cur- | vīs feri- | untur a- | rātrīs
Ossa, ru- | īnō- | sās || occulit | herba do- | mūs. *Ovid.*

Note 1.—In reading the Elegiac Distich, the Pentameter, including pauses, should of course occupy the same time as the Hexameter.

Note 2.—Elegaic composition should be characterized by grace and elegance. Both members of the distich should be constructed in accordance with the most rigid rules of metre. The sense should be complete at the end of the couplet. Ovid furnishes us the best specimens of this style of composition.

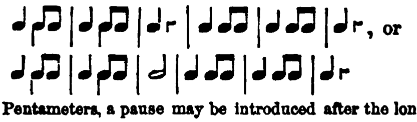
616. The **Dactylic Tetrameter** is identical with the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ībimus | ō soci- | ī, comi- | tēsque. *Hor.*

---

[1] The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being Dactyls or Spondees, the third a Spondee, the fourth and fifth Anapaests.

[2] In musical characters:



Thus, in reading Pentameters, a pause may be introduced after the long syllable in the third foot, or that foot may be lengthened so as to fill the measure.

Note.—In compound verses, as in the *Greater Archilochian*, the tetrameter in composition with other metres has a Dactyl in the fourth place; see **628**, X.

617. The Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter:

Arbori- | busque co- | mae. *Hor.*

Note.—The Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic is also known as the *Lesser Archilochian.*

III. Trochaic Verse.

618. The Trochaic Dipody, the measure in Trochaic verse,[1] consists of two Trochees, the second of which is sometimes irrational (**598**, 1, 1))—i. e., it has the *form* of a Spondee with the *time* of a Trochee: –́ ◡ –́ > or ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪

Note 1.—By the ordinary law of equivalents (**598**), a Tribrach ◡́ ◡ ◡ may take the place of the Trochee –́ ◡, and an apparent Anapaest ◡́ ◡ > the place of the Irrational Trochee –́ >.[2] In proper names a cyclic Dactyl –́◡ ◡ (**598**, 1, 3)) may occur in either foot.

Note 2.—In the Trochaic Dipody, the first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

Note 3.—A syllable is sometimes prefixed to a Trochaic verse. A syllable thus used is called *Anacrusis* (upward beat), and is separated from the following measure by the mark ⋮.

619. The Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents, and has the following scale:

–́ ◡ – ◡ | –́ ◡ ⏓

Aula dīvi- | tem manet. *Hor.*

Note.—A *Trochaic Tripody* occurs in the Greater Archilochian; see **628**, X.

1. The Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse which forms the third line in the Alcaic stanza is a Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis:

> ⋮ –́ ◡ – > | –́ ◡ – ⏒

Pu- ⋮ er quis ex au- | lā capillīs. *Hor.*

620. The Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. There is a *diaeresis* (**602**, 2) at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:

–́ ◡ – > | –́ ◡ – > || –́ ◡ – > | –́ ◡ ⏓ ∧.[3]

Prīmus ad ci- | bum vocātur, || prīmō pulmen- | tum datur. *Plaut.*

---

[1] See **601**, note 3, with foot-note.

[2] Thus in the second foot of a Trochaic Dipody the poet may use a Trochee, a Tribrach, a Spondee, or an Anapaest; but the Spondee and the Anapaest are pronounced in the same time as the Trochee or the Tribrach—i. e., they have irrational time.

[3] Only the leading ictus of each dipody is here marked.

Note 1.—This is simply the union of two Trochaic Dimeters, the first *acatalectic* and the second *catalectic*, separated by *diaeresis*.[1]

Note 2.—In Latin this verse is used chiefly in comedy, and accordingly admits great licence in the use of feet. The Irrational Trochee (598, 1, 1)) and its equivalents may occur in any foot except in the last dipody.

Note 3.—The *Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic* also occurs in the earlier poets:

Ipse summis | saxis fixus ‖ asperis ē- | visceràtus. *Enn.*

IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

621. The IAMBIC DIPODY, the measure of Iambic verse, consists of two Iambi, the first of which is sometimes irrational (598, 1, 2)) —i. e., it has the *form* of a Spondee with the *time* of an Iambus:

≳ –́ ⏑ –́ or ♪♩ ♪♩

Note 1.—The Tribrach for the Iambus, and the Dactyl[2] or Anapaest[2] for the Irrational Iambus, are rare, except in comedy.

Note 2.—In the Ionic Dipody, the first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

622. The IAMBIC TRIMETER, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies. The Caesura is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth:

≳ –́ ⏑ – | ≳ –́ ⏑ – | ≳ –́ ⏑ ⏓[3]

Quid obserā- | tīs ‖ auribus | fundis precēs? *Hor.*
Neptūnus al- | tō ‖ tundit hī- | bernus salō. *Hor.*
Hās inter epu- | lās ‖ ut juvat | pāstās ovēs. *Hor.*[4]

1. In PROPER NAMES, a Cyclic Anapaest is admissible in any foot except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. In HORACE the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl, and the Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. In COMEDY great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

---

[1] Compare the corresponding English measure, in which the two parts appear as separate lines:

"Lives' of great men | all' remind us
We' can make our | lives' sublime,
And', departing, | leave' behind us
Foot'prints on the | sands' of time."

[2] The Dactyl thus used has the time of an Iambus and is marked > ⏑́ ⏑; the Anapaest is cyclic (598, 1, 4), marked ⏑ ⏑–́.

[3] This same scale, divided thus, ≳ ⁝ –́ ⏑ – ≳ | –́ ⏑ – ≳ | –́ ⏑ – ∧, represents Trochaic Trimeter Catalectic with Anacrusis. Thus all Iambic verses may be treated as Trochaic verses with Anacrusis.

[4] Compare the English Alexandrine, the last line of the Spenserian stanza:

When Phoe'bus lifts | his head' out of | the win'ter's wave.

4. The **Choliambus** is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Trochee in the sixth foot:[1]

Miser Catul- | le dēsinās | ineptīre. *Catul.*

623. The **Iambic Trimeter Catalectic** occurs in Horace with the following scale:

≿ –́ ⏑ – | ≿ –́ ⏑ – | ⏑ –́ ⏓

Vocātus at- | que nōn vocā- | tus audit. *Hor.*

Note.—The Dactyl and the Anapaest are not admissible; the Tribrach occurs only in the second foot.

624. The **Iambic Dimeter** consists of two Iambic Dipodies:

≿ –́ ⏑ – | ≿ –́ ⏑ ⏒

Queruntur in | silvīs avēs. *Hor.*
Imbrēs nivēs- | que comparat. *Hor.*
Ast ego vicis- | sim rīserō. *Hor.*

Note 1.—Horace admits the Dactyl only in the first foot, the Tribrach only in the second, the Anapaest not at all.

Note 2.—Iambic Dimeter is sometimes catalectic.

625. The **Iambic Tetrameter** consists of four Iambic Dipodies. It belongs chiefly to comedy:

Quantum intellēx- | ī modo senis || sententiam | dē nūptiīs. *Ter.*

Note.—Iambic Tetrameter is sometimes catalectic:

Quot commodās | rēs attulī? || quot autem adō | mī cūrās. *Ter.*

V. Ionic Verse.

626. The Ionic Verse in Horace consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Trimeter or Dimeter:

⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –
⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –

Neque pūgnō | neque sēgnī | pede vīctus;
Catus īdem | per apertum. *Hor.*

Note 1.—In this verse the last syllable is not common, but is often long *only by position* (p. 338, foot-note 3). Thus *us* in *vīctus* is long before *c* in *catus*.

Note 2.—The *Ionic Tetrameter Catalectic*, also called *Sotadēan Verse*, occurs chiefly in comedy. It consists in general of Greater Ionics, but in Martial it has a Ditrochee as the third foot:

–́ – ⏑ ⏑ | –́ – ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ ⏓ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ Λ̄

Hās cum gemi- | nā compede | dēdicat ca- | tēnās. *Mart.*

---

[1] *Choliambus*, or *Scazon*, means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is explained as a Trochaic Trimeter Acatalectic with Anacrusis, and with syncope (608, VII.) in the fifth foot. The example here given may be represented thus: ⏑ ⋮ –́ ⏑ – ⏑ | –́ ⏑ – ⏑ | ⌞–́ – ⏓.

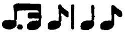
VI. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

627. Logaoedic[1] Verse is a special variety of Trochaic Verse. The Irrational Trochee –́ >, the Cyclic Dactyl ⏔́ ⏑, and the Syncopated Trochee ⏗ (608, VII.) are freely admitted. It has an apparently light ictus.[2]

NOTE.—Logaoedic verses show great variety of form, but a few general types will indicate the character of the whole.

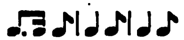
628. The following Logaoedic verses appear in Horace:

I. The ADONIC:

⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ or 

Montis ĭ- | māgŏ. *Hor.*

II. The FIRST PHERECRATIC[3] or the ARISTOPHANIC:

⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ or 

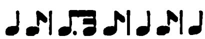
Cūr neque | mīli- | tāris. *Hor.*

NOTE.—Pherecratic is the technical term applied to the regular Logaoedic Tripody. It is called the First or Second Pherecratic according as its Dactyl occupies the first or the second place in the verse. In each form it may be *acatalectic* or *catalectic:*

1) ⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ or catalectic: ⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | ⏗́ ∧
2) –́ > | ⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏒ or catalectic: –́> | ⏔́ ⏑ | ⏗́ ∧

In Logaoedic verse the term *basis* or *base*, marked ×, is sometimes applied to the foot or feet which precede the Cyclic Dactyl. Thus, in the Second Pherecratic, the first foot –́ > is the base.

III. The SECOND GLYCONIC[3] CATALECTIC:

–́ > | ⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | ⏗́ ∧ or 

Dōnec | grātus e- | ram ti- | bĭ. *Hor.*

NOTE 1.—Glyconic is the technical term applied to the regular Logaoedic Tetrapody. It is called the First, Second, or Third Glyconic according as its Dactyl occupies the first, second, or third place in the verse. In each form it may be either acatalectic or catalectic.

NOTE 2.—The Second Glyconic sometimes has a Synoope (608, VII.) in the third foot.

IV. The LESSER ASCLEPIADĒAN[3] consists of two *Catalectic Pherecratics*, a Second and a First:

–́ > | ⏔́ ⏑ | ⏗ || ⏔́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | ⏗́ ∧

Maecē- | nās ata | vīs || ēdite | rēgi- | bus. *Hor.*

---

[1] From λόγος, *prose*, and ἀοιδή, *song*, applied to verses which resemble prose.

[2] The free use of long syllables in the thesis causes the poetical ictus on the arsis to *appear* less prominent.

[3] Pherecratic, Glyconic, and Asclepiadēan verses may be explained as Choriambic:

Pherecratic, –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ | ⏒ ∧
First Glyconic, –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ | ⏑ ⏗́
Asclepiadēan, –́ > | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ ⏗́

V. The Greater Asclepiadēan consists of three catalectic verses, a *Second Pherecratic*, an *Adonic*, and a *First Pherecrătic:*

–́ > | –́⏑⏑ | ⏗ || –́⏑⏑ | ⏗ | –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | ⏘ ∧

Seu plū- | rēs hie- | mēs, || seu tribu- | it || Jūppiter | ūlti- | mam. *Hor.*

VI. The Lesser Sapphic consists of a *Trochaic Dipody* and a *First Pherecratic:*

–́⏑ | –́ > | –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | –́⏓

Namque | mē sil- | vā lupus | in Sa- | bīnā. *Hor.*

VII. The Greater Sapphic consists of two *Catalectic Glyconics*, a Third and a First with Syncope:

–́⏑ | –́ > | –́⏑⏑ | ⏗ || –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | ⏗ | ⏘ ∧

Inter | aequā- | lēs equi- | tat, || Gallica | nec lu- | pā- | tīs. *Hor.*

VIII. The Lesser Alcaic consists of two *Cyclic Dactyls* and two *Trochees:*

–́⏑⏑ | –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | –́⏓

Purpure- | ō vari- | us co- | lōre. *Hor.*

IX. The Greater Alcaic consists of a *Trochaic Dipody* with Anacrusis and a *Catalectic First Pherecratic:*

>̮ ⁝ –́⏑ | –́>̮ | –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | ⏘ ∧

Vi- ⁝ dēs ut | altā | stet nive | candi- | dum. *Hor.*

X. The Greater Archilochian[1] consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (**616**) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:

–́⏔ | –́⏔ | –́⏔ | –́⏑⏑ || –́⏑ | –́⏑ | –́⏓

Vītae | summa bre- | vis spem | nōs vetat, || incho- | āre | longam. *Hor.*

Note.—This verse may be explained either as Logaoedic or as Compound. With the first explanation, the Dactyls are cyclic and the Spondees have irrational time; with the second explanation, the first member of the verse has the Dactyl as its characteristic foot and the second member the Trochee; see **601**, note **2**.

629. The following Logaoedic verses not used in Horace deserve mention:

I. The Phalaecian is a *Logaoedic Pentapody:*[2]

⏘>̮ | –́⏑⏑ | –́⏑ | –́⏑ | –́⏓

Nōn est | vīvere, | sed va- | lēre | vīta. *Mart.*

---

[1] For the *Lesser Archilochian*, see **617**, note.

[2] This verse differs from the *Lesser Sapphic* in having the Dactyl in the second foot, while the latter has the Dactyl in the third.

II. The **Second Priapean** consists of two *Catalectic Second Glyconics* with Syncope:

⏓́ ≳ | –́⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ | ∟ || –́ ≳ | –́⏑ ⏑ | ∟ | ⏓́ ∧

Quercus | árida | rústi- | cá || cónfor- | máta se | cū- | ri. *Catul.*

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF THE PRINCIPAL LATIN POETS.

630. Vergil and Juvenal use the Dactylic Hexameter; Ovid, the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses and the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works; Horace, the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, and a variety of metres in his Odes and Epodes.

Lyric Metres of Horace.

631. For convenience of reference, an outline of the lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

Stanzas of Four Verses or Lines.

I. **Alcaic Stanza.**—First and second lines, Greater Alcaics (628, IX.); third, Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (619, 1); fourth, Lesser Alcaic (628, VIII.):

1.
2. } ≳ ⋮ – ⏑ | – ≳ | –⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧
3. ≳ ⋮ – ⏑ – ⏑ | – ⏑ – ⏒
4. –⏑ ⏑ | –⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏒

In thirty-seven Odes: I., 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II., 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III., 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV., 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. **Sapphic Stanza.**—The first three lines, Lesser Sapphics (628, VI.); the fourth, Adonic (628, I.):

1.
2. } – ⏑ | – > | –⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏒
3.
4. –⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒

In twenty-six Odes: I., 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II., 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III., 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV., 2, 6, 11; and Secular Hymn.

III. **Greater Sapphic Stanza.**—First and third lines, First Glyconics Catalectic with Syncope in the third foot (628, VII.); second and fourth lines, Greater Sapphics:

1.
3. } –⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | ∟ | ⏓ ∧

2.
4. } – ⏑ | – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⊔ | ⏓ ∧

In Ode I., 8.

IV. First Asclepiadēan Glyconic Stanza.—The first three lines, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.); the fourth, Second Glyconic Catalectic (628, III.):

1.
2.
3. } – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧
4. – > | –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧

In nine Odes: I., 6, 15, 24, 33; II., 12; III., 10, 16; IV., 5, 12.

V. Second Asclepiadēan Glyconic Stanza.—The first two lines, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.); the third, Second Glyconic Catalectic with Syncope in the third foot (628, III., note 2); the fourth, Second Glyconic Catalectic (628, III.):

1.
2. } – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧
3. – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ | ⏓ ∧
4. – > | –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧

In seven Odes: I., 5, 14, 21, 23; III., 7, 13; IV., 13.

VI. Glyconic Asclepiadēan Stanza.—First and third lines, Second Glyconics Catalectic (628, III.); second and fourth, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.):

1.
3. } – > | –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧
2.
4. } – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧

In twelve Odes: I., 3, 13, 19, 36; III., 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV., 1, 3.

VII. Lesser Asclepiadēan Stanza.—Four Lesser Asclepiadēans:

1.
2.
3.
4. } – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧

In three Odes: I., 1; III., 30; IV., 8.

VIII. Greater Asclepiadēan Stanza.—Four Greater Asclepiadēans (628, V.):

1.
2.
3.
4. } – > | –⏑⏑ | ⊔ || –⏑⏑ | ⊔ | –⏑⏑ | – ⏑ | ⏓ ∧

In three Odes: I., 11, 18; IV., 10.

IX. Double Alcmanian Stanza.—First and third lines, Dactylic Hexameters (610); second and fourth, Dactylic Tetrameters (616):

1.
3. } –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏑⏑ | –⏓

2.
4. } –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏑⏑ | –⏓

In two Odes: I., 7, 28.

Note.—This stanza is formed by the union of two Alcmanian stanzas; see XIX. below.

X. Trochaic Stanza.—First and third lines, Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (619); second and fourth, Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (623):

1.
3. } –⏑–⏑ | –⏑⏓

2.
4. } ≿–⏑– | ≿–⏑– | ⏑–⏒

In Ode II., 18.

XI. Dactylic Archilochian Stanza.—First and third lines, Dactylic Hexameters; second and fourth, Catalectic Dactylic Trimeters (617, note):

1.
3. } –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏑⏑ | –⏓

2.
4. } –⏑⏑ | –⏑⏑ | ⏓

In Ode IV., 7.

XII. Greater Archilochian Stanza.—First and third lines, Greater Archilochians (628, X.); second and fourth, Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (623):

1.
3. } –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏔ | –⏑⏑ ‖ –⏑ | –⏑ | –⏒

2.
4. } ≿–⏑– | ≿–⏑– | ⏑–⏒

In Ode I., 4.

Note.—The second and fourth lines are sometimes read with syncope, as follows:

≿ ⋮ –⏑–≿ | –⏑–⏑ | └ | ⏓ ∧

XIII. Ionic Stanza.—First and second lines, Ionic Dimeters (626); third and fourth, Ionic Trimeters (626):

1.
2. } ⏑⏑–– | ⏑⏑––

3.
4. } ⏑⏑–– | ⏑⏑–– | ⏑⏑––

In Ode III., 12.

Note.—This ode is variously arranged in different editions, sometimes in stanzas of three lines and sometimes of four.

Stanzas of Three Lines.

XIV. FIRST ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First line, Hexameter; second, Iambic Dimeter; third, Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic:

1. – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒
2. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒
3. – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | ⏒ ⋀̄

In Epode 13.

NOTE.—In some editions, the second and third lines are united.

XV. SECOND ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First line, Iambic Trimeter; second, Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic; third, Iambic Dimeter:

1. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒
2. – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | ⏒ ⋀
3. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒

In Epode 11.

NOTE.—In some editions, the second and third lines are united.

Stanzas of Two Lines.

XVI. IAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Iambic Trimeter; second, Iambic Dimeter:

1. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒
2. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒

In the first ten Epodes.

XVII. FIRST PYTHIAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Iambic Dimeter (624):

1. – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒
2. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XVIII. SECOND PYTHIAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Iambic Trimeter:

1. – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒
2. ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒

In Epode 16.

XIX. ALCMANIAN STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Dactylic Tetrameter:

1. – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒
2. – ⏖ | – ⏖ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏒

In Epode 12.

Not grouped into Stanzas.

XX. IAMBIC TRIMETER:

⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏒

In Epode 17.

632. Index to the Lyric Metres of Horace.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, **631**.

Book I.

Odes.	Metres.
1	VII.
2	II.
3	VI.
4	XII.
5	V.
6	IV.
7	IX.
8	III.
9	I.
10	II.
11	VIII.
12	II.
13	VI.
14	V.
15	IV.
16	I.
17	I.
18	VIII.
19	VI.
20	II.
21	V.
22	II.
23	V.
24	IV.
25	II.
26	I.
27	I.
28	IX.
29	I.
30	II.
31	I.
32	II.
33	IV.
34	I.
35	I.
36	VI.
37	I.
38	II.

Book II.

Odes.	Metres.
1	I.
2	II.
3	I.
4	II.
5	I.
6	II.
7	I.
8	II.
9	I.
10	II.
11	I.
12	IV.
13	I.
14	I.
15	I.
16	II.
17	I.
18	X.
19	I.
20	I.

Book III.

Odes.	Metres.
1	I.
2	I.
3	I.
4	I.
5	I.
6	I.
7	V.
8	II.
9	VI.
10	IV.
11	II.
12	XIII.
13	V.
14	II.
15	VI.
16	IV.
17	I.
18	II.
19	VI.
20	II.
21	I.
22	II.
23	I.
24	VI.
25	VI.
26	I.
27	II.
28	VI.
29	I.
30	VII.

Book IV.

Odes.	Metres.
1	VI.
2	II.
3	VI.
4	I.
5	IV.
6	II.
7	XI.
8	VII.
9	I.
10	VIII.
11	II.
12	IV.
13	V.
14	I.
15	I.

Epodes.

Epodes.	Metres.
1	XVI.
2	XVI.
3	XVI.
4	XVI.
5	XVI.
6	XVI.
7	XVI.
8	XVI.
9	XVI.
10	XVI.
11	XV.
12	XIX.
13	XIV.
14	XVII.
15	XVII.
16	XVIII.
17	XX.
Secular Hymn,	II.

633. The metres of the following poets must be briefly mentioned:

I. Catullus uses chiefly (1) the Elegiac Distich (**615**); (2) Phalaecian verse (**629**, I.); (3) Choliambus or Scazon (**622**, 4); (4) Iambic Trimeter (**622**); (5) Priapean (**629**, II.).

II. Martial uses largely the Choliambus or Scazon and the Phalaecian verse.

Note 1.—Martial also uses Iambic and Dactylic measures.

Note 2.—Seneca in his choral odes imitates the lyric metres of Horace. He uses Sapphics very freely, and often combines them into systems closing with the Adonic.

Note 3.—Seneca also uses Anapaestic[1] verse with Spondees and Dactyls as equivalents. This consists of one or more dipodies:

Venient annīs | saecula sērīs.

III. Plautus and Terence use chiefly various Iambic and Trochaic metres, but they also use—

1. Bacchiac[1] Metres, generally Tetrameter or Dimeter:

Multās' rēs | simĭ'tū in | meō' cor- | de vor'sō. *Plaut.*
At ta'men ubĭ | fidēs'? sī | rogēs', nīl | pendent' hīc. *Ter.*

Note.—The Molossus, — — —, may take the place of the Bacchius, as in *multās rēs*, and the long syllables may be resolved, as in *at tamen ubĭ.*

2. Cretic[1] Metres, generally Tetrameter or Dimeter:

Nam' dolī | nōn' dolī | sunt', nisi as- | tū' colās. *Plaut.*
Ut' malīs | gau'deant | at'que ex in- | com'modīs. *Ter.*

Note 1.—Plautus also uses Anapaestic metres, especially Dimeters:

Quod agō' subit, ad- | secuē' sequitur. *Plaut.*

This measure admits Dactyls and Spondees, rarely Proceleusmatics, ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑

Note 2.—For *Trochaic* and *Iambic Metres in Comedy*, see **620**, note 2; **622**, 3.

Note 3.—For *Special Peculiarities* in the prosody of Plautus and Terence, see **576**, notes 2 and 3; **578**, note 2; **580**, notes 2, 3, and 4.[2]

Note 4.—On the free use of *Synaeresis* in Comedy, see **608**, III., note 3.

---

[1] See **603**, note 1; **597**, note 1.

[2] For a full account of the metres of Plautus and Terence, see editions of those poets; as the edition of Plautus by Ritschl, of a part of Plautus by Harrington, the edition of Terence by Wagner, and the edition by Crowell; also Spengel, 'Plautus: Kritik, Prosodie, Metrik.'

APPENDIX.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

634. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

NOTE.—Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology;* from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax;* and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric.*

635. The principal FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY are—

1. APHAERESIS, the taking of one or more letters from the beginning of a word: *'st* for *est.*

2. SYNCOPE, the taking of one or more letters from the middle of a word: *dixe* for *dixisse.*

3. APOCOPE, the taking of one or more letters from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne.*

4. EPENTHESIS, the insertion of one or more letters in a word: *Alcumēna* for *Alcmēna*, *ālituum* for *ālitum.*

5. METATHESIS, the transposition of letters: *pistris* for *pristis.*

6. See also FIGURES OF PROSODY, 608.

636. The principal FIGURES OF SYNTAX are—

I. ELLIPSIS, the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

Habitābat ad Jovis (*sc. templum*), *he dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. Hīc illīus arma (*fuērunt*), hīc currus fuit, *here were her arms, here her chariot.* Verg.

1. ASYNDETON is an ellipsis of a conjunction:[1]

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, *I came, I saw, I conquered.* Suet. See also 554, I., 6, with note 1.

2. For the ELLIPSIS of *faciō, dīcō, ōrō*, see 368, 3, note 1; 523, I., note; 569, II., 3.

3. For APOSIOPESIS or RETICENTIA, see 637, XI., 3.

II. BRACHYLOGY, a concise and abridged form of expression:

Nostrī Graecē nesciunt nec Graecī Latīnē,[2] *our people do not know Greek and the Greeks* (do) *not* (know) *Latin.* Cic. Nātūra hominis bēluīs antecēdit,[2] *the nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes.* Cic.

1. *Zeugma* employs a word in two or more connections, though strictly applicable only in one:

Pācem an bellum gerēns,[3] *whether at peace or waging war.* Sall. Ducēs pictāsque exūre carīnās, *slay the leaders and burn the painted ships.* Verg.

---

[1] Asyndeton is sometimes distinguished according to its use, as *Adversative*, *Explicative*, *Enumerative*, etc.; see Nägelsbach, 'Stilistik,' § 200.

[2] Here *nesciunt* suggests *sciunt*, and *bēluīs* in the second example is equivalent to *bēluārum nātūrae.*

[3] *Gerēns*, applicable only to *bellum*, is here used also of *pācem.*

2. *Syllepsis* is the use of an adjective with two or more nouns, or of a verb with two or more subjects:

Pater et māter mortuī sunt, *father and mother are dead* (**439**). Ter. Tū et Tullia valētis, *you and Tullia are well.* Cic.

III. Pleonasm is a full, redundant, or emphatic form of expression:[1]

Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exīre pōssent, *there were two ways by which ways they might depart.* Caes. Eurusque Notusque ruunt, *both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Verg.

1. Polysyndeton is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.

2. Hendiadys is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armīs virīsque *for* virīs armātīs, *with armed men.* Tac.

3. Anaphora is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses:

Mē cūncta Ĭtalia, mē ūniversa cīvitās cōnsulem dēclārāvit, *me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. Epiphora is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses:

Laelius nāvus erat, dōctus erat, *Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Epizeuxis is the emphatic repetition of a word:

Fuit, fuit quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs, *there was, there was formerly virtue in this republic.* Cic.

6. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et:*

Et in bellicīs et in cīvīlibus officiīs, *both in military and in civil offices.* Cic.

Note.—Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

7. A demonstrative pronoun or adverb—*id, hŏc, illud, sic, ita*—is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid cēnsēs* with a clause:

Illud tē ōrō ut dīligēns sīs, *I ask you* (that thing) *to be* (that you be) *diligent.* Cic.

8. Pronouns are often redundant with *quidem;* see **450**, 4, note 2.

9. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet:*

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, *it is lawful* (is permitted that it is, etc.). Cic.

10. Circumlocutions with *rēs, genus, modus,* and *ratiŏ* are common.

IV. Enallage is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another:

Populus lātē rēx (for *rēgnāns*), *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Verg. Sērus (*sērō*) in caelum redeās, *may you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vīna cadīs (*vīnīs cadōs*) onerāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Verg. Cursus jūstī (*jūstus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river.* Liv.

1. Antimeria is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. Hypallage is the use of one case for another, as in the last two examples.

3. Prolepsis or Anticipation is the application of an epithet in anticipation of the action of the verb:

Scūta latentia condunt, *they conceal their hidden shields.* Verg. See also **440**, 2.

4. Synesis is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. For examples, see **438**, 6; **445**, 5; **461**.

---

[1] *Pleonasm*, a full or emphatic expression, differs widely from *Tautology*, which is a needless repetition of the same meaning in different words.

5. **Attraction** unites in construction words not united in sense:

Animal quem (for *quod*) vocāmus hominem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. See also 445, 4, 8, and 9.

6. **Anacolūthon** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence:

Sī, ut dīcunt, omnēs Grāiōs esse (*Grāiī sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

V. **Hyperbaton** is a transposition of words or clauses:

Praeter arma nihil erat super (*supererat*), *nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Valet atque vīvit (*vīvit atque valet*), *he is alive and well.* Ter. Subeunt lūcō, fluviumque relinquunt, *they enter the grove and leave the river.* Verg.

1. **Anastrophe** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **Hysteron Proteron** is a transposition of clauses, as in the last example.

3. **Tmesis** is the separation of the parts of a compound word:

Nec prius respēxī quam vēnimus, *nor did I look back before* (sooner than) *we arrived.* Verg.

4. **Chiasmus** is an inverted arrangement of words in contrasted groups; see **562.**

637. **Figures of Rhetoric** comprise several varieties. The following are the most important:[1]

I. A **Simile** is a direct comparison:

Manūs effūgit imāgō pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō, *the image, like the swift winds, and very like a fleeting dream, escaped my hands.* Verg.

II. **Metaphor** is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet, or action of another:

Reī pūblicae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic. Naufragium fortūnae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic. Aurēs vēritātī clausae sunt, *his ears are closed against the truth.* Cic.

1. *Allegory* is an extended metaphor, or a series of metaphors. For an example, see Horace, I., Ode 14: Ō nāvis . . . occupā portum, etc.[2]

III. **Metonymy** is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it:

Aequō Mārte (for *proeliō*) pūgnātum est, *they fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Furit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *the fire rages.* Verg. Prōximus ārdet Ūcalegōn (*domus Ūcalegontis*), *Ucalegon burns next.* Verg.

Note.—By this figure the cause is often put for the effect, and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, the material for the manufactured article, etc.: *Mārs* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vīnum*, *nōbilitās* for *nōbilēs*, *Graecia* for *Graecī*, *laurea* for *victōria*, *argentum* for *vāsa argentea*, etc.

---

[1] On *Figurative Language*, see the eighth and ninth books of Quintilian, 'Dē Īnstitūtiōne Ōrātōriā,' and the fourth book of 'Auctor ad Herennium' in Cicero's works.

[2] In this beautiful allegory the poet represents the vessel of state as having been well-nigh wrecked in the storms of the civil war, but as now approaching the haven of peace.

1. *Autonomasia* designates a person by some title or office, as *ēversor Karthāginis* for *Scīpiŏ*, *Rōmānae ēloquentiae prīnceps* for *Cicerŏ*.

IV. **Synecdoche** is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

Statiŏ male fīda carīnīs (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships*. Verg.

V. **Irony** is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātōs *bonus* (for *malus*) imperātor vester nōn admīsit, *your good commander did not admit the ambassadors*. Liv. See also **507**, 3, note 1.

Note.—*Metaphor*, *metonymy*, *synecdoche*, and *irony* are often called *Tropes*.

VI. **Climax** (*ladder*) is a steady ascent or advance in interest:

Africānō industria virtūtem, virtūs glōriam, glōria aemulās comparāvit, *industry procured virtue for Africanus*, *virtue glory*, *glory rivals*. Cic.

VII. **Hyperbole** is an exaggeration:

Ventīs et fulminis ōcior ālīs, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning*. Verg.

VIII. **Litotes** denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Nōn opus est = perniciōsum est, *it is not necessary*. Cic.

IX. **Personification** or **Prosopopeia** represents inanimate objects as living beings:

Cūjus latus ille mūcrŏ petēbat? *whose side did that weapon seek?* Cic.[1]

X. **Apostrophe** is an address to inanimate objects or to absent persons:

Vōs, Albānī tumulī, vōs implōrō, *I implore you*, *ye Alban hills*. Cic.

XI. The following figures deserve brief mention:

1. **Alliteration**, a repetition of the same letter at the beginning of successive words:

Vī victa vīs est, *force was conquered by force*. Cic. Fortissimī virī virtūs, *the virtue of a most brave man*. Cic.

2. **Apophasis** or **Paraleipsis**, a pretended omission:[2]

Nōn dīcō tē pecūniās accēpisse; rapīnās tuās omnēs omittō, *I do not state that you accepted money; I omit all your acts of rapine*. Cic.

3. **Aposiopesis** or **Reticentia**, an ellipsis which for rhetorical effect leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quōs ego—sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs, *whom I—but it is better to calm the troubled waves*. Verg.

4. **Euphemism**, the use of mild or agreeable language on unpleasant subjects:

Sī quid mihĭ humānitus accidisset, *if anything common to the lot of man should befall me*—i. e., if I should die. Cic.

---

[1] See also First Oration against Catiline, VII.: Quae tēcum . . . tacita loquitur, etc.

[2] Sometimes called *occupātiŏ*.

5. **Onomatopoeia**, the use of a word in imitation of a special sound:

Bovēs mūgiunt, *the cattle low.* Liv. Murmurat unda, *the wave murmurs.* Verg.

6. **Oxymōron**, an apparent contradiction:

Absentēs adsunt et egentēs abundant, *the absent are present and the needy have an abundance.* Cic.

7. **Paronomasia** or **Agnomination**, a play upon words:

Hunc avium dulcēdō dūcit ad āvium,[1] *the attraction of birds leads him to the pathless wood.* Cic.

II. Latin Language and Literature.

638. The Latin derives its name from the *Latīnī* or *Latins*, the ancient inhabitants of Latium in Italy. It belongs to the *Indo-European* or *Aryan* family, which embraces seven groups of tongues known as the *Indian* or *Sanskrit*, the *Persian* or *Zend*, the *Greek*, the *Italian*, the *Celtic*, the *Slavonic*, and the *Teutonic* or *Germanic*. The Latin is the leading member of the Italian group, which also embraces the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*. All these languages have one common system of inflection, and in various respects strikingly resemble each other. They are the descendants of one common speech spoken by a single race of men untold centuries before the dawn of history.

Note 1.—In illustration of the relationship between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English, compare the following paradigms of declension:[2]

		SINGULAR.		
	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	English.
Stem.	pad,	ποδ,	ped,	foot.
Nom., *Voc.*	pād,	πούς,	pēs,	foot.
Gen.	padas,	ποδός,	pedis,	of a foot.
Dat.	pade,	ποδί,	pedī,	to a foot.
Acc.	pādam,	πόδα,[3]	pedem,	foot.
Abl.	padas,		pede,[4]	from a foot.
Ins.	padā,			with a foot.
Loc.	padi,			in a foot.
		PLURAL.		
Nom., *Voc.*	pādas,	πόδες,	pedēs,	feet.
Gen.	padām,	ποδῶν,	pedum,	of feet.
Dat.	padbhyas,	ποσί,	pedibus,	to feet.
Acc.	padas,	πόδας,	pedēs,	feet.
Abl.	padbhyas,		pedibus,	from feet.
Ins.	padbhis,			with feet.
Loc.	patsu,			in feet.

---

[1] The pun, lost in English, is in the use of *āvium*, a remote or pathless place, with *avium*, of birds.

[2] See also p. 71, foot-note 2; p. 88, foot-note 3.

[3] The *Ablative*, the *Instrumental*, and the *Locative* are lost in Greek, but their places are supplied by the *Genitive* and the *Dative*.

[4] The final consonant, probably *t*, of the original Ablative ending is changed to *s* in *padas* and dropped in *pede*. The *Instrumental* and the *Locative* are lost in Latin, but their places are supplied by the *Ablative*.

Note 2.—In these paradigms observe that the initial *p* in *pad*, *ποδ*, *ped*, becomes *f* in *foot*, and that the final *d* becomes *t*. This change is in accordance with Grimm's *Law of the Rotation of Mutes* in the Germanic languages. This law is as follows:

The Primitive Mutes, which generally remain unchanged in Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin, are changed in passing into the Germanic languages, to which the English belongs. Thus the Sonants, *d*, *g*, in passing into English, become Surds, *t*, *k*; the Surds, *c*, *k*, *p*, *t*, become Aspirates, *h*, *wh*, *f* (for *ph*), *th*; the Aspirates, *bh*,[1] *dh*,[1] *gh*,[1] become Sonants, *b*, *d*, *g*.[2]

Note 3.—The relationship between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English may be abundantly illustrated by comparing the forms of familiar words in these different languages.[3]

639. The earliest specimens of Latin whose date can be determined are found in ancient inscriptions, and belong to the latter part of the fourth century before Christ or to the beginning of the third. Fragments, however, of laws, hymns, and sacred formulas, doubtless of an earlier though uncertain date, have been preserved in Cato, Livy, Cicero, and other Latin writers.[4]

---

[1] *Bh* generally is represented in Latin by *b* or *f*; *dh* by *d* or *f*, and *gh* by *g*, *h*, or *f*; see Schleicher, pp. 244–251.

[2] For an account of Grimm's Law, with its applications, see Max Müller, 'Science of Language,' Second Series, Lecture V.; Papillon, pp. 85–91.

[3] Compare the following:

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	English.
dvau,	δύο,	duo,	two.
trayas,	τρεῖς,	trēs,	three.
ṣaṭ,	ἕξ,	sex,	six.
sapta,	ἑπτά,	septem,	seven.
daça,	δέκα,	decem,	ten.
dvis,	δίς,	bis,	twice.
tris,	τρίς,	ter,	thrice.
mātā,	μήτηρ,	māter,	mother.
pitā,	πατήρ,	pater,	father.
naus,	ναῦς,	nāvis,	navy.
vāk,	ὄψ,	vōx,	voice.

[4] Such are the ancient forms of prayer found in Cato and other writers, the fragments of Salian hymns, of the formulas of the Fetial priests, and of ancient laws, especially of the laws of the Twelve Tables. The following inscription on the tomb of the Scipios shows some of the peculiarities of early Latin:

HONC OINO . PLOIRVME . CONSENTIONT . R
DVONORO . OPTVMO . FVISE . VIRO
LVCIOM . SCIPIONE . FILIOS . BARBATI
CONSOL . CENSOR . AIDILIS . HIC . FVET . A
HEC . CEPIT . CORSICA . ALERIAQVE . VRBE
DEDET . TEMPESTATEBUS . AIDE . MERETO

In ordinary Latin:

Hunc ūnum plūrimī cōnsentiunt R*ōmāī*
bonōrum optimum fuisse virum *virōrum*,
Lūcium Scipiōnem. Fīlius Barbātī
cōnsul, cēnsor, aedīlis hīc fuit a*pud vōs*.
Hīc cēpit Corsicam Aleriamque urbem *pūgnandō*;
dedit tempestātibus aedem meritō *vōtam*.

See Wordsworth, 'Early Latin,' Part II.; F. D. Allen, 'Early Latin'; Roby, I., p. 418.

640. The history of Roman literature begins with Livius Andronicus, a writer of plays, and the earliest Roman author known to us. It embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods. These periods, with their principal authors, are as follows:

I. The Ante-Classical Period, from 250 to 81 B. C.:

Ennius,
Plautus,
Terence,
Lucretius.

II. The Classical Period, embracing—

1. The *Golden Age*, from 81 B. C. to 14 A. D.:

Cicero,
Caesar,
Sallust,
Nepos,
Livy,
Vergil,
Horace,
Ovid,
Catullus,
Tibullus,
Propertius.

2. The *Silver Age*, from 14 to 180 A. D.:

Phaedrus,
Vellēius,
The Senecas,
The Plinies,
Tacitus,
Curtius,
Quintilian,
Suetonius,
Juvenal,
Persius,
Lucan,
Martial.

III. The Post-Classical Period, embracing—

1. The *Brazen Age*, from 180 to 476 A. D.:

Justin,
Victor,
Eutropius,
Macrobius,
Lactantius,
Ausonius,
Claudian,
Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*, from 476 to 550 A. D.:

Boēthius,
Cassiodōrus,
Justinian,
Priscian.

III. The Roman Calendar.

641. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

642. Peculiarities.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month.

2. The Nones, the *fifth*—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October.

3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Note.—Hence, after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridiē Kalendās*, *Nōnās*, etc.; the second before each by *diē tertiō* (not secundō) *ante Kalendās*, etc.; the third, by *diē quartō*, etc.; and so on through the month.

1. This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridiē Kalendās* becomes the second before the Calends, *diē tertiō ante Kalendās*, the third, etc.

2. In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Kalendās*, *Nōnās*, etc., as, *diē quartō ante Nōnās Jānuāriās*, often shortened to *quartō ante Nōnās Jān.*, or *IV. ante Nōnās Jān.*, or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnās Jān.*, the second of January.

3. *Ante diem* is common, instead of *diē—ante*, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnās Jān.* for *diē quartō ante Nōnās Jān.*

4. The expressions *ante diem Kal.*, etc., *pridiē Kal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Īdūs Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv.* *Ad pridiē Nōnās Māiās*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

643. Calendar for the Year.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, October.	January, August, December.	April, June, September, November.	February.
1	Kalendīs.[1]	Kalendīs.	Kalendīs.	Kalendīs.
2	VI. Nōnās.[1]	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.	Prīdiē Nōnās.
5	III. "	Nōnīs.	Nōnīs.	Nōnīs.
6	Prīdiē Nōnās.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.	VIII. Īdūs.
7	Nōnīs.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Īdūs.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Prīdiē Idūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.	Prīdiē Īdūs.
13	III. "	Īdibus.	Īdibus.	Īdibus.
14	Prīdiē Īdūs.	XIX. Kalend.[2]	XVIII. Kalend.[2]	XVI. Kalend.[2]
15	Īdibus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Kalend.[2]	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.)[3] "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prīd. Kal.(III.Kal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prīd. Kal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Prīdiē Kalend.	
31	Prīdiē Kalend.	Prīdiē Kalend.		

---

[1] To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nōnās, Īdūs, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (642, III., 2).

[2] The Calends of the following month are of course meant; the 16th of March, for instance, is *XVII. Kalendās Aprīlēs.*

[3] The inclosed forms apply to *leap-year.*

644. English and Latin Dates.—The table (**643**) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

VIII. ante Īdūs Jān. = 13 − (8 − 1) = 13 − 7 = 6th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Kal. Feb. = 31 − (18 − 2) = 31 − 16 = 15th of January.

Note.—In leap-year the 24th and the 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Kal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered as if the month contained only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V.*, *IV.*, *III. Kal. Mart.*, and *prīdiē Kal. Mart.*

645. The Roman day, from sunrise to sunset, and the night, from sunset to sunrise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. The hour, being uniformly $^1/_{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures.

646. The principal Roman coins were the *ās*, of copper; the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver; and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period may be approximately given as follows:

Ās	1 to 2	cents.
Sestertius	5	"
Quīnārius	10	"
Dēnārius	20	"
Aureus = 25 dēnāriī	$5.00	

1. The *ās*, the unit of the Roman currency, contained originally a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time till at last it contained only $^1/_{24}$ of a pound.

Note.—An *ās*, whatever its weight, was divided into twelve *unciae*.

2. The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ *assēs*, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *ās* depreciated in value, the number of *assēs* in these coins was increased.

3. The *ās* is also used as a general unit of measure. Thus—

1) *In Weight*, the *ās* is a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*, the *ās* is a foot or a jūgerum (**648**, IV. and V.), and the *uncia* is $^1/_{12}$ of a foot or of a jūgerum.

3) *In Interest*, the *ās* is the unit of interest—i. e., 1 per cent. a month,

or 12 per cent. a year; the *uncia* is $^{1}/_{12}$ per cent. a month, or 1 per cent. a year; and the *sēmis* is $^{6}/_{12}$ per cent. a month, or 6 per cent. a year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*, the *ās* is the whole estate, and the *uncia* $^{1}/_{12}$ of it: *hērēs ex āsse*, heir of the whole estate; *hērēs ex dodrante*, heir of $^{9}/_{12}$.

647. Computation of Money.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nūmmus;* but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertiī* with the proper cardinals:

Quīnque sestertiī, 5 *sesterces;* vīgintī sestertiī, 20 *sesterces;* ducentī sestertiī, 200 *sesterces.*

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mīlle sestertiī*, or *mīlle sestertiūm.*

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *mīlia sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia:*

Duo mīlia sestertiūm, *or* duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces;* quīnque mīlia sestertiūm, *or* quīnque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces.*

Note.—With *sestertia* the distributives are generally used, as, *bīna sestertia.*

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, deciēs, vīciēs, etc. Thus—

Deciēs sestertium, 1,000,000 (10 × 100,000) sesterces; vīciēs sestertium, 2,000,000 (20 × 100,000) sesterces.

1. Sestertium.—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plural of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Deciēs centēna mīlia sestertiūm. Centēna mīlia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertiūm* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension.

2. Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *deciēs*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. The sign HS is often used for *sestertiī*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium:*

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertiī). Dēna HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Deciēs HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

648. Weights and Measures.—The following weights and measures deserve mention:

I. The *Lībra*, also called *Ās* or *Pondō*, equal to about 11½ ounces avoirdupois, is the basis of Roman weights.

1. The *Lībra*, like the *ās* in money, is divided into 12 parts.

II. The *Modius*, equal to about a peck, is the basis of dry measure.

III. The *Amphora*, containing a Roman cubic foot, equivalent to about seven gallons, is a convenient basis of liquid measure.

IV. The Roman *Pēs* or *Foot*, equivalent to about 11.6 inches, is the basis of long measure.

Note.—*Cubitus* is equivalent to 1½ Roman feet, *passus* to 5, and *stadium* to 625.

V. The *Jūgerum*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre, is the basis of square measure.

V. ROMAN NAMES.

649. A Roman citizen usually had three names. The first, or *praenōmen*, designated the *individual;* the second, or *nōmen*, the *gēns* or *tribe;* and the third, or *cōgnōmen*, the *family*. Thus, *Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō* was *Pūblius* of the *Scīpiō* family of the *Cornelian* gēns, and *Gāius Jūlius Caesar* was *Gāius* of the *Caesar* family of the *Julian* gēns.

1. The praenōmen was often abbreviated:

A. = Aulus.
Ap. = Appius.
C. = Gāius.
Cn. = Gnaeus.
D. = Decimus.
L. = Lūcius.
M. = Mārcus.
M'. = Mānius.
Mam. = Māmercus.
N. = Numerius.
P. = Pūblius.
Q. (Qu.) = Quīntus.
S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
Ser. = Servius.
Sp. = Spurius.
T. = Titus.
Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.

2. Sometimes an *āgnōmen* or *surname* was added. Thus *Scīpiō* received the surname *Africānus* from his victories in Africa: *Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Africānus.*

3. An adopted son took (1) the full name of his adoptive father, and (2) an *āgnōmen* in *ānus* formed from the name of his own gēns. Thus *Octāvius* when adopted by Caesar became *Gāius Jūlius Caesar Octāviānus.* Afterward the title of *Augustus* was conferred upon him, making his full name *Gāius Jūlius Caesar Octāviānus Augustus.*

4. Women were generally known by the name of their gēns. Thus the daughter of Jūlius Caesar was simply *Jūlia;* of Tullius Cicerō, *Tullia;* of Cornēlius Scīpiō, *Cornēlia.* Three daughters in any family of the Cornelian gēns would be known as *Cornēlia*, *Cornēlia Secunda* or *Minor*, and *Cornēlia Tertia.*

650. Various abbreviations occur in classical authors:

A. D. = ante diem.
Aed. = aedīlis.
A. U. C. = annō urbis conditae.
Cos. = cōnsul.
Coss. = cōnsulēs.
D. = dīvus.
D. D. = dōnō dedit.
Des. = dēsīgnātus.
D. M. = dīīs mānibus.
D. S. = dē suō.
D. S. P. P. = dē suā pecūniā posuit.
Eq. Rom. = eques Rōmānus.
F. = fīlius.
F. C. = faciendum cūrāvit.
Id. = Īdūs.
Imp. = imperātor.
K. (Kal.) = Kalendae.
Leg. = lēgātus.
Non. = Nōnae.
O. M. = optimus māximus.
P. C. = patrēs cōnscrīptī.
Pont. Max. = pontifex māximus.
P. R. = populus Rōmānus.
Pr. = praetor.
Praef. = praefectus.
Proc. = prōcōnsul.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bonum, fēlīx, faustumque sit.
Quir. = Quirītēs.
Resp. = rēs pūblica.
S. = senātus.
S. C. = senātūs cōnsultum.
S. D. P. = salūtem dīcit plūrimam.
S. P. Q. R. = senātus populusque Rōmānus.
Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis.

VI. VOWELS BEFORE TWO CONSONANTS OR A DOUBLE CONSONANT.

651. On the natural quantity[1] of vowels before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter **j**, observe—

I. That vowels are long before **ns** and **nf**; generally also before **gn** and **j**:

cōnscius, cōnsēnsus, cōnstāns, cōnstruō, cōnsul, īnsānus, īnscrībō, īnsequor, īnstāns, īnsula, amāns, monēns, regēns, audiēns; cōnferō, cōnficiō, cōnfluō, īnfāmia, īnfēlīx, īnfēnsus, īnferō, īnfrequēns; abiēgnus, benīgnus, māgnus, malīgnus, rēgnum, sīgnum, stāgnum; cūjus, ējus, hūjus, mājor, pējor.

II. That all vowels which represent diphthongs, or are the result of contraction, are long:

exīstimō, amāsse, audīssem, intrōrsum,[2] intrōrsus, prōrsus, quōrsum, rūrsum, sūrsum, mālle, māllem, nōlle, nōllem, nūllus, ūllus,[2] Mārs,[2] Mārtis.

III. That the long vowels of Primitives are retained in Derivatives—

1. In **āscō**, **ēscō**, and **īscō** in Inceptives from verbs of the first, second, or fourth conjugation:

gelāscō, labāscō, acēscō, ārēscō, flōrēscō, latēscō, patēscō, silēscō, virēscō, ēdormīscō, obdormīscō, scīscō, cōnscīscō.

2. In large classes of words of which the following are examples:

crās-tinus, dūc-tilis, fās-tus, ne-fās-tus, flōs-culus, jūs-tus, in-jūs-tus, jūs-tissimus, jūs-titia, mātr-imōnium, ōs-culum, ōs-culor, ōs-tium, palūs-ter, rās-trum, rōs-trum, rūs-ticus, salīc-tum.

IV. That vowels are long in the ending of the Nominative Singular of nouns and adjectives with long increments in the Genitive:

frūx, lēx, lūx, pāx, plēbs, rēx, thōrāx, vōx.

V. That in the second person of the Perfect Active **ī** is long in the penult:

amāvīstī, amāvīstis, monuīstī, monuīstis, rēxīstī, rēxīstis, audīvīstī, audīvīstis.

---

[1] It is often difficult, and sometimes absolutely impossible, to determine the natural quantity of vowels before two consonants, but the subject has of late been somewhat carefully investigated by Ritschl, Schmitz, and others. An attempt has been made in this article to collect the most important results of these labors. The chief sources of information upon this subject are (1) ancient inscriptions, (2) Greek transcriptions of Latin words, (3) the testimony of ancient grammarians, (4) the comic poets, and (5) etymology. See Schmitz, 'Beiträge'; Ritschl, 'Rheinisches Museum,' vol. xxxi., pp. 481—492; Schōll, 'Ācta Societātis Philologae Lipsiēnsis,' vol. vi., pp. 71—215; Müller, 'Orthographiae et Prosōdiae Latīnae Summārium'; Foerster, 'Rheinisches Museum,' xxxiii., pp. 291-299.

[2] *Intrōrsum* from *intrōversum*; *ūllus* from *ūnulus*; *Mārs* from *Mavors*.

NOTE.—According to Priscian,[1] *e* is long before *xi*, *xisti*, etc., in the Perfect Active: *rēxi*, *rēxit*, *tēxērunt*, *illēximus*.

VI. That long vowels occur in the following words and in their derivatives:

āctiō
āctitō
āctor
āctus
āxilla
clāssis
crīspus
dāmma
ēmptus
fēstus
Fēstus
Jūppiter
lēctitō
lēctor
lēctus
līctor
līttera
luēlla
Mārcus
māxilla
māximus
mīlle
nārrō
Nōrba
nūntius
ōrdō
ōrnāmentum
ōrnō
pāstor
pāxillus
Pōlliō
Popīllius
prīscus
propīnquus
prōximus
querēlla
quīnque
quīntus
rēctiō
rēctor
rēctus
Sāllustius
sēscentī
Sēstius
strūctor
strūctūra
strūctus
tāxillus
tōssillae
trīstis
ūnctiō
ūnctitō
ūnctor
ūnctūra
ūnctus
Vēstīnus
vēstis
vēxillum
vīlla
Vīpsānius

VII. That vowels are probably short before nt and nd:[2]

amant, amantis, monent, monentis, prūdentis, prūdentia, amandus, monendus, regendus.

VIII. That the short vowels of Primitives are retained in Derivatives:

inter-nus, juven-tus, līber-tās, mūnus-culum, patr-imōnium, pauper-culus, super-bus, vir-tūs.

IX. That vowels are generally short in the ending of the Nominative Singular of nouns and adjectives with short increments in the Genitive:

adeps, calix, dux, grex, hiems, jūdex, nex, nux.

NOTE.—Vowels before final *ns* are of course excepted.

X. That the first vowel in the following endings is short:

1. **ernus, ernius, ernīnus**; **urnus, urnius, urnīnus**:

māternus, paternus, Līternius, Līternīnus, taciturnus, Sāturnius, Sāturnīnus.

2. **ustus, estus, ester, estis, esticus, estīnus, estris**:

robustus, venustus, vetustus, honestus, modestus, campester, silvester, agrestis, caelestis, domesticus, clandestīnus, terrestris.

XI. That all vowels are to be treated as short unless there are good reasons for believing them to be long.

---

[1] See Book IX., 28.

[2] See p. 37, foot-note 2; p. 61, foot-note 2.

INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention. In regard to compounds of prepositions (344) observe—

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form; see 344, 4–6.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine; see 221.

A

Ab-dō,[1] ere, didī, ditum, 271.
Ab-iciō; see *jaciō*, 271, 2.
Ab-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itum, p. 124, foot-note 2.
Abolēscō, ere, olēvī, olitum, 277.
Ab-ripiō; see *rapiō*, 274.
Abs-condō; see *abdō*, 271.
Ab-sum, 290, I.
Ac-cendō, ere, ī, cēnsum, 272, 3.
Ac-cidō; see *cadō*, 272; 301.
Ac-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
Ac-cipiō; see *capiō*, 271, 2.
Ac-colō; see *colō*, 274.
Ac-cumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitum, 273.
Acēscō, ere, acuī, —, 281.
Ac-quīrō; see *quaerō*, 278.
Acuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Ad-dō; see *abdō*, 271; 255, I., 4.
Ad-fārī, p. 142, foot-note 5.
Ad-ferō, 292, 2.
Ad-imō; see *emō*, 271, 2.
Ad-ipiscor, ī, adeptus sum, 283, foot-note 1.
Ad-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Ad-orior; see *orior*, 288, 2.
Ad-spiciō; see *aspiciō*, 217, 2.
Ad-stō, 259, N. 2.
Ad-sum, 290, I.
Ag-gredior; see *gradior*, 283.
Ā-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
Agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, 271, 2.
Āiō, *def.*, 297, II.
Albeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Algeō, ēre, alsī, —, 265.
Al-liciō, ere, lēxī, lēctum, 217, 2; p. 130, foot-note 8.
Alō, ere, aluī, alitum, altum, 273.
Amb-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Amb-iō, 295, N. 2.
Amiciō, īre, uī (xī), tum, 285.
Amō, 205.
Amplector, ī, amplēxus sum, 283.
Angō, ere, anxī, —, 272, N. 1.
An-nuō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Ante-capiō, p. 128, foot-note 14.
Apage, *def.*, 297, III.
Aperiō, īre, uī, tum, 285.
Apiscor, ī, aptus sum, 283.
Ap-pareō; see *pareō*, 262; 301.
Ap-petō; see *petō*, 278.
Ap-plicō; see *plicō*, 258.
Ap-pōnō; see *pōnō*, 273.
Arcessō, ere, īvī, ītum, 278.
Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, 265.
Ārēscō, ere, āruī, —, 281.
Arguō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Ar-ripiō; see *rapiō*, 274.
A-scendō; see *scandō*, 272, 3.
A-spergō; see *spargō*, 270.
A-spiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum, 217, 2.
As-sentior, īrī, sēnsus sum, 288, 2.
As-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
At-texō; see *texō*, 274.
At-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
At-tingō; see *tangō*, 271.
At-tollō; see *tollō*, 271.
Audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 268, 3.
Audiō, 211.
Au-ferō, 292, 2.
Augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, 264.
Avē, *def.*; see *havē*, 297, III.

---

[1] Final ō in verbs is sometimes shortened, though rarely in the best writers.

15

B

Bālbūtiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Batuō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Bibō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Blandior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.

C

Cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, 272.
Caecūtiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, 272.
Calēscō, ere, caluī, —, 281.
Calveō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Candeō, ēre, uī, 262, N. 1.
Candō, p. 129, foot-note 14.
Cāneō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Canō, ere, cecinī, cantum, 271.
Capessō, ere, īvī, ītum, 278.
Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, 217; 218; 271, 2.
Carpō, ere, sī, tum, 269.
Caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 266.
Cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, 270.
Cedo, *def.*, 297, III.
Cellō, *obs.*; see *excellō*, 273, N.
Cēnō, 257, N. 2.
Cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsum, 263.
Cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 277.
Cieō, ēre, cīvī, citum, 265, N.
Cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 269.
Ciō, 265, N.
Circum-agō, p. 128, foot-note 13.
Circum-dō, 255, I., 4; 259, N. 1.
Circum-sistō; see *sistō*, 271.
Circum-stō, 255, I., 4.
Clangō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, 270.
Claudō, ere, — (*to be lame*), 272, N. 2.
Co-arguō; see *arguō*, 279.
Co-emō, p. 128, foot-note 15.
Coepī, *def.*, 297.
Cō-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Col-līdō; see *laedō*, 270.
Col-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Col-lūceō; see *lūceō*, 265.
Colō, ere, uī, cultum, 274.
Com-edō, 291, N. 3.
Com-miniscor, ī, commentus sum, 283.
Com-moveō; see *moveō*, 266.
Com-parcō (percō); see *parcō*, 272.
Comperiō, īre, perī, pertum, 287, N.
Compēscō, ere, pēscuī, —, 273, N.
Com-pingō; see *pangō*, 271.
Com-plector, ī, plēxus sum.
Com-pleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 261.
Com-primō; see *premō*, 270.
Com-pungō, ere, punxī, punctum; see *pungō*, 271.
Con-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
Con-cīdō; see *caedō*, 272.
Con-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
Con-clūdō; see *claudō*, 270.
Con-cupīscō, ere, cupīvī, cupītum, 281, N.
Con-cutiō; see *quatiō*, 270.
Con-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Cōn-ferciō; see *farciō*, 286.
Cōn-ferō, 292, 2.
Cōn-ficiō; see *faciō*, 271, 2.
Cōn-fit, *def.*, 297, III.
Cōn-fiteor; see *fateor*, 268, 2.
Cōn-fringō; see *frangō*, 271, 2.
Con-gruō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Cōnīveō, ēre, nīvī, nīxī, —, 265; 267, 3.
Cōnor, 260.
Cōn-serō; see *serō*, 277, N.
Cōn-sistō; see *sistō*, 271.
Cōn-spiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum, 217, 2.
Cōn-stituō; see *statuō*, 279.
Cōn-stō, 301; see *stō*, 259.
Cōnsulō, ere, uī, tum, 274.
Con-temnō; see *temnō*, 272, N. 2.
Con-texō; see *texō*, 274.
Con-tingō; see *tangō*, 271; 301.
Convalēscō, ere, valuī, valitum, 281, N.
Coquō, ere, coxī, coctum.
Cor-ripiō; see *rapiō*, 274.
Cor-ruō; see *ruō*, 279.
Crēbrescō, ere, crēbruī, —, 282, N.
Crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, 271.
Crepō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
Crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 277.
Cubō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
Cūdō, ere, cūdī, cūsum, 272, 3.
Cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
Cupiō, ere, īvī, ītum, 217, 1; 278.
Currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, 272.

D

Dēbeō, 262.
Dē-cerpō, ere, sī, tum, p. 127, foot-note 2.
Decet, *impers.*, 299.
Dē-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Dē-fendō, ere, ī, fēnsum, 272, 3.
Dē-fetiscor; see *fatiscor*, 283.
Dē-fit, *def.*, 297, III.
Dēgō, ere, dēgī; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Dēlectō, *impers.*, 301.
Dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 261.
Dē-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Dē-micō; see *micō*, 258.
Dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum.
Dē-pangō; see *pangō*, 271.
Dē-primō; see *premō*, 270.
Depsō, ere, uī, itum, tum, 273.
Dē-scendō; see *scandō*, 272, 3.

Dē-siliō; see *saliō*, 285.
Dē-sipiō; see *sapiō*, 278.
Dē-sum, 290, I.
Dē-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Dē-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Dē-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
Dīcō, ere, dixī, dictum, 238.
Dif-ferō, 292, 2.
Dī-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
Dī-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Dī-micō; see *micō*, 258.
Dī-rigō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, p. 127, foot-note 2.
Discō, ere, didicī, —, 271.
Dis-crepō; see *crepō*, 258.
Dis-cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
Dis-pertior; see *partior*, 288.
Dis-pliceō; see *placeō*, 262.
Dis-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Dī-stinguō; see *exstinguō*, 269.
Dī-stō, 259, N. 2.
Dītescō, ere, —, 282.
Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum, 270.
Dō, dare, dedī, datum, 259.
Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum, 263.
Dolet, *impers.*, 301.
Domō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
Dōnō, 259.
Dūcō, ere, duxī, ctum, 269; 238.
Dulcescō, ere, —, 282.
Duplicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
Dūrescō, ere, dūruī, —, 282, N.

E

Edō, ere, ēdī, ēsum, 272, 2; 291.
Ef-fārī, p. 142, foot-note 5.
Egeō, ere, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Ē-liciō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Ē-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Ē-micō; see *micō*, 258.
Ēmineō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, 271, 2.
Ē-necō, āre, uī, tum, 258.
Eō, īre, īvī, itum, 295.
Ēsuriō, īre, —, ītum, 284, N. 2.
Ē-vādo, ere, vāsī, vāsum, 270.
Ex-ārdēscō, ere, ārsī, ārsum, 281, N.
Excellō, ere, uī (rare), —, 273, N.
Ex-clūdō; see *claudō*, 270.
Ex-currō; see *currō*, 272.
Ex-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Expergīscor, ī, experrēctus sum, 283.
Ex-perior, īrī, pertus sum, 288, 2.
Ex-pleō; see *compleō*, 261.
Ex-plicō; see *plicō*, 258.
Ex-plōdō; see *plaudō*, 270.
Ex-stinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctum, 269.
Ex-stō, 259, N. 2.
Ex-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Ex-tollō; see *tollō*, 271.

F

Facessō, ere, īvī, ī, ītum, 278.
Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, 217, 1; 238; 271, 2.
Fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, 272.
Farciō, īre, farsī, fartum, farctum, 286.
Fārī, *def.*, 297, II.
Fateor, ērī, fassus sum, 268, 2.
Fatiscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Fatiscor, ī, —, 288.
Faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, 266.
Fendō, *obs.*; see *dēfendō*, 272, 3.
Feriō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 292.
Ferōciō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Ferveō, ēre, fervī, ferbuī, —, 267, 3.
Fīdō, ere, fīsus sum, 283.
Fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, 270.
Findō, ere, fidī, fissum, 272, 3.
Fingō, ere, finxī, fīctum.
Fīniō, 284.
Fīō, fierī, factus sum, 294.
Flāveō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Flectō, ere, flēxī, flēxum, 270.
Fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 261.
Flōreō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Flōrēscō, ere, flōruī, —, 281.
Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum, 279, N.
Fodiō, ere, fōdī, fōssum, 217, 1; 272, 2.
Forem, *def.*, 204, 2; 297, III, 2.
Foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtum, 266.
Frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, 271, 2.
Fremō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Frendō, ere, —, frēssum, frēsum, 270.
Fricō, āre, uī, ātum, tum, 258.
Frīgeō, ēre, frīxī (rare), —, 265.
Frondeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Fruor, ī, frūctus, fruitus sum, 283.
Fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, 217, 1; 271, 2.
Fulciō, īre, fulsī, fultum, 286.
Fulgeō, ēre, fulsī, —, 265.
Fulgō, 265, foot-note 5.
Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.
Fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, 272, 2.
Fungor, ī, functus sum, 283.
Furō, ere, uī, —, 273, N.

G

Ganniō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 268, 3.
Gemō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, 269.
Gignō, ere, genuī, genitum, 273.
Glīscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Gradior, ī, gressus sum, 217, 3; 283.
Grandescō, ere, —, 282.
Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.
Gravescō, ere, —.

H

Habeō, 262.
Haereō, ēre, haesī, haesum, 265.
Hauriō, īre, hausī, haustum, haustūrus, hausūrus, 286.
Havē, *def.*, 297, III.
Hebeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Hiscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Honōrō, 257.
Horreō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Hortor, 232; 260.
Hūmeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.

I

Īcō, ere, īcī, ictum, 272, 3.
Ī-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
Il-liciō, ere, lēxī, lēctum, 217, 2.
Il-līdō; see *laedō*, 270.
Imbuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Immineō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Im-parcō; see *parcō*, 272.
Im-pertior; see *partior*, 288.
Im-pingō; see *pangō*, 271.
Im-pleō, p. 124, foot-note 1.
In-cendō; see *accendō*, 272, 3.
Incessō, ere, īvī, ī, —, 278.
In-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
In-cīdō; see *caedō*, 272.
In-crepō; see *crepō*, 258.
In-crēscō; see *crēscō*, 277.
In-cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
In-cutiō; see *quatiō*, 270.
Ind-igeō, ēre, uī, —; see *egeō*, 262, N. 1.
Ind-ipiscor; see *apiscor*, 283.
In-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Indulgeō, ēre, dulsī, dultum, 264.
Ineptiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Īn-ferō, 292, 2.
Īnfit, *def.*, 297, III.
Ingruō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
In-nōtescō, ere, nōtuī, 282, N.
In-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Inquam, *def.*, 297, II.
Īn-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Īn-spiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum.
Īn-stō; see *stō*, 259.
Intel-legō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Interest, *impers.*, 301.
Inter-nōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
In-veterāscō, ere, rāvī, rātum, 281, N.
Īrascor, ī, —, 283.
Ir-ruō; see *ruō*, 279.

J

Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, 217, 1; 271, 2.
Jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum, 265.
Jūrō, 257, N. 2.
Juvenescō, ere, —.
Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, 259, 2; 301.

L

Lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, 283.
Lacessō, ere, īvī, ītum, 278.
Laciō, *obs.*; see *alliciō*, p. 130, foot-note 8; 217, 2.
Lacteō, ēre, —, 262, N. 1.
Laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, 270.
Lambō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Langueō, ēre, ī, —, 267, 3.
Largior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.
Lateō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Lavō, āre, lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 259, 2.
Legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, 271, 2.
Lēniō, 284.
Līberō, 257.
Libet, *impers.*, 299.
Liceor, ērī, itus sum, 268.
Licet, *impers.*, 299.
Linō, ere, līvī, lēvī, litum, 278.
Linquō, ere, līquī, —, 271, 2.
Liqueō, ēre, liquī (licuī), 267.
Liquet, *impers.*, 299.
Līquor, ī, —, 283.
Loquor, ī, locūtus sum, 283.
Lūceō, ēre, lūxī, —, 265.
Lūcēscit, *impers.*, 300.
Lūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum, 270.
Lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, —, 265.
Luō, ere, luī, —.

M

Macrescō, ere, macruī, —, 282, N.
Madeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Madēscō, ere, maduī, —.
Maereō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, 293.
Mandō, ere, ī, mānsum, 272, 3.
Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, 265.
Mātūresco, ere, mātūruī, —, 282, N.
Medeor, ērī, —, 268, 2.
Meminī, *def.*, 297, I.
Mentior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.
Mereor, ērī, itus sum, 268.
Mergō, ere, mersī, mersum, 270.
Mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum, 288, 2.
Metō, ere, messuī, messum, 275.
Metuō, ere, uī, —, 272, N. 1.
Micō, āre, uī, —, 258.
Miniscor, *obs.*; see *comminiscor*, 283.
Minuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Mīror, 260.
Misceō, ēre, miscuī, mīstum, mīxtum, 263.
Misereor, ērī, itus *or* tus sum, 268, 2.
Miseret, *impers.*, 299.
Mītescō, ere, —, 282.
Mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, 270.
Mōlior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.

Mollēscō, ere, —, 282.
Molō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Moneō, ēre, uī, itum, 207; 262.
Mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsum, 267.
Morior, ī (īrī), mortuus sum, 217, 3; 283.
Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 266.
Mulceō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum, 265.
Mulgeō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum, 265.
Multiplicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
Mūniō, 284.

N

Nanciscor, ī, nactus (nanctus) sum, 283.
Nāscor, ī, nātus sum, 283.
Necō, p. 123, foot-note 4.
Nectō, ere, nēxī, nēxuī, nēxum, 270; 275.
Neg-legō, ere, lēxī, lēctum; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Neō, ēre, nēvī, nētum, 261.
Ne-queō, īre, īvī, itum, 296.
Nigrescō, ere, nigruī, —.
Ningō, ere, ninxī, —, 272, N. 1.
Niteō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Nītor, ī, nīsus, nīxus sum, 283.
Noceō, 262.
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, 293.
Nōminō, 257.
Nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 278.
Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 269.
Nūpturiō, īre, īvī, —, 284, N. 2.

O

Ob-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Ob-dormīscō, ere, dormīvī, dormītum, 281, N.
Oblīviscor, ī, oblītus sum, 283.
Ob-mūtescō, ere, mūtuī, —, 282, N.
Ob-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Ob-solēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Ob-stō; see *stō*, 259.
Ob-surdescō, ere, surduī, —.
Ob-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Oc-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
Oc-cīdō; see *caedō*, 272.
Oc-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
Oc-cipiō; see *capiō*, 271, 2.
Occulō, ere, uī, tum, 274.
Ōdī, *def.*, 297, I.
Of-fendō; see *dēfendō*, 272, 3.
Of-ferō, 292, 2.
Oleō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Olēscō, *obsolete*; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Operiō, īre, uī, tum, 285.
Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
Op-perior, īrī, pertus, peritus sum, 288, 2.
Ordior, īrī, orsus sum, 288, 2.
Orior, īrī, ortus sum, 288, 2.
Os-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Ovat, *def.*, 297, III.

P

Paciscor, ī, pactus sum, 283.
Paenitet, *impers.*, 299.
Palleō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Pandō, ere, ī, pānsum, passum, 272, 3.
Pangō, ere, pepigī, pāctum, 271.
Pangō, ere, panxī, pēgī, panctum, pāctum, 271.
Parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsum, 272.
Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, 262.
Pariō, ere, peperī, partum, 217, 1; 271.
Partior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.
Parturiō, īre, īvī, —, 284, N. 2.
Pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstum, 276.
Pateō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Patior, ī, passus sum, 217, 3; 283.
Paveō, ēre, pāvī, —, 266.
Pectō, ere, pēxī, pēxum, 270.
Pel-liciō, ere, lēxī, lēctum, 217, 2.
Pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 272.
Pendeō, ēre, pependī, pēnsum, 267.
Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, 272.
Per-agō, p. 128, foot-note 13.
Per-cellō; see *excellō*, 273, N.
Per-cēnseō; see *cēnseō*, 263.
Per-dō, ere, didī, ditum; see *abdō*, 271.
Pergō (*for* per-rigō), ere, perrēxī, perrēctum; see *regō*, 269.
Per-petior; see *patior*, 283.
Per-stō; see *stō*, 259.
Per-taedet, p. 143, foot-note 8.
Per-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Pessum-dō, 259, N. 1.
Petō, ere, īvī, ītum, 278.
Piget, *impers.*, 299.
Pingō, ere, pinxī, pictum.
Pīnsō (pīsō), ere, ī, uī, pīnsitum, pīstum, pīnsum, 272, 3; 273.
Placeō, 262; 301.
Plaudō, ere, sī, sum, 270.
Plectō, ere, plēxī, plēxum, 270.
Plector; see *amplector*, 283.
Pleō, *obsolete*; see *compleō*, 261.
Plicō, āre, āvī, uī, ātum, itum, 258.
Pluō, ere, ī or plūvī, —, 272, N. 1; 300.
Polleō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Polliceor, ērī, itus sum, 268.
Pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, 273.
Poscō, ere, poposcī, —, 272.
Pos-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Possum, posse, potuī, —, 290, II.
Potior, īrī, ītus sum, 283.

Pōtō, āre, āvī, ātum, um, 257, N. 1.
Prae-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
Prae-currō; see *currō*, 272.
Prae-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Prae-stō; see *stō*, 259; 301.
Prae-sum, 290, 1.
Prae-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
Prandeō, ēre, ī, prānsum, 267, 3.
Prehendō, ere, ī, hēnsum, 272, 3.
Premō, ere, pressī, pressum, 270.
Prēndō, p. 130, foot-note 1.
Prōd-igō; see *agō*, 271.
Prō-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Proficīscor, ī, profectus sum, 283.
Pro-fiteor; see *fateor*, 268, 2.
Prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum.
Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, 290, III.
Prō-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Psallō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Pudet, *impers.*, 299.
Puerascō, ere, —, 282.
Pūgnō, 257.
Pungō, ere, pupugī, punctum, 271.
Pūniō, 284.

Q

Quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 278.
Quaesō, *def.*, 297, III.
Quatiō, ere, quassī, quassum, 217, 1; 270.
Queō, īre, īvī, itum, 296.
Queror, ī, questus sum, 283.
Quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 277.

R

Rādō, ere, rāsī, rāsum, 270.
Rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, 217, 1; 274.
Rauciō, īre, rausī, rausum, 287.
Re-cēnseō; see *cēnseō*, 263.
Re-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
Re-cīdō; see *caedō*, 272.
Re-crūdēscō, ere, crūduī, 282, N.
Red-arguō; see *arguō*, 279.
Red-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Re-fellō; see *fallō*, 272.
Re-ferō; see *ferō*, 292.
Rēfert, *impers.*, 301.
Regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, 209; 269.
Re-linquō; see *linquō*, 271, 2.
Re-miniscor, ī, —, 288.
Renīdeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Reor, rērī, ratus sum, 268, 2.
Re-pangō; see *pangō*, 271.
Re-parcō; see *parcō*, 272.
Re-periō, īre, perī, pertum, 287, N.
Re-plicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
Re-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Re-sipeō; see *sapiō*, 278.
Re-sonō; see *sonō*, 258.
Re-spergō; see *spargō*, 270.
Re-spondeō, 255, I., 4.
Re-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Re-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Re-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
Re-vīvīscō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, 281, N.
Rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, 265.
Ringor, ī, rictus sum, 288.
Rōdō, ere, rōsī, rōsum, 270.
Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
Rubeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Rudō, ere, īvī, ītum, 278.
Rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, 271, 2.
Ruō, ere, ruī, rutum, ruitūrus, 279.

S

Saepiō, īre, psī, ptum, 286.
Sāgiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Saliō, īre, uī (iī), tum, 285.
Salvē, *def.*, 297, III.
Sanciō, īre, sanxī, sancītum, sanctum, 286.
Sapiō, ere, īvī, uī, —, 217, 1; 278.
Sarciō, īre, sarsī, sartum, 286.
Sat-agō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Satis-dō, 259, N. 1.
Satis-faciō, p. 129, foot-note 1.
Scabō, ere, scābī, —, 271, 2.
Scandō, ere, dī, scānsum, 272, 3.
Scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, 272, 3.
Sciō, 284.
Scīscō, ere, scīvī, scītum, 281, N.
Secō, āre, uī, tum, 258.
Sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, 267.
Sē-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 287.
Sepeliō, īre, īvī, sepultum, 284.
Sequor, ī, secūtus sum, 283.
Serō, ere, sēvī, satum, 277, N.
Serō, ere, seruī, sertum, 274.
Sīdō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Sileō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, 278.
Sistō, ere, stitī, statum, 271.
Sitiō, īre, īvī, —, 284.
Soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 268, 3.
Solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, 272, 3.
Sonō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
Sorbeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Sortior, īrī, ītus sum, 288.
Spargō, ere, sparsī, sparsum, 270.
Speciō, *obs.*, 217, 2.
Spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētum, 277.
Spērō, 257.
Splendeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, 267.
Squāleō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.

Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Sternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, 276.
Sternuō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Stertō, ere, uī, —, 273, N.
Stinguō, ere, —, p. 127, foot-note 3.
Stō, āre, stetī, stătum, 259.
Strepō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Strīdeō, ēre, strīdī, —, 267, 3.
Strīdō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
Struō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, 279, N.
Studeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Stupeō, ēre, uī, —, 266.
Suādeō, ēre, sī, sum, 265.
Sub-dō, ere, didī, ditum; see *abdō*, 271.
Sub-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
Sub-siliō; see *saliō*, 285.
Suc-cēdō; see *cēdō*, 270.
Suc-cendō; see *accendō*, 272, 3.
Suc-cēnseō; see *cēnseō*, 263.
Suc-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
Suc-cīdō; see *caedō*, 272.
Suc-crēscō; see *crēscō*, 277.
Suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum, 277.
Suf-ferō, 292, 2.
Suf-ficiō; see *faciō*, 271, 2.
Suf-fodiō; see *fodiō*, 272, 2.
Sug-gerō; see *gerō*, 269.
Sum, esse, fuī, —, 203, 1; 204.
Sūmō, ere, psī, ptum, 269.
Superbiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
Super-jaciō, p. 129, foot-note 2.
Supplicō, 258, foot-note.
Sup-pōnō; see *pōnō*, 273.
Surgō (*for* sur-rigō), ere, surrēxī, surrēctum; see *regō*, 269.

T

Taceō, 262.
Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
Tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, 271.
Temnō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Tendō, ere, tetendī, tentum, tēnsum, 271.
Teneō, ēre, uī, tum, 263.
Tepescō, ere, tepuī, —, 281.
Tergeō, ēre, tersī, tersum, 265; p. 128, foot-note 3.
Tergō, ere, tersī, tersum, 270.
Terō, ere, trīvī, trītum, 278.
Texō, ere, uī, tum, 274.
Timeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, 271.
Tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsum, 267.
Tonō, āre, uī (itum), 258; 300.
Torpeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Torqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, 264.
Torreō, ēre, torruī, tostum, 263.
Trā-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Trahō, ere, traxī, tractum, 269.
Tremō, ere, uī, —, 273, N.
Tribuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
Trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsum, 270.
Tueor, ērī, tuitus, tūtus sum, 268.
Tundō, ere, tutudī, tūnsum, tūsum, 272.
Turgeō, ēre, tursī (*rare*), —, 265.
Tussiō, īre, 284, N. 2.

U

Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, 283.
Urgeō, ēre, ursī, —, 265.
Ūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum, 269.
Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, 283.

V

Vādō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Vāgiō, īre, īvī, —, 284.
Vehō, ere, vēxī, vēctum, 269.
Vellō, ere, vellī (vulsī), vulsum, 272, 3.
Vēndō, ere, didī, ditum, 271.
Vēn-eō, 295, 3.
Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, 287, N.
Vēnum-dō, 259, N. 1.
Vereor, ērī, veritus sum, 268.
Vergō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
Verrō, ere, verrī, versum, 272, 3.
Vertō, ere, tī, sum, 272, 3.
Vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
Vescor, ī, —, 283.
Veterāscō, ere, rāvī, —, 276.
Vetō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
Videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, 267, 2.
Vīlescō, ere, vīluī, —, 282, N.
Vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, 286.
Vincō, ere, vīci, vīctum, 271, 2.
Vireō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Virēscō, ere, viruī, —, 281.
Vīsō, ere, ī, um, 272, 3.
Vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, 269.
Vocō, 257.
Volō, velle, voluī, —, 293.
Volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, 272, 3.
Vomō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, 266.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Acc.* or *accus.* = accusative; *adjs.* = adjectives; *comp.* = composition; *compds.* = compounds; *conj.* = conjugation; *conjunc.* = conjunctions; *constr.* = construction; *ff.* = and the following; *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *ger.* = gerund; *loc.* or *locat.* = locative; *preps.* = prepositions; *w.* = with.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly, the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 69-115.

A

A, ā, sound, 5; 10 ff. *Ā* final shortened, 21, 2. -*A* in nom., accus., and voc. pl., 46, 2, 1). *A*-nouns, Decl. I., 48; *a*-verbs, 205. Nouns in -*a*, Decl. III., 69; quant. of increm., 585, I., 3; gender, 111. -*A*, adverbs in, 304, I., 3. -*Ā*, prepositions in, p. 145, foot-note 11; p. 149, foot-note 2; adverbs in, 304, II., 2. -*A*, -*ā*, suffix, 320. -*A*, derivatives in, 326, 2. *Ā*, changed in compds., 344, 4, N. 1. *A* or *ā*, final, 580, I.; 580, III., N. 2; 581, III.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, I.; conj., 586; 586, I.
Ā, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 344, 5; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Ab*, as adverb, 379, 2, N. *Ā*, *ab*, *abs*, with abl., 434; 434, I.; of agent, 388, 2; 415, I. *Ā*, *ab*, *abs*, 434, N. 2. *Ā*, *ab*, *abs*, designating abode, 446, N. 4. *Ā*, *ab*, w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
Abbreviations, 649, 1; 650.
Abhinc, denoting interval, p. 230, foot-note 2; 430, N. 3.
Abiēs, *ĕs* in, 581, VI., 1.
-**ābilis**, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.
ABLATIVE, sing., original ending of, p. 20, foot-note 5. Abl. sing. in Decl. III., 62, II. ff.; 63, 2; 64, N. 3; in adjs., 154, notes 1 and 2; 157, N. Abl. plur., Decl. I., 49, 4; Decl. III., 68, 5; Decl. IV., 117.
ABLATIVE, translation of, 48, w. foot-note 4. Relations denoted, 367. Syntax, 411 ff. Abl. w. locat., 363, 4, 2); w. adjs., 391, II., 3; 400, 3; w. *rēfert*, 408, I., 2; w. verbs of accusing, etc., 410, II., 3; w. verbs of condemning, 410, III. Abl. of place, 412; 425 ff.; separation, source, cause, 413 ff. Abl. w. comparat., 417. Instrumental abl., 418 ff. Abl. of accompaniment, 419; means, 420. Abl. in special constructions, 421. Abl. of price, 422; difference, 423; specification, 424. Locative abl., 425 ff. Abl. of time, 429. Abl. abs., 431. Abl. w. preps., 432; 434; 435; w. compds., 434, N. 1; w. adverbs, 437. Infin. in abl. abs., 439, IV.
Ablative sing. in *ā*, 581, III., 1.
-**ābrum**, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.
Abs, in compds., 344, 5. *Abs* w. abl., 434; 434, N. 2.
Absente, constr., 438, 6, N.
Absolute Abl., 431.
Absolvō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Absque, w. abl., 434.
Abstineō, constr., p. 211, foot-note 5.
Abstract nouns, 39, 2, 2); plur., 130, 2 and 3. Abstract nouns from adjs., 325.
Absum, w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2. *Abest*, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Abunde, w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
-**ābundus**, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.
-**ābus** for -*is*, Decl. I., 49, 4.
Āc, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning *as*, 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2; 554, I., 2, N. *Āc sī*, 311, 2; w. subj. in conditions, 513, II.
Acatalectic, 603, N. 3.
Accent, rhythmic, 599.
Accentuation, 17 ff.

Accidit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Accingō, constr., 377.
Accommodātus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 418 ff.
ACCUSATIVE, formation of, Decl. II., 51, 2, 6); Decl. III., 58, 1, 5); 62, II. ff.; 63, 1; 64, N. 2; 67, N. 2; 68, 2 and 6; in adjs., 154, N. 1; 158, 1.
ACCUSATIVE, syntax of, 370 ff. Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, I. and II.; acc. of effect, 371, I., 2, 2); w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, I., N.; w. compds., 372. Two accs., 373 ff. Predicate acc., 373, 1. Poetic acc., 377. Adverbial acc., 378 ff. Acc. of specification, 378; of time and space, 379; of limit, 380; poetical dat. for, 380, 4. Acc. in exclam., 381. Acc. for gen., 407. Acc. w. *rēfert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3; w. preps., 432; 433; 435; w. adverbs, 437; as object, w. infin., 534. Acc. as subj. of infin., 536. Acc. of ger., 542, III.
Accusative, Greek, in *-as*, 581, V., 2. Acc. plur. in *-ūs*, 581, IX., 2.
Accusing, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.; 410, II.
Ācer, decl., 153.
-**āceus**, adjs. in, 329; *ā* in, 587, III., 1.
Āciēs, decl., 122, 2.
Acquitting, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.
-**ācrum**, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.
Action, repeated, in temp. clauses, 518, N. 2, 2); 518, 1.
Active voice, 195. Active and passive constr., 464.
-**ācundus**, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.
Acus, decl., 117, 1; gend., 118.
Ad in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386. *Ad* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; after adjs., 391, II., 1; w. *rēfert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3. *Ad* designating abode, 446, N. 4. *Ad* w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5; denoting purpose, 542, III., N. 2.
Adeō, 551, N. 2; 554, I., 4.
-**adēs**, *a* in, 587, II., 1.
Adfatim w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; quant. of pen., p. 345, foot-note 2.
Adficiō w. abl., 420, 2.
Adfīnis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3; p. 210, foot-note 3.
Adipiscor w. gen., 410, V., 3.
Adjaceō w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.
ADJECTIVE, 146; decl. of, 147 ff.; irregular, 151; 159. Compar., 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Demon., 186, 4. Rel., 187, 4. Inter., 188, 4. Derivation, 328 ff. Composition, 342. W. dat., 391; 400, 1; w. gen., 397, 3; 399; of gerund, p. 315, foot-note 2. Adj. for gen., 395, N. 2. Adj. w. abl., 400, 3; 414, III.; 416; 420; 421. Agreement, 438 ff. Use, 440. W. force of substantives, 441; of clauses, 442; of adverbs, 443. Compar., use, 444. Adj. separated from noun, 565, 3 and 4. Position of modifiers of adj., 566; of adj. w. gen., 565, 2.
Admisceō w. dat., 385, 3; p. 201, foot-note 1.
Admodum, 304, I., 2.
Admoneō, constr., 374, 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Admonishing, constr. w. verbs of, 409, I.; 410, I.
Adolēscēns, compar., 168, 4.
Adonic verse, 628, I.
Adopted son, how named, 649, 3.
Ador, quant. of increm., 585, II., 1.
Adūlor w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Adulter, decl., 51, 4, 3).
Adverbial acc., 378. Adverbial comparison, 170.
ADVERBS, 303 ff. Numeral adverbs, 181. Compar., 306. Adverbs w. nouns, 359, N. 4; 443, N. 4; w. dat., 392; w. gen., 397, 4. Adverbs as preps., 437. Adverbs for adjs., 443, N. 3. Use of adverbs, 551 ff. Position of modifiers of adverb, 568. Adverb between prep. and case, 569, II., 3. *-Ē*, in adverbs, 581, IV., 4. Adverb redundant, 636, III., 7.
Adversative conjuncs., 310, 3; 554, III. Advers. asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.
Adversum, *adversus*, w. acc., 433.
Ae, sound, 6; 12; changed to *i*, 344, 4, N. 2.
Aedēs, sing. and plur., 132.
Aeger, decl., 150.
Aegrē ferō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 2.
Aenēās, decl., 50.
Aequālis w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Aequī facere, 401, N. 4.
Āēr, quant. of increm., 585, III., 4.
Aetās, decl., 58.
Aethēr, quant. of increm., 585, III., 4.
-**aeus**, adjs. in., 331.
Age, expression of, p. 222, foot-note 4. Ages of Lat. literature, 640.

Age, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Agent, abl. of, with *ā* or *ab*, 388, 2; 415, I. Dat. of, 388.
Ager, decl., 51.
-**āgintā**, quant. of antepen., 587, III., 3.
Āgnōmen, 649, 2 and 3.
Agnomination, 637, XI., 7.
Agō ut, 498, II., N. 2; *id agō* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
-**āgō**, nouns in, 324, N.; 327, 4, N.; *ā* in, 587, I., 2.
Agreeable, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
Agreement, of Nouns, 362 ff. Pred. noun, 362; in gend., 362, 1. Appositive, 363; in gend., 363, 1. Of adject., 438 ff.; w. clause, 438, 3; synesis, 438, 6; w. one noun for another, 438, 7; w. two or more nouns, 439; w. part. gen., 397, 3, N. 1. Of pronouns, 445; w. two or more antecedents, 445, 3; attraction, 445, 4; synesis, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of verbs, 460 ff.; synesis, 461; w. appos. or pred. noun, 462; w. compd. subject, 463.
Āh, *ahā*, 312.
-**āī** for *-ae*, 49, 2; *ā* in, 577, I., 1, (1).
Āiō for *agiō*, p. 19, foot-note 3; position, 569, V.
-**āis** in prop. names, *ā* in, 577, 5, N.; 587, I., 3.
-**āl** final shortened, 21, 2, 2). Nouns in *-al*, 63; 65, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 1. *-Āl* in Plautus for *-al*, 580, III., N. 2.
Alacer, decl., 153, N. 1; superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Albus, without compar., 169, 4.
Alcaic verse, 604, N. 1; 628, VIII. and IX.; 619, 1. Alcaic stanza, 631, I.
Alcmanian stanza, 631, XIX.; 631, IX.
Ālēc, *ālēx*, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
-**ālia**, names of festivals in, 136, 3.
Alicubī, *alicunde*, 305.
Aliēnus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Aliquā, *aliquam*, *aliquandō*, 305.
Aliquantus, 191.
Aliquī, use, 455, 1.
Aliquis, 190, 2; 191; use of, 455.
Aliquō, 305, II.
Aliquot, 191.
Aliquotiēns, *aliquōvorsum*, 305.
-**ālis**, adjs. in, 330; compar., 168, 2; 169, 3. *Ā* in *-ālis*, 587, I., 4.
Aliud, *nihil aliud nisi*, *nihil aliud quam*, 555, III., 1.
Alius, decl., 151; w. abl., 417, 1, N. 4. Use of *alius*, 459. *Alius—alium* w. pl. verb, 461, 3.
Allegory, 637, II., 1.
Alliteration, 637, XI., 1.
Allobrox, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Alphabet, 2 ff. Letters of, indecl., 128, 1.
Alter, decl., 151. *Alter* for *secundus*, p. 66, foot-note 4. Use of *alter*, 459. *Alter—alterum*, w. pl. verb, 461, 3.
Alteruter, decl., 151, N. 2.
Alvus, gend., 53, 1.
-**am** in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 2).
Amāns, decl., 157.
Ambō, *amb*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Ambo, decl., 175, N. 2.
Amicus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1. *Ī* in *amicus*, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Amnis, decl., 62, IV.
Amphiarāīdēs, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Amphora, 648, III.
Amplius, without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2.
Amyclīdēs, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
An, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353. *An* = 'whether not,' 529, II., 3, N. 2; = *aut*, 529, II., 3, N. 3. *Ă* in *an*, 579, 3.
-**an**, suffix, 320, I.
-**āna**, *ā* in, 587, I., 5.
Anacoluthon, 636, IV., 6.
Anacrusis, 618, N. 3.
Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.
Anapaest, 597, N. 1; cyclic, 598, 1, 4).
Anaphora, 636, III., 3.
Anas, *as* in, 581, V., 1; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Anastrophe, 636, V., 1.
Ancient forms of pronouns, 184, 5; of verbs, 240.
Ancīle, decl., 136, 3.
Androgeōs, decl., 54.
-**āneus**, *ā* in, 587, III., 1.
Anguis, decl., 62, IV.
Anhēlitus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Animal, decl., 63.
Animī, constr., 399, III., 1; 410, V., 2.
Aniō, quant. of increm., 585, III., 2.
Annōn, 310, 2, N.; 353, 2, N. 3.
Answers, 352.
-**ant**, suffix, 320, I.
Ante in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ante* w. acc., 433; 438, I.; denoting interval, 430. *Ante* w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Anteā, 304, IV., N. 2.
Antecedent, 445, N.; omitted, 445, 6.

Clause as anteced., 445, 7. Anteced. attracted. 445, 9.
Antecēdō w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Ante-classical period, 640, I.
Anteeō in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1; w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Antehāc, 304, IV., N. 2.
Antequam, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 520.
Anticipation, prolepsis, 440, 2; 636, IV., 3.
Antīcus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Antimeria, 636, IV., 1.
-ānus, adjs. in, 330; 331; *ā* in, 587, I., 5.
Anxiety, constr. w. verbs of, 498, III.
-āōn in prop. names, *ā* in, 577, 5, N.
Apage, interj., 312, 4.
Aphaeresis, 635, 1.
Apis, genit. plur., p. 86, foot-note 3.
Apocope, 635, 3.
Apophasis, 637, XI., 2.
Aposiopesis, 636, I., 3; 637, XI., 3.
Apostrophe, 637, X.
Apparent agent, 388.
Appendix with short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Appendix, 634 ff.
Apposition, partitive, 364. Clauses in apposition, 501, III.
Appositional genitive, 396, VI.
Appositive, 359, N. 2; agreement of, 363; in gend., 363, 1; force of, 363, 3. Infin. as appos., 539, II.
Aprīcus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Aptus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1. *Aptus quī* w. subj., 503, II., 2.
Apud w. acc., 433; 433, I.; designating abode, 446, N. 4.
-ār final shortened, 21, 2, 2). Nouns in *ar*, 63; 65, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 1. Gend. of nouns in *ar*, *ār*, 111; 112. *-Ār* in Plautus for *-ar*, 580, III., N. 2.
Arar, *Araris*, decl., 62, III., 1.
Arbor, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Arceō w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
Archilochian verse, 604, N. 1; 628, X.; 616, N.; 617, N.; 619, N.; stanza, 631, XI. and XII.; 631, XIV. and XV.
Arcus, decl., 117, 1.
Arēnae, locat., 426, 2, N.
Ariēs, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.
-āris, adjs. in, 330; compar., 169, 3. *Ā* in *-āris*, 587, I., 6.
Aristophanic verse, 628, II.
-ārium, nouns in, 323; *ā* in, 587, III., 1.
-ārius, nouns in, 324; adjs. in, 330; *ā* in, 587, III., 1.
Arrangement of Words and Clauses, 559 ff.; words, 560 ff.; gen. rules, 560 ff.; effect of emphasis and euphony, 561; chiasmus, 562; kindred words, 563; words w. com. relation, 564; special rules, 565 ff.; modifiers of nouns, 565; adjs., 566; verbs, 567; adverbs, 568; special words, 569; demon., 569, I.; preps., 569, II.; conjuncs. and relat., 569, III.; *nōn*, 569, IV.; *inquam*, *āiō*, 569, V.; voc., 569, VI.; clauses, 570 ff.; as subj. or pred., 571; subord. elements, 572; periods, 573.
Arsis, 600.
Article, 48, 6.
Artus, decl., 117, 1, 2); p. 50, foot-note 1.
-ārus, *ā* in, 587, I., 6.
Arx, decl., 64.
Aryan languages, 638.
-ās in genit., Decl. I., 49, 1. Nouns in *-ās*, Decl. I., 50; Decl. III., 64, 2, 3); decl., 79. Gender of nouns in *-as*, *-ās*, 105, 106. *-Ās* in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 2). *-Ās*, suffix, 320, I. *-Ās*, adjs. in, 331. Quant. of *-ās*, *-as*, 580, III.; 581, V.; *ā* in voc. of nouns in, 581, III., 2. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-as*, 585, I., 3.
Ās, 646; 648, I.
Asclepiadēan verse, 628, IV. and V.; 631, IV.-VIII.
Asking, construction w. verbs of, 374.
Asper, decl., 150, N.
Aspergō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
Aspirate, 3, II., 3.
-āssim in perf. subj., 240, 4.
Assimilation of vowels, 25; of consonants, 33; 34.
Assimilis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Āssis, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
-āssō in fut. perf., 240, 4.
Asyndeton, 636, I., 1.
At, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.
-at, neut. stems in, 58, 2. *-Āt* in Plautus for *-at*, 580, III., N. 2.
Atat, interj., 312, 1.
-āticus, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.
-ātilis, quant. of pen., 587, II., 5; antepen., 587, III., 2.
-ātim, *ā* in, 587, I., 7.
Atque, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning *as*, 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2; 554, I., 2, N. *Que—atque*, 554, I. 5.
Atquī, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.
-ātrum, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.

Attamen, 554, III., 3.
Attraction, 636, IV., 5; of pron., 445, 4 and 8; of anteced., 445, 9.
Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-**ātus**, nouns in, 324; *ā* in, 587, I., 7.
Au, interj., 312, 3.
Au, sound, 6; 12; changed in compds., 344, 4, N. 3.
Audāx, decl., 156.
Audiēns w. two dats., 390, N. 3.
Audiō w. pred. noun, 362, 2, N. 1; w. infin., 535, I., 1.
Aureus, 646.
Ausim for *auserim*, 240, 4.
Aut, 310, 2; 554, II., 2. *Aut—aut*, 554, II., N. Position of *aut* in poetry, 569, III., N.
Autem, 310, 3; 554, III., 2 and 4; position, 569, III.
Authors, Latin, 640.
Autonomasia, 637, III., 1.
Auxilium, *auxilia*, 132.
Aversion, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 1.
Avidus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2; other constrs., 400.
Avis, decl., 62, IV.
-**āvus**, *ā* in, 587, I., 6.
-**āx**, gen. of nouns in, 91; verbals in, 333; w. ger., 399, II. Quant. of increm. of words in *-ax*, 585, I., 4, (3).
Axō for *ēgerō*, 240, 4.

B

B, sound, 7, N.; changed to *p*, 33, 1; to *m*, 33, 3, N.; 34, 3. Quant. of monosyl. in, 579, 2.
Baccar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Bacchius, 597, N. 1.
Becoming, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 1).
Beginning, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1. Beginning of sentence emphatic, 561, I.
Being, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 1). Being able, wont, accustomed, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 2.
Bēlīdēs, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385, II. Infin. w. verbs of, 535, I., 1, (2).
Bellum, decl., 51, 8. *Bellī*, locat., 51, 8; 426, 2.
Belonging to, gen. w. adjs. signifying, 391, 4.
Bene, compar., 306, 2; compds. w. dat., 384, 4, N. 1. *E* final in *bene*, 581, IV., 4.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385, I.
-**ber**, p. 155, foot-note 1; names of months in, 65, 1, 1).
Bibī, *ī* in, 590, 1.
Bīlis, decl., 62, IV.
-**bilis**, p. 155, foot-note 1; verbals in, 333; w. dat., 391, I.; compar., 168, 1. Quant. of pen. of *-bilis*, 587, II., 5.
Bis, *i* in, 579, 3.
Bonī facere, *cōnsulere*, 401, N. 4.
Bonus, decl., 148, compar., 165.
Bōs, decl., 66; quant. of increm., 581, II., 3.
Brachylogy, 636, II.
Brazen age, 640, III., 1.
-**brum**, nouns in, 327.
-**bs**, decl. of nouns in, 86.
Bubae, interj., 312, 1.
Bucolic diaeresis, 611, 2; bucol. caesura, p. 356, foot-note 5.
-**bulum**, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 327.
-**bundus**, verbals in, 333.
Būris, decl., 62, II.
Buying, gen. w. verbs of, 405.

C

C in place of *G*, 2, 1 and 3. Sound of *c*, 7; 13. *C* changed to *q*, 33, 2; dropped, 36, 3. Nouns in *c*, 74. Gend., 111. Quant. of final syllables in *c*, 580, II., w. N. 1.
-**că**, suffix, 320, II.
Caecus, superl. wanting, 168, 3.
Caelum, plur., 143, 1.
Caesura, caesural pause, 602.
Calcar, decl., 63.
Calendar, Roman, 641 ff.
Calends, 642, I., 1.
Calix, w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Campester, decl., 153, N. 1.
Canis, decl., p. 86, foot-note 3.
Capitis w. verbs, 410, III., N. 2.
Cappadox, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Capsō for *cēperō*, 240, 4.
Caput, decl., 58.
Carbasus, gend., 53, 1; plur., 142.
Carcer, *carcerēs*, 132.
Cardinals, 172; 174; decl., 175 ff.
Carmen, decl., 60.
Carō, decl., 64, N. 1.
Cārus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
CASES, ETYMOLOGY OF, 45 ff. Cases alike, 46, 2. Case suffixes, 46, 1; in Decl. III., 57; 67. Case end-

ings, 47, N. 3; in Decl. I., 48; Decl. II., 51, 2, 3); Decl. III., 67; for *i*-stems, 62, I., 2; Decl. IV., 116; Decl. V., 120; pronouns, 184, 1. Irregular case endings, Decl. I., 49; Decl. II., 52; Decl. III., 67, N.; Decl. IV., 117; Decl. V., 121.
CASES, SYNTAX OF, 362 ff. General view, 365. Nominat., 368. Vocat., 369. Accusat., 370 ff. Dat., 382 ff. Gen., 393 ff. Abl., 411 ff. Cases w. preps., 432 ff.
Castrum, *castra*, 132.
Catalectic, 603, notes 3 and 5.
Causā, p. 221, foot-note 2.
Causal adverbs, 305, N. 2, 4); conjunctions, 310, 5; 311, 7; 554, V.; 555, VII. Causal clauses, 516; 517; w. *quod*, etc., 516; w. *cum* and *quī*, 517.
Cause, gen. of, 399, III., 2; abl., 413; 416. Cause expressed by particip., 549, 1.
Caveō, constr., 385, 1. *Cavē* w. subj. for imperat., 489, 2); w. *nē* omitted, 499, 2. *Ē* in *cavē*, 581, IV., 3.
-ce, appended, 186, 1 and 2.
Cecidī, quant. of pen., 591, 1.
Cedo, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Celeber, *celer*, decl., 153, N. 1.
Cēlō, constr., 374, 2.
Celtiber, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
-cen, compds. in, 341, 1.
Cēnseō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
-ceps, genit. plur. of adjs. in, 158, 2, 3); compds, in, 342, 1.
-cer, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1.
Cerēs, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.
Certō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Certus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Cēter, *cēterus*, defective, 159, II.; meaning, 440, N. 2.
Cēterum, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.
Ch, sound, 7, N.; 13, I., 2.
Changes in consonants, 30 ff.
Characteristic, stem-characteristic, nouns, 46, 3; verbs, 201. Gen. of characteristic, 396, V.; abl., 419, II.; 419, 2.
Chiasmus, 562; 636, V., 4.
Chief caesura, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Choliambus, 622, 4.
Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Choree, p. 350, foot-note 2.
Choriambus, 597, N. 1.
-cida, compds. in, 341, 1.
Cilix, w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Cingō, constr., 377.
-cino, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 3.
-cinus, adjs. in, 330, 1.
-ciō, nouns in, 321, N.
Circā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.; of ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Circiter w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Circum, p. 149, foot-note 2; in compds., 344, 5; compds. w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386, 2. *Circum* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Circumdō, *circumfundō*, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
Circumlocutions w. *rēs*, *genus*, *modus*, *ratiō*, 636, III., 10.
Cis w. acc., 433; 433, I.; *ī* in, 579, 3.
Citerior, compar., 166.
Cities, plur. in names of, 131, N.
Cito, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Citrā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Citum, *ī* in, 590, 1.
Cīvis, decl., 62, IV.
Clam w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
Clans, Roman, how designated, 331, N. 2.
Classical period, 640, II.
Classification of letters, 3; verbs, 257 ff.
Clāssis, decl., 62, IV.
Claudus, not compared, 169, 4.
CLAUSES, 348, N. 1; as nouns, gend., 42, N. Prin. and sub. clauses, 348, N. 2. Clause as object, 371, IV.; as abl., abs., 431, N. 1; as anteced., 445, 7. Object clauses of purp., 498. Subst. clauses of purp., 499, 3; of result, 501. Restrictive clauses w. *quod*, 503, I., N. 1. Conditional clauses, 513; concess., 514 ff.; temp., 518 ff.; principal, in indir. disc., 523; subord., 524. Indirect clauses, 528 ff. Substantive clauses, 532 ff.; 540. Relat. clauses supplied by particip., 549, 4. Prin. clauses supplied by particip., 549, 5. Arrang. of clauses, 570 ff.
Clāvis, decl., 62, III.
Cliēns, decl., 64.
Climax, 637, VI.
Close vowels, 3, I., 3.
Clothing, constr. w. verbs of, 377.
-co, suffix, 320, II.
Cognate acc., 371, I. and II.
Cōgnōmen, 649.
Cōgō, constr., 380, N.; p. 274, foot-note 2.
Coins, Roman, 646.

-cola, compds. in, 341, 1.
Collecting, constr. w. verbs of, 380, N.
Collective nouns, 39, 2, 1); w. plur. verb, 461, 1.
Collis, decl., 62, IV.
Collocō, constr., 380, N.
Colus, gend., 53, 1; 118; decl., 119, 2.
Com in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386.
Coming together, constr. w. verbs of, 380, N.
Comitium, *comitia*, 132.
Command, dat. w. verbs signifying to, 385, I.; infin. after, 535, II. Subj. of command, 483 ff.
Commiserēscit, *commiserētur*, constr., 410, IV., N. 1.
Common nouns, 39, 2. Common quantity, 16, III.; 575.
Commūnis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Commūtō, constr., 422, N. 2.
COMPARATIVE conjuncs., 311, 2; 555, II. Comparat. degree, 160; decl., 154; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparat. w. gen., 397, 3; w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1. Use, 444. Comparat. w. *quam* and subj., 503, II., 3. *Ō* in increm. of comparat., 585, II., 1.
Comparative view of conjugations, 218 ff.
COMPARISON of adjs., 160 ff.; modes of, 161; terminational, 162; irreg., 163; defect., 166; adverbial, 170; of adverbs, 306. Use of compar., 444. Dat. w. verbs of comparison, 385, 4, 3).
Compes, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Compleō, constr., 410, V., 1; p. 225, foot-note 3.
Complex sentences, 348; elements, 357, 2; subject, 359; predicate, 361.
Complūrēs, decl., 154, N. 1.
Compos w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; *-os* in, 581, VII., 1; quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Composition of words, 340 ff.
COMPOUND WORDS, 313, N. 2; pronunciation, 8, 3; p. 8, foot-note 1; 18, 2. Compd. nouns, decl., 125 ff. Compd. interrog., 188, 3; nouns, 341; 343; adjs., 342; 343; verbs, 221; 344. Compd. sentences, 349. Compds. of preps. w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386. Quant. in compds., 594. Compd. verse, 601, N. 2.
Computation of money, 647.
Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Concession, expressed by particip., 549, 2.
CONCESSIVE conjunctions, 311, 4; 555, IV.; concess. subj. of desire, 484, III. Concess. clauses, 514 ff.; position of, 572, II., N.
Condemning, constr. w. verbs of, 410, III.
Condīcō w. gen., 409, N. 3.
Condition expressed by imperat., 487, 3; by particip., 549, 2.
CONDITIONAL conjuncs., 311, 3; 555, III. Cond. sentences, 506 ff.; first form, 508; sec. form, 509; third form, 510; combined forms, 511; 512. Condit. clauses w. *dum*, etc., 513. Condit. sentences in indir. disc., 527. Position of condit. clauses, 572, II., N.
Cōnfīdō w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
Cōnitor, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
CONJUGATION, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff.; 223 ff.; 257 ff.; second, 207 ff.; 225 ff.; 261 ff.; ĕ, in imperat., 581, IV., 3; third, 209 ff.; 227 ff.; 269 ff.; fourth, 211 ff.; 229 ff.; 284 ff.; *ēs* in pres. indic., 581, VIII., 3; verbs in *iō* of Conj. III., 217. Periphrastic, 233 ff. Peculiarities, 235 ff. Comparative view, 218. Irreg. verbs, 289 ff.; defect., 297 ff.; impers., 298 ff. Increm. of conj., 583; 584; quant., 586.
Conjunctions, 309; coōrd., 554; subord., 555. Conj. omitted, 554, I., 6. Place of conj. in sentence, 569, III.
Cōnor, constr., 498, II., N. 1.
Cōnscius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2; other constrs., 400. *Cōnscius mihī sum* w. infin., 535, I., 3.
Consecutive conjs., 311, 6; 555, VI.
Cōnsequor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Cōnsimilis w. gen.; p. 205, foot-note 3.
Consonant nouns, 55 ff. Consonant stems, 57 ff. Consonant verbs, 209.
Consonants, 3, II.; double, 3, N. 2; sounds of, 7; 13; 15, 2; phonetic changes in, 30 ff.; interchanged w. vowels, 28; 29; assimilated, 33; 34; dissimilated, 35; omitted, 36.
Cōnsors w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Cōnstituō, constr., 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Cōnstō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Cōnsul, decl., 60.
Cōnsulō, constr., 374, 2; 385, 1.
Cōnsultus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Contendō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1; w. infin., 498, II., N. 1; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Contention, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4, 3).

Contentus w. abl., 420, 1, 4); 421, III.

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 15.

Contingit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.

Continuing, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.

Contrā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.

Contraction of vowels, 23; in conjugation, 235. Quant. of syllables in contract., 576, I.

Contrārius w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.

Contrō- in compds., 594, 8.

Conveniō, constr., 380, N.

Convicting, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.; 410, II.

Convoco, constr., 380, N.

Coōrdinate conjs., 309, 1; 554.

Cōpia, *cōpiae*, 132. *Cōpia est* w. infin., 533, 3, N. 3.

Copulative conjs., 310, 1; 554, I.

Cōpulō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.

Cor, defective, 133, 5; *o* in, 579, 3.

Cōram, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. abl., 434.

Cornū, decl., 116.

Corōnidēs, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.

Corpus, decl., 61.

Correlative pronouns, 191; adverbs, 305. Correlat. compar. conjuncs., 555, II., 1. Position of correlat. clauses, 572, II., N.

Cōs, defective, 133, 5.

-cōsus, adjs. in, 328.

Cotīdiē, locat., 120, N.

Countries, names of, gend., 42, II., 2; constr., 380, 3.

Crēdor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).

Crīmine, constr., 410, II., 1.

-crum, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 327.

Cubitus, 648, IV., N.

Cuicuimodī, 187, 4.

Cūjās, *cūjus*, 185, N. 3.

Cūjusmodī, *cūjuscumquemodī*, 187, 4, N.

-cula, nouns in, 321; *u* in, 587, II., 3.

-culo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 8.

-culum, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 321; 327; *cu* in, 587, II., 3.

-culus, nouns in, 321; adjs. in, 332; *u* in pen., 587, II., 3.

Cum, prep., p. 149, foot-note 2; appended, 184, 6; 187, 2; *com* in compds., 344, 5. *Cum* w. abl., 434; 434, I.; of accompaniment, 419; of manner, 419, III.; after *idem*, 451, 5; w. pl. verb, 461, 4. *Cum* w. ger., p. 216, foot-note 1.

Cum, *quum*, p. 75, foot-note 1; 305, IV.; 311, 1 and 4; p. 151, foot-notes 1 and 4; 311, 7; w. perf. indic., 471, 5; w. plup. indic., 472, 2; introducing a condition, 507, 3; a concession, 515, III.; 515, N. 4; a causal clause, 517; a temp. clause, 521. *Cum* w. infinit., 524, 1, 2). *Cum—tum*, 554, I., 5.

-cumque, p. 75, foot-note 3; 305, N. 1.

Cumulō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.

Cūnctī w. part. gen., 397, 3, N. 4.

-cundus, verbals in, 333.

Cupidus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.

Cupiēns w. dat. of possessor, 387, N. 3.

Cupiō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1.

Cūra est w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 3.

Cūrō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.

-cus, adjs. in, 330; 333, 5.

Cyclic dactyl, 598, 1, 3); anapaest, 598, 1, 4).

Cyclōps, quant. of increm., 585, II., 2.

D

D for *t*, 32, N. 1. *D* changed to *l*, 32; assimilated to *n* or *s*, 34, 1; to *l*, 34, 2; dropped before *s*, 36, 2. *D* final dropped, 36, 5, 2). Quant. of final syllables in *d*, 579, 2; 580, II.

-d, **-dă**, nouns in, 322.

Dactyl, 597, I.; cyclic, 598, 1, 3). Effect of dactyls, 610, 2.

Dactylic verse, 603, N. 1; 614 ff.; hexameter, 609 ff.

Dāmma, gend., 48, 5.

Danais, quant. of pen., p. 345, foot-note 1.

Danger, constr. w. expressions of, 498, III.

Daps, *dapis*, defective, 133, 3.

Dare lĭtterās, 385, 1, N. *Dare operam* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2. *E* in *dedī*, *a* in *datum*, 590, 1.

Daring, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.

Dates, Eng. and Lat., 644.

DATIVE, Decl. I., 49, 4; Decl. III., 58, 2; 66, 2; 67, N. 1; 68, 5; Decl. IV., 117, 1; Decl. V., 121, 1.

DATIVE, syntax of, 382 ff. Dat. for acc., 380, 4. Dat. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3); w. verbs, 384 ff.; w. compds., 386; of possessor, 387; of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dats., 390. Dat. w. adjs., 391; 399, I., 3, N. 1; 400, 1; w. nouns and adverbs, 392; w. *rĕfert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3. Dat. of penalty, 410, III.,

N. 1. Dat. of ger., 542, II.; gerundive, 544, 2.
Dative sing. in ī, 581, I., 2. *Ē* in dat., Decl. III., 581, IV., 2.
'Daughter,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, I., N. 2. Names of daughters, 649, 4.
Day, Rom. division of, 645.
Dē in compds. w. dat., 386; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Dē* w. abl., 434; 434, I.; for genit., 397, N. 3. *Dē* w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
Dea, decl., 49, 4.
Dēbeō w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
Decay, phonetic, p. 12, foot-note 1.
Dēcernō, constr., 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Dēcipiō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
Declarative sentence, 350; in indir. disc., 523, I.
Declaring, constr. w. verbs of, 535, I.
DECLENSION, 46; first, 48; sec., 51; third, 55; fourth, 116; sec. and fourth, 119; fifth, 120; compds., 125. *-Ō* in Decl. III., 581, II., 2. *-Ē* in Decl. I. and V., 581, IV., 1. Increm. of decl., 582; 584; quant., 585.
Dēdoceō, constr., 374, 2.
Defective nouns, 122; 127, II.; 129 ff.; adjs., 159, II. Def. compar., 166 ff. Def. verbs, 297.
Degree, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3).
Degrees of comparison, 160.
Deinde, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Dēlectō, constr., 385, II., N. 1.
Deliberative subj., 484, V. Delib. questions, 523, II., 1, N.
Delos, decl., 54.
Delphīn, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 3.
Demanding, constr. w. verbs of, 374.
DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns, 186; use of, 450 ff.; 449, 1. Demon. roots, 314, II. Demon. adverbs, 450, N. 4. Demon. w. infin., 538, 3. Position of demon., 569, I. Demon. redundant, 636, III., 7.
Denarius, 646.
Dēnique, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Denominatives, 335.
Dental stems, Decl. III., 58.
Dentals, 3, II.; 3, N. 1, I., 2.
Dependent clauses, 348, N. 2. Depend. questions, 528, 2, N.
Deponent verbs, 195, 2; 231; 465, 2.
Depriving, constr. w. verbs of, 414, I.
Derivation, 321 ff.; of nouns, 321 ff.; adjs., 328 ff.; verbs, 335 ff.
Derivatives, quant. in, 593.
-dēs, nouns in, 322.
Descent, names of, 322.
Descriptive genit., 396, V.; abl., 419, II., N. Descrip. imperf. in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1.
Desideratives, 284, 2; 338.
Dēsinō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
Desire, subj. of, 483 ff.; for imperat., 487, 4.
Desiring, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 1; p. 315, foot-note 2; w. verbs of, 410, V., 2. Subj. after verbs of, 498, I.; infinit., 533, I., 1; 535, II.
Dēsistō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
Dēspērō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. dat. or acc., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Destitute of, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 414, III.
Dēsum, synaeresis in, 608, III., N. 1.
Dēsuper w. acc., 437, 1.
Dēterior, comparison, 166.
Dēterius, comparison, 306, 3.
Determinative compds., 343, I.
Determining, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
Dēterreō, constr., p. 279, foot-note 2.
Deus, decl., 51, 6.
-dex, compds. in, 341, 1.
Dexter, decl., 150, N. 1); *dextrā*, constr., 425, 2.
Dī, *dis*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6; ī in *dī*, 594, 2.
Diaeresis, 602, 2; 608, IV.
Dīāna, ī in, 577, I., 3, (4).
Diastole, 608, V.
Dīc for *dīce*, 238.
Diciō, defective, 134.
Dicolon, p. 352, foot-note 3.
Dīcor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Dictō audiēns, 390, N. 3.
-dicus, compds. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
Dīdō, decl., 68.
Diēs, decl., 120; 122, 1; gend., 123; ī in compds., 594, 7.
Difference, abl. of, 417, 2; 423.
Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2; 385, 4, 2).
Differō w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
Difficilis, compar., 163, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, 1.
Dīgnor, constr., 421, N. 2.
Dīgnus, constr., 421, III.; 421, N. 3. *Dīgnus quī* w. subj., 503, II., 2. *Dīgnus* w. supine, 547, 1.
Diiambus, 597, N. 1.
Dimeter, 603, N. 2.
Diminutive nouns, 321; adjs., 332; verbs, 339.
Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 6; 12; 15, 1; weakening of, 23, N.; quant. of syllab. w. diphth., 576, I.; final

diphth. elided, 608, I.; shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3.
Dipody, 597, N. 2.
Direct object, 370 ff. Direct disc., 522, 1; changed to indir., 530; indir. to direct, 531.
Directing, constr. w. verbs of, 499, 2.
Direction, how expressed, 384, 3, 1); 385, 4, 1); 386, 3.
Dirimō, *dĭ* in, 594, 2, N. 1.
Dīs, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Dis, *dī*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Disertus, *dĭ* in, 594, 2, N. 1.
Disjunctive conjunctions, 310, 2; 554, II. Disjunct. questions, 353.
Dispar, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385, I.
Dispondee, 597, N. 1.
Dissenting, verbs of, w. dat., 385, 2.
Dissentiō, *dissideō* w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
Dissimilation of vowels, 26; consonants, 35.
Dissimilis, compar., 163, 2; constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1, 2, and 3.
Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quant. of pen., 590.
Distance, abl. of, 379, 2; 423, N. 2.
Distich, 606, N.; elegiac, 615.
Distō w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
Distributives, 172, 3; 174; decl., 179.
Ditrochee, 597, N. 1.
Diū, 304, I., 1; compar., 306, 4.
Dīus, *ī* in, 577, I., 3, (2).
Diūturnus, superl. wanting, 168, 3.
Dīversus, compar., 167, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Dīves, compar., 165, N. 2.
-dŏ, nouns in, 327, 4, N.; decl., 60, 4.
Dō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2). See also *dare*. Quant. of increm. of *dō*, 586, I.
Doceō, constr., 374, 2.
Doleō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. abl., p. 221, foot-note 2; w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 2.
Domus, gend., 118; decl., 119, 1; constr., 380, 2, 1); 412, II., 1; 425, 2.
Dōnec, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 519.
Dōnō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Double consonants, 3, N. 2. Double constr. w. verbs, 384, 2. Double questions, 353.
Dropping of vowels, 27; consonants, 36.
Dry measure, Rom., 648, II.
Dt changed to *st*, *ss*, or *s*, 35, 3.
Dual number, p. 68, foot-note 1.
Dubitō, constr., 505, I.
Dūc for *dūce*, 238.
Dūcō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2.
Duim for *dem*, 240, 3.
Dum, p. 145, foot-note 1; 311, 1 and 3; 555, I., 1; w. pres. indic., 467, 4; w. subj. in conditions, 513, I. *Dum* in temp. clauses, 519; in indir. clauses, 529, II., N. 2.
Dummodo, 311, 3; w. subj. in conditions, 513, I.
Duo, decl., 175; *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Duration of time, 379.
-dus, adjs. in, 333.
Dv changed to *b*, *v*, or *d*, 32, N. 2.

E

E, ē, sound, 5; 10 ff. *Ē* final shortened, 21, 2, 3). Nouns in *ē*, Decl. I., 50; in *e*, Decl. III., 63; 65, 2; 70. *E*, gend. of nouns in, Decl. III., 111. -*E* in abl., 62. *Ē* in plur. of Greek neuters, 68, 6. *Ē*-nouns, 120. *Ē*-verbs, 207. *Ē*-stems, 120, 1. -*E*, -*ē*, in adverbs, 304, I., 3; 304, II., 2; 304, III., 1. -*E*, -*ē*, suffix, 320, II. *E* changed to *i*, 344, 4, N. 1. *E* or *ē* in *ēī*, 120, 2; 577, I., 2, (1); 585, III., 1. *E* or *ē*, final, 580, I.; 580, III., N. 2; 581, IV.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, III.; conj., 586; 586, II. *E* elided before consonant, 608, I., N. 2.
Ē or *ex*, see *ex*.
Eā, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
-ēa in prop. names, *ē* in, 577, I., 5, N.
Eābus for *eīs* = *iīs*, p. 73, foot-note 2.
Eādem, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
Easy, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
Ēcastŏr, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Ecce, 312, 1; with demonstratives, 186, 3; with dat. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3).
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, p. 180, foot-note 1.
Ecthlipsis, 604, I., N. 4.
Edim for *edam*, 240, 3.
-ēdŏ, nouns in, 325; *ē* in, 587, I., 2.
Ēdoceō, constr., 374, 2.
Ee in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1.
Effect, acc. of, 371, I., 2, 2).
Efficiō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2; 501, II., 1.
Effigiēs, decl., 122, 2.
Effort, subj. w. verbs of, 498, II.
Egēnus, compared, 164, 1; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 219, foot-note 4.

Egeō, constr., 410, V., 1.
Ego, decl., 184. *I* in *mihī*, 581, I., 2. *O* in *ego*, 581, II., 1.
Ehem, interj., 312, 1.
Ēheu, interj., 312, 3; w. acc., 381, N. 2; ē in, 577, I., 2, (3).
Eha, *ehodum*, 312, 5; *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Ei, interj., 312, 3; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3).
Ei, pronunciation as diphthong, 6, 1; 12, 1; ē or *e* in ēī, 120, 2; 577, I., 2, (1); 585, III., 1. *Ei* in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1.
-ēis, ē in, 587, I., 3.
-ēius, ē in, 577, I., 2, (2).
Ēja, 312, 2 and 6; *a* in, 581, III., 3.
Ējusmodī, 186, 4, N.
-ēla, ē in, 587, I., 4.
Elegiac Distich, 615.
Elements of sentences, 356 ff.
-ēlis, ē in, 587, I., 4.
Elision, 608, I.
-ella, nouns in, 321, 4.
Ellam for *ēn illam*, 186, 3.
Ellipsis, 636, I.
-ellum, nouns in, 321, 4.
Ellum for *ēn illum*, 186, 3.
-ellus in nouns, 321, 4; adjs., 332, N. 1.
Ēluviēs, defective, 122, 3.
-em in acc., 62.
Emotion, constr. w. verbs of, 371, III.; 410, V., 2; 535, III.
Emphasis in arrang. of words, 561.
Emphatic forms of pronouns, 184, 3; 185, N. 2. Emphatic adverbial phrases, 305, N. 4.
En, 312, 1; w. demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3).
-en, suffix, 320, II.; nouns in, 327. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-ĕn*, 585, III., 2.
-ēna, ē in, 587, I., 5.
Enallage, 636, IV.
Enclitics, accent, 18, 2, 1); quant., 579, I., 1.
End, dat. of, 384, 1, 3). End of sentence emphatic, 561, II.
Endeavoring, constr. w. verbs of, 498, II., N. 1.
Ending, constr. w. verbs of, 538, I., 1.
Endings of genitive, 47; of cases, Decl. I., 48; 49; Decl. II., 51, 2, 3); 52; Decl. III., 62, I., 2; 67; Decl. IV., 116; 117; Decl. V., 120; 121; in compar., 162; conj., 213-216.
Endo, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
English pronunciation of Latin, 9 ff.
-ēnī, ē in, 587, I., 8.
Enim, 310, 5; 554, V., 3; position, 569, III.
Ēnitor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Enneasyllabic verse, 619, 1.
-ēnsis, adjs. in, 330; 331.
-ent, suffix, 320, II.
-entia, **-entio**, suffixes, p. 155, foot-note 9.
-entior, **-entissimus**, in compar., 164.
-ento, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 9.
Enumerative asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.
-ēnus, ē in, 587, I., 5.
Eō, *īre*, w. sup. in *-um*, 546, 2; *īrī* w. do., 546, 3. *I* in *ībam*, *ībō*, etc., 586, III., 4. *I* in *itum*, 590, 1.
Eō, adverb, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; 554, IV., 1; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Eōdem, 305, II.
Epenthesis, 635, 4.
Ephesus, decl., 51, 8.
Epicene nouns, 43, 3.
Epiphora, 636, III., 4.
Epitomē, decl., 50.
Epizeuxis, 636, III., 5.
-eps, decl. of nouns in, 88.
Epulum, *epulae*, 143, 3.
Equester, decl., 153, N. 1.
Equivalents, metrical, 598.
-er, nouns in, gend., 53; 99; 103; decl., 51, 4; 60, 3; adjs. in, decl., 62, IV., N. 1; 150, N.; 153, N. 2; compar., 163, 1. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-ĕr*, 585, III., 4.
-ēre for *ērunt*, 236.
Ergā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.; after adjs., 391, II., 1; for gen., 396, III., N. 1.
Ergō, 310, 4; p. 151, foot-note 1; w. gen., 398, 5.
-erunt for *-ērunt*, 236, N.; 586, II., 4.
Es attached to preceding word, 27, N.; *e* in, 579, 3; in compds., 581, VI., 2.
-es, **-ēs**, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in *-ēs*, 327; decl., 65, 1; 80; 120; quant. of increm., 585, III., 4; gend., 99; 104; 105; 109; 120. Decl. of nouns in *-es*, 81; gend., 99; 104. *Es* or *-ēs* final, 580, III.; 581, VI. *A* in voc. of Greek nouns in *-ēs*, p. 341, foot-note 1.
-ēsimus, ē in, 587, III., 3.
Esse omitted, 534, N.
Essential elements of sentences, 357, 1.
-ēssō, **-ēssim**, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 240, 4.
-essō, verbs in, 336, N. 2.
Est drops initial, 27, N. *Est ut*, 498,

II., N. 2. *Est*, impers., constr., p. 276, foot-note 2. *Est* at end of line, 618, N. 3.
-ester, **-estris**, adjs. in, 330, 1.
Et, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning *as*, 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2. *Et—et*, *et—que*, *que—et*, *neque* (nec)—*et*, *et—neque* (nec), 554, I., 5. *Et* in poetry, position, 569, III., N. Preps. repeated w. *et—et*, 636, III., 6.
-ēt in Plautus for *-et*, 580, III., N. 2.
-ēta, *ē* in, 587, I., 7.
-etās, *e* in, 587, II., 4.
Etenim, 310, 5; 554, V., 2.
Ethical dat., 389.
Etiam, 310, 1; 554, I., 2, 4, and 5.
Etiamsī, *etsī*, 311, 4; in concessions, 515, II. *Etsī* = 'yet,' etc., 515, N. 2.
-ētum, nouns in, 323; *ē* in, 587, I., 7.
-ētus, *ē* in, 587, I., 7.
Etymology, 37–344. Figures of etymol., 634, N.; 635.
Eu, sound, 6, 1; 12.
Euge, interj., 312, 2 and 6.
Euhoe, interj., 312, 2.
Euphemism, 637, XI., 4.
Euphony in arrang. of words, 561.
-eus, adjs. in, 329; *-ēus*, 331. *-Ēus* in prop. nouns, *ē* in, 577, 5, N.
Ēvenit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Ēvoe, interj., 312, 2.
Ex, *ē*, in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386, 2; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Ex* w. abl. for part. gen., 397, N. 3. *Ex*, *ē*, w. abl., 434; 434, I. *Ē*, *ex*, 434, N. 2. *Ex*, *ē*, w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
-ex, **-ēx**, decl. of nouns in, 92; 93. Compds. in *-ex*, 341, 1.
Exadversum, *exadversus*, w. acc., 433.
Exanimus, *exanimis*, 159, III.
Exchanging, constr. w. verbs of, 422, N. 2.
Exclamatory sentences, 355; acc. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, N. 3; infin. in, 539, III.
Exīstimō, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Exonerō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Exos, *-os* in, 581, VII., 1.
Expediō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Expers w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Explicative asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.
Exposcō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Exsequiās, acc. of limit, 380, 2, 3).
Exsolvō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Exsors w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Extemplō, 304, II., 1, N.
Extent of space, acc. of, 379.
External object, 371, I., 1.
Exterus, compar., 163, 3.
Extrā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Extrēmus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
Exuō, constr., 377; p. 198, foot-note 1; p. 219, foot-note 1.

F

Fac for *face*, 238. *Fac nē* w. subj. in prohibitions, 489, 2). *A* in *fac*, 579, 3.
Faciēs, decl., 122, 2.
Facilis, compar., 163, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, 1.
Faciō, accent of compds., 18, 2, 2). *Faciō* omitted, 368, 3, N. 1. *Faciō* w. dat., 385, 3; w. pred. gen., 403; w. abl., 415, III., N. 1. *Faciō ut*, 498, II., N. 2. *Faciō* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2; 499, 2; 501, II., 1. *E* before *f* in compds., 594, 6.
-factō, verbs in, 344, 3.
Facultās, *facultātēs*, 132.
Falsus, compar., 167, 2.
Fāma fert w. infin., 535, I., 3.
Famēs, abl. *famē*, 137, 2.
Familia, genitive, 49, 1. *Familiā*, constr., 415, II., N.
Fār, decl., 63, 2, N.; 133, N.
Fās, defect., 134; w. supine, 547, 1.
Fastīdiōsus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Faux, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
Favorite vowel, 24.
Fax, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (3).
Faxō, *faxim*, for *fēcerō*, *fēcerim*, 240, 4.
Fearing, constr. w. verbs of, 498, III.
Febris, decl., 62, III.
Feeling, constr. w. verbs of, 371, III.; 410, V., 2; 535, III.
Feet in versification, 597.
Fel, defective, 133, 4, N.
Fēlīx, decl., 156.
Feminine, 42, II. Fem. caesura, 611, N.
Fer for *fere*, 238; *e* in, 579, 3.
-fer, compds. in, 342, 1; decl., 51, 4, 2); adjs. in, 150, 3), N.
Ferē, *fermē*, *ē* in, 581, IV., 4.
Ferō and compds., increm. of, 586, 1.
Feror, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Fertilis w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Ferus, not compared, 169, 4.
Festivals, plur. in names of, explained, 131, N.; plur. in *-ālia*, decl., 136, 3.
-fex, compds. in, 341, 1.
-ficō, verbs in, 344, 3.
-ficus, adjs. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
Fidēlis w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Fidī, *ī* in, 590, 1.

Fīdō w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
Fifth decl., 120 ff.; ē final in, 581, IV., 1.
FIGURES of prosody, 608. Fig. of speech, 634 ff.; of etymology, 634, N.; 635; of syntax, 634, N.; 636; of rhetoric, 634, N.; 637.
Fīlia, decl., 49, 4.
Filix w. short increm., p. 243, foot-note 2.
Filling, constr. w. verbs of, p. 225, foot-note 3.
FINAL conjunctions, 311, 5; 555, V. Final vowels and syllables, quant. of, 580; 581. Fin. syl. of verse, 605. Fin. syl. elided, 608, I. Fin. long vowel or diphthong shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3.
Fīnis, decl., 62, IV.; singular and plur., 132.
Finite verb, 199, N.
Fīnitimus, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
Fīō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 1); w. abl., 415, III., N. 1. *Fit*, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2. *Ī* or *ī* in *fīō*, 577, I., 3, (1). *E* before *f* in compds., 594, 6.
First decl., 48 ff.; ă final in, 581, IV., 1. First conjugat., 205 ff.; 223 ff.; 257 ff.
Flagitō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Flocci, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
Flōs, decl., 61.
Following, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.
Foot, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1. Roman foot, 648, IV.
'For,' how translated, 384, 3.
Forās, 304, I., 1.
Fore ut, 537, 3.
Foreign words indecl., 128, 2.
Forgetting, constr. w. verbs of, 407.
Forīs, ī in, 581, VIII., 1.
Formation of stems of verbs, 249 ff.; of words, 318 ff.; of nouns, 321 ff.
Fornix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Fors, defective, 134.
Forsitan, 304, IV., N. 2; w. subj., p. 267, foot-note 1.
Fortuītus, ī in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Fortūna, *fortūnae*, 132.
Fourth decl., 116 ff. Fourth conjugat., 211 ff.; 229 ff.; 284 ff.
Fractions, 174, 1.
Fraudō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Fraus, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
Free from, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 414, III.
Frēnum, pl. *frēnī*, *frēna*, 143, 2.
Frequentatives, 336.
Frētus w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
Fricatives, 3, II., 4.
Friendly, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I. and II.
Frūctus, decl., 116.
Frūgī, indeclin., 159, I.; compar., 165, N. 2.
Fruor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive of, 544, 2, N. 5.
Frūx, defective, 133, 3; quant. of increm., 535, V., 2.
Fuam for *sim*, 204, 2.
Fulness, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 3.
Fungor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive of, 544, 2, N. 5.
Fūr, quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
Furnishing, constr. w. verbs of, p. 225, foot-note 3.
FUTURE, 197; 222. Fut. indic., 470; for imperat., 487, 4. Fut. in condit., 511, 1, N. 1; in temp. clauses, p. 293, foot-note 2. Fut. in subj., 479; 481; 496. Fut. imperat., 487, 2. Fut. infin., 537; periphrast., 537, 3. Fut. particip., 550.
FUTURE PERFECT, 197, II.; 222, II.; 478; in subj., 496; in indir. disc., 525, 2; in infinit., 537, 3, N. 2. *-īs* in fut. perf., 581, VIII., 5.
Futūrum esse ut, 537, 3. *Futūrum sit*, *esset*, *ut*, p. 272, foot-note 2.

G

G formed from *C*, 2, 2; sound, 7; 13; changed to *c*, 33, 1; assimilated to *m*, 34, 3; dropped, 36, 3.
Gaudeō, constr., p. 221, foot-note 2; p. 310, foot-note 2.
Gāvīsus, ī in, 586, III., 2.
Gemō w. acc., 371, III., N.
Gems, gend. of names of, 53, 1.
Gender, 41 ff.; Decl. I., 48; Decl. II., 53; Decl. III., 99–115; Decl. IV., 118. Decl. V., 123; general table, 124.
Gener, decl., 51, 4, 3).
General relatives, p. 75, foot-note 3. Gen. rel. adverbs, 305, N. 1. Gen. subject, 460, 1, N. 2. Gen. truths, 467, II.; in conditions, 508, 5; 511, 1. Gen. negat., 553, 1 and 2.
Genere, constr., 415, II., N.
GENITIVE, endings of, 47; Decl. I., *ās* for *ae*, *ūm* for *ārum*, 49; Decl. II., *ī* for *iī*, 51, 5; *ūm* for *ōrum*, 52, 3; *ōn* for *ōrum*, 54, N. 1; Decl. III., *um* or *ium*, p. 36, foot-notes 3 and 4; p. 38, foot-note 2; p. 40, foot-note 3; *yos*, *ȳs*, 68, 2; *ōn*, 68, 4;

Decl. IV., *uis*, *uos*, for *ūs*, 117; Decl. V., *ī*, *ēī*, *ēs*, for *ĕī*, 121. Gen. in adjs., 158, 2. -*Ūs* in gen., 581, IX., 2.
GENITIVE, syntax, 393 ff.; how rendered, 393, N. Gen. w. possessives, 363, 4, 1); w. nouns, 395; varieties, 396; in special constructions, 398; 406 ff.; w. adjs., 391, II., 4; 399; w. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; of price, 404; 405. Acc. and gen., 409. Gen. w. adverbs, 397, 4. Gen. of ger., 542, I. Position of gen. w. adj., 565, 2; between prep. and case, 569, II., 3.
Genitus w. abl., 415, II.
Gentēs, Roman, how designated, 331, N. 2.
Gentile nouns, 331, N. 1.
Genus, circumlocutions w., 636, III., 10.
-**ger**, compds. in, 342, 1; decl., 51, 4, 2); adjs., 150, N.
GERUND, 200, II.; endings, 248. Gerund in sequence of tenses, 495, IV. Syntax of gerund, 541; 542. Ger. w. pass. meaning, 541, N. Cases of ger., 542. Ger. w. gen., *meī*, etc., 542, I., N. 1; denoting purpose, 542, I., N. 2; 542, III., N. 2.
GERUNDIVE, 200, IV.; syntax, 543. Gerund. constr., 543, N.; 544; denoting purpose, 544, 2, N. 2; w. official names, 544, 2, N. 3; after comparat., 544, 2, N. 4.
Gignō w. *genuī*, *genitum*, 592, 2.
Giving, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Glaciēs, decl., 122, 3.
Glīs, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Glyconic verse, 604, N. 1; 628, III. and VII.; 631, IV.-VI.
Gn lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2.
Gnārus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
Gnomic perfect, 471, 5.
-**gō**, decl. of nouns in, 60, 4.
Going, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 1).
Golden age, 640, II., 1.
Gracilis, compar., 163, 2.
Grātia, *grātiae*, 132.
Grātīs, *ī* in, 581, VIII., 1.
Grātuītus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Grātus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Graviter ferō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 2.
Greater Ionic, 597, N. 1; Archilochian, 628, X.; 616, N.; 619, N.; Asclepiadēan, 628, V.; Sapphic, 628, VII.; Alcaic, 628, IX.
GREEK NOUNS, Decl. I., 50; Decl. II., 54; Decl. III., 68. Long vowels in Greek nouns, 577, 5. *I*, *ī*, in dat. and voc., 581, I., 2. -*Ā* in voc., 581, III., 2. -*Ē* in plur., 581, IV., 1. -*Ās* in acc., 581, V., 2. -*Ēs* in Greek words, 581, VI., 3; -*os*, 581, VII., 2; -*ūs*, 581, IX., 3. *A* in increm. of nouns in *a* and *as*, 585, I., 3. *O* in increm., 585, II., 5; *ē* in words in -*ēn*, 585, III., 2; in -*ēs* and *ĕr*, 585, III., 4. Quant. of increm. of words in -*ax*, 585, I., 4, (3). *I* in increm., 585, IV., 3.
Grimm's law, 638, N. 2.
Grūs, decl., 66, 2.
Grȳps, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3.
Guilt, adjs. of, w. genit., 399, I., 3.
Gutturals, 3, II.; before *s*, 30. Guttural stems, 59.

H

H changed to *c*, 33, 1, N. 1; following other consonants, does not lengthen preceding syllable, 576, 1, N. 1. Syllable before *h* short, 577.
Habeō, meaning, p. 202, foot-note 3; w. two accs., 373, 1, N. 1; w. perf. part., 388, 1, N.; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Hāc, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
Hadria, gend., 48, 5.
Haec for *hae*, p. 72, foot-note 7.
Hālitus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Happening, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.
Haud, use, 552.
Hēja, interj., 312, 6; *a* in, 581, III., 3.
Hem, interj., 312, 1; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3.
Hendiadys, 636, III., 2.
Hēpar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, 1.
Hephthemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Hephthemimeris, 597, N. 2.
Hērēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Heroic verse, 604, N. 2.
Hērōs, decl., 68.
Heteroclites, 127; 135 ff.; adjs., 159, III.
Heterogeneous nouns, 127; 141 ff.
Heu, interj., 312, 3; w. acc., 381, N. 2. *Heu* in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
Heus, interj., 312, 5.
Hexameter, 603, notes 2 and 6; 609 ff.
Hiatus, 608, II.
Hiber, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.

Hīc, 186; 191; use, 450; ī in, 579, 3. Ō in *hōc*, 579, 3. *Hōc*, redundant, 636, III., 7.
Hīc, 304, III., 2; 305, I.; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Hilarus, *hilaris*, 159, III.
Hinc, 305, III.
Hindering, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.
Historical tenses, 198; hist. present, 467, III.; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; hist. perfect, 198, 1; 197, N. 1; 471, II. Hist. tenses in sequence, 491 ff. Hist. infin., 536, 1.
Hōc, 304, II., 3, N.
Hodiē, 120, N.; 304, II., 1; *ē* in, p. 341, foot-note 2; *o* in, 594, 10.
Honestus w. supine, 547, 1.
Horace, logaoedic verses in, 628; versification, 630 ff.; lyric metres, 631; index, 632.
Horreō w. acc., 371, III., N.
Hōrsum, 305, II.
Hortative subj., 484, II.
Hortor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Hortus, *hortī*, 132.
Hospitus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Hostile, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 391, II., 1.
Hostis, decl., 62.
Hours, Roman, 645; 645, 2.
H S, signification, 647, 3.
Hūc, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Hūjusmodī, 186, 4, N.
Humilis, compar., 163, 2.
Humus, gend., 53, 1; *humī*, locat., 426, 2.
'Husband,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, 1, N. 2.
Hydrōps, quant. of increm., 585, II., 2.
Hypallage, 636, IV., 2.
Hyperbaton, 636, V.
Hyperbole, 637, VI.
Hypermetrical, 603, N. 3.
Hypothetical, see *Conditional*.
Hysteron proteron, 636, V., 2.

I

I for *J*, p. 2, foot-note 1. *I*, *ī*, sound, 5; 10 ff. *Ī* final shortened, 21, 2, 3). *I* interchanged with *j*, 28; dropped, 36, 4. *Ī* for *iī* and *ie*, 51, 5. *I*-nouns, 55; *i*-verbs, 211. Stems in *i*, 62 ff.; origin of, p. 35, foot-note 3. Nouns in *ī*, 71; gend., 111. -*Ī* in abl., 62; for *ĕī*, 121, 1; in adverbs, 304, II., 2; 304, III., 1. *Ī*, *i*, or *ĭ* final, 580, I.; 581, I.; in increments of decl., 585; 585, IV.; conj., 586; 586, III. *I* as consonant, 603, III., N. 2.
-**iă**, suffix, 320, II. Nouns in -*ia*, 325; -*ia* and *iēs*, 138.
-**ia** in prop. names, *ī* in, 577, 5, N.
-**iacus**, adjs. in, 331; *a* in, 587, II., 2.
-**iadēs**, *a* in, 587, II., 1.
Iambic verse, 603, N. 1; 621 ff.; stanza, 631, XVI.
Iambus, 597, II.; irrational, 598, 1, 2).
-**iānus**, adjs. in, 331.
-**ībam** for -*iēbam*, 240, 1.
Iber, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Ibi, 304, III., 2; 305, I. and IV.; *ĭ* in, 581, I., 2; quant. of ult. in compds., 594, 9.
-**ibilis**, quant. of antepen., 587, IV., 1.
-**ībō**, -**ībor**, for -*iam*, -*iar*, 240, 2.
Ibus, for *eis*=*iis*, p. 73, foot-note 2.
-**icius**, adjs. in, 329.
Ictus, 599; place in hexam., 612.
-**icus**, adjs. in, 330; 331; compar., 169, 3. *I* in *icus*, 587, II., 2.
-**īcus**, adjs. in, 335, 5.
Id agō w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2. *Id* redundant, 636, III., 7.
Idcircō, 554, IV., 2.
Idem, decl., 186, VI.; w. dat., 391, N. 1. Use of *idem*, 451.
Ideō, 554, IV., 2.
-**idēs** or -**īdēs**, in patronymics, 587, II., 1.
Ides, 642, I., 3.
-**īdō**, *ī* in, 587, I., 2.
Idōneus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1. *Idōneus quī* w. subj., 503, II., 2.
Idūs, gend., 118.
-**idus**, *i* in, 587, II., 2.
-**iē**, suffix, 320, II.
-**iēnsis**, adjs. in, 331.
-**ier** for *ī* in infinit., 240, 6.
-**iēs**, nouns in, 325, N. 1; 327; -*iēs* and *ia*, 138.
-**īgintī**, quant. of antepen., 587, III., 3.
Igitur, 310, 4; 554, IV., 3; position, 569, III.
Ignārus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
Ignis, decl., 62.
Ignōtus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
-**īgō**, nouns in, 324, N.; 327, 4, N.; *ī* in, 587, I., 2.
-**īle**, nouns in, 323; *ī* in, 587, I., 4.
Īlicō, 304, II., 1, N.; *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Īlion, decl., 54.
-**ilis**, compar. of adjs. in, 163, 2; 168, 1. *I* in -*ilis*, 587, II., 5.

-īlis, adjs. in, 330; compar., 169, 3. *I* in *ilis*, 587, II., N. 1.
-illa, nouns in, 321, 4.
Illāc, 305, V.
Illative conjs., 310, 4; 554, IV.
Ille, 186; 191; use, 450; position, 569, I., 1. *Illud*, redundant, 636, III., 7.
Illĭc, decl., 186, 2.
Illīc, 304, III., 2; 305, I.
Illinc, 305, III.
-illō, verbs in, 339.
Illō, *illōc*, *illūc*, 304, II., 3, N.; *illūc*, 305, II.
Illūdō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
-illus, **-illum**, nouns in, 321, 4; adjs., 332, N. 1.
-im in acc., 62; for *-am* or *-em* in pres. subj., 240, 3. Adverbs in *-im*, p. 144, foot-note 3.
Imbēcillis, compar., 163, 2.
Imber, decl., 62, N. 2; 65, 1, 2).
Imbuō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
Immemor w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
-imōnia, nouns in, 325; *ō* in, 587, III., 4.
-imōnium, nouns in, 324; *ō* in, 587, III., 4.
Impedīmentum, *impedīmenta*, 132.
Impellō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
IMPERATIVE, 196, III. Syntax, 487 ff. Imperat. in prohibitions, 488 ff.; in indir. disc., 523, III. Imperat. sentences, 354. Imperat. subj., 484, IV. *E* in Imperat., Conj. II., 581, IV., 3.
IMPERFECT TENSE, 197, I.; 222, I. Imperf. indic., 468 ff.; subj., 480; in subj. of desire, 483, 2; in potent. subj., 485, N. 1; in seq. of tenses, 493; 495, III.; for future time, 496, I.; in condit., 507, III.; 510; 513, N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 3; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; 518, 1; 519, 2, N. 1; 520, II.; 521, II.
Imperītus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
Imperō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1; p. 310, foot-note 1.
Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; impers. pass., 195, II., 1; 534, 1. Clauses of result as subjects of impers. verbs, 501, I., 1.
Impertiō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
Impetrō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Impleō, constr., 410, V., 1; p. 225, foot-note 3.
Imploring, constr. w. verbs of, 374, 2, N. 3.
Impos, *os* in, 581, VII., 1; quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Impotēns w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Imprūdēns w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Impulse, subj. w. verbs of, 498, II.
Imputing, two datives w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 2).
Imus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
-in, suffix, 320, II.
In, 308; in compds., 344, 5 and 6; w. dat., 386. *In* w. acc. or abl., 435; 435, N. 1; 435, I.; w. acc. after adjs., 391, II., 1; for genit., 396, III., N. 1. *In* w. abl. for genit., 397, 3, N. 3. *In* w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5; p. 316, foot-note 1. *I* in *in*, 579, 3.
-ina, nouns in, 324.
Incassum, 304, I., 2.
Incēdō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Inceptives, 280; 337.
Incertus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Inchoatives, 337.
Inclination, constr. w. adjs. of, 391, II., 1, (2).
Inclutus, compar., 167, 2.
Incrēdibilis w. supine, 547, 1.
Increments, quant. in, 582 ff.; decl., 585; conj., 586.
Inde, 304, III., N.; 305, III.; 310, 4.
Indeclinable nouns, 127, I.; 128; gend., 42, N. Indecl. adjs., 159, I.
Indefinite pronouns, 189; 455 ff. Indef. relat. adverbs, 305, N. 1. Indef. subject, 460, 1, N. 2; 518, 2.
Independent clauses, 348, N. 2.
Index of verbs, p. 383; lyric metres of Horace, 632.
Indicative, 196, I.; use, 474 ff. Indic. for subj. in condit., 511.
Indigeō, constr., 410, V., 1.
Indignus, constr., 421, III.; 421, N. 3. *Indignus qui* w. subj., 503, II., 2. *Indignus* w. supine, 547, 1.
Indigus, constr., p. 219, foot-note 4.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 522; moods in prin. clauses, 523; in sub. clauses, 524; tenses, 525; persons and pronouns, 526; condit. sentences, 527. Direct changed to indir., 530; indir. to direct, 531. Indirect clauses, 528 ff.; questions, 529; subj. in, 529, I.; indic., 529, 7.
INDIRECT OBJECT, 382 ff.; w. direct object, 384, II.
Indo-European languages, 638.
Indu, *u* in, p. 340, foot-note 1.
Indūcō, constr., 377.
Indulging, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.

Induō, constr., 377 ; p. 198, foot-note 1.

-īne, nouns in, 322, N. ; *ī* in, 587, I., 3.

Infernē, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.

Inferus, compar., 163, 3.

Infidēlis w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Infimus, meaning, 440, N. 2.

INFINITIVE, 200, I. ; origin, p. 156, foot-note 1 ; gend., 42, N. ; endings, 248. Infin. in sequence of tenses, 495, 4. Infin. in relat. clauses, 524, 1, 1) ; after conjs., 524, 1, 2). Construction of infin., 532 ff. Infin. w. verbs, 533. Infin. of purpose, 533, II. Infin. w. adjs., 533, II., 3 ; w. verb. nouns, etc., 533, 3, N. 3 ; w. preps., 533, 3, N. 4 ; w. verbs w. acc., 534 ; 535. Subject of infin., 536. Histor. infin., 536, 1. Pred. after infin., 536, 2. Tenses of infin., 537. Infin. as subject, 538. Infin. in special constr., 539 ; as pred., 539, I. ; as appos., 539, II. ; in exclamations, 539, III. ; in abl. abs., 539, IV.

Infitiās, constr., 380, 2, 3).

Influence, dat. of, 384, 1, 1).

Infrā, p. 149, foot-note 2 ; w. acc., 433 ; 433, I.

Ingrātīs, *īs* in, 581, VIII., 1.

Ingrātus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Inheritance, divisions of, 646, 3, 4).

-īnī, quant. of pen., 587, I., 3.

Inimīcus, *injūcundus*, w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Injuring, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.

Innitor w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.

Inops w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Inquam, position, 569, V.

Inquiēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.

Insciēns w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.

Inscius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Inseparable preps., 308 ; in compds., 344, 6 ; quant., 594, 2.

Inspergō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.

Instar, defective, 134 ; gen. w., 398, 4.

INSTRUMENTAL CASE, 367, 3 ; 411, II. Instr. abl., 418 ff. Abl. of instrument, 420.

Instruō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.

Insuber, decl., 65, 1, 2).

Insuētus w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3 ; p. 210, foot-note 3 ; p. 315, foot-note 2.

Insuper w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.

Integer w. gen., 399, III., 1.

Intensives, 336.

Inter in compds., 344, 5 ; w. dat., 386. *Inter* w. acc., 433 ; 433, I. ; for gen., 397, 3, N. 3 ; w. reciprocal force, 448, N. *Inter* w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.

Interchange of vowels and consonants, 28 ; 29.

Interclūdō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.

Intercus w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.

Interdiū, *interdius*, *interdum*, 304, I., 2.

Intereā, 304, IV., N. 2.

Interest, dat. of, 384, 1, 2). Rom. computation of interest, 646, 3, 3).

Interest, constr., 406, III. ; 408.

Interior, compar., 166.

Interjections, 312 ; 556 ; 557 ; w. voc., 369, 1 ; w. acc., 381, N. 2 ; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3) ; 389, N. 2.

INTERNAL OBJECT, 371, I., 2.

Interne, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.

INTERROGATIVE pronouns, 188 ; 454. Inter. conjs., 311, 8 ; 555, VIII. Inter. sentences, 351. Inter. words, 351, 1. Double questions, 353. Inter. sentences w. potent. subj., 486, II. ; in indir. disc., 523, II. Indirect questions, 528, 2 ; 529, I.

Interrogō w. two accs., 374, 2.

Interval, abl. of, 430.

Intimus, meaning, 440, N. 2.

Intrā w. acc., 433 ; 433, I.

Intransitive verbs, 193, II. ; 195, II., 1 ; 372, III., N. 3 ; impers. passive, 465, 1.

Intrō- in compds., 594, 8.

Intus w. abl., 437, 2.

-īnus, adjs. in, 330, 331 ; compar., 169, 3. *-Inus* or *-īnus* in adjs., 587, II., 5, w. N. 2.

Invādō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.

Invicem, 304, I., 2.

Invītus, compar., 167, 2 ; special use of dat., 387, N. 3. *Invītus* w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.

Iō, interj., 312, 2.

-iō, verbs of Conj. III. in, 217 ff. ; quant. of stem-syllable, 588. *-Io*, *-iō*, suffixes, 320, II. ; nouns in, 324 ; 326.

-iōn in prop. names, *ī* in, 577, 5, N.

Ionic feet, 597, N. 1 ; verse, 626 ; stanza, 631, XIII.

-ior in comparatives, 162. *-Iŏr*, suffix, 320, II.

-iōs, suffix, 320, II.

Ipse, decl., 186, V. ; use, 452 ; w. abl. abs., 434, 4, N. 3. Gen. of *ipse* w. possessive, 398, 3.

Ipsus for *ipse*, p. 73, foot-note 5.

-ir, decl. of nouns in, 51, 4.

Iron age, 640, III., 2.

Ironical condition, 507, 3, N. 1.

Irony, 637, V.

IRRATIONAL time, 596, 1, N. 2. Irrat. trochee, 598, 1, 1). Irrat. iambus, 598, 1, 2).
IRREGULAR nouns, 127 ff.; adjs., 159. Irreg. comparison, 163 ff. Irreg. verbs, 289 ff.
Is, decl., 186; correlat., 191; use, 450, 4, N. 2; 451. *Is—quī*, 451, 4. *Ē* in *ĕi*, 577, I., 2, (1). *I* in *is*, 579, 3.
-**is**, decl. of adjs. in, 62, IV., N. 1; of nouns in, 65, 1; 82. Gend. of nouns in, 105; 107. -*Is* in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 1). -*Is* in acc. pl., 62; 64; 67; in adverbs, 304, II., 1. -*Is* or -*īs* final, 580, III., w. N. 2; 581, VIII.
Islands, gend. of names of, 42, II., 2; constr., 380, 2, 2); 412, II. 1; 426, 1.
-**issimă**, -**issimo**, suffixes, p. 156, foot-note 9.
-**issimus**, *a*, *um*, in superlat., 162; p. 157, foot-note 9.
-**issŏ**, verbs in, 336, N. 2.
Istāc, 305, V.
Iste, decl., 186, II.; correlat., 191; use, 450.
Istĭc, decl., 186, 2.
Istīc, 304, III., 2; 305, I.
Istinc, 305, III.
Istō, *istōc*, 304, II., 3.
Istūc, 304, II., 3; 305, II.
-**īt** in Plautus for -*it*, 580, III., N. 2.
Ita, 305, V.; *ita—sī*, 507, 3, N. 2. Meaning of *ita*, 551, N. 2. *Ut—ita*, w. superlat., 555, II., 1. *A* in *ita*, 581, III., 3. *Ita* redundant, 636, III., 7.
Itaque, 310, 4.
-**itās**, nouns in, 324; 325; *i* in, 587, II., 4.
-**iter**, *i* in, 587, II., 4.
-**itia**, nouns in, 325.
-**itiēs**, nouns in, 325, N. 1.
-**itim**, *ī* in, 587, I., 7.
-**itimus**, adjs. in, 330, 1.
-**itium**, nouns in, 324.
-**itō**, frequentatives in, 336, II.
-**itūdŏ**, nouns in, 325; *i* in, 587, IV., 1.
-**itus** in adverbs, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2; 587, II., 4. *I* in -*ītus*, 587, I., 7.
-**iu**, suffix, 320, II.
-**ium**, decl. of nouns in, 51, 5. -*Ium* in gen. pl., 62; 63; 64; 66; 67. Nouns in -*ium*, 324; 327.
-**ius**, suffix, 320, II. Decl. of nouns in -*ius*, 51, 5. Adjs. in -*ius*, 330; 331; 333, 5. *I* or *i* in *ĭus* in gen., 577, I., 3, (3). *I* in *īus* in prop. names, 577, 5, N.
-**īvus**, adjs. in, 333, 5; *ī* in, 587, I., 6.
-**ix**, decl. of nouns in, 95. -*Ix*, decl. of nouns in, 95; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 1.

J

J, j, modifications of *I*, *i*, 2, 4; sound, 7; effect on quantity of preceding syllable, 16, I., 2; 576, II.; 576, 2; interchanged with *i*, 28; dropped, 36, 4.
-**ja**, suffix, 320, I.
Jaciō, spelling and pronunciation of compds., 36, 4.
Jam, compds. of, w. present, 467, 2; w. imperf., 469, 2.
-**jans**, suffix, 320, I.
Jecur, decl., 77, 4.
Jocus, plur. *joci*, *joca*, 141.
-**jŏr**, suffix, 320, II.
Joy, force of adjs. expressing, 443, N. 1.
Jubar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Jubeō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1; in pass., 534, 1, N. 1.
Jūcundus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, 1.
Jūdex, decl., 59.
Jūdiciō, constr., 410, II., 1.
Jūgerum, decl., 136, 1. *Jūgerum* as unit of measure, 648, V.
Jugum, quant. of syllable before *j* in compds., 576, 2.
Julian calendar, 641.
Jungō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1; w. abl., 419, 1, 1).
Jūppiter, decl., 66, 3.
Jūrātus w. active meaning, 257, N. 2.
Jūs, decl., 61.
Jūsjūrandum, decl., 126.
Jūssō for *jūsserō*, 240, 4.
Juvenal, versification, 630.
Juvenis, decl., p. 36, foot-note 3; compar., 168, 4.
Juvō w. accus., 385, II., N. 1.
Juxtā w. accus., 433.

K

K seldom used, 2, 6.
-**ka**, suffix, 320, I.
Karthāgŏ, decl., 66, 4.
Kindred words near each other, 563.
Knowing, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1; 535, I., 1, (2).
Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 2; p. 315, foot-note 2; w. force of adverbs, 443, N. 1.

L

L, stems in, decl., 60; nouns in, decl., 75; gend., 111; 112. Quant. of final syllables in *l*, 579, 2; 580, II.
-la, **lă**, suffixes, 320. Nouns in *-la*, 321.
Labials, 3, II.; 3, N. 1, I., 3. Labial stems, 57.
Lacer, decl., 150, N., 1).
Lacrimō w. accus., 371, III., N. 1.
Lacus, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Laedō w. accus., 385, II., N. 1.
Laetus w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Laevā, constr., 425, 2.
Lampas, decl., 68.
Language, Latin, 638.
Lapis, decl., 58.
Lār, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Lassus, not compared, 169, 4.
LATIN period, 573. Lat. lang. and literature, 638. Early Latin, 639. Lat. authors, 640.
Learning, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
Leaving, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Lengthening of vowels, 20.
-lēns, **-lentus**, adjs. in, 323.
Leō, decl., 60.
Lepus, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Lesser Ionic, 597, N.; Archilochian, 617, N.; Asclepiadēan, 628, IV.; Sapphic, 628, VI.; Alcaic, 628, VIII.
Letters, classification, 3; sounds, 5 ff. Names of letters indecl., 128, 1. Tenses in letters, 472, 1.
-leus, nouns in, 321, N.
Levō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 219, foot-note 1.
Lēx, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
-li, suffix, 320, II.
Libēns w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Līber, Bacchus, *līberī*, decl., 51, 4. *Līber*, *era*, *erum*, 149.
Līberō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 219, foot-note 1.
Lībra, 648, I.; divisions, 648, I., 1.
Librō, constr., 425, 2, N. 1.
Liceō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Licet, 311, 4; w. subj., 515, III. Pleonasm w. *licet*, 636, III., 9.
Liger, decl., 66, III., 1.
Ligus, w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.
Likeness, dat. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; 391, II., 4.
Limit, accus. of, 380.
Linter, decl., 65, 1, 2).
Liquī, *i* in, 590, 1.
Liquid measure, Rom., 648, III.
Liquids, 3, II., 4; developing vowels, 29, N. Liquid stems, 60.
Līs, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
-lis, adjs. in, 333.
Literature, Lat., 638.
Litotes, 637, VIII.
Littera, *litterae*, 132. *Litterās dare*, 385, 1, N.
Litum, *i* in, 590, 1.
-lo, suffix, 320, II.
LOCATIVE, 45, 2; 48, 4; 51, 8; 66, 4; 120, N. Locatives as adverbs, 304, III. Abl. w. locat., 363, 4, 2). Syntax of locat., 367, 2; 411, III.; 425, II.; 426, 2. Locat. abl., 425, ff.
Locō, constr., 380, N.
Locuplēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Locus, plur., 141. *Locō*, constr., 415, II., N. *Locō*, *locīs*, constr., 425, 2.
Logaoedic verse, 627 ff.
Long measure, Rom., 648, IV.
Long syllables, 575. Long stem-syllables in primitives, 595. Final long vowel shortened in hiatus, 603, II., N. 3.
Longīnquus, superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Longius without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2.
-ls, decl. of nouns in, 90.
Luctor w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Lūdicer, defect., 159, II.
Lūdus, *lūdī*, 132.
Luēs, defective, 134.
-lus, **-lum**, nouns in, 321; adjs., 332.
Lūx, without gen. plur., 133, 5; quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
Lycūrgīdēs, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Lynx, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3.
Lyric metres of Horace, 631; index, 632.

M

M changed to *n*, 33, 4; assimilated to *s*, 34, 1, N.; developing *p*, 34, 1, N. Stems in *m*, 60. Prepositions in *m*, p. 149, foot-note 2. Quant. of final syllables in *m*, 579, 2; 580, II. *M* final elided, 608, I.
-ma, **-mă**, suffixes, 320.
Maereō, constr., 371, III., N. 1.
Magis, in comparison, 170; 444, 2, notes 1 and 2. *Nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Māgnus compared, 165. *Māgnī*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
Mājor, in expressions of age, p. 222, foot-note 4.

Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Male compared, 306, 2. Dat. w. compds. of *male*, 384, 4, N. 1. *E* in *male*, 581, IV., 4.
Mālō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1; 499, 2; p. 310, foot-note 1. *Īs* in *māvīs*, 581, VIII., 3, N.
Malus, compar., 165.
-man, suffix, 320, I.
Manifestus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Manner, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3). Abl. of manner, 419, III. Manner expressed by particip., 549, 1.
Manus, gend., 118.
Mare, decl., 63; 63, 2. *Marī*, constr., 425, 2.
Margarīta, plur., 142.
Martial, metres, 638, II.
Mās, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Masculine caesura, 611, N.
Mastery, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 3; verbs of, w. gen., 410, V., 3.
Material expressed by abl., 415. Material nouns, 39, 2, 3); plur., 130, 2.
Mātūrus, compar., 163, 1, N.
Mātūtīnus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.
Māximē in adverbial comparison, 170.
Māximī, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
Means, abl. of, 418; 420. Means expressed by particip., 549, 1.
Measure of difference, abl. of, 417, 2. Roman measures, 646; 648.
Mēcastŏr, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Mēd for *mē*, 184, 5.
Medeor w. dat., 385, II., N. 3.
Medial vowels, 3, I., 2.
Medius designating part, 440, N. 2.
Mēdius fidius, *mehercule*, *meherculēs*, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Mel, defect., 133, 4, N.
Melius w. indicat., 475, 5.
Melos, decl., 68, 6.
Members of complex sentences, 348, N. 1.
Mēmē, for *mē*, 184, 4.
Meminī w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407; w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
Memor, decl., 158. *Memor* w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3. Quant. of increm. of *memor*, 585, II., 3.
Memorābilis w. sup., 547, 1.
-men, suffix, 320, II.; nouns in, 327.
Mendīcus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Mēnsa, decl., 48.
Mēnsis, decl., p. 36, foot-note 3.
-mento, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 1.
-mentum, nouns in, 327.
Mēpte for *mē*, 184, 5.
Meroēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Merīdiēs, gend., 123; defect., 130, 1, 4).
Messis, decl., 62, III., 1.
-met, forms in, 184, 3; 185, N. 2.
Metaphor, 637, II.
Metathesis, 635, 5.
Metonymy, 637, III.
Metre, 601, N. 3.
Metrical equivalents, 598. Metr. name of verse, 603.
Metuō, constr., 385, 1; p. 274, foot-note 3.
Meus, decl., 185, N. 1.
Mī for *mihi*, 184.
Middle voice, 465.
Mīles, decl., 58.
Mīlitia, decl., 48, 4; constr., 426, 2.
Mīlle, decl., 159, I.; use, 174, 4; 178. *Mīlia*, masc. by synesis, 461, 2.
Million sesterces, how denoted, 647, IV.
-min, suffix, 320, II.
-minī as pers. end., p. 118, foot-note 3.
Minimī, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
-minō in imperat., 240, 5.
Minor caesura, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Minor, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, N. 2. *Minōris*, constr., 405; p. 213, foot-note 2.
Minus, *minimē*, as negatives, 552, 3. *Nōn minus—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Mīrificus, compar., 164, N.
Mīror w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. gen., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 310, foot-note 2.
Mīrum w. *quantum*, 305, N. 4.
Mīrus, not compared, 169, 4.
Mīs for *meī*, 184, 5.
Misceō w. dat., 385, 3; p. 201, foot-note 1; w. acc. and dat., p. 201, foot-note 2; w. abl., 419, 1, 1), (2).
Miser, decl., 150, N.
Misereor, *miserēscō*, w. gen., 406. *Miserēscit*, *miserētur*, constr., 410, IV., N. 1.
Miseret, constr., 409, III.
Mittō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
-mo, suffix, 320, II.
Moderor, constr., 385, 1.
Modifiers, 357 ff. Position of modifiers, of nouns, 565; adjs., 566; verbs, 567; adverbs, 568.
Modius, 648, II.
Modo, 311, 3. *Modo*, *modo nē*, w. subj. of desire, 483, 6. *Modo* w. subj. in condit., 513, I. *Nōn modo—sed etiam* (vērum etiam), 554, I., 5. *O* final in *modo* and compds., 581, II., 1.
Modus, circumlocutions w., 636, III., 10.

Molestus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Molossus, 633, III., 1, N.
-mōn, suffix, 320, II.
Moneō, constr., 374, 2; p. 193, foot-note 3; 410, I., 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Money, Roman, 646 ff.
-mōniă, **-mōnio**, suffixes, p. 157, foot-note 1; *mōnia*, nouns in, 327.
-mōnium, nouns in, 327.
Monocolon, p. 352, foot-note 3.
Monometer, 603, N. 2.
Monosyllabic preps. repeated, 636, III., 6.
Monosyllables, quant., 579. Monosyllables at end of line, 613, N. 2.
Months, Roman, 641; 642, III., 2; names of, originally adjs., p. 36, foot-note 2; gender, 42, I., 2; names of, in *-ber*, decl., 65, 1, 1).
MOODS, 196. Mood signs, 244 ff. Indic., 466 ff. Subj., 477 ff.; 490 ff. Imperat., 487 ff. Moods in subord. clauses, 490 ff.; in condit. sentences, 506 ff.; in concess. clauses, 514 ff.; in causal clauses, 516 ff.; in temp. clauses, 518 ff.; in indir. disc., 523 ff.; in indir. clauses, 529. Infinit., 532 ff.
Morae *or* times, 597.
Mōs, *mōrēs*, 132.
Motion to, how expressed, 384, 3, 1); 385, 4, 1); 386, 3.
Moveō w. abl., 414, II.; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
-ms, decl. of nouns in, 88.
Mulciber, decl., 51, 4, 3).
Multī, indef. num., 175, N. 3.
Multimodīs, 304, II., 1, N.
Multiplication, how expressed, 174, 2, 2).
Multiplicatives, 173, 1.
Multitūdō w. plur. verb, 461, 1.
Multus, compar., 165; plur., 175, N. 3.
Mūs, decl., 64; p. 38, foot-note 4.
Mutes, 3, II., 5.
Mutō, constr., 422, N. 2.

N

N assimilated to *l*, 34, 2; to *m*, 34, 3; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3; 36, 5, 3). Stems in *n*, 60. Decl. of nouns in *n*, 76; gend., 113. Quant. of final syllables in *n*, 580, II., w. notes 1 and 2.
-na, **-nă**, suffixes, 320.
Nam, 310, 5; w. emphasis, 351, 4, N. 1.
Name, dat. of, 387, N. 1; gen. of, 387, N. 2. Name of verse, 603.
NAMES, Roman, 381, N. 3; 439, 4, N.; 649. Names of towns, constr., 380, II.; 412, II.; 425, II.; 428.
Namque, 310, 5; 554, V., 2.
Nasals, 3, II., 2; developing vowels, 29, N.
Nātālis, *nātālēs*, 132.
Nātus w. abl., 415, II.
Naucī, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
Nāvis, decl., 62, III.
Nd shortens preceding vowel, p. 37, foot-note 2.
-*Ne*, interrog. particle, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; in questions, 351, 1 and 2; in double questions, 353, 1; in indir. questions, 529, 1 and 3. Position of -*ne*, 569, III., 4. *E* elided before consonant, 603, I., N. 2.
Nē, 311, 4 and 5; 552; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3; 489, 3; w. imperat., 488; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.; 498, III., notes 1 and 2; omitted, 499, 2. *Nē* in concessions, 515, III. *Nē nōn*, 552, 1. *Nē—quidem*, 553, 2; 569, III., 2. *Nē* or *ne* as prefix, 594, 2.
-nē, nouns in, 322, N.
Nearness, dat. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; gen., 391, 4.
Nec, 310, 1; 554, I., 2. *Nec—nec* (neque), *nec—et* (que), *et—nec*, 554, I., 5. Position of *nec* in poetry, 569, III., N. *E* in *nec*, 579, 3.
Necessārius w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Necessary, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
Necesse est, constr., 502, 1.
Necne, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353, 2, N. 3; 529, 3, 2).
Nectar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Nectō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Nĕdum w. subj., 483, 3, N.; *ĕ* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Needing, constr. w. verbs of, 414, I.
Nĕfas, defect., 134; w. sup., 547, 1.
Negatives, 552; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3. Two neg., 553. Gen. neg., 553, 1 and 2. Position of neg., 569, IV., 1.
Nēmō, use, 457, 1; followed by *quīn*, p. 278, foot-note 3. *E* in *nēmō*, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nēnu, *u* in, p. 340, foot-note 1.
Nĕpōs, decl., 58.
Nĕquam, indecl., 159, I.; compar., 165, N. 2; *ĕ* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nĕquāquam, *ĕ* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Neque, 310, 1; 554, I., 2. *Neque—neque*, 553, 2; 554, I., 5. *Neque—et*, *et—neque*, 554, I., 5.

Nē—quidem, 553, 2; 569, III., 2.
Nēquīquam, *nēquitia*, *ē* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nērĕis, *ĕ* in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
Nesciŏ quis, *quī*, 191, N.; 455, 2. *Nesciŏ* w. interrog. adv., 305, N. 3. *Nesciŏ quis*, *quomodo*, w. indic., 529, 5, 3). *Nesciŏ an*, 529, 3, N. 2.
Nescius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Neu, see *nēve*.
-**neus**, adjs. in, 329.
Neuter, decl., 151, 1.
NEUTER nom., acc., and voc. pl., 46, 2, 1). Neuter by signification, 42, N.; by ending, Decl. II., 53; Decl. III., 111; Decl. IV., 118. Neuter pron. or adj., as cognate acc., 371, II.; 375; w. part. gen., 397, 3; in pred., 438, 4. *O* in increm. of neut., 585, II., 1.
Nēve, *neu*, 311, 5; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3; w. imperat., 488; w. subj. of purpose, 497, 1, N. *Nēve—nēve*, 552, 2. *E* in *nēve*, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nex, defect., 133, 5.
Nf lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2.
Nī, 311, 3; in condit., 507 ff. *Nī* = 'but,' 'except,' 507, 3, N. 3. *Nī* for *nē*, 552, 1.
-**ni**, suffix, 320.
Night, Rom. division of, 645; 645, 1.
Nihil, defect., 134; for *nōn*, 457, 3. *Nihil aliud nisi*, *nihil aliud quam*, 555, III., 1.
Nihilī, constr., 404, N. 2.
Nimis w. genit., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Nimium quantum, 305, N. 4.
Nisi, 311, 3; in condit., 507 ff. *Nisi* = 'but,' 'except,' 507, 3, N. 3; = 'except,' 'than,' 555, III., 1. *Nisi si*, 507, 3, N. 4. *Nisi quod*, *nihil aliud nisi*, 555, III., 1. *I* final in *nisi*, 581, I., 1.
Nītor, constr., 425, 1, 1), N.; 498, II., N. 1.
Nix, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; 66; w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
-**no**, suffix, 320, II.
Nōlō, constr., 499, 2; p. 310, foot-note 1. *Nōlī*, *nōlīte*, in prohibitions, 489, 1). *I* in *nōlīte*, etc., 586, III., 4.
Nōmen w. dat., 387, N. 1; w. gen., 387, N. 2. *Nōmine* w. gen. of crime, 410, II., 1. *Nōmen*, in name of a Rom. citizen, 649.
NOMINATIVE, neut. pl. in adjs., 158, 1. Syntax of nom., 368; two nom., 373, 2. Nom. for voc., 369, 2. Nom. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 2). *-Es* in nom. sing., 581, VI., 1; *-is*, 581, VIII., 2; *-ūs*, 581, IX., 1; in plur., 581, IX., 2.
Nōn, p. 145, foot-note 2; 552. *Nōn modo nōn*, *nōn sōlum nōn*, 552, 2. *Nōn sōlum* (nōn modo *or* nōn tantum)—*sed etiam* (vērum etiam), 554, I., 5. *Nōn minus—quam*, *nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1. *Nōn quō*, *quod*, *quīn*, *quia*, w. subj., 516, 2. *Nōn* w. gen. negat., 553, 1. Position of *nōn*, 569, IV.
Nōndum, 555, I., 1.
Nones, 642, I., 2.
Nōnne, 311, 3; 351, 1 and 2.
Nōs for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, 446, N. 2.
Nostrās, decl., 185, N. 3.
Nostrī, *nostrūm*, 446, N. 3.
Nōtus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
NOUNS, etymol., 39 ff.; gend., 40 ff.; pers. and num., 44; cases, 45; decl., 46 ff.; defect., 122; 129 ff.; indecl., 128; heteroclites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141 ff. Syntax, 362 ff.; agreement, 362 ff.; general view of cases, 365 ff.; nom., 368; voc., 369; acc., 370 ff.; dat., 382 ff.; gen., 393 ff.; abl., 367; 411 ff.; w. preps., 432 ff. Nouns as adjs., 441, 3. Position of modifiers of nouns, 565.
Novus, compar., 167, 2.
Nox, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
Noxius w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
-**ns**, decl. of nouns in, 65, 3; 90. *Ns* lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2.
Nt dropped, p. 19, foot-note 9; shortens preceding vowel, p. 37, foot-note 2.
-**nu**, suffix, 320.
Nūbēcula, p. 159, foot-note 1.
Nūbēs, decl., 62.
Nūbō w. dat., 385, N. 3.
Nūdō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Nūllus, decl., 151, 1; for Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1; use, 457, 2; for *nōn*, 457, 3. *Nūllus* followed by *quīn*, p. 278, foot-note 3.
Num, 310, 2, N.; 311, 3; 351, 1; in indir. quest., 529, II., 1, N. 3.
-**num**, nouns in, 327.
Number, 44; in verbs, 199. Gen. in descriptions of number, 419, 2, 1).
NUMERALS, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl., 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181; in compounding numbers, 174, 3. Numerals w. gen., 397, 2. Numerals in dates, 642, III., 1.
Nūmmus, 647.
Nunc, 304, I., 4; 305, IV.

Nūntior, constr., 534, N. 1, (2).
Nūper, 304, IV., N. 2; compar., 306, 4.
-nus, adjs. in, 329.
Nūsquam w. gen., 397, 4.

O

O, ō, sound, 5; 10; 11. *Ō* final shortened, 21, 2, 3). *O*-nouns, 51. Decl. of nouns in *ō*, *ō*, 60, 4; 72; quant. of increm., 585, II., 5, (2); gend., 99; 100. Num. adverbs in *-ō*, 181, N. 2. Origin of *ō* final in verbs, p. 118, foot-note 5. Adverbs in *-ō*, 304, II., 1 and 2. Superlat. adverbs in *-ō*, 306, 6. *Ō* or *o*, final, 580, I.; 581, II.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, II.; conj., 586. *Ō*, interj., 312, 1, 2, and 5; w. acc., 381, N. 2. *Ō si* w. subj. of desire, 483, 1. *Ō* in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
-o, **-ŏ**, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in *-ŏ*, 326, 2.
Ob in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Obeying, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Obiter, 304, I., 2.
Object, direct, 371; external, 371, I., 1; internal, 371, I., 2. Object omitted, 371, III., N. 4. Infin. or clause as object, 371, IV.; 540, N. Indir. object, 382 ff. Object clauses of purpose, 498; of result, 501, II.
Objective compds., 343, II. Object. gen., 396, III.
Oblique cases, 45, 1; use of, 370 ff.
Oblīviscor w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407.
Oboediēns w. two dats., 390, N. 3.
Obviam, 304, I., 2.
Occīsit for *occĭderit*, 240, 4.
Occupatio, p. 373, foot-note 2.
Ōcior, compar., 166.
Octo, *o* final in, 581, IV., 2.
Oe, sound, 6; 12.
Oedipus, *u* in, 581, IX., 3, N.
Offendō, constr., 385, II., N. 1.
Ohē, interj., 312, 3; *ō* in, 577, I., 4; *ĕ* in, 581, IV., 4.
Oi, sound, 6, 1; 12, 1.
-ōis, *ō* in, 587, I., 3; 577, 5, N.
-ōius in prop. names, *ō* in, 577, 5, N.
-ola, *o* in, 587, II., 3.
-ōlentus, *ō* in, 587, IV., 1.
Oleō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
Ollus, *olle*, for *ille*, p. 73, foot-note 1, (2).
-olum, **-olus**, *o* in, 587, II., 3.
Omission of consonants, 36; of *ōrō* in adjurations, 569, II., 3.
Omnis, gen. of, w. possessives, 392, 3.
-on, **-ōn**, suffixes, 320, II.; *-ōn* in Greek gen. plur., 68, 4. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-ōn*, 585, II., 5, (2).
-ōna, *ō* in, 587, I., 5.
-ōnē in patronymics, 322, N.; *ō* in, 587, I., 3.
Onerō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
-ōnī, *ō* in, 587, I., 8.
Onomatopoeia, 637, XI., 5.
-ōnus, *ō* in, 587, I., 5.
Open vowel, 3, I., 1.
Opera, *operae*, 132. *Operam dō* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Opīmus, superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Oportet, constr., 502, 1; 537, 1.
Opposing, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.
Ops, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3; 133, 1.
Optative in fut., and in pres. subj., p. 117, foot-note 4. Optat. subj., 484, I.
Optimātēs, decl., 64, 2, 4).
Optimus w. supine, 547, 1.
Optō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Opus, 'work,' decl., 61. *Opus*, 'need,' defect., 134; constr., 414, IV.; w. sup., 547, 1. *Opus est* w. subj., 502, 1.
-ŏr, **-ōr**, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in *-or*, 327. *Ō* shortened in *-ōr*, 21, 2, 2). Gen. of nouns in *-or*, 99, 101. *-Ōr* in Plautus for *-or*, 580, III., N. 2. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-ōr*, 585, II., 5, (1).
Ōrātio Oblīqua, see *Indirect Discourse*. Ōrātiō rēcta, 522, 1.
Orbis, decl., 62, IV.
Orbō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Order of vowels in strength, 22.
Ordinal numbers, 172; 174; decl., 179.
-ōrius, *ō* in, 587, III., 1.
Ornō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
Ōrō w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1. *Ōrō* omitted in adjurations, 569, II., 3.
Orpheus, decl., 68.
Orthography, 1, I.; 2 ff.
Ortus w. abl., 415, II.
-ōrus, compar. of adjs. in, 169, 3. *Ō* in *-ōrus*, 587, I., 6.
Ōs, quant. of increm., 585, II., 1.
Os, *ossis*, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; *o* in, 579, 3.
-os, suffix, 320, II. Sound of *-ŏs*, 11, 1. Greek neuters in *-os*, 68, 6. Decl. of nouns in *-ōs*, *-os*, 83; 133, 4, N.; gend., 99; 102. *Ōs* or *os* final, 580, III.; 581, VII.

Ossua, p. 50, foot-note 1.
Ostrea, plur., 142.
-ōsus, adjs. in, 328; *ō* in, 587, I., 6.
-ōtis, *ō* in, 587, I., 3.
-ōtus, *ō* in, 587, I., 7.
Ovid, versification, 630.
Owing, constr. w. verbs of, 583, I., 1.
-ox, **-ōx**, decl. of nouns in, 96.
Oxymoron, 637, XI., 5.

P

P changed to *b*, 33, 2; to *m*, 33, 3, N.; developed by *m*, 34, 1, N.
Paene w. perf. ind., 471, 2; w. hist. tenses of indic., 511, 1, N. 4.
Paenitet, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
Palam w. abl., 437, 2.
Palatals, 3, II., N. 1, I., 1.
Palus for *palūs*, 581, IX., 1, N.
Palūster, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Panthūs, voc., 54, N. 4.
Papae, interj., 312, 2.
Pār, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Paraleipsis, 637, XI., 2.
Parasitic *u*, 5, 4.
Pardoning, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
Parēns, gen. plur., p. 38, foot-note 2.
Parentage expressed by abl., 415.
Parenthetical clauses in indir. disc., 524, 2, 1); in indir. clauses, 529, II., N. 1, 2).
Pariēs, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.
Paris, decl., 68.
Paroemiac verse, 604, N. 2.
Paronomasia, 637, XI., 7.
Pars, acc., 64, N. 2. *Pars*, *partēs*, 132. *Pars* in fractions, 174, 1. *Parte*, *partibus*, constr., 425, 2. *Pars* w. plur. verb, 461, 1.
Particeps w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Participation, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 3; w. verbs of, 410, V., 3.
PARTICIPLES, 200, IV.; endings, 248. Particip. in seq. of tenses, 495, IV. Agreement of particip., 438, 1; 460, 1. Particip. for infin., 535, I., 4. Use of particip., 548 ff.; denoting time, cause, manner, means, 549, 1; condit., concess., 549, 2; purpose, 549, 3; for relat. clause, 549, 4; for prin. clause, 549, 5; w. negat., 549, N. 1. Particip. rendered by noun, 549, N. 2.
PARTICLES, 302 ff.; adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 307; 308; conjs., 309 ff.; interjections, 312. Syntax of particles, 551 ff.; adverbs, 551 ff. Interrog. particles, p. 152, foot-note 3; 351, 1; 555, 3. *-Ā* in particles, 581, III., 3.
Partim, 304, I., 1; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3. *Partim—partim* for *pars—pars*, 461, 5.
Partitive apposition, 364. Part. gen., 396, IV.; 397.
Parts of speech, 38.
Partus, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Parum w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Parvus, compar., 165. *Parvī*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
Passer, decl., 60.
PASSIVE VOICE, 195, II.; impers., 195, II., 1. Passive constr., 464; 534, 1. Passive like middle, 465.
Passus, 648, IV., N.
Pāstor, *pater*, decl., 60.
Paterfamiliās, decl., 126.
Patior, constr., p. 310, N. 1.
Patrials, 331, N. 1; quant. of increm., 585, II., 5.
Patronymics, 322.
Paucī, defect., 159, II.
Pause, caesural, 602.
Pāx, defect., 133, 5.
Pecū, decl., p. 50, foot-note 1.
PECULIARITIES, in conjugat., 235 ff.; in seq. of tenses, 495; in expressions of purpose, 499; of result, 502. Peculiarities in Rom. calendar, 642.
Pecus w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.
Pedester, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Pelagus, decl., 51, 7; gend., 53, 2.
Penalty, how expressed, 410, III.
Penātēs, decl., 64, 2, 4).
Penes w. acc., 433; *es* in, 581, VI., 2.
Peninsulas, constr. of names of, 380, II., 2, 2).
Pentameter, 603, N. 2; dactylic, 614.
Penthemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Penthemimeris, 597, N. 2.
Penus, gend., 118, (2).
Per in compds., 170, 1; 344, 5; w. acc., 372. *Per* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; denoting agency, 415, I., 1, N. 1; manner, 419, III., N. 3. *Per sē*, 452, 1, N. Position of *per* in adjurations, 569, II., 3. *E* in *per*, 579, 3.
Perceiving, constr. w. verbs of, 535, I.
Percontor w. two accs., 374, 2.
PERFECT TENSE, 197; 198. Perf. system, 222, II. Perfect stems, 252 ff. Perf. wanting, 262, N. 2; 272, N. 2; 282; 284, N. 2. Perf. w. pres. meaning, 297, I., 2. Syntax of perf. indic., 471; subj., 481; in subj. of

desire, 483, 2; in potent. subj., 485, N. 1; in prohibitions, 489, 3). Perf. in seq. of tenses, 492; 493; 495; 496, II. Perf. in condition, 507, II.; 509; 511, 1; 511, 2, N.; 513, N. 1.; in concess., 515, II., 2; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; 520, N. 1; in indir. disc., 525, 1; 527, II.; 527, III., N. 2. Perf. infin., 537. Perf. particip., 550; rendered by verbal noun, 549, 3, N. 2. *-Īs* in perf. subj., 581, VIII., 5. Quant. of pen. of dissyllabic perfects, 590. Quant. of first two syllables of trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, 591.
Perhibeor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Periclēs, decl., 68.
Periculum est w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 3.
Period, Lat., 573. Periods of Lat. literature, 640.
Periphrastic conjugat., 233; 234; use, 466, N.; p. 261, foot-note 4; 476, 1; in condit. sentences, 511, 2. Periphrast. fut. infin., 537, 3.
Peritus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; of ger., p. 315, foot-note 3.
Permisceō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Perniciōsus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Person of nouns, 44; verbs, 199; in indir. disc., 526.
PERSONAL pron., 183, 1; 184; use, 446; reflexive use, 448; 449. Pers. endings of verbs, 247. Pers. constr. in indir. questions, 529, 6; in pass. voice, 534, 1.
Personification, 637, IX.
Persuading, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
Pertaedet, *pertaesum est*, constr., 410, IV., notes 1 and 3.
Pēs, *ēs* in compds., 581, VI., 1. *Pēs* as unit of measure, 648, IV.
Petō, constr., 374, 2, N. 4.
Phalaecian verse, 629, I.
Pherecratic verse, 628, II. and IV.-VI.
Phŏcais, *a* in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
PHONETIC CHANGES, 19 ff. Phonet. decay, p. 12, foot-note 1.
Phryx, decl., 68.
Phȳ, 312, 4.
Piget, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
Pilī, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
Pix wants gen. plur., 133, 5; w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
PLACE, adverbs of, 305, I., II., and III.; 305, N. 2, 1). Endings of designations of place, 323. Constr. w. verbs meaning *to place*, 380, N. Place *whither*, 380; *where*, dat., 385, 4, 4); abl., 425; locat., 425, II.; 426; *whence*, 412. Adjs. of place for Eng. adverbs, 443, N. 2.
Plautus, quantity of syllables in, 578, N. 2; 580, III., notes 2-4; metres, 633, III.
Pleasing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Plēbēcula, formation, p. 159, foot-note 1.
Plēbs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Plenty, constr. w. verbs of, 410, V.; 421, II.; 421, N. 1; w. adjs. of, 421, II.
Plēnus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Pleonasm, 636, III.
PLUPERFECT, 197; 222, II. Plup. indic., 472; 476, 2; in seq. of tenses, 493; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 2; 521, II., 1. Plup. subj., 482; in subj. of desire, 483, 2; in seq. of tenses, 493; 495, I.; 496, II., (2); in condit., 507, III.; 509, N. 3; 510; 513, N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 3; in temp. clauses, 518, 1; 519, 2, N. 1; 520, II.; 521, II., 2; in indir. disc., 527, 2; 527, II. and III.; 527, N. 2.
PLURAL, 44; wanting, 130. Plur. for sing., 130, 3; 446, N. 2. Plur. w. change of meaning, 132. *-Ē* in Greek plur., 581, III., 1. *-Īs* in plur., 581, VIII., 1.
Plūrimī, indef. num., 175, N. 3; gen. of price, p. 213, foot-note 2.
Plūs, 165, N. 1; without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2. *Plūris*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2; 405. Quant. of increm. of *plūs*, 585, V., 2.
Poetical dat., 380, 4; 385, 4; 388, 4.
Pollūx, quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
Pŏlypus, *u* in, 581, IX., 3, N.
Polysyndeton, 636, III., 1.
Pondō, 648, I.
Pōne w. acc., 433.
Pōnō, constr., 380, N. *O* in *posuī*, *positum*, 592, 2.
Por, insep. prep., 308. *Por* for *port*, 344, 6.
Porticus, gend., 118, (1).
Portus, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Poscō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Position, syllables when long by, p. 338, foot-note 3.
Positive, 160; wanting, 166. Pos. for compar., 444, 2, N. 3.
POSSESSIVE pronouns, 185; w. gen., 363, 4, 1); 398, 3; for gen., 396, II., N.; 401, N. 3; w. *rēfert* and *interest*, 408, I., 2. Use of poss. pron., 447; reflex, 448; 449. Possessive compds., 343, III. Possessive gen., 396, I.

Possessor, dat. of, 387.
Possum, in conclus., 511, 1, N. 2; w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
Post in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386. *Post*, denoting interval of time, 430. *Post* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Post-classical period, 640, III.
Posteā, 304, IV., N. 2; in series, 554, I., N. 4.
Posteāquam, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 518.
Posterus, compar., 163, 3.
Postīcus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Postis, decl., 62, IV.
Postmodum, 304, I., 2.
Postpositive, 554, III., 4; 554, V., 3.
Postquam in temp. clauses, 518; w. perf. indic., p. 260, foot-note 2.
Postrēmō in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Postrēmus, force of, 440, N. 2; 442, N.
Postrīdiē w. gen., 398, 5; w. acc., 437, 1. *Postrīdiē quam* in temp. clauses, 518, N. 3. *Ē* in *postrīdiē*, p. 341, foot-note 2.
Postulō, constr., 374, 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Potēns w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Potential subj., 485; 486; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in interrog. sentences, 486, II.; in subord. clauses, 486, III.
Potior w. gen., 410, V., 3; w. abl., 421, I.; w. acc., 421, N. 4; in gerund. constr., 544, N. 5.
Pōtus w. act. meaning, 257, N. 2.
Prae in compds., 170, 1; w. dat., 386. *Prae* w. abl., 434; 434, I. Quant. of *prae* in compds., 576, I., 1; 594, 4.
Praecipiō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Praecox, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Praecurrō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Praeditus, constr., 420, N. 1, 4).
Praenōmen, 649; abbreviated, 649, 1.
Praesente w. plur., 438, 6, N.
Praestō, *praestolor*, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Praeter in compds. w. acc., 372. *Praeter* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Praetereā in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Praeut, 311, 2.
PREDICATE, 356, 2; simple, 360; complex, 361; modified, 361, 1. Pred. nouns, 360, N. 1; 362; for dat., 390, N. 2. Pred. adjs., 360, N. 1; 438, 2. Pred. acc., 373, 1. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; varieties, 402; verbs with, 403 ff.; pred. gen. of price, 404; 405. Pred. abl., 421, N. 4. Pred. after infin., 536, 2. Infin. as pred., 539, I. Predicates compared, 535, I., 6. Position of pred., 560.
Predicative roots, 314, I.
PREPOSITIONS, 307; insep., 308; in compds., 344, 5 and 6. Compds. w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386. Preps. in expressions of time, 379, 1; 429, 1 and 2; 430; of place, 380; 412; 425; of motion or direction, 384, 3, 1); denoting *for*, 384, 3, 3); of agency, 388, 2. Preps. after adjs., 391, II., 1 and 3. Prep. with obj. for obj. gen., 396, III., N. 1; for part. gen., 397, 3, N. 3; for gen. w. adjs., 400, 2 and 3; for gen. after verbs, 407, N. 2; 410, I., 2; 410, II., 3; after *rēfert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3; 408, IV.; expressing penalty, 410, III.; separation, source, cause, 413; 414, N. 1.; 415; 416, I.; after compar., 417, notes 3 and 5; denoting accompaniment, 419, I.; manner, 419, III. Cases w. preps., 432 ff.; acc., 433; abl., 434; acc. or abl., 435. Special uses of preps., 433, I.; 434, I.; 435, I. Preps. originally adverbs, 436. Adverbs as preps., 437. Preps w. infin., 533, 3, N. 4; w. ger., 542, III.; 542, IV., (2); w. gerund. constr., 544, 2. Prep. between adj. and noun, 565, 3. Position of preps., 569, II. Quant. of insep. preps., 594, 2. Monosyllabic preps. repeated, 636, III., 6; other preps., 636, III., 6, N.
Presbyter, decl., 51, 4, 3).
PRESENT, 197; 198, I., 1; 222, I. Pres. stem, 250; 251. Pres. indic., 466; 467; of gen. truths, customs, 467, II. Hist. pres., 467, III.; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1. Pres. subj., 479; in condit., 507, II.; 509; 518, N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 2; in indir. disc., 525, 1; 527, II. Pres. imperat., 487, 1. Pres. infin., 537. Pres. particip., 550. Pres. perf., 197, N. 1; 198, I., 2; 471, I. Pres. system, 222, I. -*īs* in pres. subj., 581, VIII., 4.
Priapeian verse, 629, II.
Price, gen. of, 404; 405; abl., 422.
Prīdiē, locat., 120, N.; w. gen., 398, 5; w. acc., 437, 1. *Prīdiē quam* in temp. clauses, 520, N. 2. *Ē* in *prīdiē*, p. 241, foot-note 2.
Primary stems, 315; 317. Prim. suffixes, p. 153, foot-note 6; 320.
Prīmum, *prīmō*, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Prīnceps, decl., 57.

PRINCIPAL parts of verbs, 202; 220; 257-288. Prin. clauses, 348, N. 2; in indir. disc., 523; supplied by particip., 549, 5. Prin. tenses, 198, I.; in seq., 491 ff. Prin. elements of sentence, 357, 1.
Prior, *primus*, 166; rendered by relat. clause, 442, N.; by adverb, 443, N. 1, (2).
Priusquam, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 520.
Prīvō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Prō, 312, 3; in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
Prō, *prōd*, in compds., 344, 5; *prō* in, 594, 5. Compds. w. dat., 386.
Prō w. abl., 434; 434, I.; expressing *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, 384, 3, 2). *Prō* w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
Proceleusmatics, 633, III., 2, N. 1.
Proclitics, 18, 1, N. 1.
Prōclivis without superlat., 168, 3; w. supine, 547, 1.
Procul w. abl., 437, 2.
Prōd in compds., 344, 5.
Prohibeō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1.
Prohibessō for *prohibuerō*, 240, 4.
Prohibitions, subj. in, 484, IV., w. N. 1; imperat., 487, 2, 2).
Proinde, 310, 4.
Prolepsis, 440, 2; 636, IV., 3.
Pronominal roots, 314, II.
PRONOUNS, 182 ff.; pers., 183, 1; 184; substant., p. 70, foot-note 3; case-endings, 184, 1; possess., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189; 190; correlat., 191. Prons. as adjs., 438, 1. Agreement of pron., 445. Use of pers. pron., 446; possess., 447 ff.; reflex., 448; 449; demon., 450 ff.; relat., 453; interrog., 454; indef., 455 ff. Pron. in indir. disc., 526. Prons. brought together, 569, I., 2. Pron. redundant, 636, III., 7.
Pronunciation of Latin, Roman, 5 ff.; Eng., 9 ff.; Continental, 15.
Prope w. acc., 433; 433, I.; w. perf. indic., 471, 2; w. hist. tenses of indic., 511, 1, N. 4.
Proper nouns, 39, 1; plur. of, 130, 2.
Propinquus without superlat., 168, 3; constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
Propior, *prōximus*, 166; w. acc., 391, 2; 433, I., N. 2; w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1.
Propius w. acc., 437, 1; 433, I., N. 2.
Proportionals, 173, 2.
Proprius, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
Propter w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Proptereā, 554, IV., 2.
PROSODY, 574 ff.; quant., 575 ff.; versification, 596 ff.; figures of pros., 608.
Prosopopeia, 637, IX.
Prōsper, decl., 150, N., 1).
Prōspiciō, constr., 385, 1.
Prōtinus, p. 145, foot-note 5.
Prout, 311, 2.
Prōvideō, constr., 385, 1.
Prōvidus, compar., 164; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Prōximē w. acc., 433, I., N. 2; 437, 1.
Prōximus, see *propior*.
Prūdēns, decl., 157; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).
-pte, pronouns in, 185, N. 2.
Pudet, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
Pudīcus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Puer, decl., 51.
Pūgnō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Puppis, decl., 62, III.
PURPOSE, dat. of, 384, 1, 3); subj. of, 497 ff.; object clauses, 498; peculiarities, 499. Infin. of purpose, 533, II.; gerund, 542, I., N. 2; 542, III., N. 2; gerundive, 544, 2, N. 2; supine, 546; particip., 549, 3. Position of clauses of purpose, 572, III., N.
Pūs, defect., 133, N.
-pus, compds. in, quant. of increm., 585, II., 5, (3).
Puta, *a* in, 581, III., 3.
Putor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Pyritēs, decl., 50.
Pyrrhic, 597, N. 1.
Pythiambic stanza, 631, XVII. and XVIII.

Q

Q, qu, dropped, 36, 3. *Qu* changed to *c*, 33, 1, N.
Quā, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
Quaerō, constr., p. 193, foot-note 1.
Quālis, *quāliscumque*, 187, 4. *Cūjusmodī*, etc., for *quālis*, 187, 4, N. *Quālis*, interrog., 188, 4.
Quālislibet, 191.
Quālisquālis, 187, 4.
Quality, abl. of, 419, II., w. N.
Quam, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, V.; p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 2; w. comparat., 417; 444, 2; w. superlat., 170, 2, (2); w. infin., 524, 1, 2). *Quam* for *postquam*, 430, N. 1, 3). *Quam prō*, 417, 1, N. 5. *Quam*, *quam ut*, w. subj., 502, 2. *Quam quī*, w. subj., 503, II., 3.

Quam sī, 513, II. *Tam—quam*, *nōn minus—quam*, *nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1. *Nihil aliud quam*, 555, III., 1.
Quamdiū, 311, 1.
Quamobrem, 554, IV., 2.
Quamquam, p. 75, foot-note 1; 311, 4; in concess., 515, I.; 515, notes 1 and 2; w. infin., 524, 1, 2).
Quamvīs, 311, 4; in concess., 515, III.; 515, N. 3.
Quandō, interrog., 305, IV.; relat., 311, 1 and 7; in causal clauses, 516. *Quandō* in compds., 594, 8.
Quandŏquidem, 311, 7; *ŏ* in, 594, 8.
QUANTITY, 16; 575 ff.; signs of, 16, N. 3; gen. rules, 576 ff. Quant. in final syllables, 579 ff.; increments, 582 ff.; deriv. endings, 587; stem-syllables, 588 ff.; syllables before two consonants or a double consonant, 651.
Quantumlibet, *quantumvīs*, 311, 4. *Quantumvīs* in concess., 515, N. 6.
Quantus, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4; correlat., 191. *Quantī*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2; 405.
Quantusvīs, indef., 191.
Quāpropter, 554, IV., 2.
Quārē, 304, II., 1, N.; 554, IV., 2; *ē* in, p. 341, foot-note 2.
Quasi, 311, 2; w. *quīdam*, 456, 2; in condit., 513, II. *I* in *quasi*, 581, I., 1; *a* in, 594, 10.
Quāvīs, indef., 305, V.
Que, 310, 1; p. 151, foot-note 1; 554, I. *Īdem—que*, 451, 5. *Que—que*, *et—que*, *que—et*, *que—atque*, *neque* (nec)—*que*, 554, I., 5. Position of *que*, 569, III., 4. *Que* lengthened in Vergil, 608, V., N. 2.
Quercus, decl., 119, 4.
Queror w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 2.
Questioning, constr. w. verbs of, 374, N. 3.
QUESTIONS, 351; double, 353; deliberat. in indir. disc., 523, II., 1, N.; rhetor., p. 297, foot-note 2; indir., 528, 2; 529, I.
Quī, relat. pron., 187; 453; interrog., 188; 454; indef., 189; 190; 455; correlat., 191. *Quī* w. subj. of purpose, 497, I.; of result, 500, I.; 503. *Quī* in condit., 507, 2; concess., 515, III.; 515, N. 4; causal clauses, 517. *Quī dīcitur*, *vocātur*, 453, 7. *Quod* as adverb. acc., 358, 6. *Quod* in restrict. clauses, 503, N. 1. *I* in *cuī*, 581, I., 1.
Quī, adverb, 187, 1; 188, 2.
Quia, 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516; w. relat., 517, 3, 2); w. infin., 524, 1, 2). *A* in *quia*, 581, III., 3.
Quīcumque, gen. relat., 187, 3.
Quīdam, indef., 190, 2, 1); 191; use, 456.
Quidem w. pron., 446, N. 1; position, 569, III.; 569, III., 3.
Quiēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Quīlibet, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458.
Quīn, p. 75, foot-note 2; 311, 6; w. subj., 500, II.; 501, II., 2; 504.
Quīnam, 188, 3.
Quinarius, 646.
Quīnquātrūs, gend., 118, (2).
Quīppe, p. 75, foot-note 2; w. relat., 517, 3, 1).
Quirīs, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Quis, interrog., 188; use, 454; indef., 189; 190; use, 455; correlat., 191. *I* in *quis*, 579, 3. *A* in *qua*, indef., 579, 3. *Quid* redundant, 636, III., 7.
Quīs for *quibus*, p. 74, foot-note 5.
Quisnam, 188, 3.
Quispiam, indef., 190, 2, 1); use, 455.
Quisquam, indef., 190, 2, 1); use, 457.
Quisque, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458; w. abl. abs., 431, N. 3; w. plur. verb, 461, 3. Placed next *suus* or *suī*, 569, I., 2.
Quisquis, gen. relat., 187, 3. *Quidquid* used of persons, 453, 1, N.
Quĭtum, *ĭ* in, 590, 1.
Quīvīs, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458; *īs* in, 581, VIII., 3, N.
Quō, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; 311, 5; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.
Quoad, 311, 1; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; in temp. clauses, 519.
Quōcircā, 554, IV., 2.
Quōcumque, 305, N. 1.
Quod, p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516.
Quod-clauses, 540, IV., w. N. *Nisi quod*, 555, III., 1. See also *quī*.
Quoi for *cui*, *quōius* for *cūjus*, p. 74, foot-note 5.
Quōlibet, 305, II.
Quom, 305, IV.; p. 151, foot-notes 1 and 4; 311, 1, 4, and 7.
Quōminus, 311, 5; w. subj., 497, II.; 499, 3, N. 2.
Quoniam, composition, p. 6, foot-note 5; 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516; w. relat., 517, 3, 2).
Quoque, 310, 1; 554, I., 4; position, 569, III.; *o* in, 594, 10.

Quōquō, 305, N. 1.
Quōrsum, 305, II.
Quot, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4; correlat., 191.
Quotannīs, 304, II., 1, N.
Quotiēns, 305, IV.
Quotus, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4.
Quōvis, 305, II.
Quum, 305, IV.; see *cum*.

R

R assimilated to *l*, 34, 2; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3. Noun-stems in *r*, 60; verb-stems in supine, 256, 1. Decl. of nouns in *r*, 77. Quant. of final syllables in *r*, 580, II., w. N. 2.
-ra, **-ră**, suffixes, 320.
Rādīx, decl., 59.
Rāstrum, plur., 143, 2.
Ratiō, circumlocutions w., 636, III., 10.
Ratum, *a* in, 590, 1.
Rāvis, decl., 62, II., 1.
Re, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6; *e* in, 594, 2. *Rē* for *re*, 594, 2, N. 3.
-re for *ris*, 237.
Reading, rhythmical, 607.
Reāpse, p. 73, foot-note 5.
Reason, clauses expressing, 516.
Recollection, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 2; gen. of ger., p. 315, foot-note 2.
Recordor w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, N. 1, (1); w. abl. w. *dē*, 407, N. 2.
Recūsō, constr., p. 279, foot-note 2.
Red, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Reduplicated pronouns, 184, 4; perfects, 255, I. Quant. of first two syllables of trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, 591. Increm. of reduplicated forms of verbs, 586, 2.
Reduplication in pres., 251, 6; perf., 255, I.; compds., 255, I., 4.
Rēfert, constr., 406, III.; 408.
Refertus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Reflexive pron., 184, 2. Reflex. use of pron., 448; 449.
Refusing, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.
Regarding, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2); w. gen., 403.
Rēgnō w. gen., 410, V., 3.
Relative Pronoun, 187; correlat., 191; use, 453. Abl. of relat. for *postquam*, 430, N. 2. Relat. attracted, 445, 8. Relat. clause w. subj. of desire, 483, 5; purpose, 497, I.; result, 500, I.; 503; to characterize indef. or gen. anteced., 503, I.; after *ūnus*, *sōlus*, etc., 503, II., 1; after *dīgnus*, *indīgnus*, *idōneus*, *aptus*, 503, II., 2; after comparat. w. *quam*, 503, II., 3. Relat. clause in condit., 507, 2; concess., 515, III., w. N. 4; causal clause, 517. Relat. clause w. infinit., 524, 1, 1); supplied by particip., 549, 4. Position of relat., 569, III.; before prep., 569, II., 1. Position of relat. clauses, 572, II., N.
Relaxō, *relevō*, w. abl., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Relieving, constr. w. verbs of, 414, 1.
Relinquō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Rĕliquus, meaning, 440, N. 2. *Rĕliquī facere*, 401, N. 4.
Remaining, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.
Remembering, constr. w. verbs of, 407.
Reminding, constr. w. verbs of, 409, I.; 410, I.
Reminiscor w. gen., 406, II.
Repeated action denoted by imperf. indic., 469, II.; plup. indic., 518, N. 2, 2); imperf. or plup. subj., 518, 1.
Repelling, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2.
Repentīnus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.
Reposcō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Requiēs, decl., 137, 1; quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Rēs, decl., 120; w. adjs., 440, N. 4. Circumlocutions w. *rēs*, 636, III., 10.
Resisting, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Rēspūblica, decl., 126.
Restat w. subj., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Restis, decl., 62, III.
Restrictive clauses w. *quod*, 503, N. 1.
Result, subj. of, 500 ff.; substant. clauses of, 501; peculiarities, 502; in relat. clauses, 503; w. *quīn*, 504; w. special verbs, 505. Position of clauses of result, 572, III., N.
Rēte, decl., 63, 2, (2).
Reticentia, 636, I., 3; 637, XI., 3.
Rēx, decl., 59; quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Rhēa, *ē* in, 577, I., 2, (3).
Rhetoric, figures of, 634, N.; 637.
Rhetorical questions, 523, II., 2.
Rhythm, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Rhythmic accent, 599.
Rhythmical reading, 607.
Rīdeō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
Rivers, gend. of names of, 42, I., 2; 43, 1.
-ro, suffix, 320, II.

Rogō w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Rōma, decl., 48, 4.
Roman pronunciation of Lat., 5 ff. Roman authors, 640. Roman calendar, 641 ff.; money, weights, and measures, 646 ff.; names, 649.
Roots, 314. Root-stems, 315.
Rōs without gen. plur., 133, 5.
Rōstrum, *rōstra*, 132.
-rs, decl. of nouns in, 65, 3, (1); 90.
Rudis w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Rules of syntax, 558.
Rūs, decl., 64, N. 3; 133, N.; constr., 380, 2, 1). *Rūre*, 412, 1. *Rūrī*, 426, 2.
-rus, compar. of adjs. in, 163, 3.
Rutum, quant. of pen., 590, 1.

S

S, sound, 7; 13, II.; changed to *r*, 31; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3; 36, 5, 1). Stems in *s*, 61. Decl. of nouns in *s*, 64; 65, 3; 79 ff.; quant. of increm., 585, I., 2; 585, II., 2. Final syllables in *s* short before following consonant, 576, 1, N. 2. Final *s* dropped in poetry, 608, I., N. 3.
-s, patronymics in, 322.
-sā, suffix, 320, II.
Sacer, compar., 167, 2; w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Saepe, compar., 306, 4.
Sāl, decl., 133, 5. *Sāl*, *sālēs*, 132. *Ā* in *sāl*, 579, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (3).
Salix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Salūber, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Salūtāris without superlat., 168, 3; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Samnīs, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Sānē quam as adverb. phrase, 305, N. 4.
Sapiō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
Sapphic verse, 604, N. 1; 628, VI. and VII. Sapphic stanza, 631, II. and III.
Satis, compar., 306, 4; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; compds. w. dat., 384, 4, N. 1.
Satum, *a* in, 590, 1.
Satur, decl., 150, N., 2).
Saying, constr. w. verbs of, 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Scanning, 607, N.
Scazon, p. 361, foot-note 1.
Scelus w. supine, 547, 1.
Scidī, *ĭ* in, 590, 1.
Sciēns w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).
Scīlicet, 304, IV., N. 2.
-scō, inceptives in, 337.
Sē, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6; *ĕ* in, 594, 2.
Second decl., 51 ff. Sec. conj., 207; 208; 225; 261 ff.; *ĕ* in imperat., 581, IV., 3. Sec. pers. sing. of indef. *you*, 484, IV., N. 2.
Secondary tenses, 198, II. Secondary stems, 315; 318. Second. suffixes, p. 154, foot-note 4.
Secundum w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Secūris, decl., 62, III.
Secus, 'sex,' defect., 134. *Secus*, 'otherwise,' p. 145, foot-note 5.
Sēd for *sē*, 184, 5. *Sēd*, insep. prep., 308; in compds, 344, 6.
Sed, 310, 3; 554, III., 2. *Nōn sōlum* (nōn modo *or* nōn tantum)—*sed etiam*, 554, I., 5. *Sed*, *sed tamen*, resumptive, 554, IV., 3. Position of *sed* in poetry, 569, III., N.
Sēdēs, gen. plur., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Sedtamen, 554, III., 3.
Seeming, pred. gen. w. verbs of, 403.
Selling, gen. w. verbs of, 405.
Semel, p. 145, foot-note 4.
Sēmentis, decl., 62, III.
Semi-deponents, 268, 3; 283; 465, N. 2.
Sēminex, defect., 159, II.
Semi-vowels, 3, II., 1.
Senarius, 603, N. 6; 622.
Senātus, decl., 119, 3.
Sending, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 2).
Seneca, metres, 633, II., notes 2 and 3.
Senex, decl., 66; compar., 168, 4.
SENTENCES, syntax, 345 ff.; classification, 345 ff.; simple, 347; 357; complex, 348; 359; compound, 349; declarat., 350; in indir. disc., 523, I.; imperat., 354. See also *Exclamatory*, *Interrogative*, *Conditional*.
SEPARATION, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4, 2). Abl. of separat., 413; 414. Separat. producing emphasis, 561, III.
Sēpse for *sē*, 184, 5.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 491 ff.; peculiarities, 495.
Sequitur w. subj., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Series, how begun and continued, 554, I., N. 2.
Seriēs, defect., 122, 2.
Serving, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Servus, decl., 51.
Sēscentī used indefinitely, 174, 4.

Sēsē for *sē*, 184, 4.
Sesterces, 647.
Sestertiūm, sestertium, 647, III. and IV.
Sestertius, 646; 647.
Sētius, *quō sētius* for *quōminus*, 497, 2, N.
Seu, 310, 2.
Ships, gend. of names of, 53, 1, (2).
Short syllables, 575.
Shortening of vowels, 21.
Showing, two accs. w. verbs of, 373.
Sī, derivat. and meaning, p. 73, foot-note 2; 311, 3; p. 281, foot-note 2; in condit., 507 ff.; w. perf. indic., 471, 5; w. plup. indic., 472, 2; w. subj. of desire, 483, 1. *Sī* in concess., 515, II. *Sī* = to see whether, 529, 1, N. 1. *Sī quidem*, 507, 3, N. 2.
-si, suffix, 320, II. *-Sī* in Greek dats., 68, 5; *i* in, 581, I., 1.
Sic, p. 73, foot-note 2; 304, III., 2; 305, V.; 551, N. 2; redundant, 636, III., 7.
Sīcut, *sīcutī*, 311, 2.
Siem for *sim*, 204, 2.
-silis, adjs. in, 333.
Silver age, 640, II., 2.
Silvester, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
-sim in perf. subj., 240, 4; in adverbs, 304, I., 1.
-simă, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
Simile, 637, I.
Similis, compar., 163, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
-simo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
Simple sentence, 347; 357. Simp. elements, 357, 2; subject, 358; pred., 360. Simple words, 313, N. 2.
Simul, p. 145, foot-note 4; 311, 1; w. abl., 437, 2. *Simul atque*, *āc* in temp. clauses, 518; w. perf. indic., 471, 4.
Simulāc, *simulatque*, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 518; w. perf. indic., 471, 4.
Sīn, 311, 3; in condit., 507 ff.; p. 282, foot-note 1. *Sīn aliter*, 552, 3.
-sin in Greek dat. plur., 68, 5.
Sine w. abl., 434.
Singular, 44; wanting, 131.
Sinistrā, constr., 425, 2.
Sinō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1. *I* in *situm*, 590, 1.
Siquidem, 311, 7; 507, 3, N. 2; quant. of first syllab., 594, 10.
Sitiō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
Sitis, decl., 62, II., 1.
Sīve, 310, 2; 554, II., 3.
Size, gen. of, 419, 2, 1).
Skill, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 2; gen. of ger., p. 315, foot-note 2.
Smell, acc. w. verbs of, 371, III.
-so, suffix, 320, II. *Sō* in fut. perf., 240, 4.
Socer, decl., 51, 4, 3).
Sociō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Sōl, decl., 60; 133, 5; *ō* in, 579, 2.
Sōlum, *nōn sōlum—sed etiam* (vērum etiam), 554, I., 5.
Sōlus, decl., 151; for Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, 2. Gen. of *sōlus* w. possess., 398, 3. *Sōlus qui* w. subj., 503, II., 1.
Solvō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
'Son,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, 1, N. 2. Name of adopted son, 649, 3.
Sonants, 3, II., 5, 1; 3, N. 1, II., 1.
Sōns, defect., 159, II.
-sōrius, *ō* in, 587, III., 4.
Sors, abl., 64, N. 3.
Sotadean verse, 626, N. 2.
Source, abl. of, 413; 415.
Space, acc. of, 379.
Sparing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
Special constr. w. infin., 539. Gen. in spec. constr., 398.
Speciēs, decl., 122, 2.
Specification, acc. of, 378; abl., 424.
Specimen without plur., 130, 1, 4).
Specus, decl., 117, 1, 2); p. 50, foot-note 1; gend., 118, (2).
Speech, parts of, 38. Figures of speech, 634 ff.
Spēs, decl., 122, 2.
Sphinx, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3.
Spirants, 3, II., 4, 2.
Spoliō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Spondaic line, 610, 3.
Spondee, 597, I.
Square measure, Rom., 648, V.
Stadium, 648, IV., N.
Stanza, 606. Stanzas of Horace, 631.
Statuō, constr., 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
STEM in decl., 46. Stem-characteristic, stem-ending, 46, 3. Stem in Decl. I., 48, 1; Decl. II., 51, 1; Decl. III., 57, 1; 58, 1; 59, 1; 60, 1; 61, 1; 62, 1; 64, 1, 1); 66, 1 and 3; 69–98; Decl. IV., 116, 1; Decl. V., 120, 1. Stems of verbs, 202, notes 1 and 2; 203, N. 2; formation of, 249 ff. Stems of words, 315 ff. Stem-syllables, quant., 588 ff.; variation in, 593, 1. Primitives w. long stem-syllables, 595.
Sterilis w. gen., p. 219, foot-note 4.
Stirpe, constr., 415, II., N.
Stitī, *i* in, 590, 1.

Stō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1. *E* in *steti*, *a* in *statum*, 590, 1.
Strigilis, decl., 62, III.
Striving, constr. w. verbs of, 498, II.
Strix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Strong caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Struēs, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Studeō, constr., 498, II., N. 1; p. 274, foot-note 2.
Studiōsus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; w. gen. of ger., p. 315, foot-note 2.
Sub in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435; 435, N. 1; 435, I.
SUBJECT, 356, 1; simple, 358; complex, 359; modified, 359, N. 1. Subj. nom., 368. Subj. indef., 518, 2. Subj. acc., 536. Infin. as subj., 538. Subject clauses, 501, I. Subjects compared, 535, 5. Dat. w. adjs. signifying *subject*, 391, I. Position of subj., 560.
Subjective gen., 396, II.
SUBJUNCTIVE, 196, II. Syntax of subj., 477 ff.; tenses, 478 ff.; sequence, 490 ff. Subj. in prin. clauses, 483 ff.; in subord. clauses, 490 ff. Subj. of desire, 483; 484; potent., 485; 486; of purpose, 497 ff.; of result, 500 ff.; in condit., 507 ff.; in concess., 515; in causal clauses, 516; 517; in temp. clauses, 519 ff.; in indir. disc., 523 ff.; in indir. clauses, 529 ff.; in indir. questions, 529, I. Subj. in questions of surprise, 486, II., N. Subj. of desire for imperat., 487, 4. *-īs* in subj., 581, VIII., 4; *-is*, 581, VIII., 5.
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, 348, N. 2; 490 ff.; in indir. disc., 524. Subord. conjs., 311; 555; elements, 357, 1; position, 572.
Substantive pron., p. 70, foot-note 3. Substant. clauses, 532 ff.; 540; of purpose, 499, 3; of result, 501. Substantives, see *Nouns*.
Subter w. acc. or abl., 435.
Suffixes, 46; case-suffix, 46, 1. Suffixes in format. of words, 313 ff. Primary suffixes, 320.
Suī, decl., 184; use, 448; 449; placed next *quisque*, 569, I., 2. *Ī* in *sibī*, 581, I., 2.
Suitableness, constr. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; 391, II., 1, 2).
Sum w. dat., 387; two dats., 390, N. 1, 1); pred. gen., 403; 404; abl., 415, III., N. 1; p. 226, foot-note 1.
Summus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
Supellex, decl., 64, N. 3; 130, 1, 4).
Super in compds. w. acc., 372; dat., 386; abl., 434, N. 1. *Super* w. acc. or abl., 435; 435, N. 2; 435, I.
SUPERLATIVE, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168; 169; formed by *māximē*, 170. Superlat. w. part. gen., 397, 3; p. 209, foot-note 3. Use of superlat., 444.
Superne, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.
Superus, compar., 163, 3.
SUPINE, 200, III.; endings, 248. Supine system, 222, III. Supine stem, 256. Supine wanting, 262, notes 1 and 2; 265; 266; 267, 3; 271, 1 and 2; 272, 1; 272, notes 1 and 2; 276; 278; 281; 282; 284; 284, N. 2. Supine in seq. of tenses, 495, IV. Use of sup., 545 ff.; sup. in *um*, 545; 546; w. *eō*, 546, 2; w. *īrī*, 546, 3; sup. in *ū*, 545; 547. Quant. of pen. of dissyllabic supines, 590.
Suprā w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Suprēmus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
Surds, 3, II., 5, 2; 3, N. 1, II., 2.
-suriō, desideratives in, 338.
Surname in names of Roman citizens, 649, 2.
Sūs, decl., 66.
Suus, 185; 448; 449; placed near *quisque*, 569, I, 2.
Syllabic caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Syllables, 8; 14; 15, 3; quant., 575 ff. Final syl. of verse either long or short, 605.
Syllepsis, 636, II., 2.
Symbols, num., 180.
Synaeresis, 608, III.
Synaloepha, synapheia, 608, I., N. 5.
Syncopated pron., 186, 3.
Syncope, 608, VII.; 635, 2.
Synecdoche, 637, IV.
Synesis, 636, IV., 4; 363, 4; 438, 6; 445, 5; 449, 3; 461.
Synizesis, 608, III., N. 3.
Synopsis of Decl. III., 69–98. Syn. of conj., 223–230.
SYNTAX, 345 ff.; sentences, 345 ff.; nouns, 362 ff.; adjs., 438 ff.; prons., 445 ff.; verbs, 460 ff.; particles, 551 ff. Rules of syntax, 558. Arrang. of words and clauses, 559 ff. Figures of syntax, 634, N.; 636.
Systole, 608, VI.

T

T, sound, 7; 13, II. *T* changed to *d*, 33, 2; assimilated to *n* or *s*, 34, 1; dropped before *s*, 36, 2; when

final, 36, 5, 2). Stems in *t*, 58. Gend. of nouns in *t*, 111. *T* changed to *s* in supine, 256, 1. Quant. of final syllables in *t*, 579, 2; 580, II.; 580, III., N. 2, 1).
-ta, **-tă**, suffixes, 320. Nouns in *-ta*, 325.
Taedet, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
Taking away, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2.
Tālis, 186, 4; correlat., 191.
Talpa, gend., 48, 5.
Tam, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, V.; meaning and use, 551, N. 2. *Tam—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Tamen, 310, 3; 554, III., 2; compds., 554, III., 3.
Tametsī, 311, 4; in concess., 515, II.
Tandem in questions, 351, 4.
Tanquam, 311, 2. *Tanquam*, *tanquam si*, in condit., 513, II.
Tantīsper, 304, V., N. 2.
Tantopere, meaning and use, 551, N. 2.
Tantum abest ut, 502, 3. *Nōn tantum—sed etiam* (vērum etiam), 554, I., 5.
Tantus, demonstr., 186, 4; correlat., 191; w. interrog., 454, 4. *Tanti*, constr., p. 215, foot-note 2; 405. *Tantum abest ut*, 502, 3.
-tar, suffix, 320, I.
-tās, nouns in, 325.
Taste, acc. w. verbs of, 371, III.
-tāt, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 9.
Tautology discriminated from pleonasm, p. 371, foot-note 1.
Taxis for *tetigeris*, 240, 4.
Teaching, two accs. w. verbs of, 374.
Tēd for *tē*, 184, 5.
Temperō, constr., 385, 1.
Templum, decl., 51.
Temporal conjs., 311, 1; 555, I. Temp. clauses, 518 ff.; position, 572, II., N.
Tempus est w. infin., 533, N. 3.
Tener, decl., 150, N., 1).
TENSES, 197; prin. and histor., 198. Tense-signs, 242; 243. Tenses of indic., 466 ff.; subj., 478 ff.; imperat., 487 ff. Seq. of tenses, 490 ff. Tenses in temp. clauses, 518, notes 1 and 2; in indir. disc., 525. Tenses of infin., 537; particip., 550.
Tentō, constr., 498, II., N. 1.
Tenus, p. 145, foot-note 5; w. gen., 398, 5; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, N. 4; 569, II.
Ter, *e* in, 579, 3.
-ter, suffix, 320, II.; p. 155, foot-note 1. Adverbs in *-ter*, 304, IV. Nouns in *-ter*, 326; decl., 60, 3.
Terence, peculiarities in versification, 578, N. 2; 580, III., notes 3 and 4; metres, 633, III.
Terminational compar., 161 ff.
Terrā, constr., 425, 2. *Terrae*, locat., p. 229, foot-note 1.
Terrester, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Testis sum, constr., 535, I., 3.
Tētē for *tē*, 184, 4.
Tetrameter, 603, N. 2; dactylic, 616.
Tetrapody, 597, N. 4.
Tetrastich, 606, N.
Thēbais, *a* in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
Thematic vowel, p. 94, foot-note 1; 251.
Thesis, 600.
Thinking, constr. w. verbs of, 534, 1, N. 1, (2); 535, I., 1.
Third decl., 55 ff.; adjs., 152 ff.; *-o* in, 581, II., 2. Third conj., 209; 210; 227; 228; 269 ff.
Threatening, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
-ti, suffix, 320; p. 157, foot-notes 7 and 9.
-tiă, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.
Tībur, decl., 66, 4.
-ticius, adjs. in, 333, 5.
-tico, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 8.
-ticus, adjs. in, 330, 1.
-tiē, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.
-tilis, adjs. in, 333.
-tim, adverbs in, 304, I., 1.
-timă, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9; *-tima*, p. 157, foot-note 9.
TIME, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 2). Acc. of time, 379; abl., 429; 379, 1. Time denoted by preps. w. acc., 379, 1; 429, 2; w. abl., 429, 1. Time *since*, 430, N. 3. Adjs. of time, 443, N. 2. Time denoted by particip., 549, 1. See also *temporal clauses*.
Times *or* morae, 597.
Timeō, constr., 385, 1; p. 274, foot-note 3.
-timo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
-timus, *a*, *um*, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 9. Adjs. in *-timus*, 330, 1.
-tio, **-tiōn**, **-tiōni**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 1. Nouns in *-tiō*, 326.
Tis for *tui*, 184, 5.
Titles, superlat. as, 444, 1, N.
-tivus, adjs. in, 333, 5.
Tmesis, 636, V., 3.
'To,' how translated, 384, 3.
-to, suffix, 320, II.
-tō for *tor* in imperat., 240, 5.
Tonitrus, decl., 117, 1, 3).
-tōr, suffix, 320, II.
-tor, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1. Nouns in *-tor*, 326; as adjs., 441, 3.

-tōriă, **-tōrio**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 4. *Ō* in *tōria*, 587, III., 4.
-tōrium, **-tōrius**, *ō* in, 587, III., 4.
Tot, demon., 186, 4; correlat., 191.
Totiēns, 305, IV.
Totus, demon., 186, 4.
Tōtus, decl., 151, 1; w. loc. abl., 425, 2. *Tōtus* for Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (2).
Towns, gend. of names of, 42, II., 2; constr., 428; whither, 380, II.; whence, 412, II.; where, 425, II.
-tra, suffix, 320, I.
Trādor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Trāns in compds., 344, 5; w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376. *Trāns* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Transitive verbs, 193, I.
Translation of subjunctive, 196, II.; infin., 200, I.
Trees, gend. of names of, 42, II., 2; names of, in *-us*, decl., 119, 2.
Trēs, decl., 175.
Tribrach, 597, II.
Tribuō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Tribus, decl., 117, 1, 1); gend., 118, (1).
-tric, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4.
Tricolon, p. 352, foot-note 3.
Trihemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Trihemimeris, 597, N. 4.
Trimeter, 603, N. 2.
Tripody, 597, N. 4.
Tristich, 606, N.
Trīstior, *trīstis*, decl., 154. *Trīstis* w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).
Trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, quant. of first two syllables, 591.
-trix, nouns in, 326; as adjs., 441, 3.
-tro, suffix, 320, II.
Trochaic verse, 603, N. 1; 618 ff.; stanza, 631, X.; caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Trochee, 597, II.; irrational, 598, 1, 1).
Tropes, 637, V., N.
-trum, nouns in, 326.
Truths, gen., expressed by pres. indic., 467, II.; in condit., 508, 5; 511, 1.
Tt changed to *st*, *ss*, or *s*, 35, 3.
Tū, decl., 184. *Ī* in *tibī*, 581, I., 2.
-tu, **-tū**, suffixes, 320.
-tuă, **-tūdon**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 3.
Tulī, *u* in, 590, 1.
Tum, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, IV.; in series, 554, I., N. 2. *Tum—tum*, *cum—tum*, 554, I., 5.
-tum, nouns in, 323.
Tumultus, decl., 119, 3.
Tunc, 304, I., 4; 305, IV.
-tuo, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.
-tūră, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4. Nouns in *-tūra*, 326.
-turiō, desideratives in, 338.
-tūro, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4.
Turpis w. supine, 547, N., 1.
Turris, decl., 62.
-tūrus, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1.
Tūs, defect., 133, N.
-tus, adverbs in, 304, IV.; nouns in, 326; adjs. in, 328.
-tūs, nouns in, 324; 325.
Tussis, decl., 62.
-tūt, **-tūti**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 3.
Tuus, possess., 185.
Two accs., 373; 374. Two dats., 390. Two negatives, 553. Two copulatives, 554, I., 5.

U

U, ŭ, sound, 5; 10; 11. *U* w. sound of *w*, 5, 4; 10, 4, 5). *U* parasitic, p. 4, foot-note 5; interchanged with *v*, 29; dropped, 36, 4. *U*-nouns, 116. Nouns in *ū*, defect., 134. Sup. in *ū*, 545; 547. *Ū* or *u*, final, 580, I.; in increments of decl., 585; 585, V.; conj., 586; 586, IV. *U* as consonant, 608, III., N. 2.
-u, suffix, 320.
Ūber, neut. plur., 158, 1.
Ubĭ, 304, III., 2; 305, I.; p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 1; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; in temp. clauses, 518; 471, 4. *Ĭ* in *ubĭ*, 581, I., 2; quant. of ult. in compds., 594, 9.
Ubĭcumque, *ubiubĭ*, p. 75, foot-note 3; 305, N. 1.
Ubivīs, 305, I.
-ubus for *-ibus*, 117, 1.
-ūceus, *ū* in, 587, III., 1.
-ūcus, adjs. in, 338, 5.
-ūdō, *ū* in, 587, I., 2.
-ūgō, nouns in, 324, N.; *ū* in, 587, I., 2.
Ui, sound, 12, 2.
-uis for *-ūs*, 117, 2.
-ula, nouns in, 321; *u* in, 587, II., 3.
-ulentus, *u* in, 587, IV., 1.
-ūlis, *ū* in, 587, I., 4.
Ūllus, decl., 151, 1; use, 457.
Ūlterior, *ūltimus*, 166. *Ūltimus*, force of, 440, N. 2; 442, N.
Ūltrā w. acc., 433; 433, I.
-ulum, **-ulus**, in nouns, 321; in

adjs., 332; 333, 5; compar., 169, 3. *U* in *-ulum*, *-ulus*, 587, II., 3.
-**um** in gen. plur. of nouns, 57; p. 36, foot-notes 3 and 4; p. 38, foot-note 2; 67; adjs., 158, 2. Nouns in *-us* and *-um*, heteroclites, 139; heterogeneous, 144. Adverbs in *-um*, 304, I., 3, 1); num., 181, N. 2; superlat., 306, 6. Supine in *-um*, 545; 546; w. *eō*, 546, 2; w. *īrī*, 546, 3.
-**ūm** for *ārum*, 49, 3; *ōrum*, 52, 3.
-**ūna**, *ū* in, 587, I., 5.
Uncia, 646, 1, N.; 646, 3, 1)—4).
Unclothing, acc. w. verbs of, 377.
-**uncula**, -**unculus**, diminutives in, 321, 3.
Unde, *undelibet*, 305, III.
-**undus**, -**undī**, for *-endus*, *-endī*, 239.
Unguis, decl., 62, IV.
Union, dat. w. verbs denoting, 385, 4, 3).
Unlike, gen. w. adjs. meaning, 391, II., 4, (2).
Unquam, 305, IV.
-**unt**, suffix, 320, II.
Unus, decl., 151, 1; 175; followed by abl. w. prep., p. 209, foot-note 1; gen. of, w. possess., 398, 3. *Ūnus* w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (2). *Ūnus quī* w. subj., 503, II., 1.
-**ūnus**, *ū* in, 587, I., 5.
Ūnusquisque, decl., p. 77, foot-note 1.
-**uo**, suffix, 320, II. Denom. verbs in *-uō*, 335.
-**ur**, suffix, 320, II.; decl. of adjs. in, 150, N.; gend. of nouns in, 111; 114.
Urbs, decl., 64.
Urging, constr. w. verbs of, 499, 2.
-**uriō**, *u* in, 587, IV., 2.
-**us**, suffix, 320, II.; adverbs in, 304, I., 3, 1); nouns in, 326, 2; 327. *Us* for *e* in voc., 52, 2. Decl. of nouns in *us*, 51; 85; 116; in *ūs*, 84; quant. of increm., 585, V., 1. Decl. of names of trees in *us*, 119, 2. Neuters in *us*, Decl. II., 51, 7. Gend. of nouns in *us*, *ūs*, Decl. III., 111; 115. Nouns in *us* and *um*, heteroclites, 139; heterogeneous, 144; 145. Compar. of adjs. in *us* preceded by vowel, 169, 2. *Us* or *ūs* final, 580, III., w. N. 2; 581, IX.
Useful, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.; *ad*, 391, II., 1, (2).
Uspiam, *usquam*, 305, I.
Usque w. preps., 433, N. 2. *Usque* w. acc., 437, 1.
Ūsus w. abl., 414, IV.
Ut, *utī*, 304, III., 2; 305, V.; 311; p. 151, foot-note 1. *Ut*, *ut prīmum*, 'as soon as,' 471, 4. *Ut* w. subj. of desire, 483, 1; w. subj. in questions, 486, II., N.; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.; after verbs of fearing, 498, III., N. 1. *Ut nē*, *ut nōn*, for *nē*, 499, 1. *Ut* omitted, 499, 2; 502, 1. *Ut* w. subj. of result, 500, II. *Ut sī* w. subj. in condit., 513, II. *Ut* in concess., 515, III. *Ut—sic*, *ut—ita*, involving concess., 515, N. 5. *Ut—ita* w. superlat., 555, II., 1. *Ut* w. relat., 517, 3, 1). *Ut* in temp. clauses, 518. *Ut quisque—ita*, 458, 2. Quant. of ult. of *utī* in compds., 594, 9.
-**ut**, decl. of nouns in, 78.
Uter, decl., 65, 1, 2).
Uter, decl., 151, 1; correlat., 191.
Utercunque, *uterlibet*, *uterque*, *utervīs*, decl., 151, N. 2. *Uterque*, constr., 397, N. 2; meaning and use, 459, 4; w. plur. verb, 461, 3. *Is* in *utervis*, 581, VIII., 3, N.
Utī, see *ut*.
-**ūtim**, *ū* in, 587, I., 7.
Utinam w. subj. of desire, 483, 1.
Ūtor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive, 544, 2, N. 5.
Utpote, 311, 7; w. relat., 517, 3, 1).
Utrinde, 304, III., N.
Utrum, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353.
-**ūtus**, *ū* in, 587, I., 7.
Uu avoided, p. 15, foot-note 1.
-**uus**, adjs. in, 333, 5.
-**ux**, decl. of nouns in, 97; *-ux*, 97, N. 1.

V

V originally not distinguished from *u*, 2, 5. Sound of *v*, 7. *V* interchanged w. *u*, 29; treated as guttural, 30, N. 1; changed to *c*, 33, 1, N.; dropped, 36, 4.
-**vă**, suffix, 320, I.
Vacuus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Vae, 312, 3; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3).
Vāh, interj., 312, 1.
Valdē quam in adverb. phrase, 305, N. 4.
Value, gen. of, 404. Gen. w. verbs of valuing, 404.
Vannus, gend., 53, 1, (2).
Variable rad. vowel, 20, N. 2; 57, 2; 58, 1, 2); 60, 1, 2); 61, 1, 2).
Variation in quant. of stem-syllables, 593, 1.
Varieties of verse, 609.

Vās, decl., 136, 2.
Vas, *a* in, 579, 3; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Vātēs, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Vē, insep. prep., 308; *ē* in, 594, 2.
Ve, *vel*, 310, 2; 554, II., 2. *Vel—vel*, 554, II., N. Position of *vel* in poetry, 569, III., N.; in prose, 569, III., 4.
Velut, 311, 2; 554, II., 2. *Velut*, *velut sī*, in condit., 513, II.
Vēnālis w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Venit in mentem w. gen., 406, N.
Venter, decl., 65, 1, 2).
Vēr without plur., 130, 1, 4); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Verb stems, format. of, 249 ff.
Verbal endings, analysis of, 241 ff. Verbal roots, 314, I. Verbal nouns in *ū* defect., 134. Verbal nouns w. infin., 533, 3, N. 3.
Verbs, Etymology of, 192 ff.; classes, 193; voice, mood, tense, numb., pers., 194 ff.; infin., ger., sup., particip., 200; conj., 201 ff.; prin. parts, 202; paradigms, 204 ff.; comparat. view, 213 ff.; verbal inflections, 220 ff.; systems, 222; synopsis, 223 ff.; dep. verbs, 231 ff.; periphrast. conj., 233 ff.; peculiarities in conj., 235 ff.; analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.; tense-signs, 242 ff.; mood-signs, 244 ff.; pers. endings, 247 ff.; format. of stems, 249 ff.; pres. stem, 250; 251; perf. stem, 252 ff.; sup. stem, 256; classification, 257 ff.; Conj. I., 257 ff.; Conj. II., 261 ff.; Conj. III., 269 ff.; Conj. IV., 284 ff.; irreg. verbs, 289 ff.; defect., 297 ff.; impers., 298 ff.; derivation, 335 ff.; denom., 335; frequent., 336; incept., 337; desiderat., 338; dimin., 339; compds., 344.
Verbs, Syntax of, 460 ff.; agreement, 460 ff. Verb omitted, 368, 3; 523, I., N. Voices, 464; 465. Indic. and tenses, 466 ff. Subj. and tenses, 477 ff.; subj. in prin. clauses, 483 ff. Imperat. and tenses, 487 ff. Subord. clauses, 490 ff.; seq. of tenses, 490 ff. Purpose, 497 ff.; result, 500 ff.; condit. sentences, 506 ff.; concess. clauses, 515; causal clauses, 516; 517; temp. clauses, 518 ff.; indir. disc., 522 ff.; indir. clauses, 528 ff. Infin., 532 ff. Substant. clauses, 540. Ger., 541; 542. Gerundive, 543; 544. Supines, 545 ff. Particip., 548 ff. Position of modifiers of verb, 567. *-Ō*, *o*, in verbs, 581, II., 2; *-ā*, 581, III., 3.
Vērē, 304, II., 2.
Vereor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 3.
Vergil, versification, 630.
Vērō, p. 146, foot-note 1; 310, 3; 554, III., 2 and 4; position, 569, III.
Verse, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Verses, 601; name, 603; varieties, 609.
Versification, 596 ff. Feet, 597. Verses, 601; names of, 603; 604. Figures of pros., 608. Varieties of verse, 609.
Versus, p. 145, foot-note 5; w. acc., 433; as adverb, 433, N. 2; position, 569, II.
Vertō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Verū, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Vērum, 310, 3; 554, III., 2; *nōn sōlum* (nōn modo *or* nōn tantum)—*vērum etiam*, 554, I., 5. *Vērum*, *vērum tamen*, resumptive, 554, IV., 3.
Vērumtamen, 554, III., 3.
Vervēx, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Vescor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4.
Vesper, decl., 51, 4. *Vesper* (for *vesperis*), decl., 62, N. 2.
Vespera without plur., 130, 1, 4).
Vespertīnus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.
Vestrās, decl., 185, N. 3.
Vestrī, *vestrūm*, 446, N. 3.
Vetō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1; *vetor*, 534, 1, N. 1.
Vetus, decl., 158; compar., 163, 1, N.; 167, 2.
Vīcīniae, locat., p. 229, foot-note 1.
Vīcīnus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Vicis, defect., 133, 1.
Vidĕ, *ĕ* in, 581, IV., 3.
Vīdĕlicet, 304, IV., N. 2.
Videor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (1).
Vir, decl., 51, 4, 1); *i* in, 579, 3.
Virgŏ, decl., 60.
Virtūs, decl., 58.
Vīrus, decl., 51, 7; gend., 53, 2.
Vīs, decl., 66; p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Vixdum, 555, I., 1.
-vo, suffix, 320, II.
Vocative, irreg., 52, 2; 68, 3. Syntax, 369. Voc. in exclamat., 381, N. 3, 1). Position of voc., 569, VI. *I* in Greek voc. sing., 581, I., 2; *-ā* in, 581, III., 2; *-es* in, 581, VI., 3; *-ūs* in plur., 581, IX., 2.
Voices, 195; 464; 465.
Volŏ w. eth. dat., 389, N. 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1; 499, 2; w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 1. *Volēns* w.

dat. of possess., 387, N. 3. Increm. of *volō* and compds., 586, 1.
Volucer, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Volucris, p. 36, foot-note 3.
-volus, compds. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
Vōti, constr., 410, III., N. 2.
Vowels, 3, I.; sounds, 5; 9 ff.; 15, 1. Classification of vowels, 3, I. Phonet. changes, 20 ff. Vowels lengthened, 20; shortened, 21; weakened, 22; contracted, 23; changed, 24; assimilated, 25; dissimilated, 26; dropped, 27; interchanged with consonants, 28; 29. Variable vowel, 20, N. 2; 57, 2; 58, 1, 2); 60, 1, 2); 61, 1, 2). Favorite vowels, 24. Vowels developed by liquids or nasals, 29, N. Order of vowels in strength, 22. Themat. vowel, p. 94, foot-note 1; 251. Vowel-stems, compar. of adjs. in, 162, N. Final vowel elided, 608, I.; shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3. Quant. before two consonants or a double cons., 651.
Vulgus, decl., 51, 7; gend., 53, 2.
Vulpĕcula, p. 159, foot-note 1.
-vus, adjs. in, 333, 5.

W

Want, gen. w. verbs of, 410, V., 1.
Watches of night, 645, 1.
Way, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3).
Weak caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
Weakening of vowels, 22; diphthongs, 23, N.
Weights, Roman, 646; 648.
'Wife,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, 1, N. 2.
Winds, gend. of names of, 42, I., 2.
Wishing, constr. w. verbs of, 535, II.
Without, constr. w. verbs of being without, 414, I.
Women, names of, 649, 4.
Words, formation of, 313 ff.; derivation, 321 ff.; arrang., 559 ff.

X

X, sound, 13, II.; dropped, 36, 3, N. 2. Decl. of nouns in *x*, 64; 65, 3; 91 ff.; gend., 105; 108. *X* lengthens preceding syllable, 576, II.

Y

Y only in foreign words, 2, 6; sound, 5, 2; 10 ff. Decl. of nouns in *y*, 73; gend., 111. *Y* or *ȳ*, final, 580, I.; in increments, 585.
-ys, decl. of nouns in, 68, 2; 86; gend., 107. *Ys* final, 580, III.
-yx, **-yx**, decl. of nouns in, 97, N. 2.

Z

Z only in foreign words, 2, 6; lengthens preceding syllable, 576, II.
Zeugma, 636, II., 1.

TABLE

SHOWING THE CORRESPONDING ARTICLES IN THE TWO EDITIONS.

OLD.	NEW.
1–4	1–4
5, 6	9
7	10
8	11
9	12
10–12	13
13	14, 1
14	14, 2
15	5
16	6
17	7
18	8
19	15
20	16
21	16, I.
22	16, II.
23	16, III.
24	17
25	18
26	19
27	20
28	24
28, 2, 2)	25, 1
29	21
30	22
31	27
32	23
—	26, 28
33	30
34	36, 5, 1)
35	31, 1
—	32, 35
36	36, 2
37–120	37–120
120, 3	121
120, 4	122
121	123
122	47, note 1
123	—
124–189	124–189
190	190, 1
191	190, 2
—	191
192–195	192–195
196, I	196
196, II	200
197	197
198, 1	197, N. 1
198, 2	198
198, 3	197, N. 2
199	199
200	201
201	202
202	203
203	203, 1
204–212	204–212
213	220
214	221
215	222
216, 217, I	223
217, II	224
218, I	225
218, II	226
219, I	227
219, II	228
220, I	229
220, II	230
221	217
222	218
223	219
224	—
225	231
226	232
227–230	—
231	233
232	234
233	234, N.
234	235
235	236
236	237
237	238
238	239
239	240
240, I	213, 214
240, II. and III	215, 216
241–256	241–256
257	256, 1
258, I., 1	30; 36, 3, 1)
258, I., 2	36, 2
258, I., 3	33, 1
258, I., 4	34, 1, N.
258, I., 5	36, 3, N. 3
258, II., 1 and 2	33, 1
258, II., 3	34, N.
258, II., 4	29
259	257
260	258
260, 1 and 2	257, notes 1 and 2
261	259, 1
261, 1 and 2	259, notes 1 and 2
262	259, 2
263	260
264	261
265	262
266	262, N. 1
267	262, N. 2
268	263
269, I	265
269, II	264
270, I	267, 1
270, II., 1	266
270, II., 2	267, 2
270, III	267, 3
271	268
272, I	269
272, II	270
273, I., 1	271, 1
273, I., 2	272, 1
273, II., 1	271, 2
273, II., 2	272, 2
273, III	272, 3
274, 275, I	273, 274
275, II	275
276	276
276, 1	277, N.
277–279	277–279
280	272, N. 1
281	272, N. 2
282	280
282, I	281
282, II	282
283–285	283–285
286, I	286
286, II	287
287	287, N.
288–303	288–303
304	305, N. 2
305	306
306	307

OLD.	NEW.
307	308
308, 309	309
310–312	310–312
313, I.	313
313, II.	340
313, 1	313, N. 2
—	314–320
314, 315	321
316	322
317	323
318	324
319	325
320, 321	326, 327
322, 323	328
324	329
325	330
326	331
327	332
328	333
329	334
330, 331	335
332, I.	336
332, II.	337
332, III.	338
332, IV.	339
333–337	304, 305
338, I.–III., 1	340
338, 2	344, 5
338, 3	344, 6
339	341
339, 1	343, II.
339, 2	341, 1
340	342
341	344, 1–4
342	304, 305
343	345
344	346
345, I.	347
345, II.	348
345, III.	349
346, I.	350
346, II., 1	351
346, II., 2	353
346, II., 3	352
346, III.	354
346, IV.	355
347	356
348	357
349	357, 1
350	357, 2
351	358
352	359
353	360
354	361, 1
355	361, 2
356	361, 3
357–361	—
362, 363	362, 363
363, 4	364
364, 365	365
366	—
—	366, 367
367, 368	368
369–371	369–371
371, 4	372
371, 5	371, IV.
371, 6	464
371, 7	371, I., N.
372	—
373, 374	373, 374
374, 4	534
374, 5	375
374, 6	376
374, 7	377
375	536
376	—
377	370, II.
378	379
379	380
380	378
381	381
382, 383	382, 383
384–396	384–396
396, III.	397
397	398
398, 1	396, V., N. 3
398, 2	395, N. 2
398, 3	396, II., N.; 396, III., N. 2
398, 4	396, III., N. 1; 397, N. 3
398, 5	384, 4, N. 2
399, 1–4	399
399, 5	400
400	—
401, 402	401, 402
402, 1 and 2	404, 405
402, 3	401, N. 4
403	403
404, 1	401, N. 3
405	—
406–408	406–408
409	410, V.
410–410, 2	409
410, 3–7	410
411, 1	397, 4
411, 2	398, 5
412, 413	367; 411
414–414, 2	413; 416
414, 3	419, III.
414, 4	418; 420
414, 5 and 6	415, I.
414, 7	418; 419, I.; 419, 1
415	—
416	422
417	417
418	423
419, I.	421, I.
419, II.	425, 1, N.
419, III.	421, II.; 414, I. and III.
419, IV.	421, III.; 425, 1, N.
419, V.	414, IV.
419, 2	421, notes 1 and 2
419, 3	414, notes 2–4
419, 4, 1)	421, N. 4
419, 4, 3)	421, N. 3
420	367; 411
421	425, I. and II.; 412
422	425, 1 and 2
422, 2	412, 2
423	425, 3
423, 1	412, 3
424	426
—	427, 428
425	413–415
426	429
427	430
428	419, II.; 419, 2
429	424
430, 431	431
432–440	432–440
441, 1 and 2	441
441, 4	440, N. 4
441, 5	395, N. 2
441, 6	440 notes 1–3
442–463	442–463
464	195
465–465, II.	464
465, 1–3	465
466–474	466–474
—	475
475	476
476	478
477	479, 480
478	481, 482
479	496
480	490, 491
481, I.	492
481, II.	493
481, III.	494
481, III., 1 and 2	496
481, IV.	495, II.
481, V.	495, III.
481, VI.	495, IV.
482	495, I., VI., and VII.
483, 484	477
485, 486	485, 486
486, 4 and 6	485, notes
486, 5	518, 1
487, 488	483, 484
488, 1–5	483, 1–5
489	497; 500
490	497, 1; 500
491	497, 1
492, 493	498, 499

OLD.	NEW.
493, 4	483, 3, N.
494	500
495	501
495, 2, 2)	486, II., N.
496	502
497	497, 2
498	504
499	497, 2
500	497; 500
500, 3	503, N. 3
501	503
—	505
502	506
503, I. and II.	513
503, III.	507
504	509, 510
505	513, I.
506	513, II.
507–510	507–510
510, 2	511, 2
511–511, 2	511
511, 3	512
512	511
513	507, 2
514	514
515, 516	515
517, I.	517
517, II.	516
518, I.	517; 515, III.
518, II.	521
519	517
520	516
521, I.	519, 2
521, II.	520
522	519
523	520
524	528, 2, N.
525, 526	529
527	528; 529, II.
528	522
529, 530	523
531, 532	524, 525
532, 2 and 3	527
532, 4	525, 2
533	526; 530
534–537	487; 489
538, 1	488
538, 2	489, 1)
—	531
539	—
540–544	537
545–547	536
548	532
549–549, 3	538
549, 4	534, 1
550	533–535
551	535
552, 1	533, I.
552, 2	534

OLD.	NEW.
552, 3 and 4	533, II.
553, I.–IV	539
553, V	533, II.
554	540
555	540, I.
556, I.	538, 1; 540, N.
556, I., 1 and 2	501, I., 2
556, II. and III.	501, I., 1
557	540, I.
558, I., 1	535, I.
558, I., 2	498, I.
558, II., 1	533, I., 1
558, II., 2	498, I., N.
558, III	498, II.
558, IV	501, II., 1
558, V	535, III.
558, VI	498, I.
558, VI., 2 and 3	535, II.
559	541
560, 561	542
562	543, 544
563	542, I.; 544, 1
564	542, II.; 544, 2
565	542, III.; 544, notes 2 and 5
566	542, IV.; 544, 2
567, 568	545
569	546
570	547
571–574	550
575	548
576–578	549
579	549, 5
580	549, N. 2
581	549, N. 1
582, 583	551
584	552
585	553
586	553, N.
587	554
588	555
589	556
590	557
591	558
592	559
593	560
594	561
595	562
596	563
597	564
598	565
599	566
600	567
601	568
602	569
603	571
604	572
605	573
606	570

OLD.	NEW.
607	574
608	575
609	575, foot-note 1
610	576, I.
611	576, II.
611, 2	578
612	577
613	579
614	580, I.
615	581, III.
616	581, IV.
617	580, I.
618	581, I.
619	580, I.
620	581, II.
621	580, II.
622	580, III.
623	581, V.
624	581, VI.
625	581, VII.
626	581, VIII.
627	581, IX.
628	580, III.; 576, I.
629	582
630	583
631	584
632	585
633	585, I.
634	585, II.
635	585, III.
636	585, IV.
637	585, V.
638	585
639	586
640	586, I.
641	586, II.
642	586
643	586, III.
644	586, IV.
645	587, I.
646	587, II.
647	587, III.
648	587, IV.
—	588, 589
649	595
650	592
651	590
652	591
653	593
654	594
655	596
656	597
657, 658	598
659	599
660	600
661	601
662	602
663	603
664	604

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
665	605	681	619	703	635
666	606	682	621	704	636
667	601, N. 3	683	622	705	637
668	607, N.	684	623	—	638, 639
669	608	685	624	706	640
670	609	686	625	707	641
671	610	687	626	708	642
672	610, 1-3	688, 689	628, II.-V.	709	643
673	611	690	628, VI. and VII.	710	644
674	611, 4 and 5	691	627, 628	711	645
—	612	691, V	629, I.	712	646
675	613	692	628, IX.	713	647
676	614	693	631, XV.	714	648, I.
676, 2	615	694	631, XIV.	715	648, II.
677, I	616	695	629, II.	716	648, III.
677, II	617	696–699	630	717	648, IV.
677, III	628, I.	700	631	718	648, V.
678	638, II., note 3	701	632	719	649, 1
679	618	—	633	720	650
680	620	702	634	—	651

THE END.

D. APPLETON & CO.'S

LEADING TEXT-BOOKS.

READERS.

Appletons' School Readers consist of Five Books, by William T. Harris, LL. D., Superintendent of Schools, St. Louis, Mo.; Andrew J. Rickoff, A. M., Superintendent of Instruction, Cleveland, O.; and Mark Bailey, A. M., Instructor in Elocution, Yale College.

Appletons' First Reader.
Appletons' Second Reader.
Appletons' Third Reader.
Appletons' Fourth Reader.
Appletons' Fifth Reader.
Appletons' Primary Reading Charts.

STANDARD SUPPLEMENTARY READERS.

I.	Easy Steps for Little Feet	$ 0 30
II.	Golden Book of Choice Reading	35
III.	Book of Tales	60
IV.	Readings in Nature's Book	80
V.	Seven American Classics	60
VI.	Seven British Classics	60

GEOGRAPHY.

Appletons' New Elementary Geography	65
Appletons' Higher Geography	1 50
Cornell's Primary Geography	61
Cornell's Intermediate Geography	1 20
Cornell's Physical Geography	1 30
Cornell's Grammar-School Geography	1 40
Cornell's First Steps in Geography	36
Cornell's High-School Geography	80
Cornell's High-School Atlas	1 60
Cornell's Outline Maps ......per set, 13 Maps,	13 25
Cornell's Map-Drawing Cards ......per set,	45
Patton's Natural Resources of the United States	45

SCIENCE.—(Continued.)

Science Primers: Introductory — Chemistry — Physics — Physical Geography—Geology—Physiology — Astronomy — Botany — Logic—Inventional Geometry—Piano-forte Playing—Political Economy	each,	$0 45
Wilson's Logic		1 30
Winslow's Moral Philosophy		1 30
Youmans's New Chemistry		1 50
Youmans's (Miss) First Book of Botany		85
Youmans's (Miss) Second Book of Botany		1 30

KRÜSI'S FREE-HAND AND INDUSTRIAL DRAWING.

Krüsi's Easy Drawing Lessons, for Kindergarten and Primary Schools. Three Parts	each,	14
Synthetic Series. Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4	each,	15
Analytic Series. Nos. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10	each,	18
Perspective Series. Nos. 11, 12, 13, and 14	each,	25
Advanced Perspective. Nos. 15 and 16	each,	25
Nos. 17 and 18	each,	35
Manuals. (One to each Series.)	Paper, each,	45
	cloth, each,	60
Textile Designs. Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4	each,	30
Nos. 5 and 6	each,	40
Outline and Relief Designs. No. 1		30
Nos. 2 and 3	each,	45
Nos. 4, 5, and 6	each,	40
Mechanical Drawing. Nos. 1, 4, and 6	each,	45
Nos. 2, 3, and 5	each,	25
Architectural Drawing. Nine Parts	each,	45
Green's Slate Drawing Cards. Two Parts	each,	12

PENMANSHIP.

Model Copy-Books, Sliding Copies	per copy,	12
" " Primary Series	per copy,	9
Model Practice-Book	per copy,	10

BOOK-KEEPING.

Marsh's Single-Entry Book-keeping		1 70
Marsh's Double-Entry Book-keeping		2 20
Blanks to above, 6 books to each set	per set,	1 30

LATIN.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book	$1 10
Arnold's Latin Prose Composition	1 10
Arnold's Cornelius Nepos	1 30
Butler's Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline	1 50
Cicero de Officiis	1 10
Crosby's Quintus Curtius Rufus	1 30
Crosby's Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus	1 30
Frieze's Quintilian	1 30
Frieze's Virgil's Æneid	1 70
Frieze's Six Books of Virgil, with Vocabulary	
Harkness's Arnold's First Latin Book	1 30
Harkness's Second Latin Book	1 10
Harkness's Introductory Latin Book	1 10
Harkness's Latin Grammar	1 30
Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar	1 10
Harkness's Latin Reader	1 10
Harkness's New Latin Reader	1 10
Harkness's Latin Reader, with Exercises	1 30
Harkness's Latin Prose Composition	1 30
Harkness's Cæsar, with Dictionary	1 30
Harkness's Cicero	1 30
Harkness's Cicero, with Dictionary	1 50
Harkness's Sallust's Catiline, with Dictionary	1 15
Harkness's Course in Cæsar, Sallust, and Cicero, with Dictionary	1 75
Johnson's Cicero's Select Orations	1 30
Lincoln's Horace	1 50
Lincoln's Livy	1 50
Sewall's Latin Speaker	1 00
Tyler's Tacitus	1 50
Tyler's Germania and Agricola	1 10

GREEK.

Arnold's First Greek Book	1 10
Arnold's Greek Prose Composition	1 30
Arnold's Second Greek Prose Composition	1 30
Arnold's Greek Reading Book	1 30
Boise's Three Books of the Anabasis, with Lexicon	1 30
Boise's Five Books of the Anabasis, with Lexicon	1 70

GREEK.—(Continued.)

Boise's Greek Prose Composition	$1 30
Boise's Anabasis	1 70
Coy's Mayor's Greek for Beginners	1 25
Hadley's Greek Grammar	1 70
Hadley's Elements of Greek Grammar	1 30
Hadley's Greek Verbs	25
Harkness's First Greek Book	1 30
Johnson's Three Books of the Iliad	1 25
Johnson's Herodotus	1 30
Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff	1 50
Kühner's Greek Grammar	1 70
Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis	1 70
Owen's Homer's Iliad	1 70
Owen's Greek Reader	1 70
Owen's Acts of the Apostles	1 50
Owen's Homer's Odyssey	1 70
Owen's Thucydides	2 20
Owen's Xenophon's Cyropædia	2 20
Robbins's Xenophon's Memorabilia	1 70
Silber's Progressive Lessons in Greek	1 10
Smead's Antigone	1 50
Smead's Philippics of Demosthenes	1 30
Tyler's Plato's Apology and Crito	1 30
Tyler's Plutarch	1 30
Whiton's First Lessons in Greek	1 30

GERMAN.

Adler's Progressive German Reader	1 30
Adler's Hand-book of German Literature	1 30
Adler's German Dictionary, 8vo	4 50
“ “ “ 12mo	2 25
Ahn's German Grammar	85
Kroeh's First German Reader	35
Oehlschlaeger's Pronouncing German Reader	1 10
Ollendorff's New Method of Learning German	1 10
Prendergast's Mastery Series—German	45
Roemer's Polyglot Reader—German	1 30
Schulte's Elementary German Course	85

GERMAN.—(Continued.)

Wrage's Practical German Grammar	$1 30
Wrage's German Primer	35
Wrage's First German Reader	45

FRENCH.

Ahn's French Method	65
Badois's Grammaire Anglaise	1 30
Barbauld's Lessons for Children	65
De Fivas's Elementary French Reader	65
De Fivas's Classic French Reader	1 30
De Fivas's New Grammar of French Grammars	1 10
De Peyrac's French Children at Home	80
De Peyrac's Comment on Parle à Paris	1 30
Havet's French Manual	1 10
Jewett's Spiers's French Dictionary, 8vo	2 60
" " " " School edition	1 70
Marcel's Rational Method. French	45
Ollendorff's New Method of Learning French	1 10
Ollendorff's First Lessons in French	65
Roemer's French Readers	1 30
Rowan's Modern French Reader	1 30
Simonné's Treatise on French Verbs	65
Spiers and Surenne's French Dictionary, 8vo	4 50
" " " " 12mo	2 25

SPANISH.

Ahn's Spanish Grammar	85
De Tornos's Spanish Method	1 25
Ollendorff's Spanish Grammar	1 00
Prendergast's Mastery Series. Spanish	45
Schele de Vere's Spanish Grammar	1 00
Velázquez's New Spanish Reader	1 25
Velázquez's Pronouncing Spanish Dictionary, 8vo	5 00
" " " " 12mo	1 50

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

1, 3, & 5 Bond Street, New York.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

Quintus Curtius:

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo, 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

From PROF. OWEN, *of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Arnold's Greek Reading Book, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By James R. Boise, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. Champlin, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

First Lessons in Greek;* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By James Morris Whiton, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By James Hadley, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

——— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

Herodotus, Selections from; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By Herman M. Johnson, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of Wolf, with Notes, by John J. Owen, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.

——— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of Wolf, with Notes by John J. Owen. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors Edwards and Taylor. Large 12mo 620 pages.

Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By Asahel C. Kendrick, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 759 pages.

——— **Greek Reader.** 12mo.

——— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

——— **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

——— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. S. Tyler, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. Dindorf, with Notes by John J. Owen. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction Professor of Language in Middlebury Co

Schools
in the U

DORF, w
Map. 1

with N
Sophocles's
Schools
Greek i

I

Gesenius's
rection
J. Con
nary, N
Uhlemann
By En
Gramm
the Tr

D. APP

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

FEB 1 1902
JUL 18 19[illegible]
FEB 11 1905
NOV 3 1906
JUN 11 190[illegible]
JUN 20 19[illegible]
DEC 9 192[illegible]

9